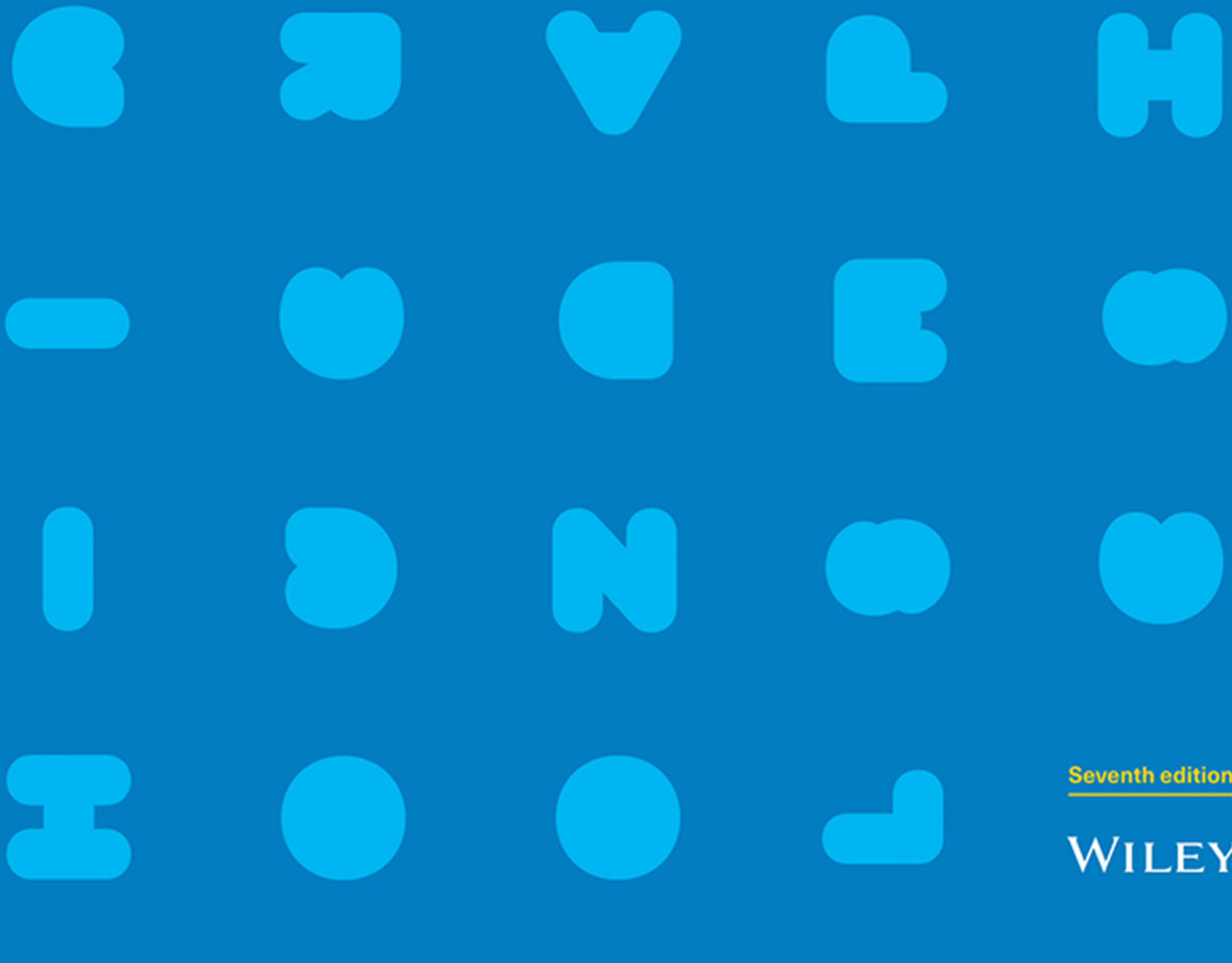
graphic design school

The principles and practice of graphic design

David Dabner
Sandra Stewart
Abbie Vickress

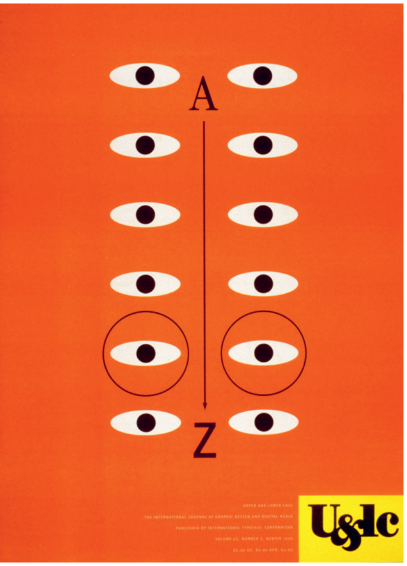


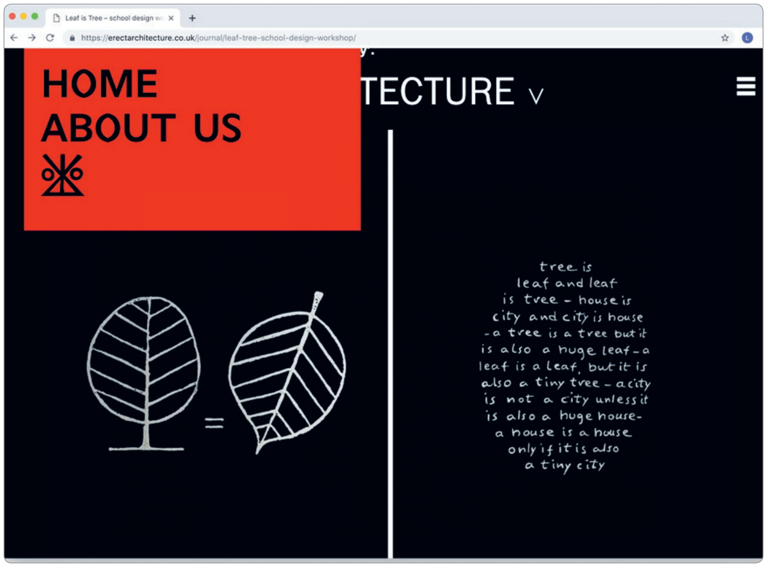
Seventh edition

WILEY

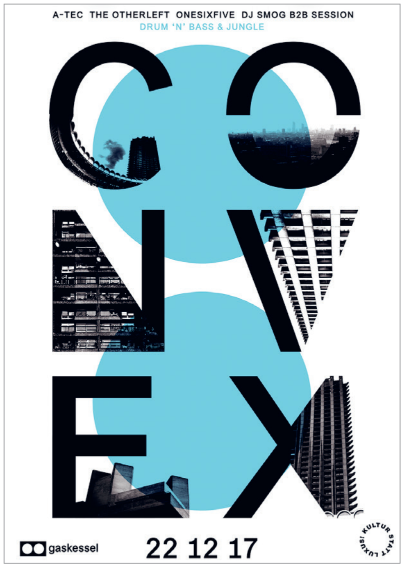
graphic design school

The principles and practice of graphic design


A
Z
UPPER AND LOWER CASE
THE INTERNATIONAL JOURNAL OF GRAPHIC DESIGN AND DIGITAL MEDIA
PUBLISHED BY INTERNATIONAL TYPEFACE CORPORATION
VOLUME 25, NUMBER 3, WINTER 1998
$5.00 US, $9.00 AUD, £4.95
U&lc


Leaf is Tree – school design w
https://erectarchitecture.co.uk/journal/leaf-tree-school-design-workshop/
y.
HOME
ABOUT US
TECTURE v
=

tree is
leaf and leaf
is tree – house is
city and city is house
– a tree is a tree but it
is also a huge leaf – a
leaf is a leaf, but it is
also a tiny tree – a city
is not a city unless it
is also a huge house –
a house is a house
only if it is also
a tiny city


A-TEC THE OTHERLEFT ONESIXFIVE DJ SMOG B2B SESSION
DRUM 'N' BASS & JUNGLE
CO
NV
EX
gaskessel
22 12 17
KULTUR STATT LUXUS!

Seventh edition

graphic design school

The principles and practice of graphic design

David Dabner   Sandra Stewart   Abbie Vickress

為了愛犬
Architectures
For
Dogs
2014.07.22 - 2014.08.11

selvedge
OF YOUR LIFE
MAKE OUR STORIES PART OF YOUR STORY

SUPER GARDEN
PEPPER
GARLIC
BASIL
PARSLEY
DILL
OREGANO
ROSEMARY
freeze-dried

WILEY

A QUARTO BOOK

Copyright © 2020 Quarto Publishing plc

Published by John Wiley & Sons Inc., Hoboken, New Jersey
Published simultaneously in Canada

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning, or otherwise, except as permitted under Section 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, (978) 750-8400, fax (978) 646-8600, or on the web at www.copyright.com. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, (201) 748-6011, fax (201) 748-6008, or online at www.wiley.com/go/permissions.

Limit of Liability/Disclaimer of Warranty: While the publisher and author have used their best efforts in preparing this book, they make no representations or warranties with the respect to the accuracy or completeness of the contents of this book and specifically disclaim any implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. No warranty may be created or extended by sales representatives or written sales materials. The advice and strategies contained herein may not be suitable for your situation. You should consult with a professional where appropriate. Neither the publisher nor the author shall be liable for damages arising herefrom.

For general information about our other products and services, please contact our Customer Care Department within the United States at (800) 762-2974, outside the United States at +1 (317) 572-3993 or fax +1 (317) 572-4002.

Wiley publishes in a variety of print and electronic formats and by print-on-demand. Some material included with standard print versions of this book may not be included in e-books or in print-on-demand. If this book refers to media such as a CD or DVD that is not included in the version you purchased, you may download this material at http://booksupport.wiley.com. For more information about Wiley products, visit www.wiley.com.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

ISBN: 978-1-119-64711-9, 978-1-119-64728-7 (ebk.), 978-1-119-64726-3 (ebk.)
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

QUAR.GRS7 / 333342

Conceived, edited, and designed by
Quarto Publishing plc.
The Old Brewery
6 Blundell Street
London N7 9BH

Senior editor: Claire Waite Brown
Art editor and designer: Jacqueline Palmer
Art director: Gemma Wilson
Picture research: Sarah Bell
Editorial assistant: Charlene Fernandes
Publisher: Samantha Warrington

Printed in Singapore

Contents

INTRODUCTION 6

PART ONE: PRINCIPLES 8

CHAPTER ONE: RESEARCH AND CONCEPTS

Basics of research 10
Linear reasoning/lateral thinking 14
Exploratory drawing 16
Visualizing ideas 18
Theories of image and text 20
Audiences, markets, and concepts 24
Scheduling, organizing, and finalizing 26
Chapter 1: Assignments 30

CHAPTER TWO: FUNDAMENTALS OF COMPOSITION

Basics of composition 32
Form and space 36
Symmetry/asymmetry 38
Basic principles of design layout 40
Styles of layout 44
Pace and contrast 46
Size and format 50
Identity and extended systems 52
Photography and illustration 56
Chapter 2: Assignments 60

CHAPTER THREE: FUNDAMENTALS OF TYPOGRAPHY

Typography and meaning 62
The anatomy of type 64
Understanding and selecting typefaces 66
Spacing 72
Readability and legibility 76
Typographic emphasis and hierarchy 78
Typographic rules/boxes and ornaments 82
Text as image 84
Chapter 3: Assignments 86

CHAPTER FOUR: FUNDAMENTALS OF COLOR

Color terminology 88
Color legibility, contrast, and harmony 92
Color associations 94
Color as information 96
Chapter 4: Assignments 98

PART TWO: **PRACTICE** 100

CHAPTER FIVE: TOOLS AND TECHNOLOGIES

Photography basics and sourcing images 102
InDesign 106
Photoshop 110
Illustrator 114
Animate and After Effects 118
Chapter 5: Assignments 120

CHAPTER SIX: PRINT PRODUCTION AND PRESENTATIONS

Preparing files for print 124
Creating a convincing presentation 128
Paper stocks and finishing 130
Printed color 132
Print media 134
Digital printing 138
Correcting color proofs and press checks 140
Chapter 6: Assignments 142

CHAPTER SEVEN: WEB DESIGN

Project development process overview 144
Project structures 150
Web tools 152
Initial consultations 156
Information architecture (IA) 158
Flowcharts and wireframes 160
Common elements of a web layout 164
Designing for the Web 166
Mobile application design 172
Working with content management systems 175
Search engine optimization (SEO) 178
Online portfolios 180
Chapter 7: Assignments 184

CHAPTER EIGHT: EXPERT PATHS 188

Glossary 198
Bibliography 202
Online resources 203
Index 204
Acknowledgments 208

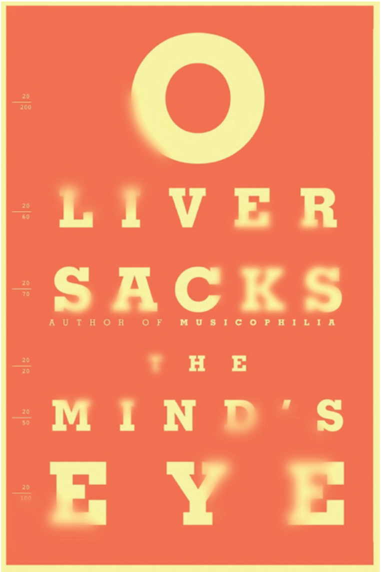
Introduction

This book is written with the intent of providing an introduction to the underlying principles of good graphic design, whether it is print-based, digital, or environmental. The content has been constructed to mirror, in part, how the subject is taught in college design programs, and the visuals, which are a mixture of student projects and professional design work, have been carefully chosen to illuminate specific teaching points. Many of the sections contain step-by-step exercises and assignments, offer practical advice, and point toward further resources.

The first part of the book, Principles, supports the idea that a thorough understanding of design principles should support the process of creating design works in response to specific briefs and problems, while allowing room for self-authored experimentation and visual freedom. As you are introduced to the basics of research, typography, color, photography, and composition, you will learn to become visually aware and able to articulate these design principles in your future works. You will also come to understand that these principles cross disciplines and are the vocabulary of visual literacy.

In the second part of the book, Practice, you will be introduced to invaluable practical skills that are important support systems to the skill sets of research and creative process that you will have read about in Part One. They do not replace them, but serve as methods and practices for developing critical problem-solving skills, and learning to manage complex projects. Designers need the whole range of skills to be truly successful, and expertise will come with continued study and practice in both areas. Unless you learn the

BAKE
RIE BA
BAKER


O
LIVER
SACKS
AUTHOR OF MUSICOPHILIA
THE
MIND'S
EYE

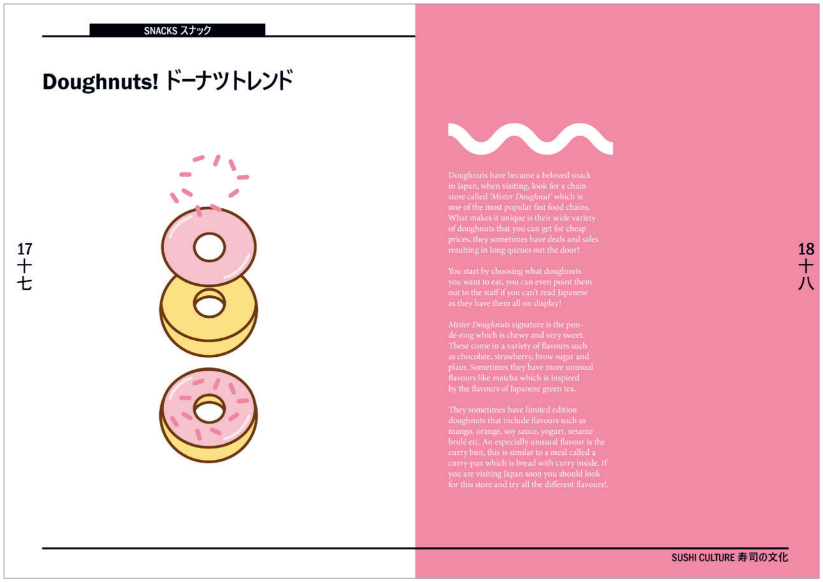
Orange
Kiwi
250 ml fresh juice
picked and pressed
by Hoogesteger
Orange
250 ml fresh juice
picked and pressed
by Hoogesteger

5:15
UNDER 10 MINS
MORNING
mindset
WITH ESOSA E.
QUICK HITTERS

practical skills and technology of design production, including how to manage images, create digital files for specific media, and design, build, and structure a website, you will be unable to bring your brilliant concepts to life.

None of these visual skills can be viewed in isolation from the context in which design happens and its larger role in society and the world. Designers are visual communicators, often giving visual voice to new and provocative ideas. They create images that can inform, persuade, and entertain millions of people. This comes with great responsibility, and it is necessary to be aware of the role of design in shaping the world we live in, and changes in the discipline that transcend trends or the latest software. While any kind of comprehensive account of these topics stands outside the scope of this book, becoming visually literate and technically skilled should go hand in hand with an understanding of such issues as global audiences, communication theories, systems theory, sustainable issues in design, and the changing role of technology.

Finally, design education is a lifelong experience that can bring great personal satisfaction and reward. Technologies, styles, and demands change rapidly in this industry and, as a result, graphic design is a subject to be taken on with independence and an expectation of lifelong learning and commitment. With this book as a gateway, a new way of seeing the world may lead you to a career path that will be a constant source of surprise and delight.


SNACKS スナック

Doughnuts! ドーナツトレンド

17 十七

Doughnuts have became a beloved snack in Japan, when visiting, look for a chain store called *'Mister Doughnut'* which is one of the most popular fast food chains. What makes it unique is their wide variety of doughnuts that you can get for cheap prices, they sometimes have deals and sales resulting in long queues out the door!

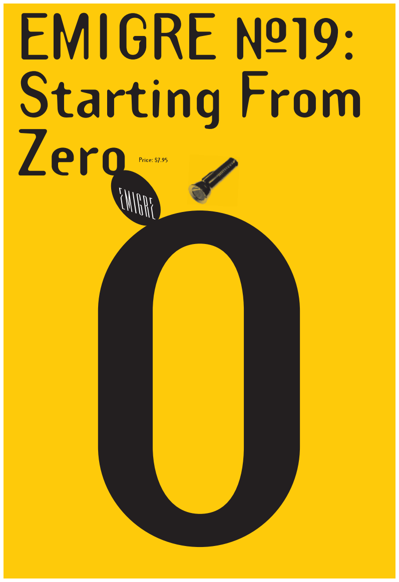
You start by choosing what doughnuts you want to eat, you can even point them out to the staff if you can't read Japanese as they have them all on display!

Mister Doughnuts signature is the pon-de-ring which is chewy and very sweet. These come in a variety of flavours such as chocolate, strawberry, brow sugar and plain. Sometimes they have more unusual flavours like matcha which is inspired by the flavours of Japanese green tea.

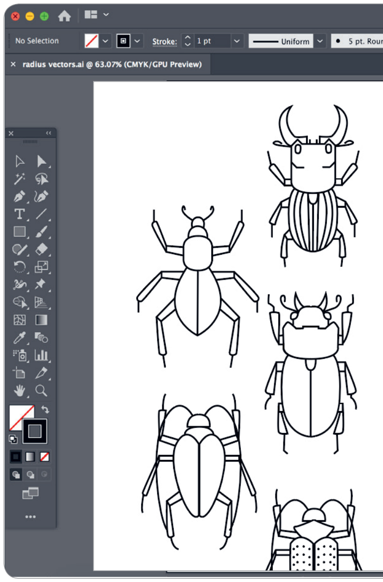
They sometimes have limited edition doughnuts that include flavours such as mango, orange, soy sauce, yogurt, sesame brulé etc. An especially unusual flavour is the curry bun, this is similar to a meal called a curry-pan which is bread with curry inside. If you are visiting Japan soon you should look for this store and try all the different flavours!.

18 十八

SUSHI CULTURE 寿司の文化


EMIGRE №19:
Starting From
Zero

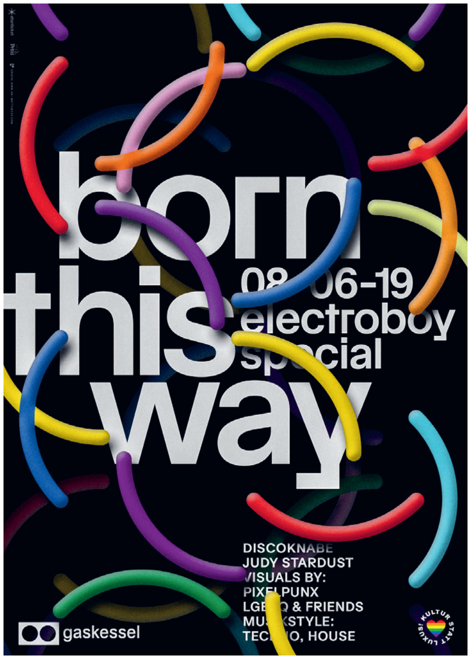
Price: $7.95

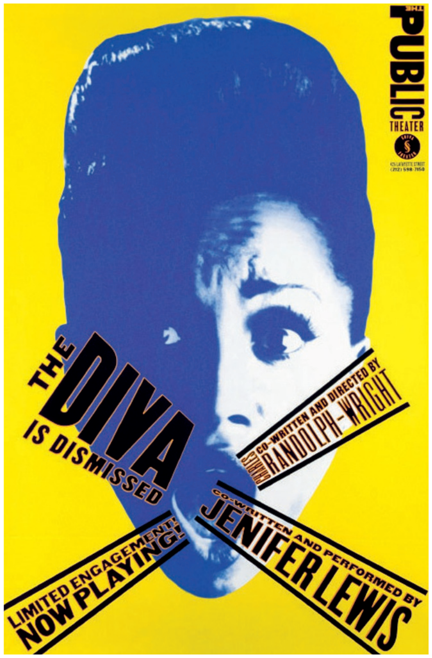


Principles

The first part of this book is concerned with design principles, the building blocks that connect the basics of all good design. Every discipline has its own set of rules, methods, technical requirements, and specialized technologies. Each one is rooted in the interactions of its history, theory, and practice, but unlike learning law or biology, the language of design is visual. It involves the need for a highly developed awareness of visual relationships, proportion, the perceptions of visual principles, and of the modern world and its complex events and practices. A good designer can filter this information and create relevant, engaging, visually eloquent design that responds to multiple problems, needs, and contexts. While a design student needs to develop the research, concept-development, compositional, and organizational skills associated with design, he or she also needs to be engaged with the world, and interested, aware, and sensitive to the changing contexts in which design plays a part.

Chapter 1 introduces the primary and secondary research skills needed by designers, followed by an introduction to theories of image, the importance of audience, and of organizing your work and time. In Chapter 2, the idea of form is spotlighted. Form involves composition of the fundamentals of design (text, image, proportion, space, color, scale) and requires an understanding of the visual dynamics created by combining them with intent. Understanding form comes from the ability to see intrinsic and subtle qualities in the various design elements, and the observation of, and sensitivity to, the changing relationships between them. Chapter 3 introduces

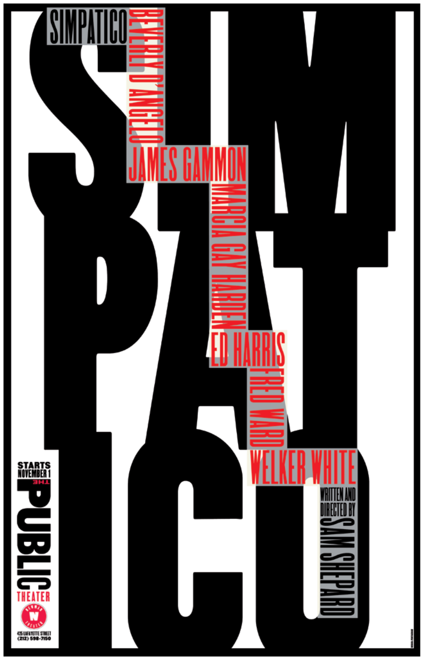

born
this
way
08 06-19
electroboy
special
DISCOKNABE
JUDY STARDUST
VISUALS BY:
PIXELPUNX
LGB Q & FRIENDS
MU KSTYLE:
TEC O, HOUSE
gaskessel
KULTUR STATT LUXUS!

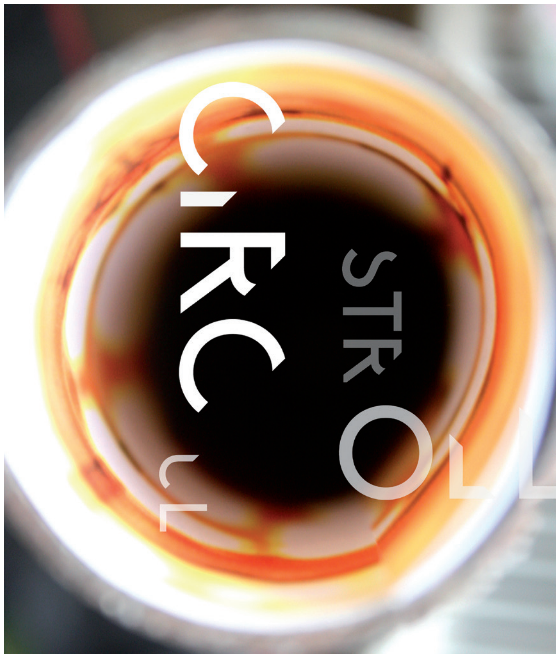

THE PUBLIC THEATER
THE DIVA IS DISMISSED
CO-WRITTEN AND DIRECTED BY
RANDOLPH-WRIGHT
CO-WRITTEN AND PERFORMED BY
JENIFER LEWIS
LIMITED ENGAGEMENT!
NOW PLAYING!

東横線
Tōyoko Line
东横线 도요코선
銀座線
Ginza Line
银座线 긴자선

PART 1

typography, a core skill for all designers that is layered with complexity, and cannot be understated for its beauty, history, versatility, and ability to influence an audience. Developing a deep understanding of typography is of critical importance. Chapter 4 introduces color as one of the primary tools in the language of design, including theory, terminology, associations, issues of legibility, and emotional response. Managing color and understanding its ability to communicate are skills that also evolve with greater understanding of its influences. Whatever design discipline you ultimately pursue, from editorial art direction to web and motion graphics, these basic principles will give you a solid foundation and serve as the groundwork for further exploration and understanding of design and the role of the designer.


SIMPATICO
SIMPATICO
BEVERLY D'ANGELO
JAMES GAMMON
MARCIA GAY HARDEN
ED HARRIS
FRED WARD
WELKER WHITE
WRITTEN AND DIRECTED BY SAM SHEPARD
STARTS NOVEMBER 1
THE PUBLIC THEATER
425 LAFAYETTE STREET
(212) 598-7150


CIRCUL
STROLL

The first pseudoisochromatic tests were those designed by Oguchi Chuta in 1911, but he used them to test soldiers in the Imperial Japanese Army and never published them for wider use. The most famous pseudoisochromatic tests were designed by Ishihara Shinobu, Professor of Ophthalmology at the Imperial University of Tokyo between 1922-1941. Ishihara produced three manuscript versions, handpainted by himself in watercolor in the Japanese characters of katakana and hiragana and a third version in Arabic numerals.

1

Research and Concepts

The first step toward becoming interesting is to be interested. The best creatives of all kinds—painters, designers, writers, sculptors, musicians, playwrights—make the world their inspiration, and draw ideas and content from both experience and research. They make it a priority to stay aware of what is happening, not only within the world of design, but in the world in general, and this level of engagement enriches their work.

> “What you see and hear depends a good deal on where you are standing; it also depends on what kind of a person you are”
>
> *C. S. Lewis*

Observe and collect
Research should be specific to each project, but the process of observation and recording your impressions should be ongoing, and should become a part of your daily routine. When something catches your eye, document it; capture an image and put it into your notebook/sketchbook/device for reference later. Everything you come in contact with can inform your work, so make sure to have a great collection of objects and impressions for inspiration.

PART 1	PRINCIPLES
CHAPTER 1	RESEARCH AND CONCEPTS
MODULE 1	**BASICS OF RESEARCH**

Modern media demands an increasing amount of visual information to illustrate its content in print, packaging, and motion graphics, in the built environment or online. Graphic designers are the conduits for all types of communications from multiple sources to specific audiences, and to be successful they must be well-informed, accomplished researchers with inquisitive natures.

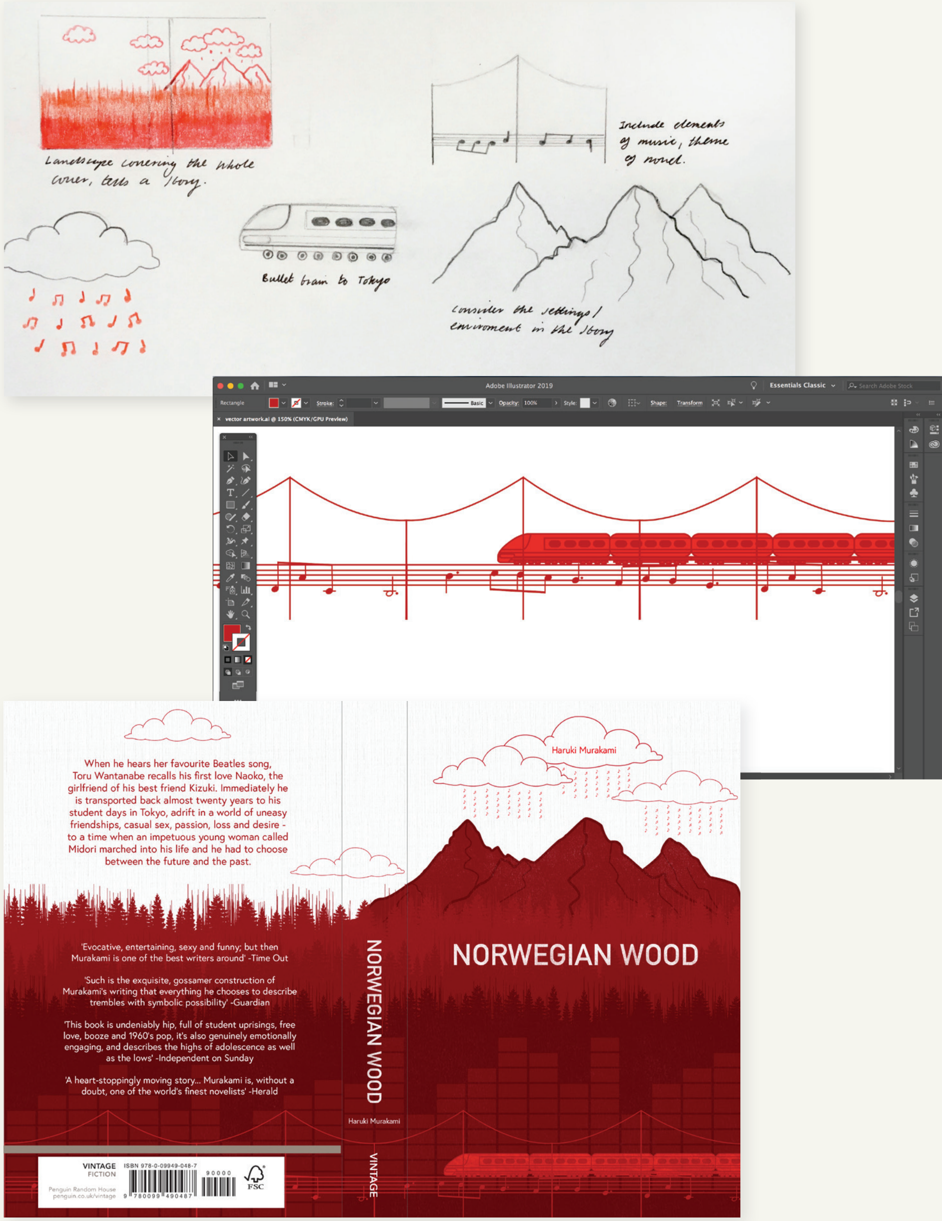
Broaden your outlook

Designers who seek information from the greatest range of references are those who successfully communicate with people of all ages, professions, and lifestyles, and who properly contextualize their design work.

- Read about events from multiple sources. Compare stories, noting how information about the same events changes, how the language is used to target various audiences, and what type of imagery is used to support the text. Never rely solely on editable web postings or crowd-sourced information for accuracy if you are researching facts.
- You can never read enough books, but don’t limit yourself to the kind you usually read. Reading only

about graphic design can be particularly dangerous: although extremely useful for information and guidance, this may turn you into an armchair expert; you want to be an original practitioner. Expand your reading to include novels and plays, and books on sculpture, architecture, art history, cooking, sports, archeology, travel, and math—it really doesn't matter, as long as they provide you with a broad spectrum of knowledge.

- Be open to new experiences. Visit galleries, clubs, retail environments, archives, and museums you've never been to, listen to music you've not heard before, and eat food you've never tried before.
  Travel whenever you can, and learn about global issues and cultural treasures.
- Share ideas and listen to people. Create surveys, facilitate interviews, and have conversations with real people. Whatever language they use, there is always a way to establish communication, if you try. Pay attention to what inspires them, and learn from others while also sharing your insights.
- Online research can be quick and provide extensive results, but also an un-unique solution. Try other forms of research to avoid duplicating the obvious ideas.


Landscape covering the whole cover, tells a story.
Include elements of music, theme of novel.
Bullet train to Tokyo
Consider the settings/ environment in the story
Adobe Illustrator 2019
Essentials Classic
Rectangle
Stroke:
Basic
Opacity: 100%
Style:
Shape:
Transform
vector artwork.ai @ 150% (CMYK/GPU Preview)
Haruki Murakami
NORWEGIAN WOOD
NORWEGIAN WOOD
Haruki Murakami
VINTAGE
VINTAGE
FICTION
ISBN 978-0-09949-048-7

When he hears her favourite Beatles song, Toru Wantanabe recalls his first love Naoko, the girlfriend of his best friend Kizuki. Immediately he is transported back almost twenty years to his student days in Tokyo, adrift in a world of uneasy friendships, casual sex, passion, loss and desire - to a time when an impetuous young woman called Midori marched into his life and he had to choose between the future and the past.

'Evocative, entertaining, sexy and funny; but then Murakami is one of the best writers around' -Time Out

'Such is the exquisite, gossamer construction of Murakami's writing that everything he chooses to describe trembles with symbolic possibility' -Guardian

'This book is undeniably hip, full of student uprisings, free love, booze and 1960's pop, it's also genuinely emotionally engaging, and describes the highs of adolescence as well as the lows' -Independent on Sunday

'A heart-stoppingly moving story... Murakami is, without a doubt, one of the world's finest novelists' -Herald

Communicating content The *Norwegian Wood* book cover requires the designer to understand book design and legibility, but also the content of the story itself. By reading the novel you are actively researching the plot, characters, and atmosphere the author is conveying through storytelling, all of which provide valuable insights when designing a book cover.

Research techniques

Primary sources/ factual research

- Previous knowledge/opinion/memory
- Observation
- Conversation
- Analysis
- Role-play
- Interviews: in person or by email, online chat, or phone
- Questionnaires
- Focus groups
- Commissioned video/written diaries (first hand)
- Ethnographic research ("deep hanging out")

Secondary sources/factual research

- Museums, archives, collections
- Newspapers, magazines, journal articles
- Published interviews
- Films, TV broadcasts, theater
- Transcripts/recordings of film, TV, radio
- Books
- Music
- Internet: blogs, websites, forums, magazines
- Surveys
- Statistics
- Organizations, agencies, gatekeepers
- Lectures, public debates, conferences

Primary sources/ visual research

- Photography
- Drawing/sketching
- Media experimentation: 2D and 3D
- Rubbings/casts
- Typographic experimentation
- Compositional experimentation
- Image manipulation
- Photocopying
- Video recording
- Audio recording
- Writing

Secondary sources/ visual research

- Exhibitions
- Images/photographs from magazines, books, leaflets, Internet, billboards
- Work by other designers/artists
- Printed maps/diagrams
- Ephemera (e.g. tickets, receipts, packaging)
- Found or bought photographs, postcards, posters, drawings
- Imagery taken from films, video, performances
- Architecture

Other general work practices/approaches

- Put your own point of view into the subject
- Work in groups and respond to feedback from others
- Develop ideas by generating a number of visuals in response to one idea
- Explore the full capacity of your visual language

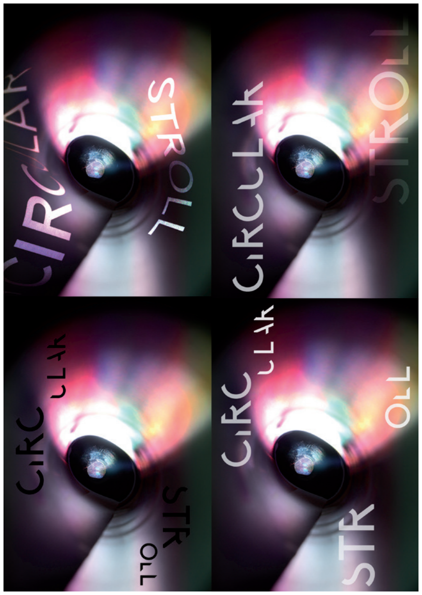
Record it all

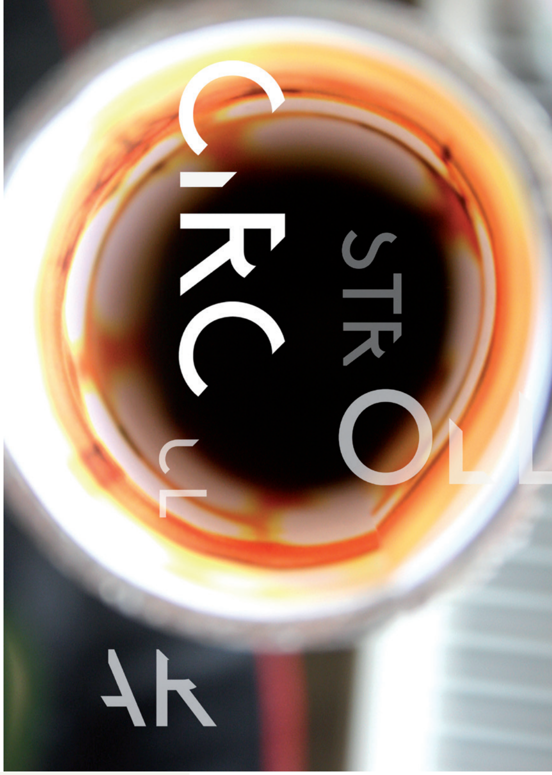
Constant, direct observation is one of the most important tools that a designer can use. Learning to look at anything as a designer requires attention to minute detail and the inclusion of all things that surround the object of focus. Consider your way of seeing as a kind of inner zoom lens that draws you in and away from a point of observation. As you learn to see the world with a designer's eye, ordinary things can become amazing sources of inspiration. It may be as simple as a pattern of lace juxtaposed against flat, wide stripes, or as unexpected as the geometry revealed by light and shadow in an architectural setting. Textures, patterns, colors, and visual relationships will begin to have a profound effect on the way you think about your design process.

With this in mind, every practicing designer should carry some form of recording device, such as a sketchbook, camera, or smartphone. Give yourself time for observation and research, taking this stage seriously as an integral part of your work. Designers, artists, writers, and illustrators often keep scrapbooks/sketchbooks/collections of material that interest them. These pieces of inspiration need not necessarily have a clear purpose when they are collected, but the material can become an archive of ideas and inspiration that you can draw on at a later date.

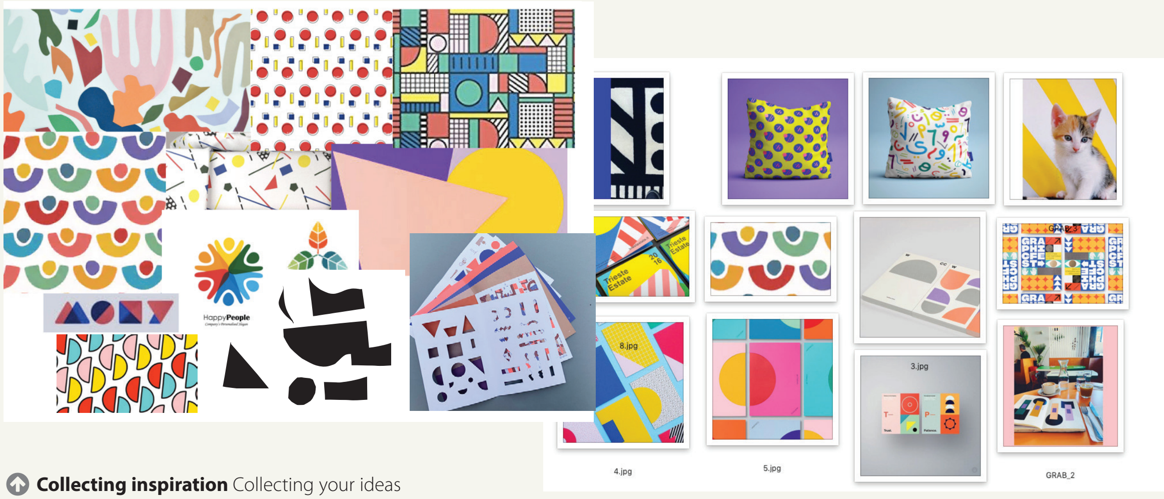
If something commands your attention, sketch it, write about it, photograph it, upload it, or file it away immediately. Collect ideas and build upon your initial thoughts by writing, drawing, or sketching. Not only will your drawing and research skills improve if you do this consistently, but over time you'll also have a "catalog of inspiration" that can be drawn on at any point in your career and which will become especially useful when you are short of ideas. This kind of practiced research will help you to begin defining your own outlook, and to develop a distinctive visual voice.

Observing and recording your surroundings can also be a great way to overcome a creative block. The philosopher Guy Debord coined the term "dérive," an unplanned journey through a landscape in which the walker disregards everyday perceptions, allowing them to be drawn into new sights, unfamiliar encounters, and a new awareness of their surroundings. If you find yourself staring blankly at your work, go into the real world to observe things you might not have noticed before. How can these new interpretations inform your work?

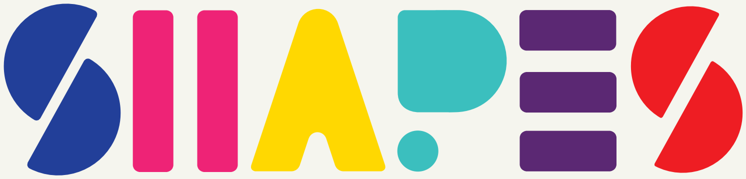




Multiply the possibilities Collect multiple images of every subject, and vary your techniques as you photograph. Each of these pictures captures a slightly different sensibility in light, color, shadow, and composition. When they are combined with deconstructed typography that echoes the abstract forms revealed in the photos, the results are striking.



Collecting inspiration Collecting your ideas and inspiration into a single moodboard or research board can help you make sense of your brief and assist with design decisions. Build boards by hand or digitally on a computer. Shapes, a preschool logo, is inspired by the bright colors and forms collected and pasted into the moodboards above.



GLOSSARY

Contextualization: The process of placing something within the interrelated systems of meaning that make up the world.

Primary research: Gathering material that does not preexist, such as photographing, drawing, making prototypes, interviewing people.

Secondary research: Gathering material that already exists, such as design work, color samples, written texts, newspaper/magazine articles, archive images (e.g. historical samples of advertising).

PART 1 | PRINCIPLES
CHAPTER 1 | RESEARCH AND CONCEPTS

MODULE 2 | LINEAR REASONING/LATERAL THINKING

In the initial stages of concept development, the two main ways to approach a design brief are to use linear reasoning and lateral thinking. These are virtually opposites—the first focused and methodical, the second diffuse and expansive—but both are equally useful as research and development tools.

Linear reasoning implies a strategic thought process, using step-by-step logic, and follows a specific trajectory. This kind of reasoning frequently involves a pre-determined idea or concept that is then worked toward in stages. Generally, this will involve splitting the idea up into manageable components, considering color, type, composition, and scale, and working each through to finalize the form to fit the concept.

Lateral thinking involves indirect exploration, generating ideas less readily available by linear reasoning (or hidden by the linear process, so that less obvious associations aren't readily seen or generated). The emphasis is on indirect, creative forms of research. Edward de Bono coined the term in 1967.

Brainstorming, or sketching in a non-linear diagrammatic way, approaches problems by exploring each component in as much depth and breadth as possible, finding connections and associations that work to strengthen the concept. This process aims to push achievable boundaries. Think of it as if it were a walk through a city. You may set out knowing exactly where you are going, focused on the end goal: reaching your destination. Alternatively, you could just stroll along the streets without any predetermined destination in mind. Each will provide very different experiences; in the non-predetermined form, you may notice things along the way that are not obvious if your sights are set only on reaching your destination.

You might consider beginning with a lateral thinking session—where you brainstorm as many ideas as possible—in order to generate your initial ideas, then move to a more linear process at a later stage. The two are not necessarily mutually exclusive, but often complementary ways of researching a design problem.

GLOSSARY

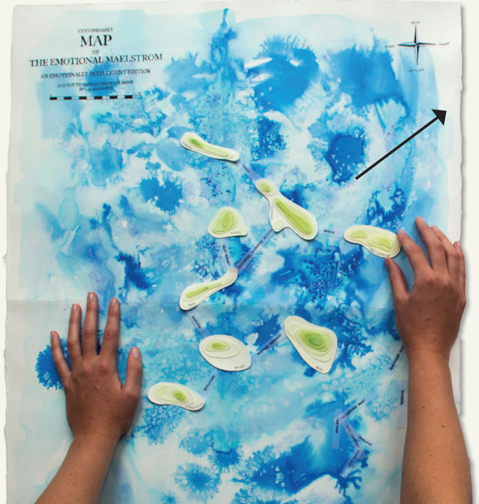
Lateral thinking: A form of research where the emphasis is on indirect, creative forms of inquiry and thinking.

Linear reasoning: A form of thinking that implies strategic thought process, one in which step-by-step logic is employed.

SEE ALSO: BASICS OF RESEARCH, P10

Lateral or linear?
Whether your process unfolds in an orderly sequence or is a random scatter of thoughts, the practice of discovery and the sequential development of an idea are exciting parts of design. Relax, examine your recorded research, and let the ideas flow. The more experience you have using these methods, the faster you will generate ideas.

improved version of map
notes on feedback
research summary



Example—getting started

Your first brainstorming sessions may be intimidating, so it will help initially if you work with familiar tools and also combine linear and lateral thinking. Until you are able to think in pictures, begin with words. Make a list of absolutely everything that comes to mind when you consider your brief. Then, make a secondary list of things associated with each item on your first list.

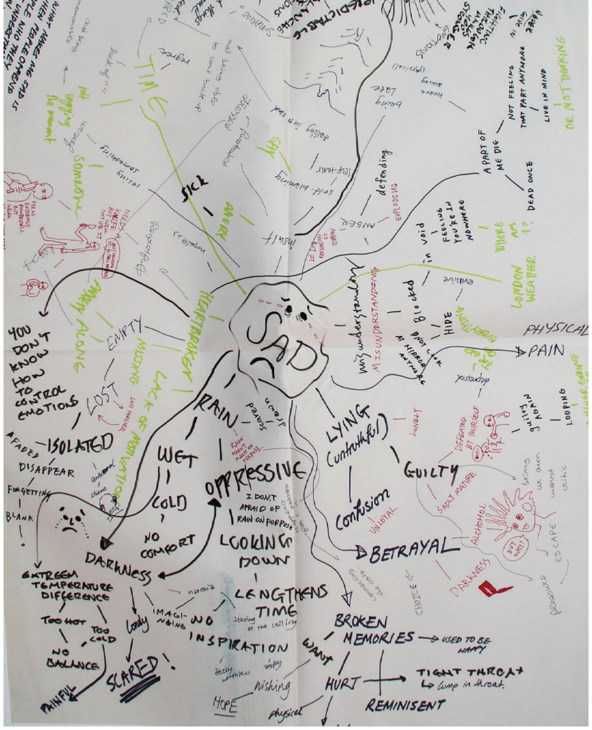
Brief

Draw and design the first letter of your name. It should reflect your characteristics, your personal identity, and any hobbies or interests you have. It should be creative, but must also be legible.

Consider what your letter might be used for (e.g. signage, a logo or brand identity, some packaging, a book cover, or an illustration) and who it might be used/viewed by.

1 Once you have determined the usage of the letter and the type of audience you would like to reach, you can begin your descriptive list of ideas, drilling down to as many levels as you need to bring images to mind. Discard nothing at this stage; just allow your mind to make associations freely. There's no such thing as a bad idea in the brainstorming process; there are only ideas that communicate more successfully than others.

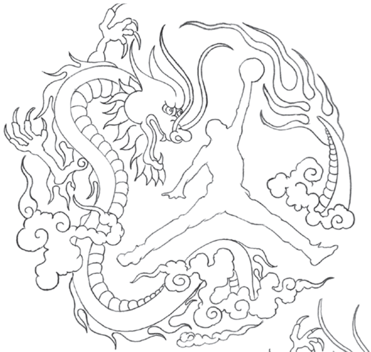
2 When your first and secondary lists are lengthy enough to allow you to visualize individual items, you can combine two or more thoughts from the different lists into one image. Now you are ready to begin sketching. One idea will always lead to another, so never settle for just one, and save all your ideas as you work through the process. You may find the seed of something brilliant hidden in an idea you nearly discarded. Keep all your sketches to refer back to for future projects.

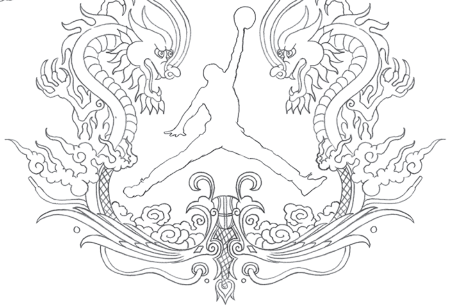

SAD
SICK
TIME
OPPRESSIVE
ISOLATED
LOST
EMPTY
ALONE
RAIN
WET
COLD
NO COMFORT
DARKNESS
LOOKING DOWN
LENGTHENS TIME
INSPIRATION
SCARED
BROKEN MEMORIES
HURT
REMINISENT
TIGHT THROAT
BETRAYAL
GUILTY
LYING
Confusion
PAIN
PHYSICAL
YOU DON'T KNOW HOW TO CONTROL EMOTIONS
HOPE

Brainstorming This is a way to document thoughts and ideas you already have about a project, ideas that form after some research, and also ideas that develop after client feedback. Ideation, or coming up with ideas, is arguably the most difficult and rewarding part of the creative process. Give yourself enough time to create something meaningful and to reflect on your ideas. Remember, usually the first few ideas you note down will have been done before.

SEE ALSO: VISUALIZING IDEAS, P18

MADE TO PERSUADE
I'M SAVING
TURTLES
PRODUCT RESEARCH
CALM
WHO SHOULD I BE WITH?
TAG RESEARCH
TAG DEVEL
MATERIAL CHOICES
IDIOT PROOF
BAGS
I'M SAVING THE TURTLES
5P BAG CHARGE.
IF YOU VOW TO NEVER TAKE ANOTHER PLASTIC BAG.
PAY 5P ONCE. USE IT FOREVER.
FEEL FREE TO CONTRIBUTE MORE... YOU KNOW...
THEY COST MORE THAN 5P TO MAKE.





PART 1 | PRINCIPLES
CHAPTER 1 | RESEARCH AND CONCEPTS
MODULE 3 | EXPLORATORY DRAWING

EXPLORATORY DRAWING

Exploratory drawing is a means of translating the outside world and of giving concrete form to abstract ideas. Sketching and drawing engage you in a constant process of observation, and help you understand the world around you. Whereas computer technology is another tool for the development of ideas, you should treat drawing as the basis of expression that underpins your design decisions.

Representational and non-representational

Representational, or observational, drawing is a form of documentation considered to be a core method for investigating the visual world. By studying your subject or surroundings in depth, from multiple perspectives, you begin to train your eye to see isolated elements. With practice, you will quickly be able to highlight the subtleties of a single subject in immense detail. Studies of still life and life drawing are great ways to practice and develop representational drawing.

Students often draw things the way they think they should look, rather than the way they actually do look. Educate yourself on what you see. Work quickly (impulsively) and slowly (with consideration), with your eyes continually moving between the paper and the subject and back again. Look at forms, shapes, colors, tones, depth, connectivity (how something exists in space and its relationship to other things around it), texture, and density, and how they all relate to one another. Transcribing a 3D subject to a 2D surface is difficult, much more so than drawing from a photograph, but results in drawings with depth and authenticity. Practice is key, and drawing should be a lifelong activity.

Non-representational drawing frees you from the need to represent what is seen and the results, gestural abstractions, can generate valuable expressive drawn responses. Consider this approach an exploration to find and embody an idea, as opposed to one that reaches an outcome. To escape preconceived ideas, let the drawing lead the way. Make crude marks and keep an open mind about what the marks mean. Look at the work as a whole and try not to be lured into details.

Even when you are documenting what you see, all exploratory drawing takes the form of translation, not replication. For example, a photograph represents the exact composition of the scene, whereas through drawing you can intentionally or subconsciously draw the focus to particular parts of your viewpoint. A great example of this is reportage illustration, which is a type of visual journalism that relies on the illustrator being the translator of the scene in front of them. Drawing is both a thinking and physical process, allowing the illustrator to be selective and sympathetic to where the attention should be drawn and what will enhance the narrative of the image they have created.

Understanding form

Whether creating representational or non-representational drawings, it is important to understand some of the fundamentals. The main one is form. An object consists of its own solid form, defined by the light and shadow that illuminate and surround it, as opposed to a solid line framing it. Creating black-and-white studies (representational drawing) is the best way to begin to understand form. As you render your study from real life, you are translating the language of color into a tonal grayscale,

Thinking in pictures
Tight-contour line drawings are used to explore the relationships between new and supplied elements in these studies for Nike packaging. Each study is carefully composed to fit within a particular space on the package before the color is assigned.

GLOSSARY

Abstraction: An esthetic concept describing something that is drawn from the real, but which has been "distilled" to its barest minimum form, color, or tone, often removed from its original context.

Documentation: The recording in written, visual, or aural form of what is of interest.

Representation: Something that looks like, resembles, or stands for something else. In drawing, this is also known as figurative, since it deliberately attempts to mimic the thing drawn.

substituting monochromatic values for the spectrum in the existing object. Be as direct and spontaneous as possible. For immediacy, do several studies in a short space of time. Use materials to describe form and mass, while using an outline only as a guide to subsequent layers. Concentrate not on an end product, but on the process of a rich description of forms. Figurative drawing from observation can produce beautiful studies, but it is also the tool that will sharpen your sketching abilities and eventually help you to generate ideas as you work through a design problem.

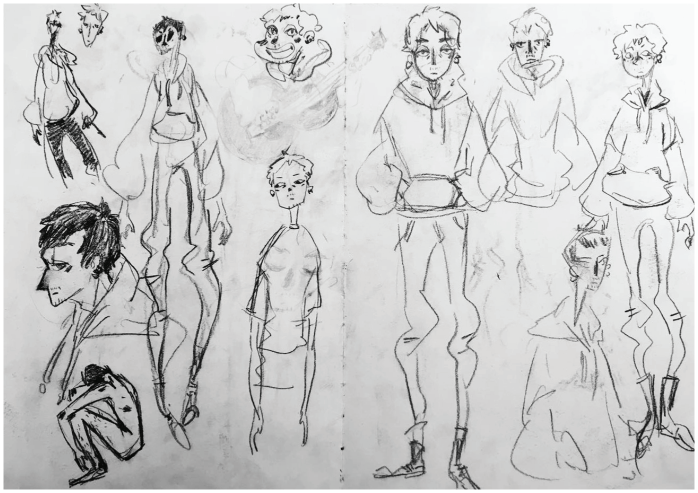
As you draw, you will notice that what you choose to include and what you choose to exclude are equally important. As an object exists in space, so your drawing lives within the finite boundary of a page, and the relationship of the study to the page is part of the image.

Understanding tools

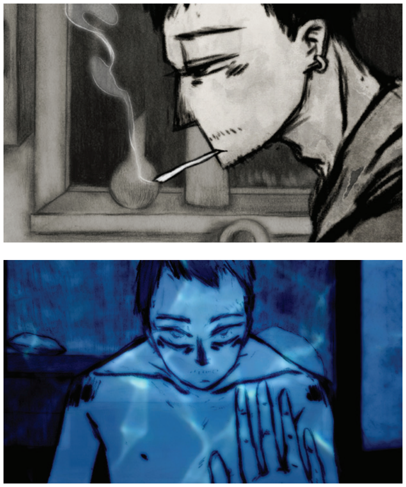
Experiment with a variety of media and methods to determine and influence your created image. Whether charcoal or pencil, crayon or brush, each tool you use requires some understanding of its specific effects and mark-making qualities. For example, pencils allow tonal control, detailed modeling, and a strong line, whereas ink and brush will generate an entirely different, painterly mark. Try not to limit yourself to conventional media; other implements, such as a toothbrush for a spatter effect, a piece of string, or even a sewing machine, can create interesting images. Consider how you might manipulate the drawing tools you have at your disposal. Attach a pencil to a long stick or perhaps paintbrushes to each of your fingers and thumbs.

The aim is not merely to interpret objects pictorially (i.e. representing them as they look), but to interpret the image in your own way. Mark making, unconventional approaches to drawing, and drawing the same subject with multiple materials are all great ways to investigate a subject and experiment with your techniques and approach to drawing and design.

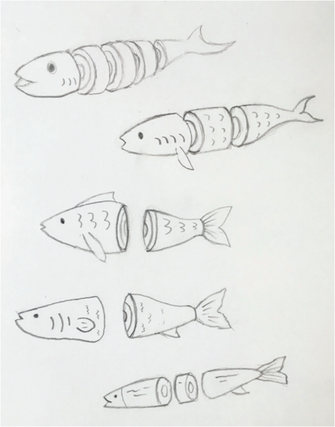
When you complete a study, consider recreating the same subject with different media, eliminating all but the most necessary of descriptive marks. A gradual abstraction of the figurative image will help you to discover more about structure, form, and spatial relationships as you work.

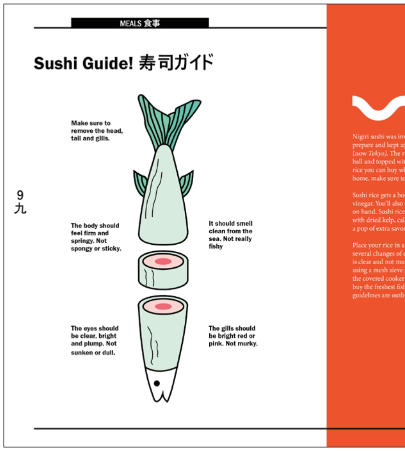


Exploratory sketches At the beginning of this animation project a series of exploratory sketches is created to aid design thinking and to invent ways to develop the storyboard.



Sketch development Development of these sketches and the introduction of color allow the designer to create a sense of atmosphere. Consider ways in which color, illustrative style, framing, and facial expressions affect the final animation.





MEALS 食事

Sushi Guide! 寿司ガイド

Make sure to remove the head, tail and gills.

9
九

The body should feel firm and springy. Not spongy or sticky.

It should smell clean from the sea. Not really fishy

The eyes should be clear, bright and plump. Not sunken or dull.

The gills should be bright red or pink. Not murky.

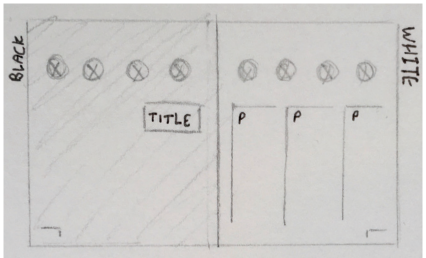
Sketching roughs
Multiple studies of the sliced fish are created as roughs for this sushi guide. Different angles and elements are explored and analyzed before settling on the most successful composition for the final publication. Here, the illustration is colored and created to a higher standard for production.

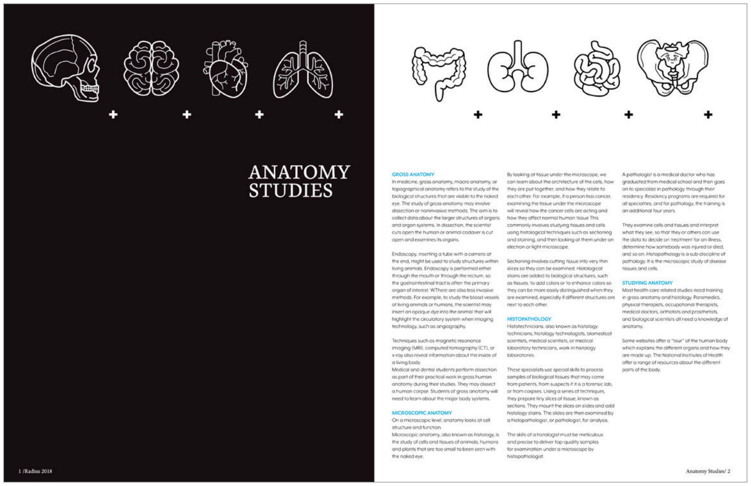
PART 1 | PRINCIPLES

CHAPTER 1 | RESEARCH AND CONCEPTS

MODULE 4 | VISUALIZING IDEAS

All designers need to develop the skill of putting ideas down on paper. This involves preparing rough visuals/design sketches—thumbnails, scamps, or roughs. Students often tend to bypass this process and set about producing ideas directly on screen. This practice can inhibit the development of ideas, because you may restrict yourself to only those images you are capable of producing with the available technology. It's better to think freely at first, and to produce as many ideas as you can sketch.




ANATOMY STUDIES

1 /Radius 2018

GROSS ANATOMY

In medicine, gross anatomy, macro anatomy, or topographical anatomy refers to the study of the biological structures that are visible to the naked eye. The study of gross anatomy may involve dissection or noninvasive methods. The aim is to collect data about the larger structures of organs and organ systems. In dissection, the scientist cuts open the human or animal cadaver is cut open and examines its organs.

Endoscopy, inserting a tube with a camera at the end, might be used to study structures within living animals. Endoscopy is performed either through the mouth or through the rectum, so the gastrointestinal tract is often the primary organ of interest. WThere are also less invasive methods. For example, to study the blood vessels of living animals or humans, the scientist may insert an opaque dye into the animal that will highlight the circulatory system when imaging technology, such as angiography.

Techniques such as magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), computed tomography (CT), or x-ray also reveal information about the inside of a living body.
Medical and dental students perform dissection as part of their practical work in gross human anatomy during their studies. They may dissect a human corpse. Students of gross anatomy will need to learn about the major body systems.

MICROSCOPIC ANATOMY

On a microscopic level, anatomy looks at cell structure and function.
Microscopic anatomy, also known as histology, is the study of cells and tissues of animals, humans and plants that are too small to been seen with the naked eye.

By looking at tissue under the microscope, we can learn about the architecture of the cells, how they are put together, and how they relate to each other. For example, if a person has cancer, examining the tissue under the microscope will reveal how the cancer cells are acting and how they affect normal human tissue This commonly involves studying tissues and cells using histological techniques such as sectioning and staining, and then looking at them under an electron or light microscope.

Sectioning involves cutting tissue into very thin slices so they can be examined. Histological stains are added to biological structures, such as tissues, to add colors or to enhance colors so they can be more easily distinguished when they are examined, especially if different structures are next to each other.

HISTOPATHOLOGY

Histotechnicians, also known as histology technicians, histology technologists, biomedical scientists, medical scientists, or medical laboratory technicians, work in histology laboratories.

These specialists use special skills to process samples of biological tissues that may come from patients, from suspects if it is a forensic lab, or from corpses. Using a series of techniques, they prepare tiny slices of tissue, known as sections. They mount the slices on slides and add histology stains. The slides are then examined by a histopathologist, or pathologist, for analysis.

The skills of a histologist must be meticulous and precise to deliver top-quality samples for examination under a microscope by histopathologist.

A pathologist is a medical doctor who has graduated from medical school and then goes on to specialize in pathology through their residency. Residency programs are required for all specialties, and for pathology, the training is an additional four years.

They examine cells and tissues and interpret what they see, so that they or others can use the data to decide on treatment for an illness, determine how somebody was injured or died, and so on. Histopathology is a sub-discipline of pathology. It is the microscopic study of disease tissues and cells.

STUDYING ANATOMY

Most health-care related studies need training in gross anatomy and histology. Paramedics, physical therapists, occupational therapists, medical doctors, orthotists and prosthetists, and biological scientists all need a knowledge of anatomy.

Some websites offer a "tour" of the human body which explains the different organs and how they are made up. The National Institutes of Health offer a range of resources about the different parts of the body.

Anatomy Studies/ 2

Initial ideas are generated more quickly and prolifically if you do a bit of brainstorming, recording your thoughts rapidly using various diagrammatic methods or other ways to structure information.

Start with your word lists, and as you begin to think in pictures, move on to sketching directly. In this process, coordination between brain, eye, and hand can be amazingly fast, and by working quickly you can generate many diverse (and sometimes unexpected) ideas, concepts, and associations. Your mind starts flowing and loosening up, and becomes open to the diverse aspects of the project, swiftly moving the thought process forward. Literal and non-literal, lateral and non-lateral forms of thinking are used to maximum effect in these early sketches.

Roughs and thumbnails

There is no predetermined size for rough drawings. Thumbnails are, as the term suggests, small. Designers usually begin with thumbnails, a series of rapidly drawn, stamp-sized compositions that block out the general structure and content of a design. Thumbnails should be spontaneous and prolific; they are the recorded thought process of developing ideas and should move as rapidly as you can think. Obviously, this can leave no time for the inclusion of any detail or refinement. These will be considered in the final stages of design development. Thumbnails that have the most interesting potential are selected and a rough, larger, loose drawing, with more detail but as yet still unfinished, is created that further develops the composition and placement on the page.

Drawing by hand

Although roughs require a certain degree of drawing skill, these will be learned easily for this kind of work, where the generation of ideas is the focus, not drawing as an end in itself. This is unlike observational drawing, or drawing as documentation, which needs to be precise. Hand-drawn ideas can be vague and leave a lot to the imagination, which can be a good thing. Excluding detail from the sketch will allow you to leave your options open for more deliberate decisions at a later point in concept development. Remember, the "big idea" is the most important part of the process at this stage.

Once you have a number of ideas sketched out, you can step back and make judgments regarding their value, and potential for development, without having

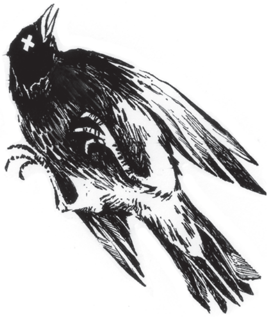
Visualize and organize

Your first sketches can be loose and expressive. Try variations of layouts and draft several thumbnails before you begin to finalize the idea.

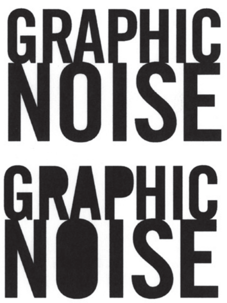
Once you have selected your final idea—based on a solid rationale—mock it up in more detail, paying particular attention to the type and the amount and pace of information, as well as to the contrast and negative space, to support your hierarchy.

SEE ALSO: LINEAR REASONING/LATERAL THINKING, P14

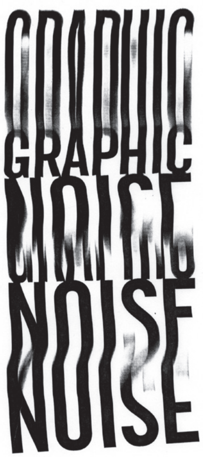
Putting it all together Looking spontaneous takes time. Finished artwork may be the result of experiments in various media and techniques, and it may be the sum of many successful combinations. Once you have the concept and the general proportions in mind, consider the best way to execute the style you want to communicate. Then, determine the right tool for the right job, and use as many as you need to get the right visual language for your message. For this poster promoting an exhibition of rock 'n' roll music posters, the artist wanted an image that expressed the concept of "art at 1000 decibels," a part of the copy line on the poster.

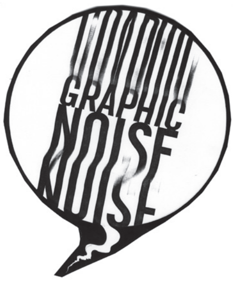


The bird was hand drawn with pen and ink, and the hands were drawn separately.

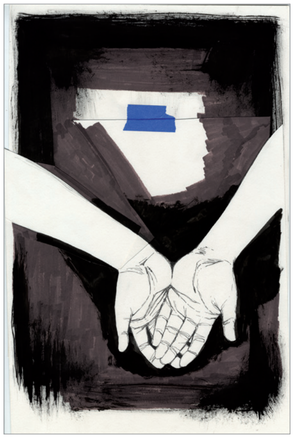


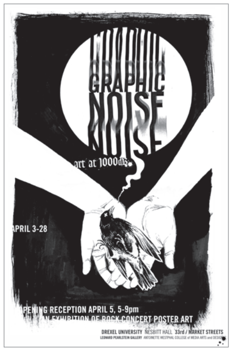
First, a sans-serif typeface was selected and type treatments were designed on computer in several variations, then printed in black and white. The result felt too static.





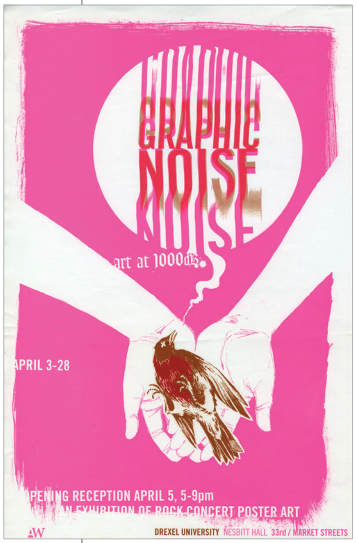
The printed type was placed on a copy machine and the paper copy was moved during the copying process to blur the image. Several versions were scanned back into the computer, and the best were combined and cropped. The balloon form was added.




GRAPHIC
NOISE
art at 1000dbs.
APRIL 3-28
PENING RECEPTION APRIL 5, 5-9pm
DREXEL UNIVERSITY NESBITT HALL 33rd / MARKET STREETS

The artist added a washy ink texture to the background, and added a bit more onto the top of the artwork by taping it to the top. All the elements were scanned into the computer and assembled electronically.

When all of the additional typography was complete, the artist explored several color variations until they were pleased. Two different color versions were printed: the magenta one (right) and a predominantly cyan version (not pictured).


GRAPHIC
NOISE
art at 1000dbs.
APRIL 3-28
PENING RECEPTION APRIL 5, 5-9pm
AN EXHIBITION OF ROCK CONCERT POSTER ART
DREXEL UNIVERSITY NESBITT HALL 33rd / MARKET STREETS

committed to any design in detail. This allows maximum flexibility and fluidity in the design process.

An important advantage of developing the ability to produce quick, effective roughs is that when presenting ideas to clients, alternatives can be quickly sketched out, keeping your approach fresh and relatively unrestricted. This, in turn, gives clients confidence in your willingness to be flexible and open-minded, while showing your design abilities.

Computers and visualization

Roughs are usually generated on a sketchpad. When generated on a computer, roughs tend to look too fixed and polished, and students can be reluctant to change or refine them. Wait until you have a sketch that excites you, then scan it and look at it on screen.

Once you have chosen an idea or shortlist of ideas that you feel may have potential, computers come into their own, because they enable you to produce as many alternate versions of your ideas as you wish, changing colors, typefaces, line weights, and images. Typefaces and grid measurements become fluid decisions when you are working digitally, and you don't need to commit immediately. In fact, it may be better not to. It's fast and easy to change these on screen.

GLOSSARY

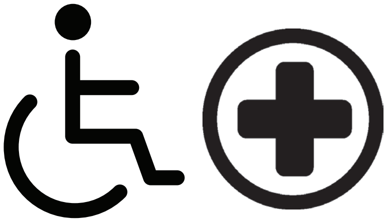
Brainstorming: A visual aid to thinking laterally and exploring a problem, usually by stating the problem in the center of a page and radiating outward spokes for components of the problem. Each component can then be considered separately with its own spokes, so that each point, thought, or comment is recorded.

Roughs: Loosely drawn compositions from thumbnail drawings.

Thumbnail: Small, rough visual representation of the bigger picture or final outcome of a design.

THE BAC
ARE PACK

Didactics Information graphics should be beautiful in addition to delivering a body of information in a clear and immediate way. Economical use of space and carefully considered typography are essential for clear communication.



Dependable artwork International symbols transcend language and communicate instantly. The appearance of a symbol can vary greatly in style through line weights and positive/negative balance, as long as the symbol is easily understood. Symbols such as the universal symbol or signifier for disability (wheelchair) and healthcare (cross) are known worldwide and are instantly recognizable.

PART 1 | PRINCIPLES
CHAPTER 1 | RESEARCH AND CONCEPTS

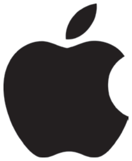
MODULE 5 | THEORIES OF IMAGE AND TEXT

The success of visual communication depends on the ability to reach a targeted audience and elicit a desired response. Sometimes the response is an immediate call to action and a clear, concise message with little open to interpretation. Most often, visual imagery is used to evoke an emotional state that will put the viewer in the appropriately receptive frame of mind to receive the message targeted at them.

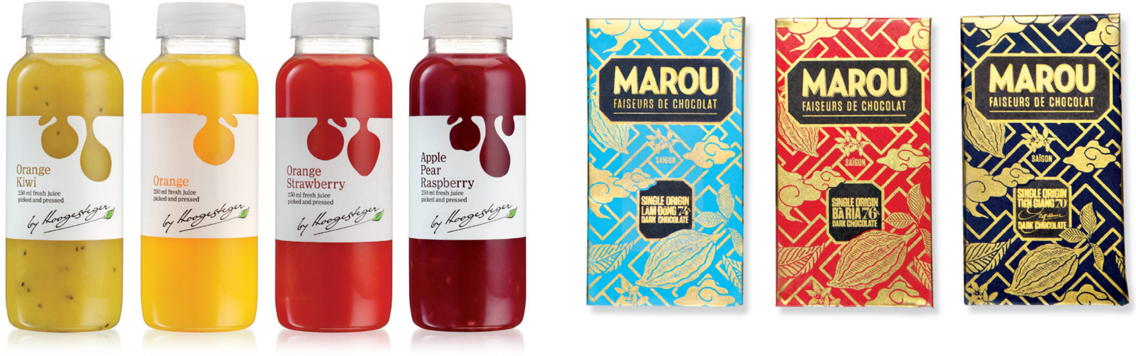
Designers influence the message through the development of provocative imagery that may persuade, shock, entertain, and provoke with purpose. In order for designers to speak clearly and visually say exactly what they mean, they need to develop a clear and strong visual language.

Rhetoric

With its origins attributed to ancient public speaking in Greece and Rome, rhetoric is a skill of persuasion most often associated with politics and public speaking. To construct a strong rhetorical speech, ancient philosophers used something kindred to contemporary design thinking to define and refine the categories of invention, arrangement, style, memory, and delivery within a compelling dialog. If we examine these subjects as design vocabulary, the



Identity to icon The first Apple Computer, Inc. logo was designed by Ron Wayne, a co-founder of Apple Computer. The original was illustrative and included a full image of Sir Isaac Newton sitting under an apple tree with type in a traditional banner arrangement as an integrated border. That logo was replaced in 1977 by graphic designer Rob Janoff, with an image of a rainbow-striped apple with a bite taken out of it. The bite was added for scale, so that the image would not be mistakenly identified as a cherry. This monochrome version was adapted in 1999.


Orange Kiwi
Orange
Orange Strawberry
Apple Pear Raspberry
250 ml fresh juice picked and pressed
by Hoogesteger
MAROU
FAISEURS DE CHOCOLAT
SAIGON
SINGLE ORIGIN LAM DONG 74% DARK CHOCOLATE
SINGLE ORIGIN BA RIA 76% DARK CHOCOLATE
SINGLE ORIGIN TIEN GIANG 70% DARK CHOCOLATE

Make an impression Each of these approaches to package design has a distinct message. The chocolates packages are as rich in color as they are in content. With luxurious metallics, deep saturated color, and intricate graphics, they invite elegant indulgence with every design decision. The clean simplicity of the die-cut labels on the bottles allows the actual ingredients to become the vibrant color in the artwork, promising freshness and the visual implication that there is "nothing added."

same can be said for the construction of a successful and equally compelling visual. In visual communication, the concept of visual rhetoric usually describes the visual tone of voice chosen for a given communication task.

Semiotics, signs, and symbols

Ferdinand de Saussure is acknowledged as the father of semiotics. His theory divides signs, or all things that represent meaning, into two categories: the signifier and the signified. The signifier is the symbol that represents something from which meaning can be extracted; the signified is the actual object or meaning that it represents. For example, the universal symbol, or signifier, for healthcare (the cross) is instantly recognizable in a way that transcends language, while the signified is the actual hospital or healthcare center. This type of non-verbal vocabulary of signs is increasingly relevant in the global reach of contemporary communications and, when designed well, can be recognized instantly.

Didactics

The term "didactics" refers to clear, pragmatically delivered information and instructions with unambiguous meaning. Airport signage, road signs, and warnings are prime examples of didactic information. It is important to note that nuance can be added to most visuals, even in the strictest definition of category: didactic panels in museum exhibitions must deliver clear information, but can be associated with the subject matter in inventive visual ways.

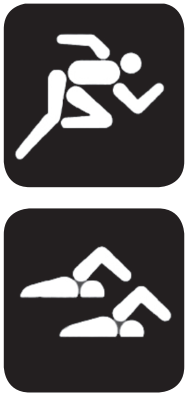
Symbol style

Signs can be simple or complex, depending on the accompanying message. A denotative sign denotes exactly what it pictures and should be visually direct, but can convey secondary information through the use of a particular style. A connotative sign will be single-minded and may convey a range of associated messages that are to be interpreted by the viewer. Symbols and signs can have rich layers of associated meaning.

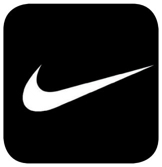
The Olympic symbols are prime examples of design defining attitude. The symbol for swimming usually doesn't change much in content, but the designer may assign an element of playfulness, structure, and discipline, or reference other time periods through the use of line weight, drawing style, or color. The five interlocking rings of the Olympic symbol itself represent the five continents or major geographical areas of the world that participate in the games. Exposure to the Olympic symbol, over time, has elevated it to iconic stature and it may now evoke an emotional response in some through its association with the actual events.

Symbol families

Complex systems and extended families of symbols usually share common essential criteria. They have clarity and are easily recognizable with a simple message. All symbols in the system share a look, with similar treatment in line, style, weight, and scale. They are easy to reproduce in any size and will retain clarity, and they are flexible enough to be combined with other elements, and will still remain distinctive.



Universal messages The pictograms used in the 1972 Munich Olympics set the standard for subsequent Olympic designs. Each sporting event is clearly represented through an economy of line and shape, yet each symbol is visually strong enough for signage and promotional use at any size.



Abstract icon The Nike "Swoosh" was designed in 1971 by Carolyn Davidson. Originally, it appeared with the word NIKE above it. As the brand's recognition grew, the trademark was gradually streamlined.

Metaphors

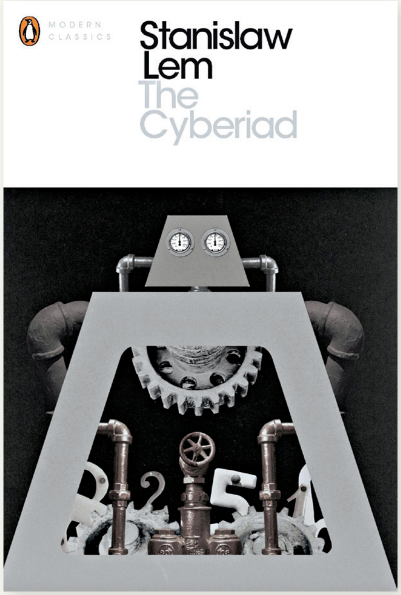
Signs and symbols are primary sources in the design and development of logos and trademarks, and are essential in the development of the visual metaphor, an image that will trigger associations to other meanings or signifiers, and is connotative in nature. A visual metaphor might be as obvious as a lightbulb to signify an idea, a heart to signify love, or a book to represent learning. Logos become metaphors for the business, goods, or service they represent through association, and some become so memorable that they need no words to explain them.

Carolyn Davidson designed the Nike "Swoosh" in 1971. Originally, it appeared accompanied by the word "NIKE." As the brand grew, the trademark was streamlined to the positive, checkmark/wing of the current version.

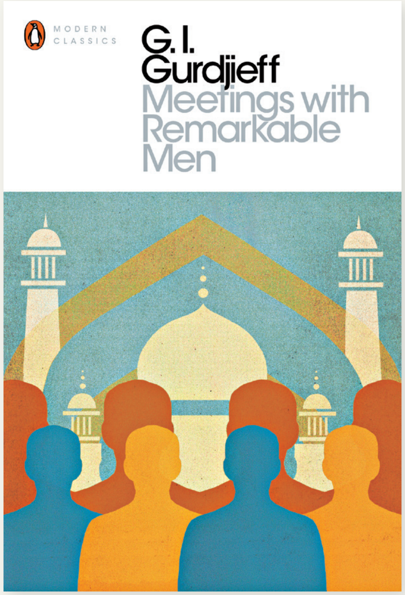
Poetics

Some of the most involving design work can deliberately engage the viewer for much longer periods of time. With current media, the attention span of a target audience is shortened by the number of competing stimuli encountered daily, and by the availability of viewing options, handheld and environmental. They can pull your audience in too many directions to concentrate on your message. If you can engage your audience members, they are more likely to remember what you have told them or to associate your message with a visual style that can be revisited.

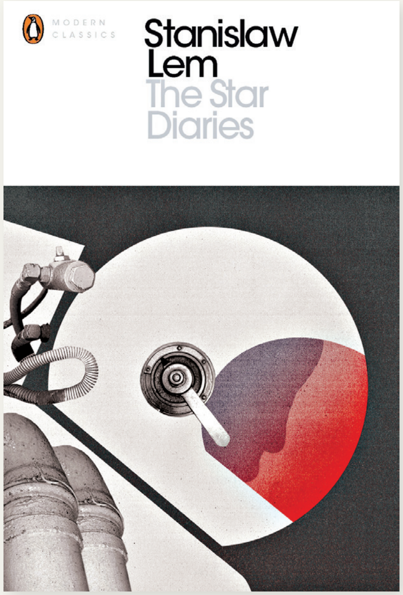
Poetic forms of work have much less immediately accessible meaning, and the message is deliberately left open to interpretation. Graphic designers make



Connotations This book cover illustration uses visual connotations of industry to allude to inventiveness and power. The combination of these themes and the dark, unsettling color palette hints at the violent and peculiar civilizations featured in the series of short stories.



Color The use of striking shapes and the combination of textures in this bold illustration convey simultaneous messages of adventure, encounters, and friendship. The colorful narrative is alluded to through the use of line, color, and composition.



Concept Without resorting to clichés of space, robots, and time travel, the illustrator has used composition and subtle photographic and block-color collage to portray the book's themes of technology, theology, intelligence, and human nature.

conscious decisions to leave the work open to provoke thoughtful responses, to stir controversy, or to tease. Ad campaigns, posters, and book and publication design are examples of media that can support more complex visual allegory, and the illustrative and graphic works that support them are often produced though a range of media and stand as works of art in their own right. Poetic work can be seen as the polar opposite of didactic, but all graphic design is visual communication, and the decision to use one or the other is part of the designer's problem-solving process.

GLOSSARY

Didactic: A pragmatic and unambiguous method of giving clear information.

Metaphor: Word or image that sets up associations; for example, a "piece of cake" is a metaphor for easy.

Poetic: A style that is less clear, but more artistic, more open to interpretation.

Rhetoric: A style of arguing, persuading, or engaging in dialog. For a designer, it is a way of engaging the targeted audience.

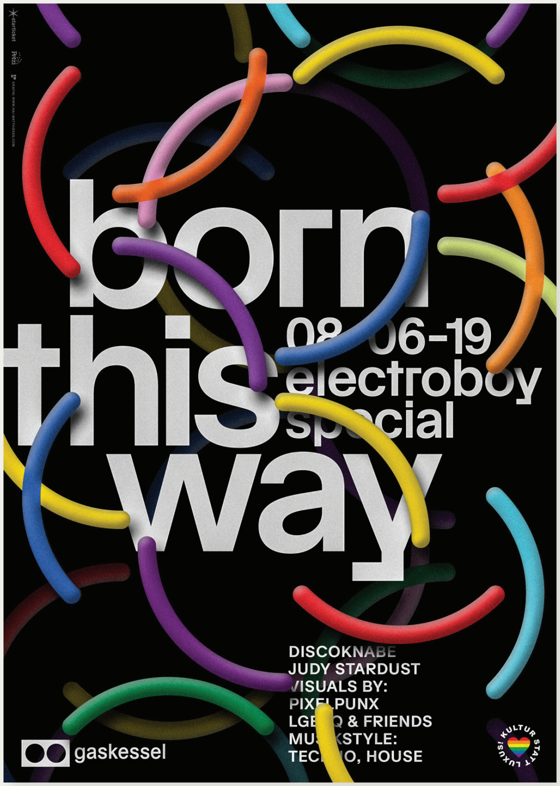
Semiotics: A system that links objects, words, and images to meanings through signs and signifiers.

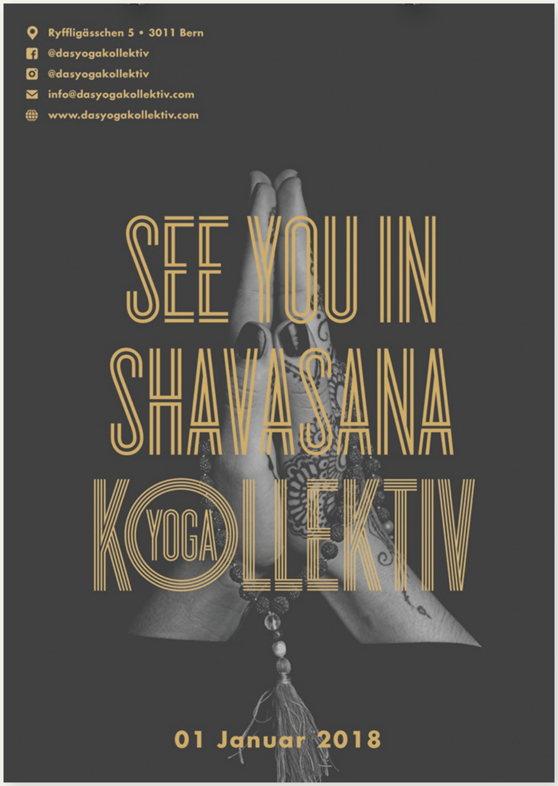
Signifier: An image, object, word, or action that represents something that gives meaning. For example, a symbol of a figure in a wheelchair represents disability, even though not all disabilities need a wheelchair.

Signified: The concept behind the object being represented by a signifier. For example, the meaning represented by the wheelchair signifier (see left) is disabled access.

Symbolism: A way of representing an object or word through an image, sound, or another word; for example, a crossed knife and fork on a road sign means a café is ahead.

⊕ **SEE ALSO:** AUDIENCES, MARKETS, AND CONCEPTS, P24


born
this
way
08.06-19
electroboy
special
DISCOKNABE
JUDY STARDUST
VISUALS BY:
PIXELPUNX
LGBTQ & FRIENDS
MUSIKSTYLE:
TECHNO, HOUSE
gaskessel
KULTUR STATT LUXUS


Ryffligässchen 5 • 3011 Bern
@dasyogakollektiv
@dasyogakollektiv
info@dasyogakollektiv.com
www.dasyogakollektiv.com
SEE YOU IN
SHAVASANA
YOGA KOLLEKTIV
01 Januar 2018

Poetic forms Color, forms, and layering in this composition are used to imply and suggest an impression to the viewer. This suggestion is accomplished through a series of three-dimensional tubes of color placed to evoke a sense of movement and celebration.

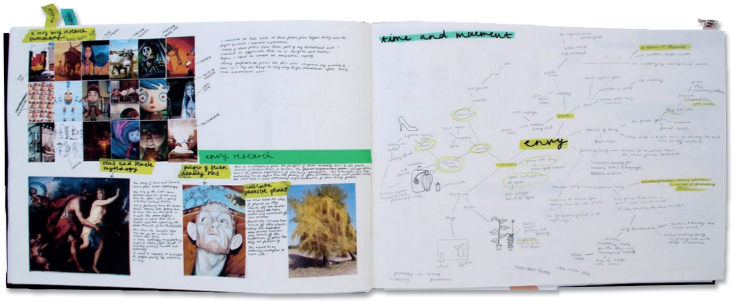
Sophisticated suggestion A minimal palette and the layering of black-and-white photography and golden tones evoke a sense of style and sophistication in this poster. The simple lines and easy-to-access information suggest that simplicity is elegance and show how minimal design can imply luxurious experiences.

PART 1 | PRINCIPLES

CHAPTER 1 | RESEARCH AND CONCEPTS

MODULE 6 | AUDIENCES, MARKETS, AND CONCEPTS

Good graphic design is not simply the result of brilliant execution or technique. It is the strong expression of clever, well-formulated ideas, drawn from an ongoing engagement with research and an interest in the world at large. In professional practice, as in school, extensive exploratory research is invariably the key to the most successful projects, and research into audiences is a primary tool of effective design.



Research and inspiration
Researching similar esthetic styles, designers that inspire you, and other examples of what you are designing are all important steps in a design process. In this example, character design and storyboard frames are explored to develop the final set design and moving image. Not only will the research spark ideas, but providing this information in a client presentation can help you set the scene and justify your decisions.

It is vital to remember that everything you design will be seen by other people: designers are visual communicators and do not work in a vacuum. Therefore, it is part of your job to discover everything you can about the intended viewer. Before designing, think about the people who will be looking at your design work. What is the target market? What do you know about them? What can you/should you find out about them? Can you imagine how they might interpret a particular visual message? Think about the age of the viewer, their geographic and cultural influences, and the level of their education and experience. The more you discover about your audience, the better informed your work will be, increasing its potential effectiveness.

The Internet provides instant communication; what you post will be seen around the world with amazing speed. To complicate matters further, viewers have short attention spans and may split their concentration as they multitask with different electronic devices. Graphic designers have only a few seconds to grab the attention of any potential audience before they turn a page, click to the next website, or jump to the broadcast or program.

If your preliminary research is thorough, you will be able to speak a visual language that your target audience understands, relates to, and responds to, thus increasing the odds that your visual communication will hit its mark by both communicating the message you intended and communicating it effectively.

Think globally

It is the designer's job to deliver a message, and as we communicate globally, accurate information transfer becomes increasingly complex. Be aware that different cultures may react differently to colors, images, and language. The color red is used as a warning in some countries, yet is considered lucky in China. An image that appears delightfully contemporary in one culture can be offensive in another. Do your homework before you begin brainstorming, and pay attention to brands that advertise globally. Are there different versions of the same advertisement in different countries? What brands have instant recognition internationally, and how has the brand been developed? What type of image does it communicate?

Market research

Large companies have whole departments devoted to what is formally called market research. These people spend their time conducting surveys into their customers' needs and preferences. They do this by a variety of means, including questionnaires, surveys, and focus groups where people carefully selected as representative of the target audience are brought together to discuss a product or campaign before it is launched into the public domain. If, however, you are the only team member on the project, you can still do some research. Modern communications make a large part of the world accessible. Use the Internet, libraries, museums, and

GLOSSARY

Audience: In its broadest sense, the consumers, voyeurs, and occasionally participants of design work.

Customer profile/profiling: The process of creating a series of parameters or set of information that defines the desires, trends, or interests of a demographic so that designs can be pitched or marketed to them.

Market research: The process of collecting and collating data from questionnaires, interviews, and comments from the public regarding a concern, a problem, or a possible solution.

SEE ALSO: BASICS OF RESEARCH, P10

LINEAR REASONING/LATERAL THINKING, P14

any other appropriate research venue at your disposal to do your market research, and find out as much as you can about your client and your audience.

Find out about your target and determine a reasonable approach to communications. Identify and research potential competitors, and see what type of brand image they are projecting. Define your target audience with your client, considering age, gender, ethnicity, level of education, income, and location. If you are too far removed from your target audience, consider bringing someone on board as a collaborator. Having more perspectives on the same project will make your designs and approach to projects stronger. NRS social grades and Abram Maslow's hierarchy of needs are both good templates to help determine who your audience could be. Develop a questionnaire, or have a series of questions ready to ask, and visit people in the target group firsthand. Use your developed powers of observation to note the various trends/habits/practices/attitudes of your target audience and record your impressions. Read as much information about the buying practices of consumers in your brand category as you can. When you have collected some information, imagine your target in as much rich detail as you can, and try to put yourself in their place. How would you respond to the ideas you are proposing? Bring your concepts right to the source and ask people what they think of them. You can create an informal focus group made up of friends, relatives, and colleagues. Smart, informed design always begins with information.

Make contact

Learning to articulate your concepts is the first stage in developing great presentation techniques, and explaining your ideas to others can help you understand what you're trying to achieve. Be prepared to listen to any opinions offered and try not to take criticism personally. Instead, use it constructively to uncover which aspects of your ideas aren't working and what you can do to improve them. You don't have to act on comments if you think they aren't helpful, but always remember your cultural and social bias may be very different to that of the audience you're reaching out to. Good design is about perception and accurate information transfer to your audience, not necessarily yourself.

Elimination process

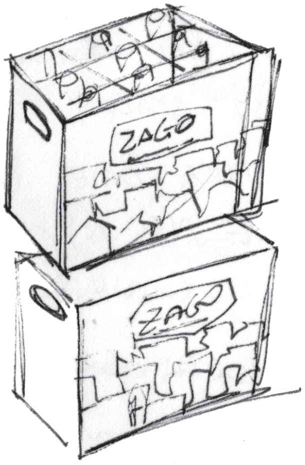
Explore your ideas visually to see which have the most potential. Do not fret about detail; concentrate on expressing your ideas.

1 Make quick sketches to determine which ideas work well and have immediate impact. Use color if it helps, but don't get involved in the subtleties.

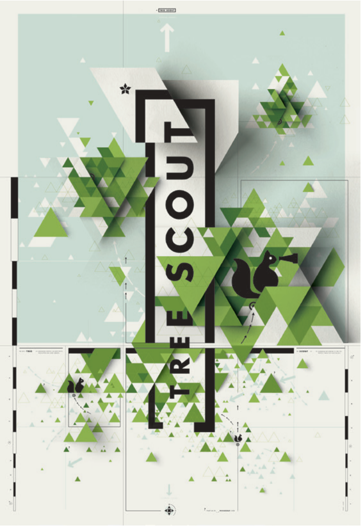
2 Discard any sketches that are too complex or rely on tired visual clichés. Getting rid of the bad ideas quickly will help you focus on the good ones.

3 Select the strongest idea, then put together a presentation visual that demonstrates why your idea is so brilliant.

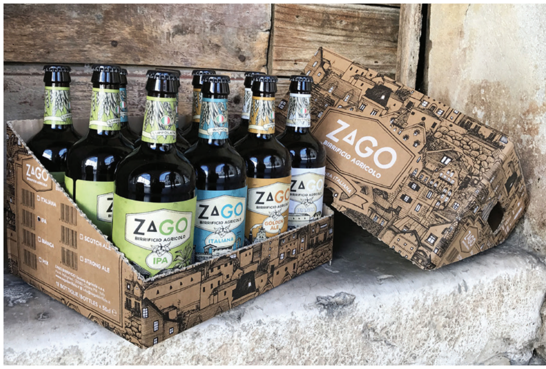
4 Now you can start working on the detail. The best ideas are often the simplest, but you need to show that careful thought and preparation have gone into your work. Consider how you will explain your idea to your client. You might need to "sell" it to them, so think about what you would say to support your images.



↓ **Make them curious** The use of experimental layering and three dimensions in this composition not only creates an intriguing visual, but also provides a sense of depth. Devices such as this encourage an image to be seen both from a distance and close up, pulling an audience in to learn more.



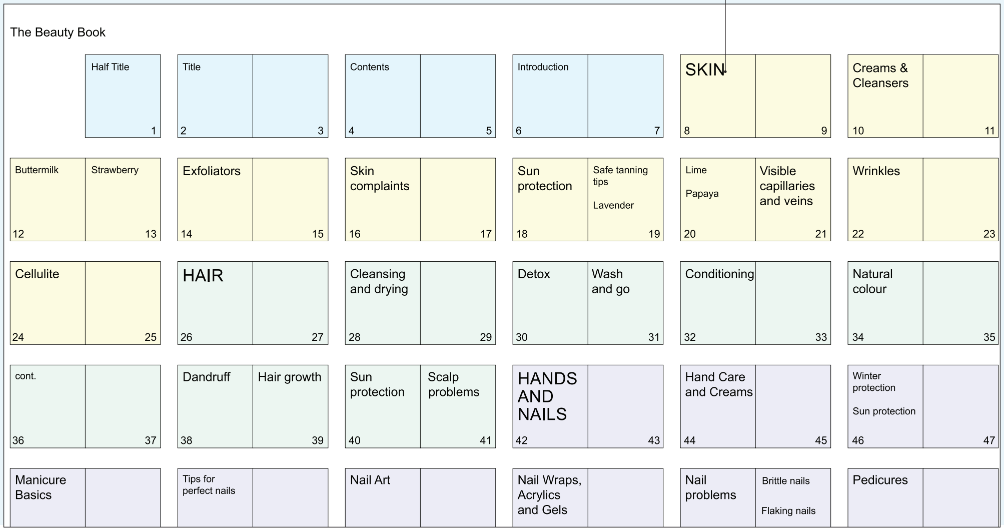
↓ ↙ **Audience needs** Consider all of your audiences. In this example, it is beer buyers and beer sellers. The clever packaging concept functions as a box to store and transport the bottles. When opened, the box becomes a marketing display, showcasing the intricate illustrations on the labels.



Macro Look at the big picture. Preliminary ideas shown in a flat plan of a book or a magazine from start to finish will help you determine how the mass of information is divided, and allow you to plan the rhythm and flow of images and text throughout the entire publication. Now you can set your design and production deadlines accordingly.

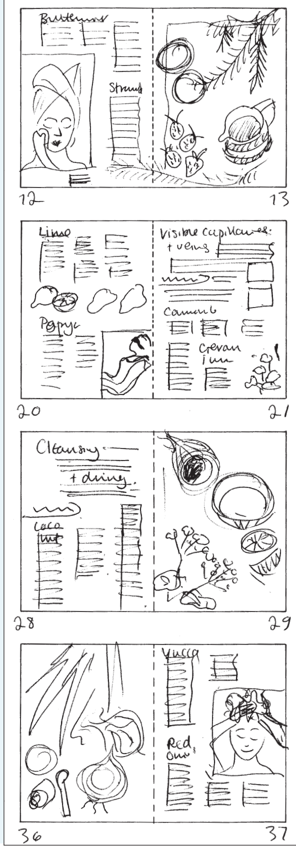
Assign a different color to each chapter or section.

If it becomes necessary to delete or rearrange content, a flat plan will help you to keep track of the changes.



The Beauty Book

Half Title 1	Title 2 3	Contents 4 5	Introduction 6 7	SKIN 8 9	Creams & Cleansers 10 11
Buttermilk Strawberry 12 13	Exfoliators 14 15	Skin complaints 16 17	Sun protection Safe tanning tips Lavender 18 19	Lime Papaya Visible capillaries and veins 20 21	Wrinkles 22 23
Cellulite 24 25	HAIR 26 27	Cleansing and drying 28 29	Detox Wash and go 30 31	Conditioning 32 33	Natural colour 34 35
cont. 36 37	Dandruff Hair growth 38 39	Sun protection Scalp problems 40 41	HANDS AND NAILS 42 43	Hand Care and Creams 44 45	Winter protection Sun protection 46 47
Manicure Basics	Tips for perfect nails	Nail Art	Nail Wraps, Acrylics and Gels	Nail problems Brittle nails Flaking nails	Pedicures



PART 1 | PRINCIPLES
CHAPTER 1 | RESEARCH AND CONCEPTS

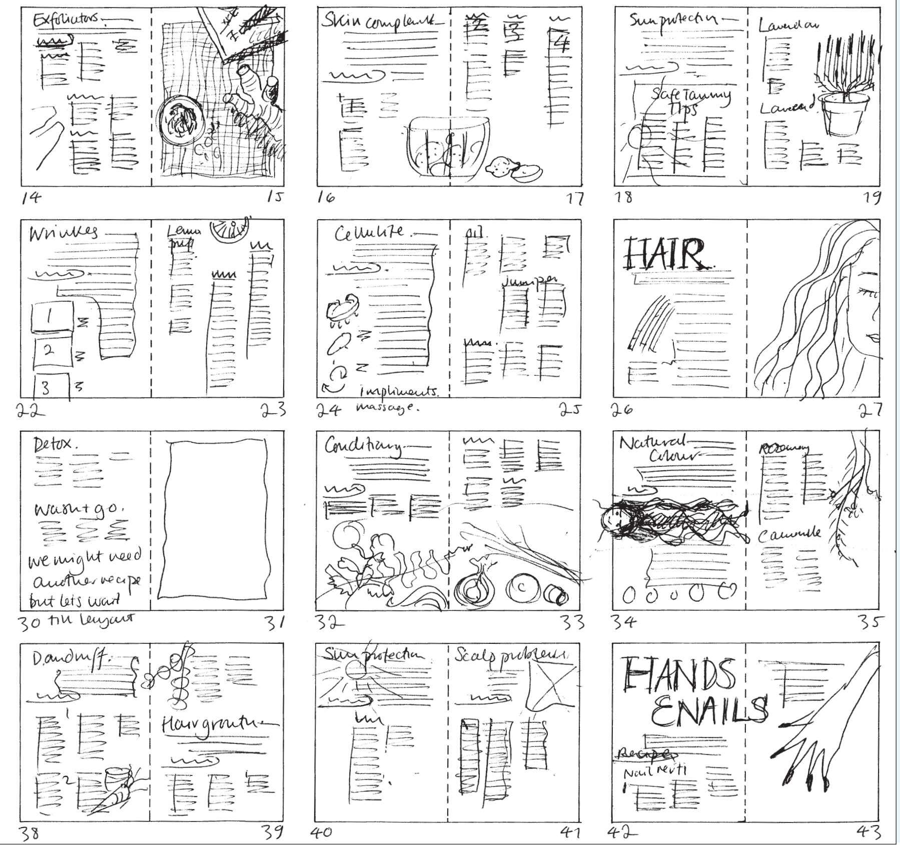
MODULE 7 | SCHEDULING, ORGANIZING, AND FINALIZING

Creativity, talent, and originality are all expected, but if a design project can't be delivered on time, those first three attributes may not matter in the long run. Organized thinking is the key to understanding how to manage a big project. All design projects begin with the broadest of ideas and must be broken down into smaller, manageable parts.

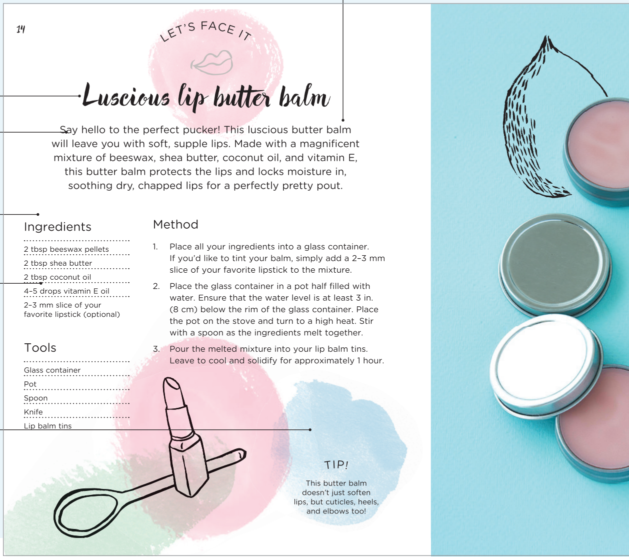
Read the design brief carefully, and ask questions if you need more information. Design briefs always involve interpretation by the designer. Some clients have little idea of what they need, and they look to the designer for clear analysis of, and a solution to, the problem. Other clients may have a clear idea of what they want, and these ideas need to be considered and respected—but also questioned if they are inappropriate. For example, green may be a favorite color of one member of a group of clients, but it may be the wrong choice for the project. Similarly, it's important to recognize that clients have valuable insight into the workings of their organization and its needs, and although they may not have the design skills, or the language, to implement their ideas, their input on these matters is crucial. Be open and flexible, but stand your ground when you know you are right.

Check it

There are as many different solutions to the same problem as there are designers. Your job is to choose



Micro At the micro level, you can begin to decipher the details. Generate thumbnails and carefully consider the pace and placement of every element in your page design. Determine how your sketches support an overall system, and still add enough variety to keep it interesting.



14

LET'S FACE IT

Luscious lip butter balm

Say hello to the perfect pucker! This luscious butter balm will leave you with soft, supple lips. Made with a magnificent mixture of beeswax, shea butter, coconut oil, and vitamin E, this butter balm protects the lips and locks moisture in, soothing dry, chapped lips for a perfectly pretty pout.

Ingredients

- 2 tbsp beeswax pellets
- 2 tbsp shea butter
- 2 tbsp coconut oil
- 4–5 drops vitamin E oil
- 2–3 mm slice of your favorite lipstick (optional)

Tools

- Glass container
- Pot
- Spoon
- Knife
- Lip balm tins

Method

1. Place all your ingredients into a glass container. If you'd like to tint your balm, simply add a 2–3 mm slice of your favorite lipstick to the mixture.
2. Place the glass container in a pot half filled with water. Ensure that the water level is at least 3 in. (8 cm) below the rim of the glass container. Place the pot on the stove and turn to a high heat. Stir with a spoon as the ingredients melt together.
3. Pour the melted mixture into your lip balm tins. Leave to cool and solidify for approximately 1 hour.

TIP!

This butter balm doesn't just soften lips, but cuticles, heels, and elbows too!

Body text size and style

Headline style and font

Intro text size and style

Cross headings size and style

Ingredients and tools listings size and style

Tint box for self-contained panel

the solution that you think is the most appropriate. This decision-making isn't subjective; it comes from informed judgment. It's a good idea to set a series of checkpoint meetings/approvals with your client as you work through the design process. It's a better practice to have the client approve or reject an approach at the early stages, at which point you can adjust your design thinking accordingly.

Think macro and micro

Good design works both at a macro scale (the large, overview structure, as though viewed from "above"), and at a micro scale, where the tiniest details are important, down to letterspacing. Often you will have to give the information order and structure (hierarchy) as well as visual form. You will need to make micro decisions such as type size, individual page layouts, and color choices, and these will need to be balanced and related to the macro scale: the whole design needs to appear considered, as does every part of the project. In the case of a print or package design, every aspect of the project should be designed, including the selection or creation of additional materials for closures, bindings, and fastenings. If you can see it, your audience can, too. Rigorous testing is needed before launching digital designs to check for hidden errors and glitches you may not have noticed while designing.

Scheduling and organization

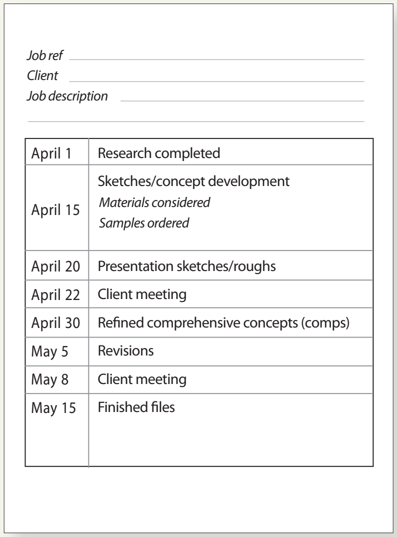
Time management and organization are crucial aspects of a design practice, and their significance cannot be overstated. Organize your time, and plot out the progress of each project, from start to end, allocating time to each aspect of the design process. To help you do this, make a schematic diagram to identify how long certain aspects of the job will take to complete, paying particular attention to print and production timeframes at the end of the schedule. If you are working on a project with numerous applications and different elements, it will help immeasurably. It's easy to be swept away on a wave of creative thinking, and aspects of your process can take longer than you think they will.

Personal deadlines

Set intermediate deadlines for yourself. If you break down the process into manageable steps, you can set your calendar accordingly. A breakdown of the process might read:

Research
Sketches/concept development
Presentation sketches/roughs
Client meeting
Refined comprehensive concepts (comps)
Revisions
Client meeting
Finished files

Plan ahead Keep track of your process hours and plan ahead to make your deadlines.

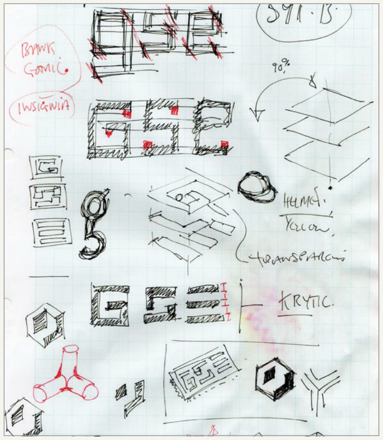


Job ref

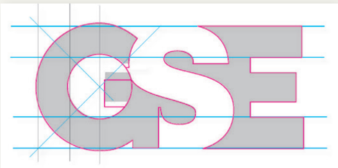
Client

Job description

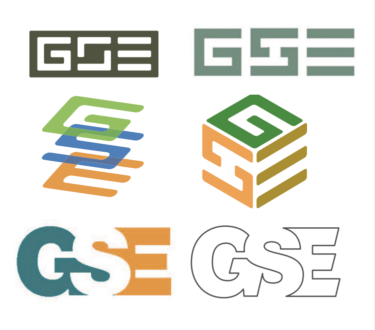
April 1	Research completed
April 15	Sketches/concept development *Materials considered* *Samples ordered*
April 20	Presentation sketches/roughs
April 22	Client meeting
April 30	Refined comprehensive concepts (comps)
May 5	Revisions
May 8	Client meeting
May 15	Finished files



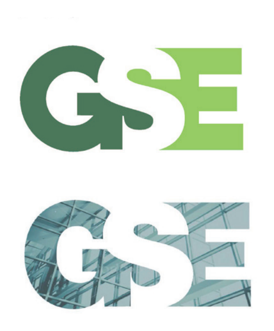
Development After some comprehensive research, it is important to get your ideas down on paper. In this example for Green Structural Engineering, the designer has experimented with sketches and comps to incorporate the feeling of structure. This can be seen in the diagrammatic construction of various elements of the drawings.



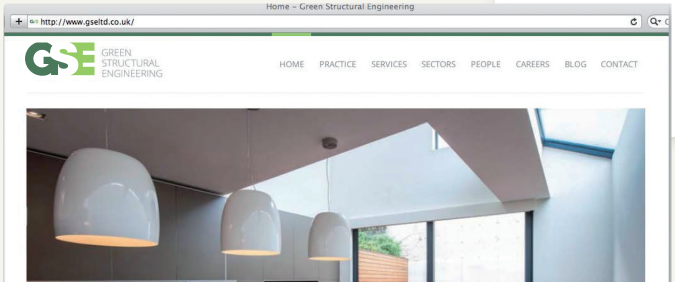
Refinement When the concept is developed and sketches have advanced your ideas, start to digitize your strongest visuals to aid discussions with the client. Use grid systems and a range of color palettes to experiment with the visual balance of the designs.



Presentation and production Comprehensive designs that simulate the finished product are presented for approval before the artwork is sent into production. At this stage it is important to consider the output for your visuals. This logo, for example, needs to work in print on small business cards, on a digital platform such as a website, and on a large scale for onsite boards.



GREEN
STRUCTURAL
ENGINEERING
Unit 4
Marvic House
Bishops Road
London
SW6 7AD
t. 0203 405 3120
e. info@gseltd.co.uk
www.gseltd.co.uk
GREEN
STRUCTURAL
ENGINEERING
m. 0798 477 0349
t. 0203 405 3120
e. geoff@gseltd.co.uk
www.gseltd.co.uk
Green Structural Engineering Ltd
Unit 4 Marvic House
Bishops Road
London SW6 7AD


Home – Green Structural Engineering
http://www.gseltd.co.uk/
GREEN
STRUCTURAL
ENGINEERING
HOME
PRACTICE
SERVICES
SECTORS
PEOPLE
CAREERS
BLOG
CONTACT

Remember

- Write everything down. Don't rely on memory.
- Without a relevant concept, your visualization has no meaning.
- Try creating a flowchart/ spider diagram with routes for different ideas.
- Look for professional criticism and use it constructively.
- Talk about your work. Learn to be articulate, and explain your intentions, influences, and solutions.

Timescale

Research can be very time-consuming, so bear in mind that there has to be a cut-off point at which you have to start generating your visual concepts. "Design" is a verb as much as it is a noun: it's about doing things, so jump right in. One idea will always lead to the next.

Over longer jobs there may be only one deadline per week (for example, interim presentations to the client); on shorter jobs this may be two deadlines per day (for example, multiple proof stages). One way to organize ideas into sequence is to write everything down on self-adhesive reminder notes and put them in a logical order. Job jackets, envelopes with deadline lists, approvals, and everything else related to the job help keep track of multiple projects.

If you'd rather do it all electronically, software programs such as Excel and applications such as Evernote can be invaluable in plotting job progress and in maintaining an overview. Organize your digital files logically, making sure everyone working on the project knows the system, and back up your files regularly. You can create a timetable with each checkpoint assigned a date (see left). Include all of the subcategories you need to cover until they become second nature.

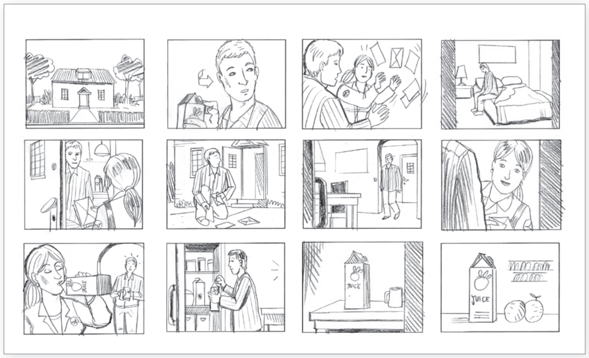
Many good designers miss the importance of time management and organization, and their work and client relationships suffer as a result. Get into the habit of good time management, now!

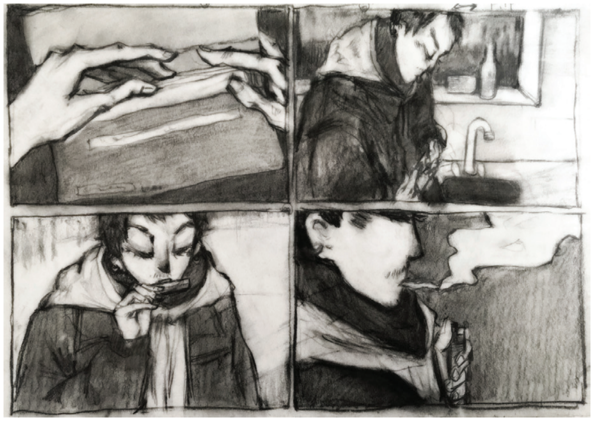
Comps (comprehensive sketches)

Comps are the most finished approximation of an actual product and often look exactly like the real thing. They will evidence all design considerations, including final colors, tints and halftones, all typographic considerations, textures, and paper finishes and weights. If a project has many parts, comps for the extended system may be produced at different stages. After a client approves the comps, an artworker can take over the job, if needed, and match all aspects of the production to the designer's choices.

Page plans/flat plans

There has to be a logical visual (and conceptual) sequence in any design project. Magazines and books are normally laid out in miniature on a page plan several times before full-size layouts are started. The page plan may consist of no more than the article title, but can be much more specific, including a list of all the page elements or a thumbnail drawing of the layout with text blocks and artwork sketched in. The page plan is intended to clarify logical sequence, distribution of color, change of pace, and so on.





Storyboard development Storyboards clarify the concept of a moving image sequence by showing the progression of the idea and the transitions from scene to scene. Moving image sequences, in any form, require consideration and planning. Spend time sketching possible ideas and intentions, then develop them by hand before moving on to a computer.

Storyboards

Storyboards give the client or production person enough information to allow them to begin to design their assigned spreads or pages of the final product. As well as in multimedia design, storyboards are commonly employed in films, comic strips, animation, and TV commercials. The storyboard contains a sketch of the visual aspect of the screen, information that will be present, descriptions of animations, interactions (for example, dialog boxes), sounds, and any other media. Although storyboards were originally linear (for film), non-linear elements are incorporated. Web design uses a similar approach through wireframes. Wireframes are used to plan individual pages or sequences before engaging a web designer.

These website flowcharts show how pages link up in a logical order (see page 160). The organization of a website reflects the actual body for which the site is designed. It is important to get the structure right before designing the look of the pages.

GLOSSARY

Comps: Comprehensive sketch, a close approximation of the printed product.

Page plan/flat plan: A document with a series of numbered thumbnails set out in an ordered grid that represents each page in a book.

Storyboard: A document similar to a flat plan, but with a sequence of thumbnails that specifically lays out the narrative for a comic strip or film.

CHAPTER 1: ASSIGNMENTS

Primary and secondary research

Primary and secondary research is vital before beginning any design project. By starting a project without a computer, you allow your ideas and design approaches to be influenced by unconventional references, making you a more unique and adaptable designer. Research for a particular project can take weeks, and the process has an important influence on the final outcome. The more you invest in the beginning of the project, the more successful your outcome will be.

1 Go to an area you've never been to before and take a walk around. Spend the first 15 minutes of your journey observing without recording: what is there; who is there? Look around you, down on the floor, directly above you. Be sensitive to light, shadow, textures, patterns, and the relationships of objects and colors. Take time to concentrate on your surroundings and the things you encounter while you walk.

2 Spend an additional 15 minutes documenting your observations. Shoot some images from several points of view and at different exposures. Record your own impressions of what you see, and transcribe any chance conversations you have along the way. Consider the tools you will need to document: a sketchbook, camera, smartphone, pens, pencils, charcoal, viewfinders, a container for collected ephemera, etc. Zooming in on the sidewalk, a wall, or a streetlight can reveal subtle textures and color variants you may have missed, so crop your images creatively. Don't hold back—this is an exercise in quantity over quality.

3 When you are satisfied with what you have collected and documented, create a brainstorm of what you saw and recorded. Note down the visuals (e.g. a person walking down the street), but also moments when historical, social, and political elements were found (e.g. litter on the street and what littering means in the wider context of the environment).

4 Once you have a substantial brainstorm, start to analyze your findings and observations, and select your strongest concept. What was it about the journey that intrigued you most? What part of the journey do you want to share with others, and why? Continue to build up your research by adding secondary sources from the Internet, libraries, and archives.

5 When you feel you've researched to a high level, begin to edit and curate the information to the most important elements. Think about who might be most interested in your research or who is most likely to engage with it. Decide how you would best catch their attention and how your story should unfold.

6 Create a map of your journey with your concept applied. Consider what audience your map is for, and what you are trying to achieve with it. Start by creating a series of sketches using your edited research. The emphasis of this assignment is on the creative process, not on the final project, so use your skills in observation and research as expansively as possible, and consider all of the possible interpretations before you commit to a single idea. It is always worth doing some research into the format written in your brief; in this case, research map design and information graphics. Generate as many thumbnail drawings as you physically can, and use words, images, and collage materials you may have collected. When you have a series of five thumbnails you really like, enlarge them, either by drawing them again or by using a copier, and clarify your intentions by writing a short descriptive paragraph on each one.

7 Additional task
With your concept in mind, make a plan to go on a second walk, but this time to an area you know really well. Brainstorm how your concept can be applied to this new area, who might be involved with it, and what you might like to achieve. Gather secondary information before your walk by researching who lives in the area, what businesses are there, who uses this environment, etc. Make a note of what you want to look out for: colors, types of people, types of environment you want to focus on. After your walk, create a second map that illustrates your journey with a developed concept applied to it.

Exploratory drawing

Observational drawing and recording have become increasingly popular in recent years as a way for visual communicators not only to record their environment, but also to interrogate and investigate issues, locations, and subjects in a journalistic way. The more you practice observing and recording what you see, the more your analytical and technical skills will improve, and this will result in an increased confidence and awareness of visual language.

1 Go to an outside place that you can sit in for a prolonged period of time. Concentrating on the scene in front of you, use a sketchbook and drawing materials to draw what you see over 15 minutes.

2 For each of the following shorter tasks fill a 11¾ x 8½-in (A4) page/two 8½ x 6-in (A5) pages of your sketchbook. A fundamental aspect of drawing is seeing. As part of an initial warmup, spend some time sitting and observing, taking in the environment, its sounds, smells, etc. Make notes of aspects that particularly interest you.

- Draw a person using a continuous line.
- Draw an object with the opposite hand.
- Make a blind drawing—don't look at the paper.
- Make a blind drawing—don't look at a subject.

3 Now focus in on a theme that you identified in the previous task. Is what you are observing and drawing appropriate to that theme? Does it explore/challenge/interrogate that theme?

- Draw a person for 5 minutes, 3 minutes, 1 minute, 30 seconds, 10 seconds, and 1 second.
- Draw an object for 5 minutes, 3 minutes, 1 minute, 30 seconds, 10 seconds, and 1 second.

4 Observe the subject that you're drawing as positive space—its boundaries, where it starts and finishes—and negative space—everything else.Observe the visual relationship this creates as shape and form to be drawn.

- Draw around a subject (person/object/etc.).
- Draw everything but the subject.

5 Consider how movement affects what you are documenting and how your mark making can imply that movement is happening.

- Document something/someone moving ten times (the same thing).
- Document something/someone moving in the same way ten times (ten different things).
- Draw one thing from ten different angles.
- Draw ten things from one angle.

6 Use your imagination and start to challenge the conventional things you see in front of you.

- Draw the people as though they are buildings.
- Draw the buildings as though they are people.

7 Once you've finished drawing, make sure to spend some time collecting. Whether that be ephemera, photographs, recordings, etc., physical objects are a great way to evoke a sense of place, which may help you develop this exercise into a final outcome.

- Collect a series of typographic forms.
- Collect a series of words or phrases.
- Collect a series of one color.
- Collect a series of similar shapes.

8 Additional task
Take a photograph of the area you've spent some time exploring through drawing. Compare this photograph to your sketches, annotating similarities and differences. Write a short paragraph about the difference between using drawing and photography to observe an area.

● 100 ideas

There is always more than one way to solve a design problem or communicate a message visually. Your role as a graphic designer is not only to come up with the ideas, but also to decide which idea would be most appropriate and effective for your aims and objectives. Ideation can be difficult, but is an important stage in the design process to avoid an obvious solution.

Design a flag for a location that does not currently have its own. This could be your local library, the bus stop, an independent business, etc. Research the area using primary and secondary sources. Spend some time in the area documenting its identity and what function it has, or what you might like to promote about it.

1 Start by brainstorming your ideas. From this brainstorm create 100 different sketched thumbnails of flag ideas without using a computer. Consider the shapes, metaphors, icons, and symbols of the flags.

2 Select 50 ideas and compositions that you deem to be the most successful, and digitize them. Consider the colors, contrast, form, and hierarchy of the flags.

3 From your digital flags, select the 25 you deem to be the most successful. Experiment with the variations of these flags. Consider size, materials, and the method of creation (e.g. sketches, papercuts, painting).

4 Select the flag you think is the most successful and develop it to a finalized product. Present the flag to your peers, explaining why you think it is more successful than your other 99 ideas.

● Symbols and icons

Symbols and icons are fundamentals of visual communication. We all look at an object and our mind interprets it into meaning. It is important to remember that our perceptions and bias will be different to those of others, which is why collaboration is a great asset in any graphic design project.

1 Start by forming a pair. Stand opposite each other with a sketchbook and pen. Without looking at the paper, draw the person standing in front of you, while finding out an interesting fact about them. Incorporate this into the drawing.

2 Exchange and analyze your drawings. Extract interesting shapes and details. Add your notes from this conversation to your drawing in the form of annotation and sketches.

3 Using your findings, design an icon that represents your partner. Present it back to them for feedback, and make amends where necessary.

4 Create an icon for yourself that follows the same style. Create an icon for everyone else in the room that follows the same style.

5 Additional task
Consider the audience of your icon set. Without changing the meaning of each icon, develop them to appeal to the following target groups:

- Specific customers: for example, people that work in the financial sector.
- Local marketing: for example, a new local community book club.
- Demographic: for example, women aged 18–25 in education.
- Customer needs: for example, hikers and outdoor enthusiasts.
- Customer preferences: for example, people who want to minimize their impact on the environment.
- Lifestyle: for example, jetsetters and luxury holiday-makers.
- Culture: for example, people who identify as punks and anarchists.
- Willingness to pay: for example, people with a high disposable income.
- Interests: for example, people interested in art and design.
- Values: for example, people who want more inclusivity and diversity in the workplace.
- Behavior: for example, people who use social media as a status-seeking platform.

⊕ Further reading

Daniel Chandler, *Semiotics: The Basics,* Routledge, 3rd edition, 2017
Meredith Davis, *Graphic Design Theory,* Thames & Hudson, 2012
Steven Heller and Lita Talarico, *Graphic: Inside the Sketchbooks of the World's Great Graphic Designers,* Thames & Hudson, 2010
Ellen Lupton, *Graphic Design Thinking: Beyond Brainstorming,* Princeton Architectural Press, 2011
Alice Rawsthorn, *Design as an Attitude,* JRP Ringier, 2018
Lucienne Roberts and Rebecca Wright, *Design Diaries: Creative Process in Graphic Design,* Laurence King Publishing, 2010
Jenn Visocky O'Grady and Ken Visocky O'Grady, *A Designer's Research Manual,* Rockport Publishers, 2nd edition, 2017

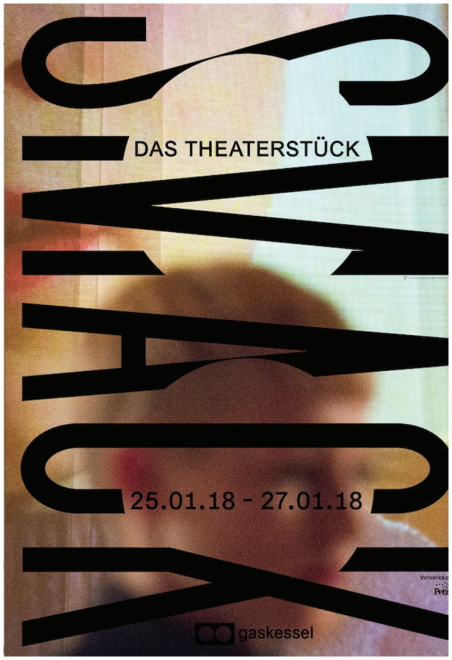
2

Fundamentals of Composition

Good composition is an essential element of all art forms, graphic or otherwise, and should be considered the foundation of visual communication. Successful graphic designers are masters of the fundamentals that underlie all aspects of design. Elements on a page or on the web, in motion or in three dimensions, should always be led by concern for spacing, visual organization, style, and the size and format of the finished work.

Graphic design projects use text and image in concert, with consideration for the relationships established between each of the elements. These compositions should also establish a visual hierarchy that directs the viewer's eye through a deliberate visual sequence.

> "Visual literacy also is an ability to view any image as an abstraction, to understand what is happening in purely visual terms as well as knowing and understanding visual terminology. It involves training the eyes to see minute detail and being sensitive to color, shape, form, and line. It has little or nothing to do with content or style"
>
> *Rob Roy Kelly*

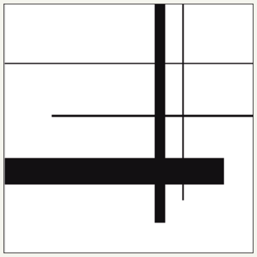


PART 1	PRINCIPLES
CHAPTER 2	FUNDAMENTALS OF COMPOSITION
MODULE 1	**BASICS OF COMPOSITION**

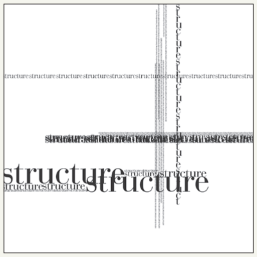
Composition refers to the visual structure and organization of elements within a design. It concerns the process of combining distinct parts or elements to form a whole. Composition involves seeing the whole as greater than its parts, and is just as important as the individual elements that make up a design.

Designers organize images and text—each with their own shapes, sizes, colors, and textures—in many different media and in a wide range of formats: from two- and three-dimensional black-and-white design through full-color work to web-based and time-based (moving) imagery. A practical understanding and exploration of composition is crucial for effective visual communication: it is the most significant tool in guiding the viewer through the complexity of visuals to the intended message. To create effective design work, no matter which medium you are working in, you must understand the principles of good composition.

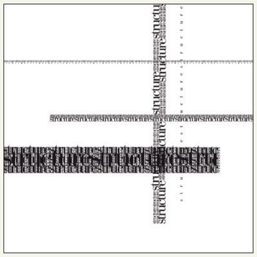
Building a composition
In this series, horizontal and vertical lines gradually translate into lines of typography to illustrate a concept. The same principles of placement and relationship apply to the placement of body text and headline, and the hierarchy should be examined carefully to ensure typography is read in the proper sequence.



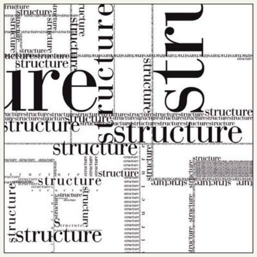
Carefully placed horizontal and vertical lines of varying weights show a gradually imposed order as they begin to form a grid.



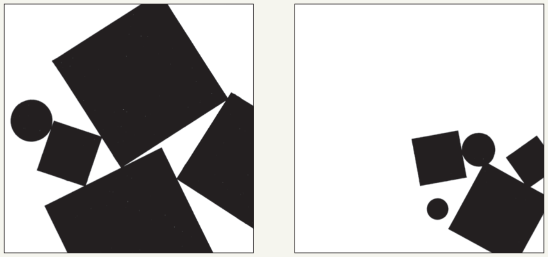
The substitution of typography for lines, using the word "structure," reinforces the concept and identifies the relationship between typographic point sizes and line weights.



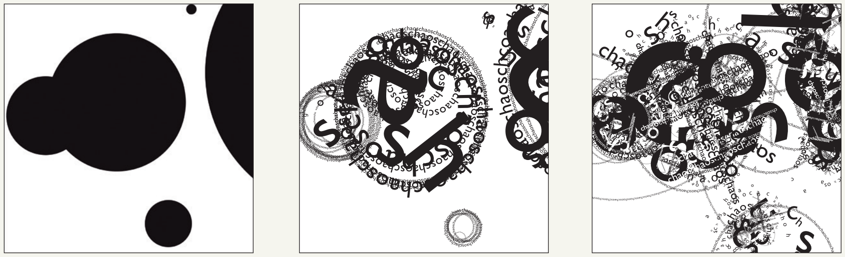
The structure of the series continues to build with layers of typographic lines working in concert to suggest heavier masses of line.



The final composition adds closely locked forms of typographic lines to create an architectural composition where each weighted area is visually supported.



Negative space Placement on the page is critical. In the first composition, the shapes appear to be aggressively competing for space. When the objects are reduced in size and placed in the lower corner of the page, they appear to be racing to exit the image.



Organized chaos In the initial composition, the placement of the circles creates tension though asymmetry and cropped edges. As the second and third compositions develop, the same principles are in play, using texture to create mass, and repetition and variation in placement.

Space and layers
By using type as image and transparent circular forms, this poster gives the illusion of layering. The relationship between positive and negative space, the strength of the horizontal letterforms, and the variation in scale all work together to attract and direct the viewer's attention.

Theories of composition

Throughout the history of the visual arts, different theories of composition have been advanced. Vitruvius, the Roman architect and engineer, devised a mathematical formula for the division of space within a picture. His solution, known as the golden section, golden mean, or golden rectangle, was based on a set ratio between the longer and shorter sides of a rectangle. This principle profoundly affected theories in mathematics, architecture, painting, graphic design, and industrial design regarding the use of spatial composition. The French painter Henri Matisse (1869–1954) put greater emphasis on inspiration, maintaining that composition is the art of arranging elements to express feelings.

Most contemporary theories have acknowledged the following elements as important considerations in composition: balance (the deliberate distribution of elements on a page); consistency or harmony (similarities in visual objects); contrast (obvious differences in visual elements); proximity (the relationships in the placement of the elements in play); repetition with variation; and white space (the deliberate open areas in a composition that give the viewer the ability to focus on everything else).

Form and space

Positive space is a form or object that, to the eye, appears to exist. This can be a solid shape of any size, a line, or simply a texture. Negative space is everything around or within an object, the "empty" space that helps to define the borders of the positive image. It is important to learn to effectively control the relationship

mighty new
mighty different
mighty rice®

The space around the rice-shaped white shape in the black box is repeated in the relationship of the typography in the square above it, and in the placement of the whole object on the page in the brochure.

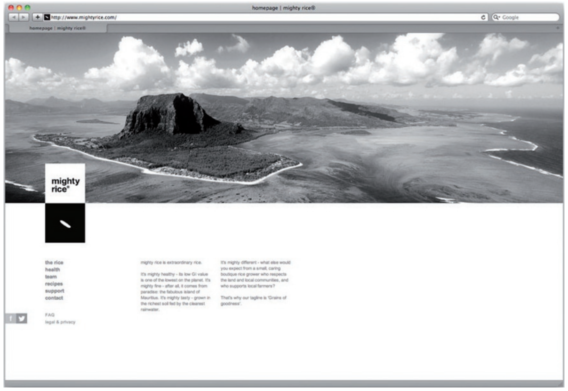
mighty rice®
Long grain white rice

Expanded space The perfect placement of a single white mark in a black square establishes the relationships for a greater extended system. Repetition with variation is demonstrated by the placement of the word treatment above the rice/box, reversing the angle of the rice by creating a triangle in the white space and enforcing the figure-ground reversal of the squares.

mighty rice®
mighty rice®

The packaging and display add texture in the choice of photography and in the use of the product itself.

The placement of the double box mark at the juncture of white space and image on the page echoes the packaging.

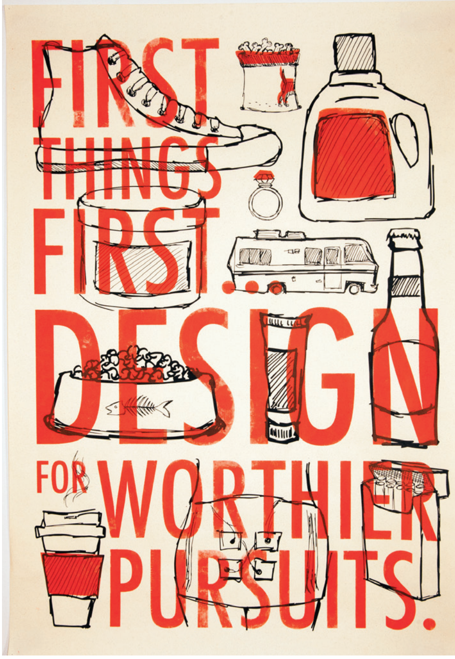

homepage | mighty rice®
http://www.mightyrice.com/
mighty rice®
the rice
health
team
recipes
support
contact
FAQ
legal & privacy

mighty rice is extraordinary rice.

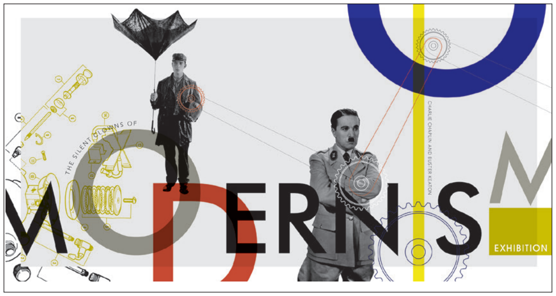
It's mighty healthy - its low GI value is one of the lowest on the planet. It's mighty fine - after all, it comes from paradise: the fabulous island of Mauritius. It's mighty tasty - grown in the richest soil fed by the clearest rainwater.

It's mighty different - what else would you expect from a small, caring boutique rice grower who respects the land and local communities, and who supports local farmers?

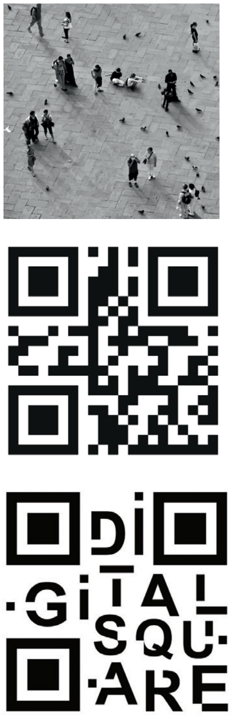
That's why our tagline is 'Grains of goodness'.


FIRST THINGS FIRST... DESIGN FOR WORTHIER PURSUITS.

Layers of color This composition relies on color contrasts and layering. The bright, translucent, red typography sits on top of black line drawings, allowing the shapes and illustrations to be seen through the written message. The impact of the black-and-white illustration is heightened with the addition of selective red coloring, tying the two layers of information together more intrinsically.


THE SILENT CLOWNS OF
MODERNISM
CHARLIE CHAPLIN AND BUSTER KEATON
EXHIBITION

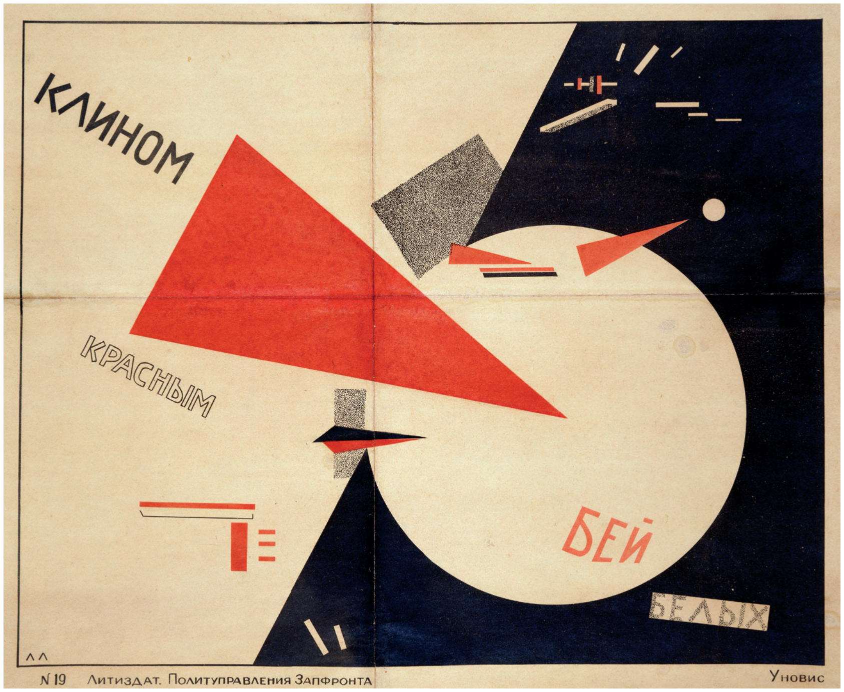
Make it new Simple shapes, lines, and circles suggest machines that defined an industrial society in this graphic illustration about the Modernist movement in arts and culture.


DiGiTAL SQUARE

Creative composition These three images show how the relationship of composition in photography can translate to graphic images and, in this case, to the development of a logo.

between positive and negative space, and to explore this in basic compositional studies, before moving on to more complex designs. In general, negative space works to support the positive "image" in any given area (also called the picture plane). To create a more considered and effective composition, control the relationship between positive and negative elements, and recognize the effect each has on the other.

White space can create tension or contrast, or can add the welcome open space needed to reflect on complex, visually active, and textural images. You can easily see the effects of open space on the overall feel



Symbolism Dots, lines, and shapes can be used as powerful symbols in the right context. Artist El Lissitzky combined geometric shapes and a bold red, white, and black palette to create a strong political statement in *Beat the Whites with the Red Wedge*, 1919. The sharp red triangle of the Bolshevik army is invading and dividing the white circle in this graphic statement on the Russian Civil War.

of a composition by altering the ratio of positive to negative. If you place a single dot in the center of a relatively large square of white, far from disappearing, the dot becomes more important. This is because the expanse of white space highlights and focuses attention on the dot itself. You can also actively encourage ambiguity between picture elements and background. For example, a particular group of forms can come together to support each other and compete in such a way that the (normally negative) space is given form by the positive elements, as in figure-ground relationships (see page 36).

Dots and lines

A dot exists as a mark, on its own, as a point in space, and it can also be the start of a line. Many points together start to set up a rhythm or a pattern that, depending on uniformity, repetitiveness, scale, or quantity, can suggest regularity or variation, and can express tense or relaxed sensibilities.

A line is a pathway between any two points. It can be straight, curved, thick, thin, horizontal, diagonal, jagged, solid, gestural, or broken. Soft, sensuous lines imply tranquility and harmony, whereas sharp, zigzagged lines invoke discordance and tension. Two converging lines might imply a point disappearing in the distance, and can suggest the illusion of three dimensions in a two-dimensional space. Horizontal lines suggest open planes; vertical lines can suggest power and strength. Lines are elegant tools that imply motion, momentum, rhythm, and upward or downward movement, and are primary aids in establishing visual hierarchies and closure. Simply put, closure is the ability of the human brain to observe an incomplete circle and to perceive it as complete in our imaginations.

Look at the expressive qualities of the artist Franz Kline's strong, emphatic painted line, or Cy Twombly's wandering, fragile drawn and painted lines. Examine Wolfgang Weingart's use of line in typography as a way to structure information or Russian Constructivist Alexander Rodchenko's powerful use of red and black line. El Lissitzky and Piet Zwart also used lines emphatically and expressively in their work.

GLOSSARY

Balance: The deliberate placement of objects on a page.

Composition: The arrangement of elements or parts of a design (text, images) on the page.

Consistency: The considered selection of design elements that have similar attributes.

Contrast: Obvious differences in elements in a composition; size, form, color, and weight.

Element: One small part of a composition, such as a point or line, an image, a letter, or a word.

Line: A continuous form of connection between two points (“___”).

Negative space: The white or colored area around an element—for example, a margin of a page.

Point: A dot on a page, such as a period (.).

Positive space: A form, image, or word printed or formed on the page.

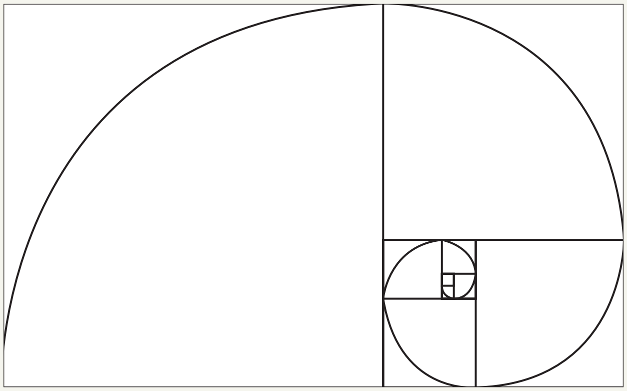
Proximity: The relationship of one object to another.

Repetition: The repeated use of select design elements within the same composition.

Repetition with variation: The alteration of selected aspects of a repeated element.

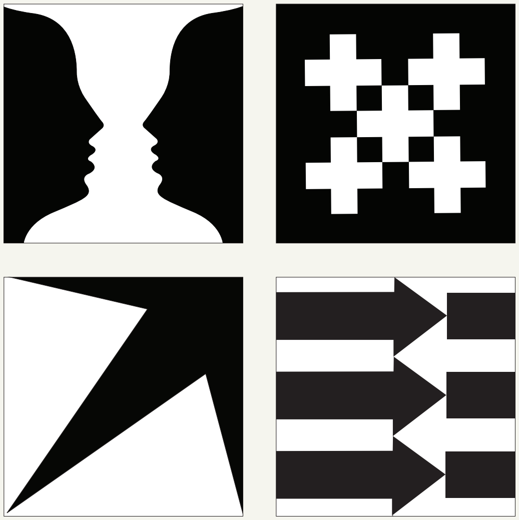
White space: The open space surrounding a positive image that defines shape and directs hierarchy.

SEE ALSO: FORM AND SPACE, P36



Fibonacci spiral
Each time a square is taken from the section, a smaller rectangle remains with the same proportions as the original. The spiral (also known as the golden ratio) can be used to create a proportional and harmonious composition.

Tricks on the eye
Figure-ground relationships produce different effects that confuse the eye. For example, the Rubin vase (top left) relies upon a visual confusion between figure and ground, so that the eye sees either faces or a vase.



PART 1 | PRINCIPLES
CHAPTER 2 | FUNDAMENTALS OF COMPOSITION
MODULE 2 | **FORM AND SPACE**

In learning to create meaningful compositions, it is important to understand the role of visual perception (the way our eyes and brains make sense of what we see) and its role in visual communication.

Whether consciously or not, our eyes are constantly supplying information to our brain, which processes and makes sense of that visual input. Being able to control that process and understand how it works is crucial. Good design thinking requires an understanding of how the relationship between visual elements affects the way we perceive them, as well as an understanding of how to control and exploit them.

Figure and ground

A form is always experienced in relation to the space it occupies and to other forms that may be present in the format. We call this the figure-ground relationship (where "figure" refers to any object in a given space and "ground" refers to the background, or space in which that object is seen). Another way to talk about this relationship is in terms of negative and positive space. Visual elements are always seen in relation to a visual field, background, or frame. In other words, every form is seen in context and cannot be totally isolated.

Generally speaking, a form is considered to be positive and the space around it negative. The space within a format (the ground) is an important element of any design and not just something left over once a form is placed on it: it matters within the overall design, since the ground affects the form and vice versa. Usually, we tend to notice the form before we see the ground, or what is placed in a space before we see the space itself. However, a well-known example of where this relationship becomes confused is drawn from Gestalt psychology. "Gestalt" is a German word meaning "essence or shape of an entity's complete form." Look at the Rubin vase (left), where the effect depends on whether we see the form as the white element, with the ground as the black, or see the black shapes as the form.

GLOSSARY

Closure: The ability of the human brain to observe an incomplete circle and to perceive it as complete.

Gestalt psychology: A theory that suggests that the mind perceives and organizes holistically and finds patterns in that which appears to be unconnected.

Ground: The page, surface, or area in which the design will be placed.

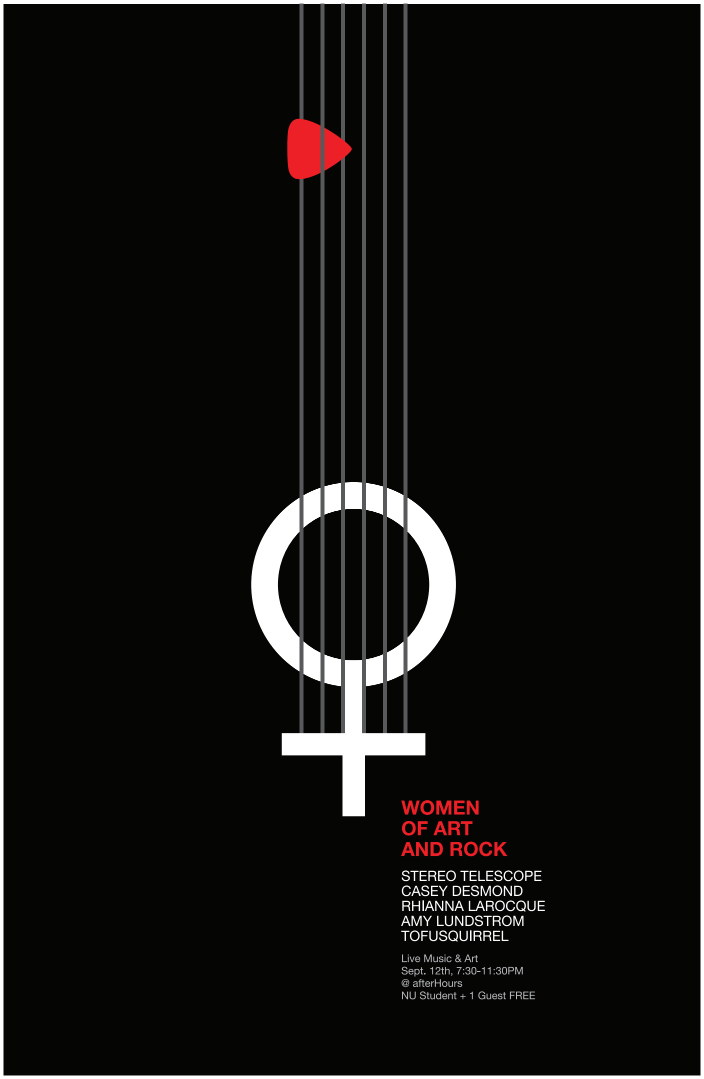
Law of closure: The mind creates a solid object on the page from suggestions of shapes and placement and proximity of elements.

The law of closure

Another phenomenon drawn from Gestalt psychology is the law of closure, which argues that we tend to "close" or complete lines or objects that are not, in fact, closed. This can be a useful device in design, and is related to figure and ground, since it relies on our ability to collapse the space between foreground and background. It is also a primary tool in directing a viewer's eye through a composition in the designer's intended sequence.

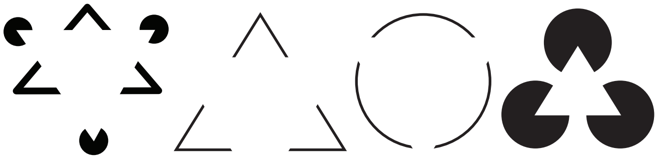
The rule of thirds

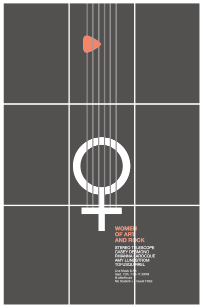
The rule of thirds says that most compositions become more dynamic when divided into thirds vertically and/or horizontally, with important elements placed within those thirds. Dividing a composition in half will halt the closure and keep the viewer's eye centered on the halfway point, especially if an object is placed at the exact center point. The rule of thirds ensures movement on the page, and actively engages positive and negative space in the visual dialog. The rule of thirds applies to graphic design for print, web, and motion graphics and applies equally to framing for photography, film, and video.



Negative as positive Using principles of negative space and figure-ground reversal, typographer John Langdon's painting directs the viewer's eye to decode two words in one, "you" and "me."

Gestalt law of closure Examples of the law of closure demonstrate the ability of the brain to complete incomplete forms and, consequently, continue to move around the complete form. In page design, or any composition, it will keep the viewer's attention on the design at hand and move the eye around a page, package, poster, or sign.

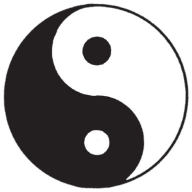


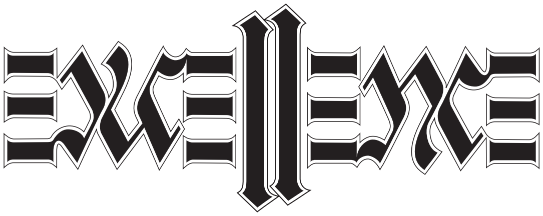


Thirds Beautifully placed, simple geometrics and lines send a message of music in this dynamic example of the rule of thirds. The composition divides horizontally and vertically, with the placement of the most critical imagery right in the center. Accent color in the upper and lower thirds keeps the viewer moving between the two spots, lengthening the observation time.

MODULE 3 SYMMETRY/ASYMMETRY

Symmetry in design refers to a spatial relationship between elements, and specifically to a situation where the elements in a layout are centered, having equal space to the left and right or above and below them, a mirror image on either side. The second meaning of symmetry is more general, and refers to a sense of harmony, or balance, which in turn is seen to reflect beauty. Symmetry carries associations of perfection, tradition, order, and rationality and peace.





Designing without symmetry

In asymmetrical design (without symmetry), elements are not centered, but utilize the whole format, creating dynamic compositions that play with scale, contrast, space, and tension between elements. Negative space is usually less passive in asymmetrical design, and becomes easily evident as a part of the design. Asymmetry is generally associated with fewer rules and limits, and more expressive possibilities. However, each kind of composition has its place, and the important thing is to learn how to identify when it is appropriate to use one or the other. While asymmetrical design may seem less rigid, it is crucial to spend time learning how asymmetry activates elements in a given space, and to carefully control the effects you want to achieve rather than randomly placing elements in a design.

Choosing symmetry or asymmetry

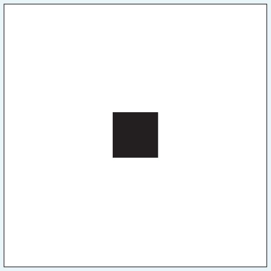
Similar questions arise in any design you undertake. How should the space be divided? How should the subject matter occupy the space? Each decision you make on placement will affect the emotion of the design. A symmetrical composition makes for a calmer, more peaceful work, while something more dynamic can be achieved if the elements are arranged asymmetrically. Symmetry tends toward balance, and lack of movement, while asymmetry injects movement and spatial tension into a design.

In harmony The ancient Chinese duality symbol for "yin" (black) and "yang" (white) is perhaps the most famous example of perfect symmetry, each shape being a reversed mirror of the other.

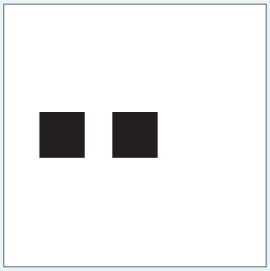
Typographic symmetry Beautifully mirrored hand-drawn letterforms produce this symmetrical ambigram, which reveals the word "excellence" in exactly the same way when turned upside down.

Testing the theory

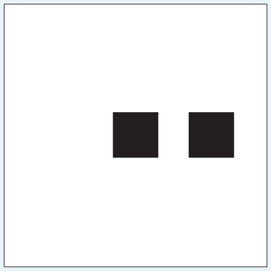
In these examples, various effects are achieved by simple variation of the position of the square within a stable frame.



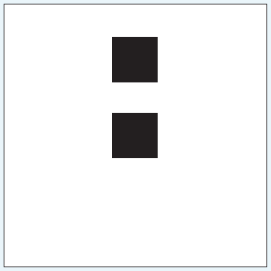
1 Balance
The centered square is stable or static, as the space around the square is equal on all sides.



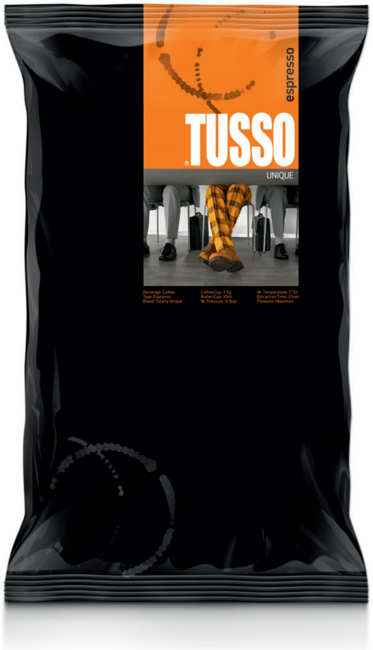
2 Movement to the left
When a second square is introduced, visual forces develop. There is a sense that the squares are moving left.



3 Movement to the right
Changing the position of the two squares suggests movement to the right.



4 Upward movement
The position of the two squares hints at movement upward.


espresso
TUSSO
UNIQUE

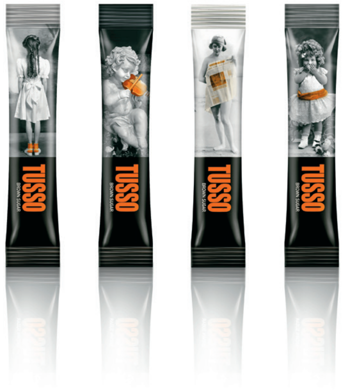
GLOSSARY

Asymmetry: A composition where elements are juxtaposed and do not mirror the other forms on the page.

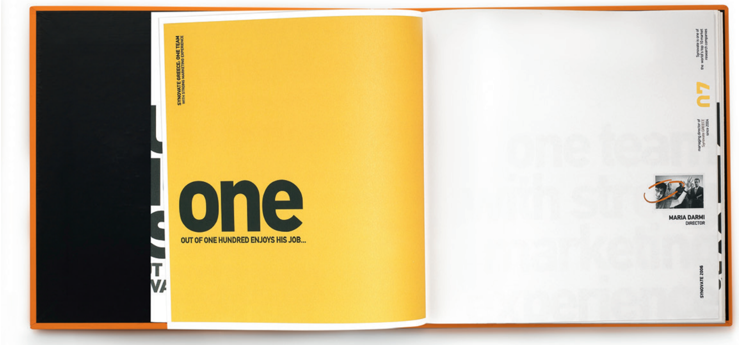
Symmetry: A composition where elements are balanced or mirrored on a page.

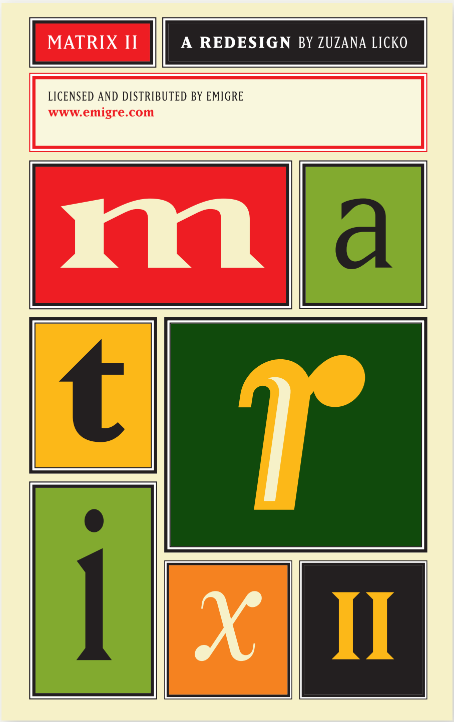
Asymmetry Placement of the image slightly to the right on the package is balanced nicely by the ghosted graphic on the lower left, providing balance and adding a bit of motion.

Symmetry Perfect symmetry is in place on the smaller packages, with a nod toward the motion associated with asymmetry addressed in the placement of spot color in the photos.


TUSSO
TUSSO
TUSSO
TUSSO

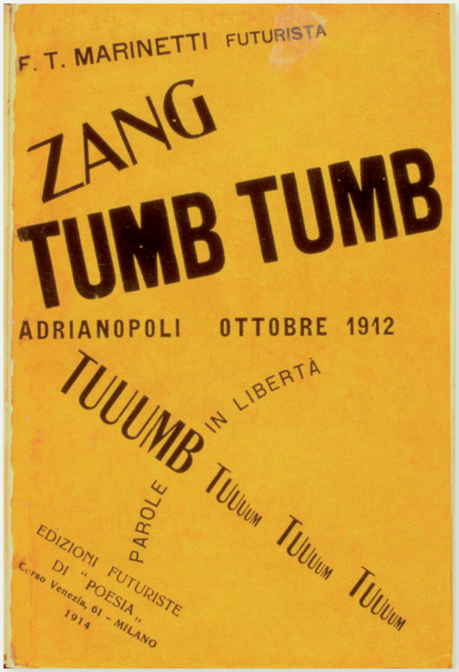
Different but equal Equal weight is represented on opposite sides of this clean publication design composition. Both are aligned to the far edge of their respective sides, and the primary information on either side occupies about the same amount of space.


one
OUT OF ONE HUNDRED ENJOYS HIS JOB...
07
MARIA DARMI
DIRECTOR


MATRIX II
A REDESIGN BY ZUZANA LICKO
LICENSED AND DISTRIBUTED BY EMIGRE
www.emigre.com
m
a
t
r
i
x
II

Symmetry in asymmetry Perfectly centered letterforms create symmetry within an active asymmetrical composition. The contrasts in placement and color create visual rhythm in this dynamic composition.

Zang Tumb Tumb, by F. T. Marinetti in 1919, uses creative asymmetrical typography to express the sounds of battle. In typography, "onomatopeia" refers to the use of type to express sounds in a literal way.


F. T. MARINETTI FUTURISTA
ZANG
TUMB TUMB
ADRIANOPOLI OTTOBRE 1912
TUUUMB
IN LIBERTÀ
PAROLE
TUUUM
TUUUM
TUUUM
EDIZIONI FUTURISTE DI "POESIA"
Corso Venezia, 61 - MILANO
1914

PART 1 | PRINCIPLES
CHAPTER 2 | FUNDAMENTALS OF COMPOSITION

MODULE 4 | BASIC PRINCIPLES OF DESIGN LAYOUT

The term "layout" refers to the organization of disparate material that makes up the content of a design. Well-designed visual communications present information in a logical, coherent way, and make the important elements stand out. Basic principles of good composition are of the upmost importance in the process, and a thoughtful approach to the delivery of the material is, as always, the designer's first consideration.

The use of a grid system and consistently styled design elements helps the reader to absorb information in a visually pleasing way, and enhances the communication of the content. Good composition in layout design is dependent on the grid, and there are many configurations to choose from.

Practical factors

There are three basic stages in beginning any graphic design project. First, the designer receives a brief from the client, usually establishing what material should be included and the format for the project. This involves a combination of text or copy (main text, display copy [headings], boxes or sidebars, captions) and images (photographs, illustrations, maps, diagrams). The brief should also indicate the desired look or "feel" of the work, which in turn will depend on the target audience. Should the layout look authoritative? Should it be densely packed with information? Does the message warrant a lean and structured design, with lots of white space? If the brief is vague, schedule time with your client to ask the right questions and help define the goals of the design.

Second, you will need to consider the format and budget. If there are many pictures and extensive copy for a small space, this will affect the look of the layout. Agreement should be reached on hierarchies within the copy; an editor may already have labeled their headings "A," "B," "C," and so on, to indicate their relative importance. Such elements can be indicated typographically for emphasis, through differences in type size, weight, form, and choice of color. Determine how many colors will be used. Beautiful design work can be created with a limited palette or with a full range of inks and effects. The number of colors used will affect a print production budget, so find out before you begin to conceptualize a project for press. If the project is hosted online, your palette is free, but certain colors are easier to read on screen than others. For website design, see pages 144–187.

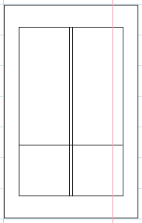
Grids

The third stage involves organization. In print-based work and web design this means developing a grid system, in which various elements can be placed within a ready-made structure that underpins the entire design. The grid enables the layout of columns, margins, and areas for text and image. A well-designed grid allows for some flexibility of placement on individual pages while providing an underlying system that gives visual coherence across a series of pages. This is obviously crucial in any kind of editorial work, including books and magazines, but certainly applies to well-designed website pages, where some elements stay the same and others change.

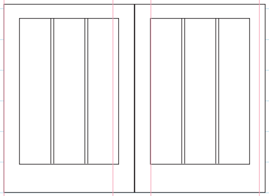
A grid system should never restrict creativity; working within a structured format will offer many excellent opportunities to break the rules, but it's best to learn them first. If you are having issues, turn the grid off, play with the composition and, when happy, turn the grid back on and align your design to it.

➔ Divide and conquer

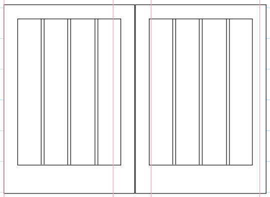
Organizing information on a page meaningfully is critical to the information transfer, especially when handling large amounts of text. There are many ways to divide the page and the choice should be a consideration of the type of design work, the format of the viewing platform, and the amount of information to be presented on each page or sub-division.



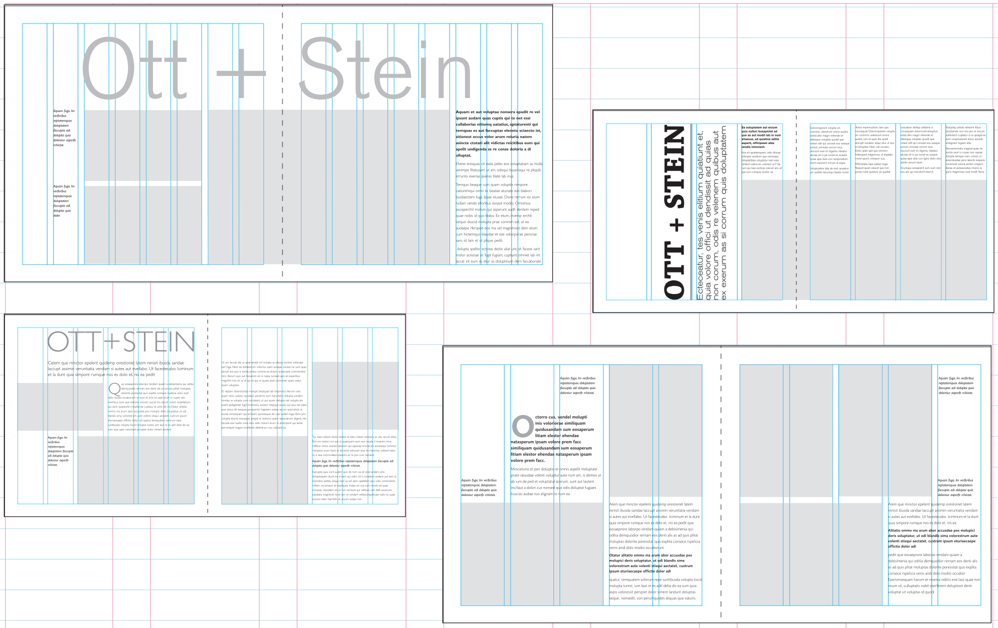
Individual units of equal size, separated by equal margins top and bottom, form a system perfect for compositions with many images. The units can be combined in any number for larger images or columns of text.



Three columns works well for mid-range amounts of text. The designer can use any given column in any system for added white space and can divide the page asymmetrically with text and image in this three-column system.



A four-column system begins to add more flexibility for variation in placement. The symmetrical division will add order, if desired, and added control in the overall system. A larger margin at the bottom of the page is particularly important in book and publication design as it makes the text more accessible/easier to read.



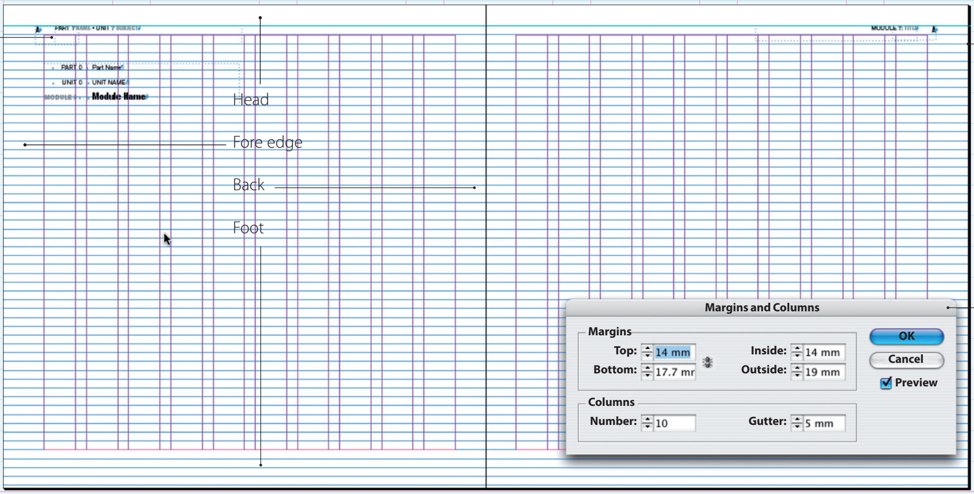
Flexibility Many variations of the layout can be explored as thumbnail sketches, before committing. Here, you can see the kind of flexibility a simple grid provides, giving indications of structure without limiting creativity.

Checklist for beginning a layout

- Who is the target audience for the design?
- What different kinds of text will be included?
- Will there be photographs, illustrations, diagrams, or a combination of all three?
- How many colors can be used (the budget will affect this in print-based work)?
- What is the format and final size of the job (also related to budget)?
- What parts of the text need emphasizing?
- Is the client looking for a particular style of layout?

The top of the x-height of text blocks. No text (except for running heads/page numbers) would normally appear above this line

The baseline grid is based on the size of type and leading value of the main text used (the body text), and ensures that all text starts and ends at the same horizontal point



Margins and Columns

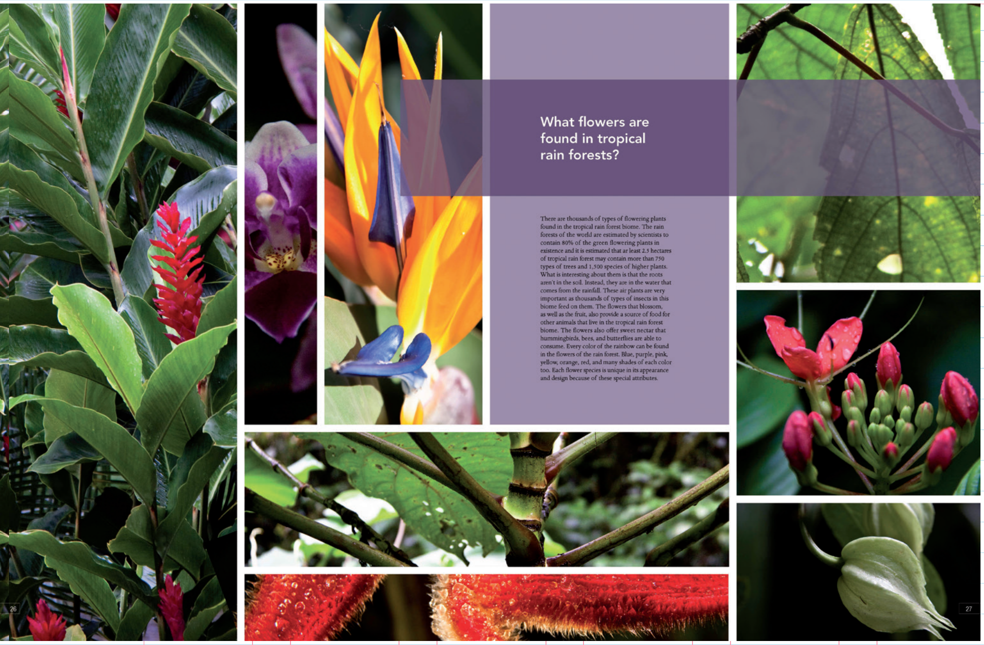
Margins
Top: 14 mm
Bottom: 17.7 mr
Inside: 14 mm
Outside: 19 mm

Columns
Number: 10
Gutter: 5 mm

☑ Preview

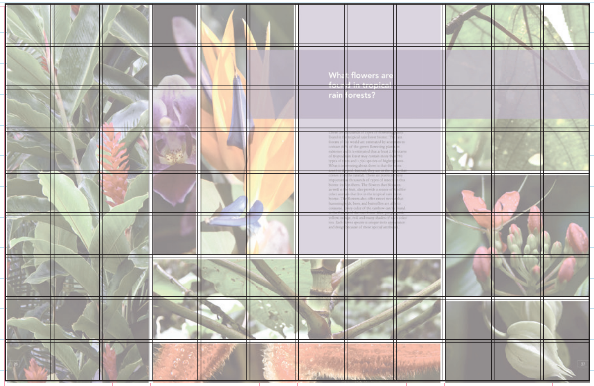
Here you can set the number of columns per page and the space (gutter) between each

Master grid Margins, columns, and non-changing typographic elements such as page numbers and running heads can all be placed on the master grid, which provides the design template. The grids have been printed over this module to show how they structure the design.



What flowers are found in tropical rain forests?

There are thousands of types of flowering plants found in the tropical rain forest biome. The rain forests of the world are estimated by scientists to contain 80% of the green flowering plants in existence and it is estimated that ar least 2.5 hectares of tropical rain forest may contain more than 750 types of trees and 1,500 species of higher plants. What is interesting about them is that the roots aren't in the soil. Instead, they are in the water that comes from the rainfall. These air plants are very important as thousands of types of insects in this biome feed on them. The flowers that blossom, as well as the fruit, also provide a source of food for other animals that live in the tropical rain forest biome. The flowers also offer sweet nectar that hummingbirds, bees, and butterflies are able to consume. Every color of the rainbow can be found in the flowers of the rain forest. Blue, purple, pink, yellow, orange, red, and many shades of each color too. Each flower species is unique in its appearance and design because of these special attributes.



Natural order This tight, modular grid system shows the expressive freedom that comes with control. A wonderful range of shapes and sizes is available to showcase photography and text with this six-column format, and you can sustain the viewer's interest in larger publications.

Margins, grids, and structure

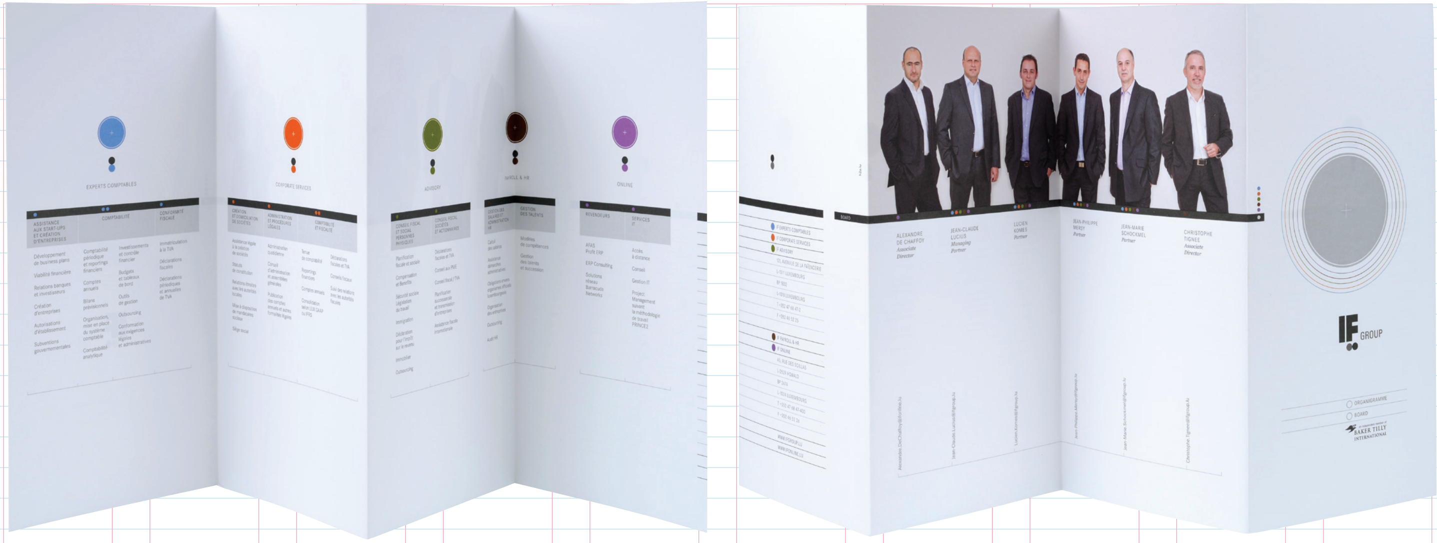
For any form of publication design you should begin by formatting a double-page spread that can then be applied to the entire publication. This is important because you need to see how the verso (left-hand page) relates to the recto (right-hand page) and judge how well they balance. Established practice in book design suggests that the back (inner margin) should be half the fore edge (outside margin), and the foot (bottom margin) greater than the head (top margin). These rules should ensure a balance, with the type area sitting comfortably in the format. Remember that the eye will need to move from one page to another, so the gap, or gutter (the two back edges combined), should not be too large.

When establishing page margins, consider the material, the client, and the reader. For example, paperbacks tend to have tight margins to keep page numbers—and therefore costs—down, whereas heavily illustrated publications have generous margins and use white space effectively. Economic considerations play a part: brochures and promotional materials tend to have bigger budgets, so even more white space is possible.

The grid shows the layout of columns, margins, and areas for main text, captions, and images; it also shows the position of repeating heads (running heads) and page

Variation Spreads from the same publication showcase the system's flexibility, adding blocks of color, half-page photography, translucent color overlays, and highlighted inserts, all while remaining faithful to the boundaries of the grid system.

SEEDS & FRUITS
PLANTS
FLOWERS
Introduction
What plants grow in tropical rain forests?
Leaves



numbers. These elements normally stay the same over a series of pages.

After drawing your double-page spread, you can prepare some layout roughs: these can be small thumbnails or half-sized visuals in which your first ideas are sketched out. This preliminary thinking time is key in the page-design process; it's where you make important decisions about the composition of pages and the organization of material. Preliminary sketches can then be transferred to the computer and several variations quickly produced, based on the main grid. It takes less time to sketch ideas than to create designs directly on screen. Remember, the computer is simply a tool; it cannot think for you, nor can it generate ideas. With initial sketches, the imaginative designer can fully explore ideas and options before moving to the production phase.

Using a grid

The grid divides the available type area into proportioned units, providing an overall visual structure and helping to unite all visual elements. The most basic grid structure—used primarily for text-based material such as business reports or novels—is that of a single column. The width should relate to legibility, 8 to 10 words or 60 to 72 characters per line is usually considered optimum.

With complex layouts, in which text, images, diagrams, and captions must be integrated, a more sophisticated horizontal and vertical grid is needed. Grid systems comprising between three and six columns enable you to use all kinds of elements. The more units used, the more flexibility you have to accommodate smaller pieces of copy such as captions, longer measures such as section openers, and displayed material. Never simply follow your computer's default settings for columns, but decide on your own.

Ideally, a grid should have some vertical controls, both for structure down the page and for order to the overall design. Give headings, subheadings, captions, and page numbers set positions for continuity. Finally, be flexible. After two or three spreads the grid may seem too rigid, so adjust it. Grids should not be restrictive, but provide structure while giving rich compositional variations to spreads.

Form and function

Consider the format style and the user experience when you select a grid system. If the content information can be neatly divided into components, it may suggest the use of a particular fold that will help to display the information in a logical sequence. The tall, slender accordion fold on the brochure above adds elegant white space and repeats the form in the photo.

SEE ALSO: AUDIENCES, MARKETS, AND CONCEPTS, P24

STYLES OF LAYOUT, P44

PACE AND CONTRAST, P46

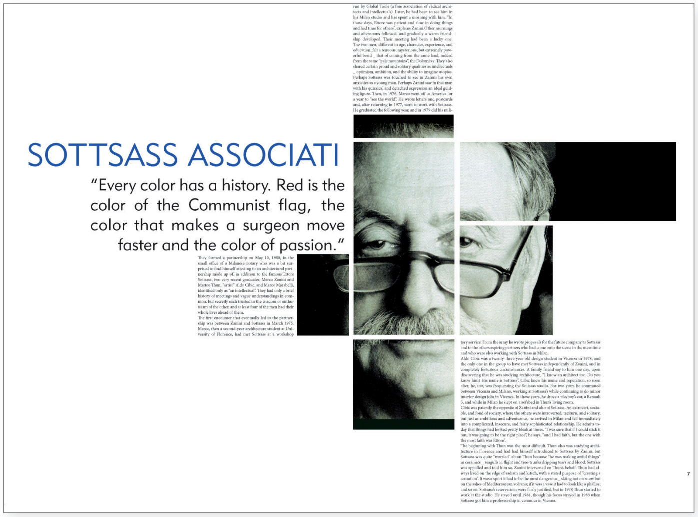
SIZE AND FORMAT, P50

TYPOGRAPHIC EMPHASIS AND HIERARCHY, P78

PART 1 | PRINCIPLES
CHAPTER 2 | FUNDAMENTALS OF COMPOSITION

MODULE 5 | STYLES OF LAYOUT

In simple terms, page design, or layout, can be divided into two basic styles: symmetrical and asymmetrical. In broad terms, symmetrical style is a traditional approach in which design is structured around a central axis. This type of layout has its origins in the earliest printed books, which, in turn, borrowed their layout from handwritten manuscripts of the medieval era. Asymmetrical style is non-centered, dynamic, and associated with 20th-century modernism and contemporary design.


SOTTSASS ASSOCIATI

"Every color has a history. Red is the color of the Communist flag, the color that makes a surgeon move faster and the color of passion."

Symmetrical style

Traditionally, symmetrical layouts are most commonly seen on title pages of books, where each line of type is centered above the others. Part of the tradition is also the use of serif typefaces, often set in letter-spaced capitals with, perhaps, the addition of an ornament or printer's flower.

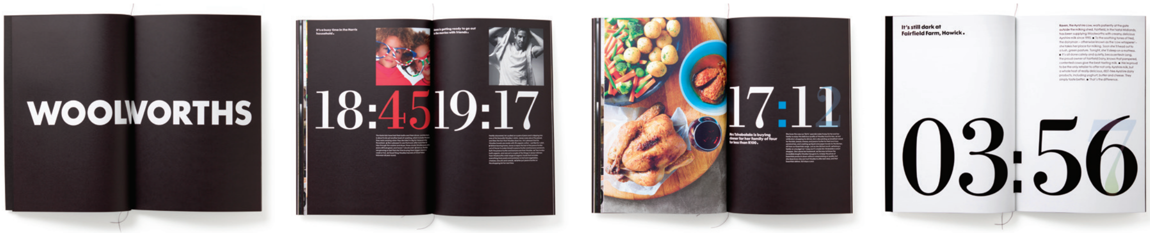
Decorative borders and the addition of decorative elements became more popular in the 15th and 16th centuries, but until the 1920s most publications were designed with symmetrical formats. Achieving a balanced-looking composition within a symmetrical design is not as easy as it sounds. Type size must be carefully judged, and spacing between each line considered, since certain information belongs in the same typographic unit and should be grouped accordingly. Fine-tuning horizontal line space is critical. These judgments must be made while maintaining balance and beautiful composition. For some superb examples of symmetrical typography, see the work of Aldus Manutius, the Dolphin Press, and the Venetian printers from the late 15th century.

The asymmetrical revolution

Asymmetrical layouts can be traced back to the 1920s and 1930s, in particular to the German school, the Bauhaus. Artists such as Kurt Schwitters and Theo van Doesburg experimented with layouts based on an off-centered axis, creating tension and dynamism. In this style, type is primarily ragged left; ragged-right setting is kept to a few lines, as Western cultures read left to right. Other predominant designers to note are Armin Hofmann, Herbert Bayer, Wim Crouwel, and the work of Josef Müller-Brockmann.

The modernist movement also rejected ornament, and sans-serif typefaces, with their clean lines and modernity, were the popular faces of the school. The work of the Bauhaus and their stylistic descendents, such as the Swiss typographers of the 1950s and 1960s, favors sans-serif faces and often completely

Asymmetrical page design Justified blocks of text are important design elements of the modular grid system in this asymmetrical page design. The unusual division of the photographic image elevates the grid system itself to a central design element and, as the margins become lines, shows the influence of the Constructivist movement.



Balance The symmetrical design system of these pages allows large display typography in different styles, both sans serif and serif, to divide the pages and play a central part as design elements in the compositions.

lowercase headlines. Rules, in a number of weights, are used as distinctive features in color and in black and white, adding dynamic movement to the compositions.

Another amazing typographer, whose work over a long career shows both styles well, is Jan Tschichold. Early on he was heavily influenced by the modernist philosophy of the Bauhaus, and is considered a pioneer of the asymmetric revolution. He later changed direction, rejecting the hard-line approach advocated in his book *Asymmetric Typography.* Tschichold returned to the frequent use of centered, serif typography, but continued working in both styles.

Integrating styles

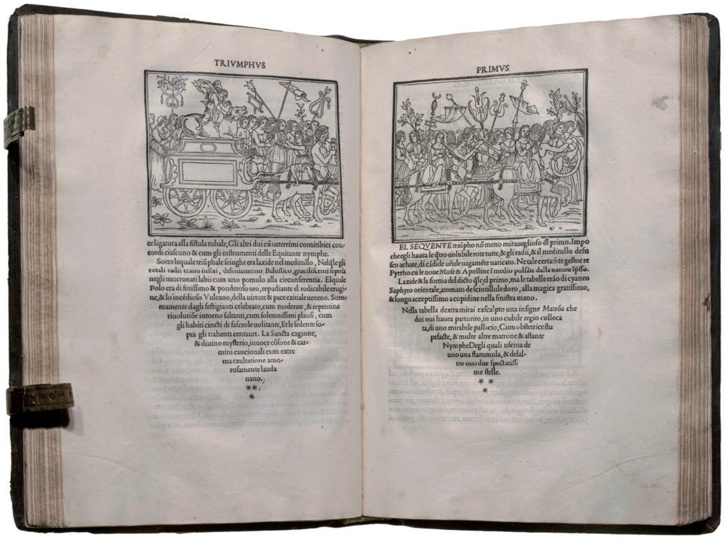
Contemporary designers often integrate both theories of spatial arrangement and select the style to suit the project. Contemporary typographers, like Philippe Apeloig, also use both in their search for visual solutions. As a designer you need to understand both styles, and their historical precedents and contexts, so that your selections and design decisions are based on knowledge rather than guesswork. Read as much about graphic design history as you can, and follow the philosophy of Jan Tschichold: use both styles, but understand that mixing them needs to be undertaken with caution. Research and experimentation will be your best guides. Keep your options open, and be flexible and fearless in reaching appropriate solutions.

⊕ **SEE ALSO:** SYMMETRY/ ASYMMETRY, P38

BASIC PRINCIPLES OF DESIGN LAYOUT, P40

SIZE AND FORMAT, P50

Classically centered
The *Hypnerotomachia Poliphili,* printed by Aldus Manutius's Dolphin Press, Venice, in 1499, is an example of the highest art of Renaissance printing. Its symmetrical typography harmonizes with the wood-engraved illustrations.



本
生掛太陽
Introduction 6
1 Kosode Form 12
2 The Upper Class 22
3 Entertainers 32
4 The Common People 42
5 Modern Kimono 54
Glossary 64

The Nara Period

Combining styles
Inserts, short pages, and fold-outs create symmetrical and asymmetrical page designs and work in concert to evidence the decorative nature of pattern design in this book on the history of kimonos. The unusual combination is influenced by asymmetry in traditional Japanese art.

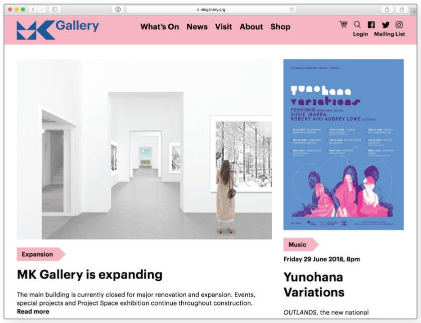
PART 1 | PRINCIPLES
CHAPTER 2 | FUNDAMENTALS OF COMPOSITION

MODULE 6 | PACE AND CONTRAST

Pace and contrast are vital qualities for catching and maintaining a reader's interest in graphic design: they provide variety, and set the rhythm and the mood. This is particularly evident in magazines and image-heavy books, where it is critical to be able to direct the eye to different pieces of information in a particular sequence. Think in cinematic terms: the audience should be given different experiences, have different reactions, and enjoy the complete experience from beginning to end. The digital age has created a world of multitasking citizens, and holding their attention over time can be a challenge.

In continuous text, the reader takes more time to cover information and is primed to read every word. In a highly integrated design—with panels, pictures, captions, quotes, and so on—there is more competition for the reader's attention. An article may be skimmed over, some pages will be scanned for pictures, or the reader might be seeking only a specific piece of information.

The pace of a publication will be dictated by the content and space available. Contrast is closely linked to pace and is an excellent tool for controlling the pace of an extended design system. You can create visual emphasis with large type and imagery, unusual



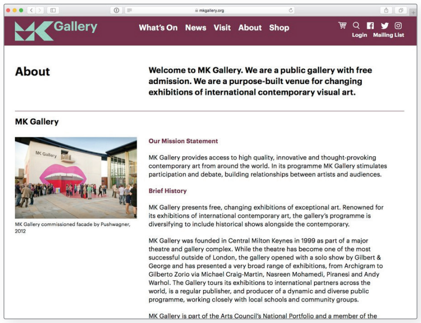
MK Gallery is expanding

The main building is currently closed for major renovation and expansion. Events, special projects and Project Space exhibition continue throughout construction.
Read more

Friday 29 June 2018, 8pm

Yunohana Variations

OUTLANDS, the new national



About

Welcome to MK Gallery. We are a public gallery with free admission. We are a purpose-built venue for changing exhibitions of international contemporary visual art.

MK Gallery

MK Gallery commissioned facade by Pushwagner, 2012

Our Mission Statement

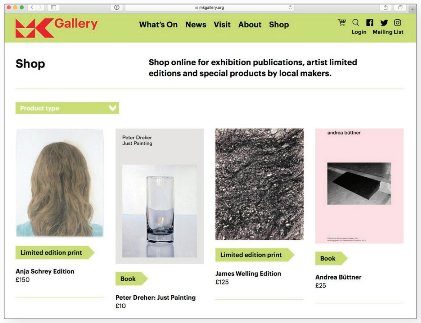
MK Gallery provides access to high quality, innovative and thought-provoking contemporary art from around the world. In its programme MK Gallery stimulates participation and debate, building relationships between artists and audiences.

Brief History

MK Gallery presents free, changing exhibitions of exceptional art. Renowned for its exhibitions of international contemporary art, the gallery's programme is diversifying to include historical shows alongside the contemporary.

MK Gallery was founded in Central Milton Keynes in 1999 as part of a major theatre and gallery complex. While the theatre has become one of the most successful outside of London, the gallery opened with a solo show by Gilbert & George and has presented a very broad range of exhibitions, from Archigram to Gilberto Zorio via Michael Craig-Martin, Nasreen Mohamedi, Piranesi and Andy Warhol. The Gallery tours its exhibitions to international partners across the world, is a regular publisher, and producer of a dynamic and diverse public programme, working closely with local schools and community groups.

MK Gallery is part of the Arts Council's National Portfolio and a member of the



Shop

Shop online for exhibition publications, artist limited editions and special products by local makers.

Anja Schrey Edition
£150

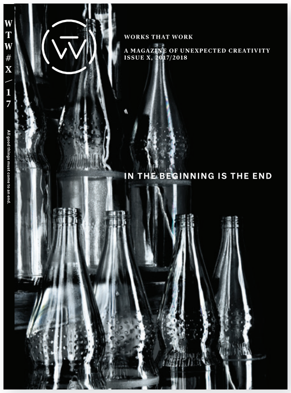
Peter Dreher: Just Painting
£10

James Welling Edition
£125

Andrea Büttner
£25

Controlling the pace The same principles of design apply to any platform, whether it is web, print, motion, or environmental. The website shown here maintains common elements in the positioning and hierarchy of information, while varying the pace of the pages with vivid color combinations and imagery. The viewer has more options to zoom in and link to new pages online than in print, so these visuals should be planned out as a fully extended system.

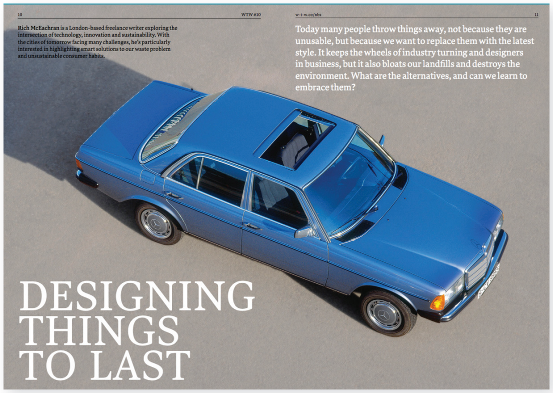
Keep it varied The publication *Works that Work* is comprised of a series of striking spreads. The strong full-bleed photography coupled with cropped and part-bleed imagery means that at the turn of each page the reader cannot predict the pace, and is therefore more engaged. This is also true of the typographic handling. While keeping to text systems, hierarchies, and grids, these spreads provide a beautiful balance of consistency and variety.



WORKS THAT WORK

A MAGAZINE OF UNEXPECTED CREATIVITY
ISSUE X, 2017/2018

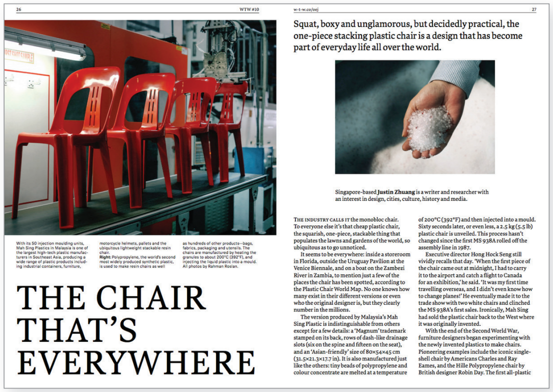
IN THE BEGINNING IS THE END



Rich McEachran is a London-based freelance writer exploring the intersection of technology, innovation and sustainability. With the cities of tomorrow facing many challenges, he's particularly interested in highlighting smart solutions to our waste problem and unsustainable consumer habits.

Today many people throw things away, not because they are unusable, but because we want to replace them with the latest style. It keeps the wheels of industry turning and designers in business, but it also bloats our landfills and destroys the environment. What are the alternatives, and can we learn to embrace them?

DESIGNING THINGS TO LAST



With its 50 injection moulding units, Mah Sing Plastics in Malaysia is one of the largest high-tech plastic manufacturers in Southeast Asia, producing a wide range of plastic products including industrial containers, furniture, motorcycle helmets, pallets and the ubiquitous lightweight stackable resin chair.
Right: Polypropylene, the world's second most widely produced synthetic plastic, is used to make resin chairs as well as hundreds of other products—bags, fabrics, packaging and utensils. The chairs are manufactured by heating the granules to about 200°C (392°F), and injecting the liquid plastic into a mould. All photos by Rahman Roslan.

THE CHAIR THAT'S EVERYWHERE

Squat, boxy and unglamorous, but decidedly practical, the one-piece stacking plastic chair is a design that has become part of everyday life all over the world.

Singapore-based **Justin Zhuang** is a writer and researcher with an interest in design, cities, culture, history and media.

THE INDUSTRY CALLS IT the monobloc chair. To everyone else it's that cheap plastic chair, the squarish, one-piece, stackable thing that populates the lawns and gardens of the world, so ubiquitous as to go unnoticed.

It seems to be everywhere: inside a storeroom in Florida, outside the Uruguay Pavilion at the Venice Biennale, and on a boat on the Zambezi River in Zambia, to mention just a few of the places the chair has been spotted, according to the Plastic Chair World Map. No one knows how many exist in their different versions or even who the original designer is, but they clearly number in the millions.

The version produced by Malaysia's Mah Sing Plastic is indistinguishable from others except for a few details: a 'Magnum' trademark stamped on its back, rows of dash-like drainage slots (six on the spine and fifteen on the seat), and an 'Asian-friendly' size of 80×54×45 cm (31.5×21.3×17.7 in). It is also manufactured just like the others: tiny beads of polypropylene and colour concentrate are melted at a temperature of 200°C (392°F) and then injected into a mould. Sixty seconds later, or even less, a 2.5 kg (5.5 lb) plastic chair is unveiled. This process hasn't changed since the first MS 938A rolled off the assembly line in 1987.

Executive director Hong Hock Seng still vividly recalls that day. 'When the first piece of the chair came out at midnight, I had to carry it to the airport and catch a flight to Canada for an exhibition,' he said. 'It was my first time travelling overseas, and I didn't even know how to change planes!' He eventually made it to the trade show with two white chairs and clinched the MS 938A's first sales. Ironically, Mah Sing had sold the plastic chair back to the West where it was originally invented.

With the end of the Second World War, furniture designers began experimenting with the newly invented plastics to make chairs. Pioneering examples include the iconic single-shell chair by Americans Charles and Ray Eames, and the Hille Polypropylene chair by British designer Robin Day. The first all-plastic cropping, sidebar information graphics, and full bleeds of image or color. Alternatively, you can create a quiet interval by having text-only spreads and open areas of white space.

Planning for pace

In order to achieve good pacing, with contrast and visual rhythm over a succession of pages, an overall plan is needed. Too much visual complexity can be counterproductive, but a succession of similar-looking spreads will become boring and you may lose your audience. One technique is to construct a flat plan showing the total number of pages in the publication. The flat plan can be drawn small (thumbnail size) in double-page spreads. It should contain page numbers, titles, and content. A quick survey of this plan gives you a broad overview of how your material will unfold (see page 29).

When you begin your design process, don't become too dependent on the images you create on screen. If the final result is meant to be in print, print your document often during the process and view your pages at the actual size of the finished product. Type sizes and weights, image quality and scale, and the rhythm, pacing, and transition from one spread to the next should be evaluated in the same format as the end user would see it. Check your pacing throughout the process and be flexible enough to initiate change where it is needed.

Creating momentum and rhythm

At the beginning of an article, or section of a book, create momentum and rhythm and set the mood for a receptive reader using all the composition skills you have learned. You can use pictures as a frieze, in a narrow sequence of images running along the top of the spreads that moves the reader across the pages. You can create various mosaic arrangements on the grid, using one large picture and a series of smaller ones. You can break out of the grid at strategic points. Depending on picture content, you can create vertical movement with narrow vertical images. Conversely, with landscape-format pictures you can create a strong sense of horizontal movement.

You can control the pace by juxtaposing black-and-white images with bright spots of color, or black-and-white with duotones, tritones, and specialty inks. Variation between narrow and wide text measures will add pace to your pages, and using your grid system creatively is essential. Strong background colors or reversed-out type at specific points can also create a sense of movement to change the speed and vary the rhythm. Be deliberate in your decisions and interpret your subject matter thoughtfully. Keep it quiet if the material calls for introspection, or pick up the pace and build excitement if appropriate.

UNFORGETTABLE
Things to do
before you die

28
MAKALU
Himalayas, Nepal

39
SAMARKAND
Uzbekistan

➔ **Pace and impact** The designer of the *Unforgettable* publication has treated each spread as a composition. A great deal of consideration needs to go into the visual impact after each turn of a page, as well as the overall flow through the publication. By varying the layout and the size and position of the images, while keeping to a structured grid system, the designer has provided enough variety to keep it interesting. Pace is varied through contrast in scale, the use of white space, large bleed photography, bold display type, and supporting text.

➕ **SEE ALSO:** BASIC PRINCIPLES OF DESIGN LAYOUT, P40

38 WTW #10

forbidding plain, they are a space where physical labour yields free-range food as a jackpot.

In any given area there are often many similar huts because people copy each other's styles. In Nova Scotia, rain comes in from the ocean, which can freeze the hut to the ice, so huts are small and easy to move. Saskatchewan has the country's highest per-capita ownership of pickup trucks, so huts there fit like Tetris blocks into truck beds. On Prince Edward Island, the popularity of spearfishing makes lightproofing a design criterion.

Huts carry various local names: ice shack, bobhouse, ice shanty, fish house, dark house or ice hut. Photographer Richard Johnson shot this study of types over ten years in Canada, although recreational ice fishing is also popular in Japan, Korea, Scandinavia and the northern USA.

Nobody knows when the ice huts first appeared, but on the walls of the hotel in Sainte-Anne-de-la-Perâde, Québec there are photographs from the 1940s showing horses dragging out ice shelters on sleds. The town has a village of rental huts that draw electricity from the mainland, lighting up the frozen lake at night.

A good ice hut balances weight and portability. Huts must be heavy enough to withstand strong winds, yet light enough to transport. The size of a person's pickup truck or sled base constrains scale. Ventilation is a must for releasing heater fumes. Reflectors improve visibility at night for snowmobiles driving by. Early in the

Anne Quito is a design critic and writer on design, architecture and visual culture. She has written several articles for *WTW*, most recently on the design of sport trophies in issue No. 9.
Photographer **Nadine Stijns** initiates multidisciplinary collaborative projects in the realm of design, fashion and autonomous art, playing with the medium's documentary nature.

RETURN

TO

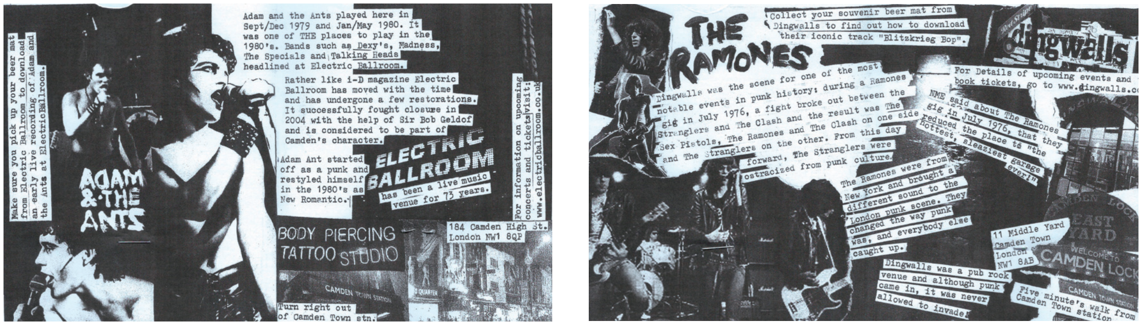
MAKER

Flexibility
The layout of the Gloria Cortina Mexico brochure portrays the flexibility in composition available in one publication design. Through a series of dynamic spreads and interesting and unusual image placement and treatment, this flexibility adds rhythm and motion to the book and sophistication to each image.

Printed publications

In publication design, pace and contrast are fundamental. There are more types of magazines—print or electronic—than any other category of design. They range from highbrow, political, economic, or philosophical journals to sporting, arts, satirical, and leisure and lifestyle titles. Each publication will require different solutions to the pacing, depending on content and readership. Magazine readers differ from book readers because they view the product in unpredictable ways and in differing environments. Some will be led by the cover images to the contents page, where they will select their articles in an ordered way; others will dip in and out of any part of the magazine; while others will always read certain sections in a peculiarly personal order. Magazine readers may view the publication at home, in a relaxed environment with no distractions, or they may pick up an issue in a waiting room or a public place. Engaged, entertained readers become loyal subscribers, so the visual should work with the content to transport the reader, like any good book. For a design to be memorable, visual interest should be present on every page and the editorial personality of the magazine should be evident at every turn. Designers use every tool, including pagination and wayfinding marks, to reinforce the style and mood of a publication. A true master of magazine layout is the American designer Alexey Brodovich, who worked primarily in the 1940s and 1950s. Bradbury Thompson also understood the importance of pace and contrast.

In illustrated books, change of pace is also required. Generally, readers behave in a relatively logical way, moving through the publication from start to finish. They, too, will dive in and out, but not to the same extent as magazine readers. In book design, economic factors also play a part. If plenty of pages are available, then you can introduce section openers and use lots of white space to create drama with headings and placement. Each book design should have a strong visual identity. If the spreads are too diverse, it can have a hazardous effect on the book and become confusing to the reader.


BODY PIERCING
TATTOO STUDIO
CAMDEN TOWN STATION
Red Stripe
EAST YARD
WELCOME TO CAMDEN LOCK
CAMDEN TOWN STATION

Make sure you pick up your beer mat from Electric Ballroom to download an early live recording of Adam and the Ants at ElectricBallroom.

ADAM & THE ANTS

Adam and the Ants played here in Sept/Dec 1979 and Jan/May 1980. It was one of THE places to play in the 1980's. Bands such as Dexy's, Madness, The Specials and Talking Heads headlined at Electric Ballroom.

Rather like i-D magazine Electric Ballroom has moved with the time and has undergone a few restorations. It successfully fought closure in 2004 with the help of Sir Bob Geldof and is considered to be part of Camden's character.

Adam Ant started off as a punk and restyled himself in the 1980's as New Romantic.

ELECTRIC BALLROOM has been a live music venue for 73 years.

For information on upcoming concerts and tickets visit: www.electricballroom.co.uk

184 Camden High St.
London NW1 8QP

Turn right out of Camden Town stn.

THE RAMONES

Collect your souvenir beer mat from Dingwalls to find out how to download their iconic track "Blitzkrieg Bop".

dingwalls

Dingwalls was the scene for one of the most notable events in punk history: during a Ramones gig in July 1976, a fight broke out between the Stranglers and The Clash and the result was The Sex Pistols, The Ramones and The Clash on one side and The Stranglers on the other. From this day forward, The Stranglers were ostracized from punk culture.

For Details of upcoming events and book tickets, go to www.dingwalls.co

NME said about The Ramones gig in July 1976, that they reduced the place to "the hottest, sleaziest garage ever!"

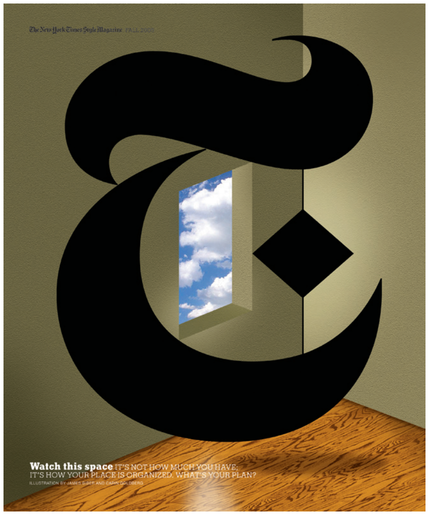
The Ramones were from New York and brought a different sound to the London punk scene. They changed the way punk was, and everybody else caught up.

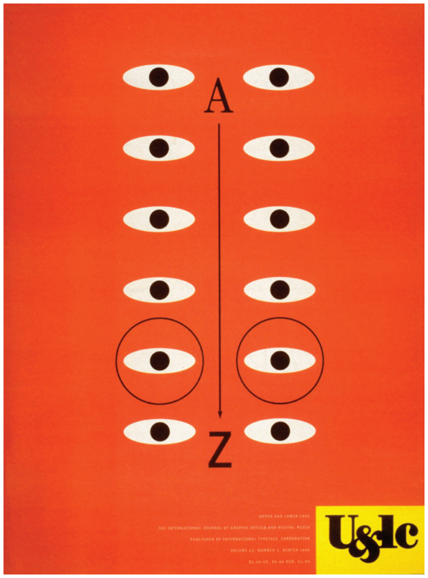
11 Middle Yard
Camden Town
London
NW1 8AB

Dingwalls was a pub rock venue and although punk came in, it was never allowed to invade!

Five minute's walk from Camden Town station

Breaking the rules
This alternative London guide takes inspiration from fanzines, where the traditional rules of graphic design are broken in return for a fast, rough, and dramatic esthetic. It is important that you understand the rules of layout and pace before deciding to break them.


The New York Times Style Magazine
Watch this space IT'S NOT HOW MUCH YOU HAVE; IT'S HOW YOUR PLACE IS ORGANIZED. WHAT'S YOUR PLAN?
ILLUSTRATION BY JAMES SIBER AND CARIN GOLDBERG


A
Z
UPPER AND LOWER CASE
THE INTERNATIONAL JOURNAL OF GRAPHIC DESIGN AND DIGITAL MEDIA
PUBLISHED BY INTERNATIONAL TYPEFACE CORPORATION
VOLUME 23, NUMBER 3, WINTER 1996
U&lc

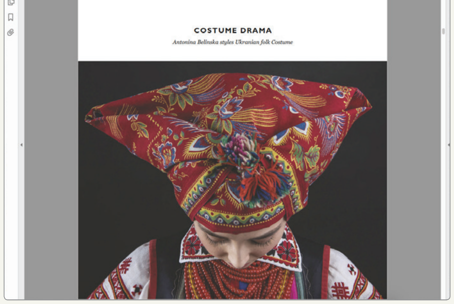
Sophisticated wit With humor and a touch of surrealism, Carin Goldberg's beautiful, iconic magazine covers for the *New York Times* and the typography magazine *U&lc* reflect contemporary culture through the designer's playful eye.

Digital publications

Digital magazines require different strategies; type and images interact much more immediately on screen. Imagery is much easier to manipulate and adapt to a variety of purposes and device formats. Some of the principles of print-based work may not apply directly to screen-based designs: one obvious difference is that, instead of turning pages, viewers scroll up and down for consecutive views of "spreads." Instead of using weight, style, or position for emphasis, type might move or a static image may click through to a video presentation. Page structure and the placement of graphic elements must reflect the function of the site.

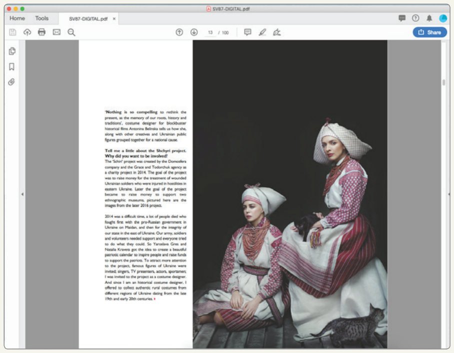
A new esthetic continues to develop hand in hand with digital technology that ties form and function. Ultimately, though, basic issues of pace and contrast for print still apply, in part, for screen. The designer must still navigate the viewer through the maze of available information and present the appropriate markers for way-finding. Due to the versatility and a different set of economic factors when designing digitally, it is important to challenge what can be done with digital publication design beyond what can be done in print. For example, most online newspapers are designed to the same space-saving specification and use flat information, which is rarely interactive, because their printed counterparts are used as templates. Digital publications offer a great opportunity to push what digital design could (and should) be.

Learning the basics of layout design from the model of print design is a stepping stone to the development of new ways of working in digital environments. The rules of good design should always be considered, regardless of format or media, and the designer should be able to apply them appropriately.



COSTUME DRAMA

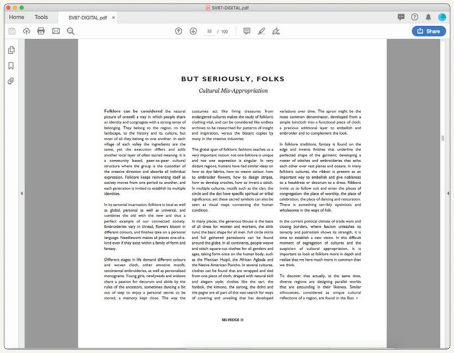
Antonina Belinska styles Ukranian folk Costume



'**Nothing is so compelling** to rethink the present, as the memory of our roots, history and traditions', costume designer for blockbuster historical films Antonina Belinska tells us how she, along with other creatives and Ukrainian public figures grouped together for a national cause.

Tell me a little about the Shchyri project. Why did you want to be involved?
The 'Schiri' project was created by the Domosfera company and the Grace and Todorchuk agency as a charity project in 2014. The goal of the project was to raise money for the treatment of wounded Ukrainian soldiers who were injured in hostilities in eastern Ukraine. Later the goal of the project became to raise money to support two ethnographic museums, pictured here are the images from the later 2016 project.

2014 was a difficult time, a lot of people died who fought first with the pro-Russian government in Ukraine on Maidan, and then for the integrity of our state in the east of Ukraine. Our army, soldiers and volunteers needed support and everyone tried to do what they could. So Yaroslava Gres and Natalia Kravets got the idea to create a beautiful patriotic calendar to inspire people and raise funds to support the patriots. To attract more attention to the project, famous figures of Ukraine were invited; singers, TV presenters, actors, sportsmen; I was invited to the project as a costume designer. And since I am an historical costume designer, I offered to collect authentic rural costumes from different regions of Ukraine dating from the late 19th and early 20th centuries. ▸



BUT SERIOUSLY, FOLKS

Cultural Mis-Appropriation

Folklore can be considered the natural picture of oneself; a way in which people share an identity and congregate with a strong sense of belonging. They belong to the region, to the landscape, to the history and its culture, but most of all they belong to one another. In each village of each valley the ingredients are the same, yet the execution differs and adds another local layer of often sacred meaning. It is a community based, peer-to-peer cultural structure where the group is the custodian of the creative direction and absorbs all individual expression. Folklore keeps reinventing itself as society moves from one period to another, and each generation is invited to establish its multiple identities.

In its sartorial incarnation, folklore is local as well as global, personal as well as universal, and combines the old with the new and thus a perfect example of our connected society. Embroideries vary in thread, flowers bloom in different colours, and finishes take on a personal language. Needlework makes all pieces one-of-a-kind even if they exist within a family of form and fantasy.

Different stages in life demand different colours and woven cloth, other emotive motifs, sentimental embroideries, as well as personalised monograms. Young girls, newlyweds and widows share a passion for decorum and abide by the rules of the ancestors, sometimes dancing a bit out of step to enjoy a personal secret to be stored, a memory kept close. The way the costumes act like living treasures from endangered cultures makes the study of folkloric clothing vital, and can be considered like endless archives to be researched for patterns of insight and inspiration, versus the blatant copies by many in the creative industries.

The global span of folkloric fashions teaches us a very important notion: not one folklore is unique and not one expression is singular. In very distant regions, humans have had similar ideas on how to dye fabrics, how to weave colour, how to embroider flowers, how to design stripes, how to develop crochet, how to invent a stitch. In multiple cultures, motifs such as the clan, the circle and the dot have specific spiritual or tribal significance; yet these sacred symbols can also be seen as visual maps connecting the human condition.

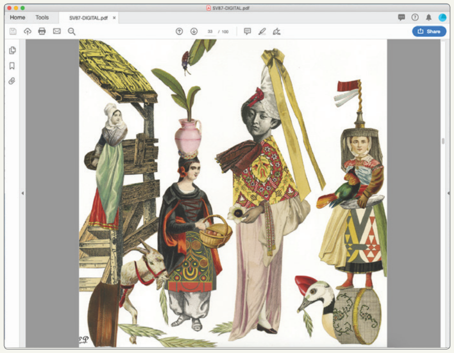
In many places, the generous blouse is the basis of all dress for women and workers, the slink tunic the basic shape for all men. Full circle skirts and full gathered pantaloons can be found around the globe. In all continents, people weave and stitch square-cut clothes for all genders and ages, taking form once on the human body, such as the Mexican Huipil, the African Agbada and the Native American Poncho. In several cultures, clothes can be found that are wrapped and tied from one piece of cloth, draped with natural skill and elegant style; clothes like the sari, the hanbok, the kimono, the sarong, the dohti and the pagne are all part of this vast search for ways of covering and unveiling that has developed variations over time. The apron might be the most common denominator, developed from a simple loincloth into a functional piece of cloth; a precious additional layer to embellish and embroider and to complement the look.

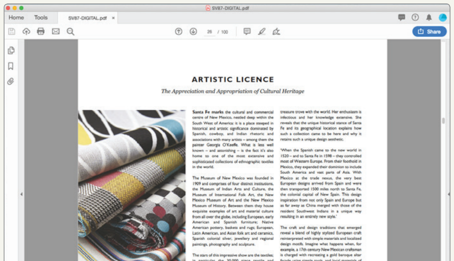
In folklore traditions, fantasy is found on the edge and invents finishes that underline the perfected shape of the garment; developing a roster of stitches and embroideries that echo each other over vast planes and oceans. In many folkloric cultures, the ribbon is present as an important way to embellish and give nobleness to a headdress or decorum to a dress. Ribbons invite us to follow suit and enter the places of congregation: the place of worship, the place of celebration, the place of dancing and restoration. There is something terribly optimistic and wholesome in the ways of folk.

In the current political climate of trade wars and closing borders, where fascism unleashes its tenacity and patriotism shows its strength, it is time to establish a new vision. In this difficult moment of segregation of cultures and the suspicion of cultural appropriation, it is important to look at folklore more in depth and realize that we have much more in common than we think.

To discover that actually, at the same time, diverse regions are designing parallel worlds that are astounding in their likeness. Similar silhouettes, considered as unique cultural reflections of a region, are found in the East ▸

SELVEDGE 30





ARTISTIC LICENCE

The Appreciation and Appropriation of Cultural Heritage

Santa Fe marks the cultural and commercial centre of New Mexico, nestled deep within the South West of America: it is a place steeped in historical and artistic significance dominated by Spanish, cowboy, and Indian rhetoric and associations with many artists – among them the painter Georgia O'Keeffe. What is less well known – and astonishing – is the fact it's also home to one of the most extensive and sophisticated collections of ethnographic textiles in the world.

The Museum of New Mexico was founded in 1909 and comprises of four distinct institutions, the Museum of Indian Arts and Culture, the Museum of International Folk Art, the New Mexico Museum of Art and the New Mexico Museum of History. Between them they house exquisite examples of art and material culture from all over the globe, including European, early American and Spanish furniture; Native American pottery, baskets and rugs; European, Latin American, and Asian folk art and ceramics, Spanish colonial silver, jewellery and regional paintings, photography and sculpture.

The stars of this impressive show are the textiles;

treasure trove with the world. Her enthusiasm is infectious and her knowledge extensive. She reveals that the unique historical stance of Santa Fe and its geographical location explains how such a collection came to be here and why it retains such a unique design aesthetic.

'When the Spanish came to the new world in 1520 – and to Santa Fe in 1598 – they controlled most of Western Europe. From their foothold in Mexico, they expanded their dominion to include South America and vast parts of Asia. With Mexico at the trade nexus, the very best European designs arrived from Spain and were then transported 1500 miles north to Santa Fe, the colonial capital of New Spain. This design inspiration from not only Spain and Europe but as far away as China merged with those of the resident Southwest Indians in a unique way resulting in an entirely new style.'

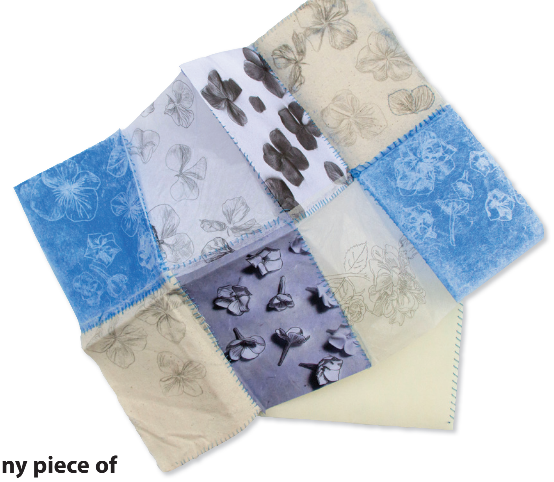
The craft and design traditions that emerged reveal a blend of highly stylized European craft reinterpreted with simple materials and localized design motifs. Imagine what happens when, for example, a 17th century New Mexican craftsman is charged with recreating a gold baroque altar

Complex systems *Selvedge* is a printed and digital magazine that promotes textiles and textile makers from around the world. Both its online and offline platforms have complex systems that highlight multiple pieces of information and visuals. Well-designed digital publications should have all the excitement and visual narrative of the printed page. In *Selvedge* the visuals take center stage. The bold colors and vivid detailing present expert editorial art direction at every swipe, scroll, or zoom.

99
Flake
Freshly made for You!

PART 1 | PRINCIPLES
CHAPTER 2 | FUNDAMENTALS OF COMPOSITION

MODULE 7 | SIZE AND FORMAT



Purposeful shapes The inspiration for this project was an old-fashioned ice-cream van, and the die-cut cover conceals a traditionally shaped booklet inside.

Size and format are important considerations in any piece of design. They are affected by budget, practical restraints, the format in which they are to be produced, and by the needs of the job. The experience the end user has while interacting with the materials will affect the type of response the material evokes. Print is an intimate medium that's meant to be viewed close to the body. The tactile qualities of printed media are evidenced by weight, surface texture, binding, gloss, matte, or metallic inks, foil stamps, and die-cut surfaces, all of which play a part in the personality of the product. Digital, on the other hand, is evidenced by user experience and depth of interactive engagement.

Book art Unusual formats can transform a simple design into conceptual art. An alternative binding, as well as unusual printing techniques or paper stocks, can be used to enhance the tactile user experience and reinforce the content in subtle ways.

Primary considerations

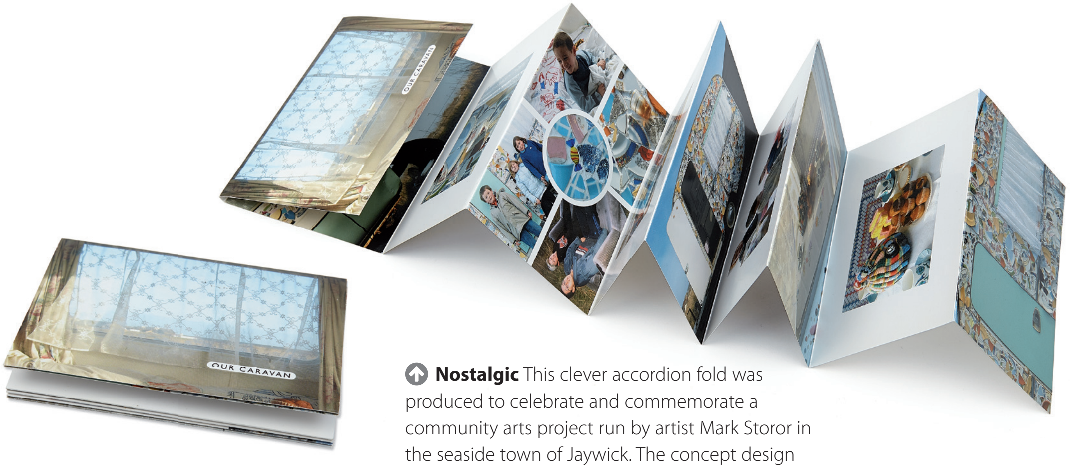
In deciding on format, the designer is often limited by external factors. Certain elements of a corporate identity package, such as letterheads, envelopes, forms, and websites, are usually a standard size; other factors, however, may also have to be considered. Cost issues loom large: can the size selected for printing be cut economically from a bigger sheet of paper or will there be unnecessary expensive waste? Carefully evaluate the sheet size with the number of copies required. Will the finished work have to be mailed out? If so, weigh a mock-up to estimate postage costs: a larger format may prove to be too expensive to send by post if you are printing thousands of impressions. Can the job be folded economically in relation to the grain of the paper? Work with your printer to find the most economical and environmentally sound solution, and determine your size and scale before starting the design process.

Content determines format

In book design, print or digital, format should be determined by purpose or nature, with the user in mind. Text-only books pose fewer problems than books with a heavy concentration of photographic or illustrative subjects. For continuous reading, a good point size in a readable, attractive font with adequate margins in play can help to determine the format as either portrait or landscape, and in paperbacks, which need to be both cheap and portable, point size is typically small. In illustrated books, the images should resonate the mood of the subject and a larger format book is

09.00/
10.00/
10.45/
11.00/
11.30/
12.45/
13.15/
15.45/
16.30/
17.30/
5 ΕΛΛΗΝΕΣ ΕΠΙΧΕΙΡΗΜΑΤΙΕΣ
ΕΠΕΝΔΥΟΥΝ ΣΤΗΝ ΕΛΛΑΔΑ
ΕΝΑΝΤΙΑ ΣΤΗΝ ΚΡΙΣΗ

Dramatic landscapes The horizon line in the two-page bleed photographic image determined the typographic sight line on the preceding page, and adds drama to the page design.



Nostalgic This clever accordion fold was produced to celebrate and commemorate a community arts project run by artist Mark Storor in the seaside town of Jaywick. The concept design and format mimicked a vintage-style folded postcard.

appropriate—but check your size in a mock-up version before you begin, to ensure the book won't become unwieldy. Illustrations and photographs do not necessarily lose information value if they are smaller than first anticipated, and there are benefits in making a product easier for the reader to handle. The largest formats are generally reserved for art and design subjects and museum catalogs, in which excellent-quality illustrations are central to the book's success. Digital publications are less of a concern as a user can zoom and navigate information slightly differently.

Whenever possible, content should determine format. Think about your subject matter and examine all available materials for inclusion before you determine the final format. If there are beautiful panoramic landscape views to be featured in the book, a horizontal or full-screen format may be your obvious choice.

Experiment in your initial layout sketches and determine the best way to showcase your materials to the greatest effect. If the subject matter calls for white space to be part of the design, be sure to anticipate the additional dimensions for your margins and gutters. Multilingual publications pose their own set of problems. It is probably best to try to accommodate two or three languages side by side to achieve a consistent flow of text and, if illustrated, to ensure that text references are on the same page or screen as pictures.

Although international standardization in paper sizes helps keep prices down, the same old formats can become boring. There are some inventive solutions, but be sure they fit the design concept of the publication.

Folds and binding

With smaller publications and brochures, folds can play a big part in enticing the reader into the subject matter. The esthetically pleasing square format is simply achieved by folding the sheet in a different way. Organizing copy to follow folds—whether rolling folds or concertina folds—creates a sense of fun and is an excellent way to entice the reader into the publication.

Simple binding ideas can also enhance the appeal of smaller publications and can be used inventively to add to the wayfinding of the content. You might consider trimming each spread a little shorter than the preceding one, giving the area at the end of the page a space for information graphics or subheads. An untrimmed fore edge makes for an attractively handcrafted feel, as does visible colored thread for the stitching. These ideas are easy to implement; they don't necessarily cost a lot and can make your designs different and memorable. Be sure to consider all aspects of the project as part of your design process from the very beginning: changing one or two elements will affect your other decisions as well, and may cause you to back up the process and redesign certain elements. Part of the fun of design work is in the discovery of inventive solutions, new materials, new mediums, and new combinations of tried-and-true techniques.

Take the time to consider the importance of your choices and remember that if you can see something, your client can, too. Every aspect of the project should be evaluated with a designer's eye, right down to the smallest detail.

GLOSSARY

Concertina folds: Folds in alternate directions.

French folds: Sheets of paper are folded in half, so that they are double thickness. The two folds are at right angles to each other and then bound on the edge.

Gatefold: A way of folding paper so that the outer quarters of a page are folded to meet in the center. The result works like symmetrical doors that open onto an inner page.

Paper grain: The direction of wood fibers that make up a piece of paper.

Perfect binding: Method similar to paperback binding, where loose sheets are encased in a heavier paper cover, then glued to the book spine. Edges are trimmed to be flush with each other.

Rollover folds: A way of folding a page so that successive folds turn in on themselves and the page is folded into a roll.

Saddle stitching: Binding method where sheets of paper are folded in the center, stitched together along the fold, then glued into the cover spine.

SEE ALSO: BASIC PRINCIPLES OF DESIGN LAYOUT, P40

STYLES OF LAYOUT, P44

PHOTOGRAPHY AND ILLUSTRATION, P56

MODULE 8 | IDENTITY AND EXTENDED SYSTEMS

Few things are designed to work as stand-alone pieces. Look at a successful branding: the logos and corporate identity, advertising campaigns, direct-mail campaigns, annual reports, websites, and social-media presence all have common design elements, binding them together and identifying them as part of the same brand. Look at the total content of any magazine or newspaper: the information changes, yet the publication looks consistent, issue after issue, and at a glance, we can easily and immediately identify our favorites on the shelf.

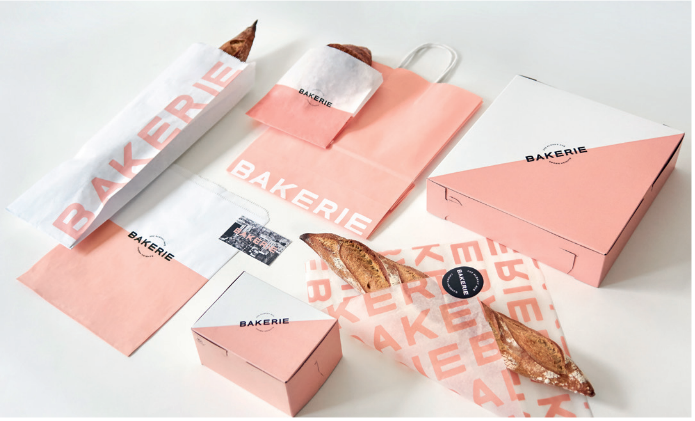
GLOSSARY

Identity: A unified, identifiable look for a product or organization.

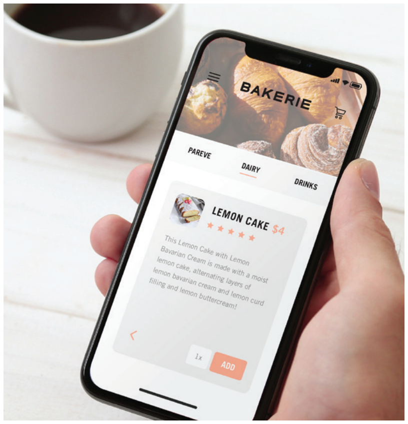
Patch: The space on a bookstore's shelf occupied by spines of books from the same series.

This brand identity is achieved through a coordinated design and effective design strategy that is fluid enough to allow for variation and change, but is consistent throughout. With newspapers and magazines, this can be achieved with strict rules. For example, major headlines will be set in one font and ranged left; secondary headlines in another font and centered; body text in yet another font with fixed point size, leading, and justification; feature articles in a bolder font with looser leading and alternate justification. These rules are never broken, but they should be comprehensive enough to allow for any situation while maintaining a consistent "look."

Authors may write more than one book, and publishers almost always use coordinated designs for their book covers. If a publisher is repackaging the back catalog of a bestselling author, they will use a coordinated strategy for the covers that allows for changes of color, image, and titling, but also enables book buyers to identify the titles as part of a set, or brand. Perhaps the unchanging element is the type, set in the same face, at the same size, and in the same position throughout. Or it could be the style of the photograph used—black and white, full color, abstract—or the illustration—pen and ink, painting, digital, collage.



BAKERIE
PAREVE MENU
DAIRY MENU



← ↙ **Design cohesion** The cohesion of color, typography, and styles across the range of packaging materials for Bakerie expresses an obvious brand unity. This unity helps the customer to trust the company, perceiving it as a well-managed and organized food retailer.

↓ **Web cohesion** Design cohesion needs to extend to all digital platforms and not just be confined to packaging. On this mobile site, high-quality images have been used as a substitute for the actual product (the loaves), thereby successfully maintaining the color palette and brand.

A good designer ties together all the elements, creating a formula that not only makes each individual piece striking in its own right, but also ensures easy identification with its counterparts.

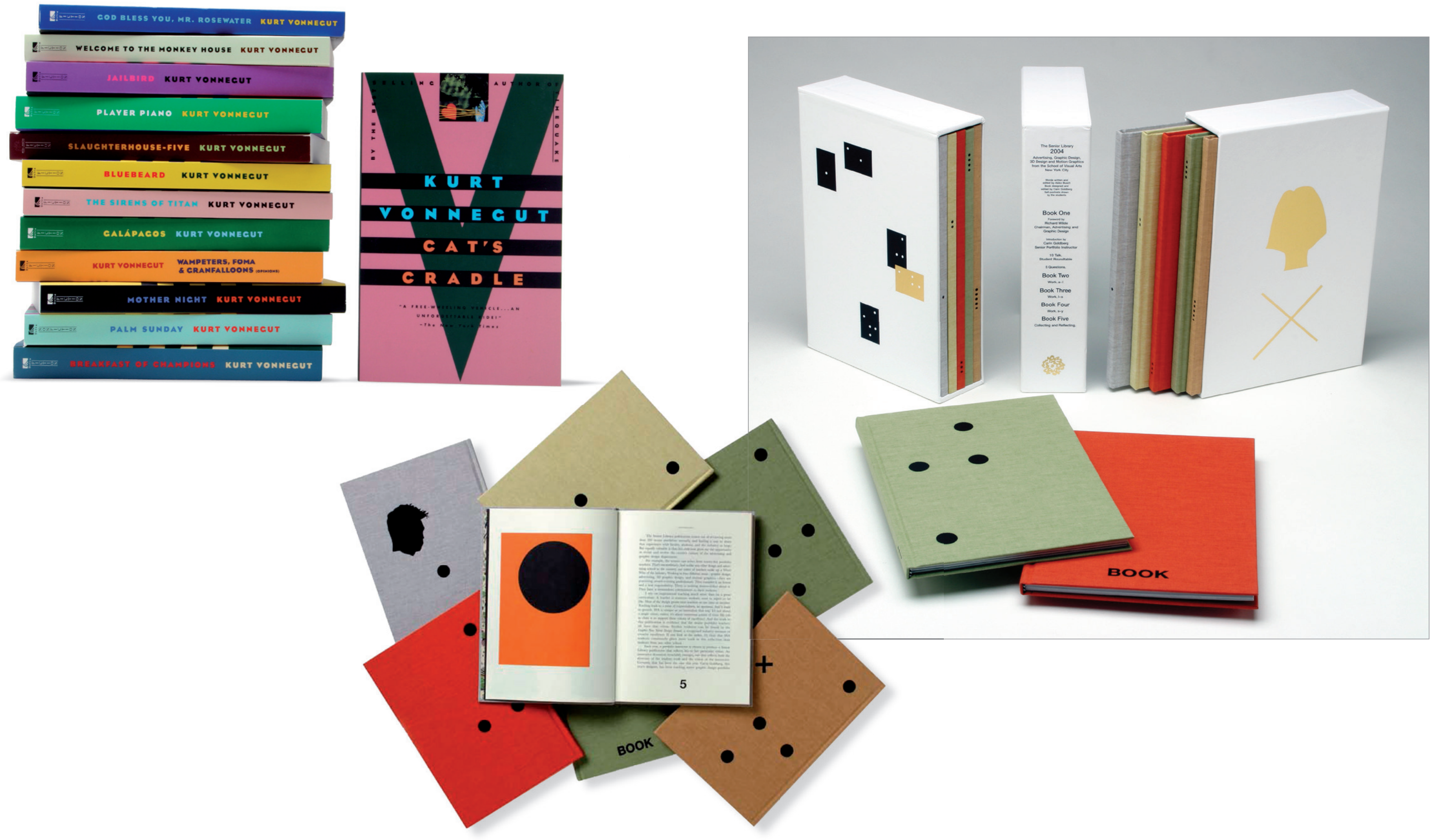
Creating identifying characteristics

Well thought-out extended systems are the building blocks for all complex design projects. Corporate identity systems will partner clean, easy-to-decode logo designs with supportive graphics or photography that become an extension of the brand and can be used interchangeably on multiple applications. Most will also include a distinct color palette and a particular typographic sensibility that support the content without diluting the brand's original message. These design assets keep the brand fresh and exciting, and enhance the presence of a product, something that motivates all manufacturers and organizations competing for attention in the marketplace, whether the product is books, chocolate, a gallery, or an online music service. The next time you go out shopping, or attend a cultural event, look for this principle and you will notice that many of the products with the most eye-catching and coordinated identity schemes are those of the most successful businesses and organizations. This is not a coincidence, and the designer who can successfully coordinate a brand or a company will always find their services in demand.

Know the content

Getting to know your brand and your target audience is part of your preliminary research. To speak to your audience accurately, you must also understand the content. In package design the product is usually easy to recognize, sometimes visible through the packaging material, and positioned for attention in the marketplace. The architecture of the package and the details in the design system work together to create an image-aware brand that proclaims itself as expensive, healthy,

Understated elegance Simple shapes and large fields of color define these elegant design systems by Carin Goldberg. The boxed set of books for New York's School of Visual Arts uses the rectangular form of the books and carefully placed dots to mark volumes one through four in the series, and extends the system of color blocks and simplified and gestural shapes to the inside page designs. The system for the works of Kurt Vonnegut uses bars of color that are reflected in the collective spines of the books.


GOD BLESS YOU, MR. ROSEWATER KURT VONNEGUT
WELCOME TO THE MONKEY HOUSE KURT VONNEGUT
JAILBIRD KURT VONNEGUT
PLAYER PIANO KURT VONNEGUT
SLAUGHTERHOUSE-FIVE KURT VONNEGUT
BLUEBEARD KURT VONNEGUT
THE SIRENS OF TITAN KURT VONNEGUT
GALÁPAGOS KURT VONNEGUT
KURT VONNEGUT WAMPETERS, FOMA & GRANFALLOONS
MOTHER NIGHT KURT VONNEGUT
PALM SUNDAY KURT VONNEGUT
BREAKFAST OF CHAMPIONS KURT VONNEGUT
KURT VONNEGUT CAT'S CRADLE
Book One
Book Two
Book Three
Book Four
Book Five
BOOK
BOOK
5

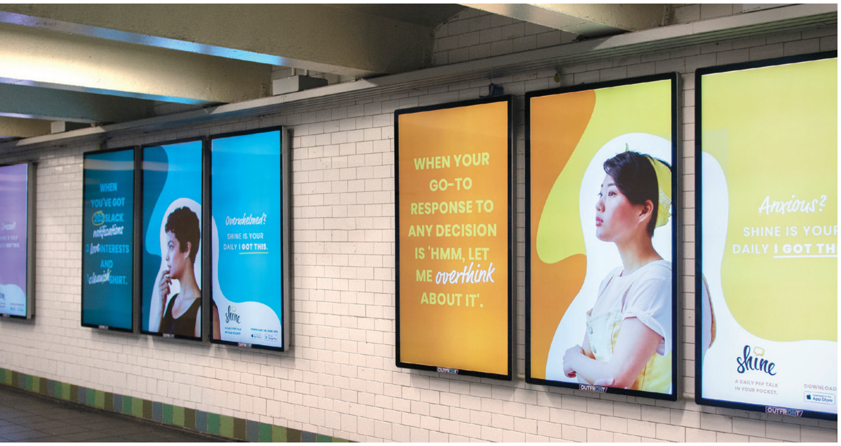
fashionable, or traditional by the very nature of the design system the artist creates and the materials used in the packaging. It should also lead consumers through the functions of opening, dispensing, and reclosing without making them work too hard to get to the product. In complex packaging, there may be enclosures, hang-tags, and labels to design. The extended design system can enhance the product but should always remain true to the brand. In addition to housing and protecting the product, package design is advertising at the place where the consumer actually makes their purchase, sometimes in large displays that become part of the retail experience. To be really successful, it must communicate the correct message at a glance if singular, or work together in big displays of multiples, if it is to compete with other goods.

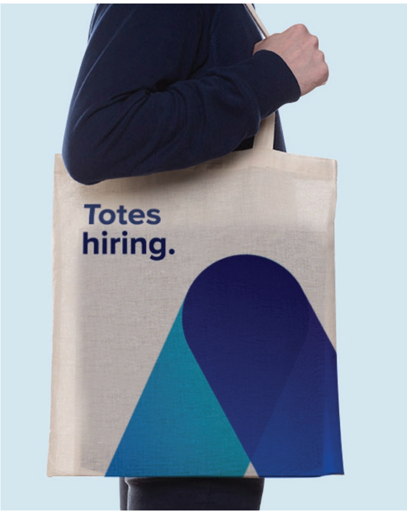
Interpretation and detail

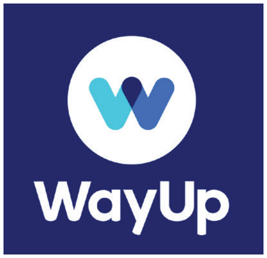
In editorial design, the content must be carefully considered for its message and the author's point of view. A book jacket is, in effect, a piece of packaging that advertises both product and publisher. It should be approached in the same way as an advertising campaign, but the imagery can sometimes deliver its

Cohesion and variety The clever use of smartphone dimensions within the advertising for the Shine app puts focus on the purpose of this platform. The bright, yet changing, color scheme shows cohesion but also variety, making this seemingly simple design concept quite complex.

Form and color The use of a simple color scheme ties together all the elements of the WayUp platform. The identity has been used subtly to anchor the online platform, but also as an esthetic element on the tote bag, created by enlarging and cropping the smaller details that make this brand what it is.

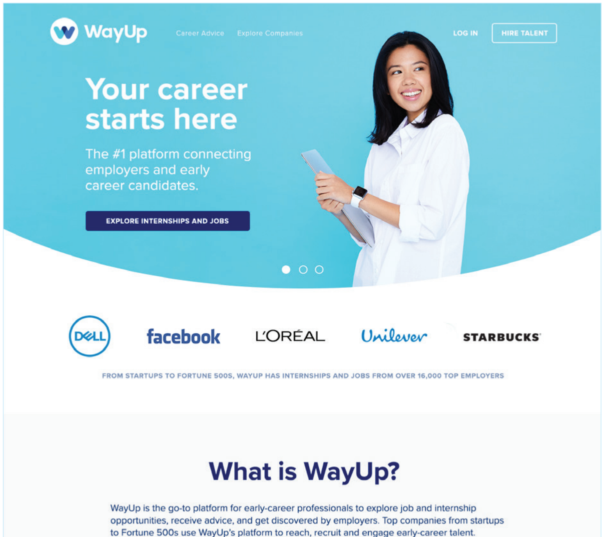

WHEN YOUR GO-TO RESPONSE TO ANY DECISION IS 'HMM, LET ME overthink ABOUT IT'.
Overwhelmed?
SHINE IS YOUR DAILY I GOT THIS.
Anxious?
SHINE IS YOUR DAILY I GOT TH
shine
A DAILY PEP TALK IN YOUR POCKET.
OUTFRONT


Totes hiring.



3:41PM
43°
WHEN "Hell's Kitchen" FEELS LIKE A DESCRIPTION OF YOUR WORK SCHEDULE.
OVERWHELMED? SHINE IS YOUR DAILY I GOT THIS.
shine
A DAILY PEP TALK IN YOUR POCKET.
DOWNLOAD THE SHINE APP.

5:15
UNDER 10 MINS
MORNING mindset
WITH ESOSA E.
QUICK HITTERS


WayUp
Career Advice
Explore Companies
LOG IN
HIRE TALENT
EXPLORE INTERNSHIPS AND JOBS
DELL
facebook
L'ORÉAL
Unilever
STARBUCKS

Your career starts here

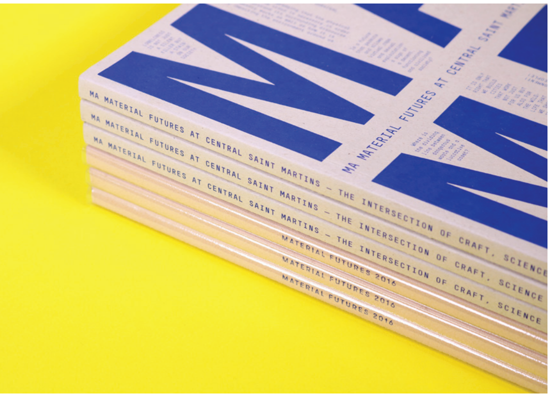
The #1 platform connecting employers and early career candidates.

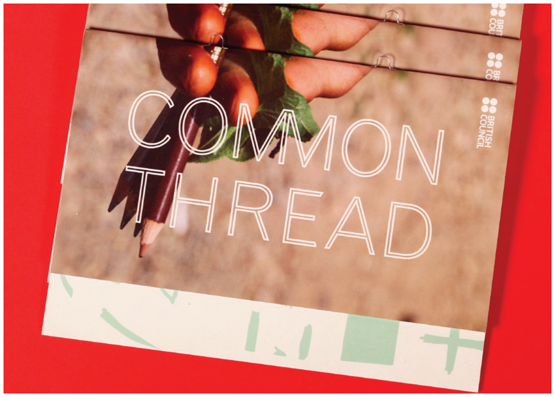
FROM STARTUPS TO FORTUNE 500S, WAYUP HAS INTERNSHIPS AND JOBS FROM OVER 16,000 TOP EMPLOYERS

What is WayUp?

WayUp is the go-to platform for early-career professionals to explore job and internship opportunities, receive advice, and get discovered by employers. Top companies from startups to Fortune 500s use WayUp's platform to reach, recruit and engage early-career talent.

Spine-out The book's front cover should indicate the contents as well as grab the attention, drawing in potential readers or buyers. With this in mind, consider the role of the book's spine: what information would your audience need about the publication if they could see only its spine on a bookcase?


MA MATERIAL FUTURES AT CENTRAL SAINT MARTINS – THE INTERSECTION OF CRAFT, SCIENCE
MATERIAL FUTURES 2016



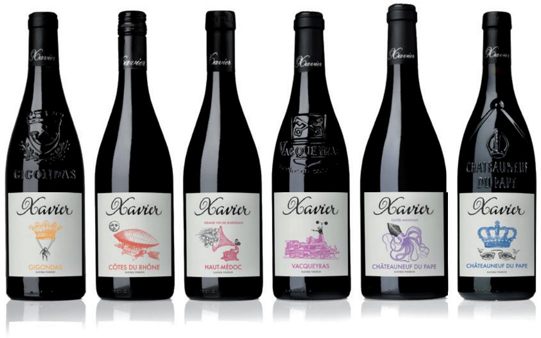
COMMON THREAD

Reconnecting Cultures
SABRINA KRAUS LÓPEZ
MARRAKECH

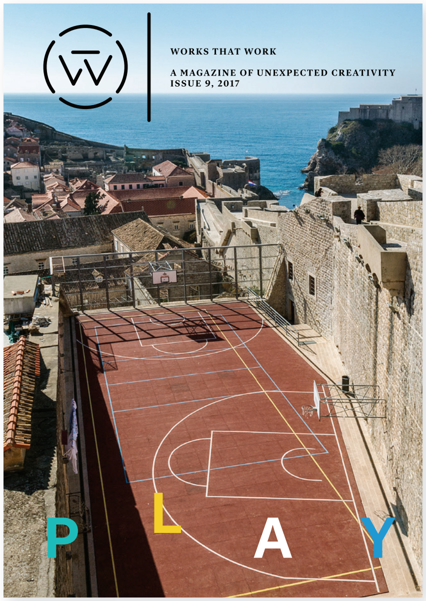
message in a more thought-provoking, poetic way. Any book must compete with all the others on display, leaping out from the shelf before informing potential buyers as to what the book might be about. In some book displays only the spines will be visible, so how these detailed areas work as small-space designs is important. The same principle of multiples in package display is in effect here, but on a much more economical scale. A series of covers with spines in bold black text on acid colors will create an impressive patch when a dozen or so are stacked along a shelf. The spine should be part of the overall cover image and work as a stand-alone design element when seen in multiples.

Book jackets begin telling the story to the consumer. A concept for a book-jacket design will be influenced by a number of factors, but the concept development should begin by considering the content. Consider whether the book is fiction or non-fiction; consider the genre the book belongs to; the subject matter—is it fun, grave, romantic, or scary; and, most importantly, who the book is targeting for readership. When designing book jackets, good designers make it their business to ask the publisher lots of questions—and to read the book! After all, your jacket design should inspire people to buy the book. Think about how your design might stand out enough to entice curiosity, or be provocative enough to convey information in an intriguing way, and try to create visuals that represent your author and the subject matter of the book.

Design details There are a number of clever ways that the cover design or the format of your publication can hint at its purpose and contents. For example, the small publication *Common Thread* is bound together using looped staples, which are usually used for hanging publications in an exhibition context. In addition, the front cover is slightly smaller in width, giving you a glimpse of the physical publication inserts and the themes and contents inside.

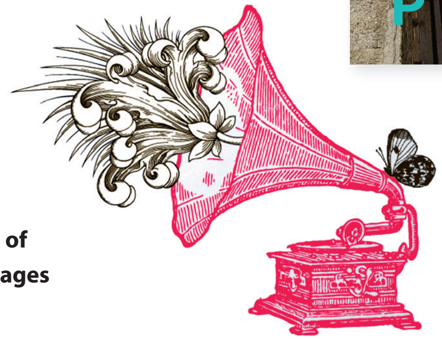


← ↓ **Lightly whimsical** Choosing the right visual style to tell your story can be difficult. Sometimes a single technique is inadequate to communicate the nuances, so custom combinations are invented. Delicate line art evokes the look of old etchings, but combines offbeat images in unusual pairings and colors to make a contemporary statement on these lighthearted wine labels.



PART 1 | PRINCIPLES
CHAPTER 2 | FUNDAMENTALS OF COMPOSITION
MODULE 9 | PHOTOGRAPHY AND ILLUSTRATION

Whether to use photographs, illustrations, or even type as images—or all three together—are important design considerations. A well-coordinated look is a hallmark of good design, and the way you plan, edit, and incorporate images significantly affects the outcome.



↑ **Type with image** The combination of playful type and photography on this magazine cover evokes a sense of fun. The header and identity remain consistent, allowing for a more imaginative approach to the visuals underneath. The striking photography contains natural, muted colors, allowing the bright color schemes of the letterforms to stand out.

Boundaries between photography and illustration are blurred by digital art; a straightforward choice between a realistic photograph and an illustrator's interpretation is still possible, and digital techniques allow for a merging of the two. Within the three categories are both relatively direct and obscure approaches, so you need to think about how you want your message to be understood and interpreted.

Much will depend on the category in which you are working. Advertising can be obvious or subtle, but it can also be crucial to show the brand your client is endeavoring to sell. Food packaging or car ads often feature beautifully photographed and highly realistic images showing the product in a flattering situation. If you are working on corporate design, the company's ethos is as important as its products or services. In this circumstance, a more abstract or evocative set of images could work.

In magazines and books, the look of the images will have been considered at the initial styling stage, when all the questions about the target audience will have been discussed. A mix of diverse styles—illustrations and photographs—can be used to differentiate between various editorial sections while maintaining the defining image of the publication.

Creative constraints

Some clients will have definite ideas about the types of images selected to represent them. They might send you the pictures they want you to use along with the initial brief, so sometimes the decision has already been made for you. Photography might not always be possible for logistical reasons—distance, budget, or difficulty in gaining permission—in which case creating or commissioning an illustration is the only route.

→ **Layering and contrast** The pastel tones used in this dog photoshoot create a soft set of visuals that have been offset by the layering of typography in a dark contrasting color. This allows an interesting composition to be created while keeping the poster legible.

Technical manuals, company reports, educational books, or anything that aims to explain how things work, benefit from visualization. This might be a specialized form of technical illustration, in which designer, illustrator, and author/originator must liaise closely. Information graphics, charts, and data representation can be beautiful, inventive, and entertaining. Try to turn every constraint into a creative opportunity. Limitations set you free from certain decisions so you can concentrate more fully on others.

Budget and schedule

Commissioning an intricate illustration, such as a big design of a busy street scene, might not be appropriate if you do not have a large budget, in which case it might be more cost-effective to work with photography or photomontage. Conversely, asking a photographer to set up a full-day shoot involving several models, a makeup artist, a stylist, as well as complicated sets and props, may be outside your project budget, in which case it might be more cost-effective to commission an illustration.

Occasionally you may have to produce something for which there is an impossibly small budget. Don't let this stop your creative energy or curb your enthusiasm for the project—there are always creative possibilities. Contemporary designers should be able to generate imagery, even if there's no budget for a specialist. Inventive, evocative typography can function as illustration, and copyright-free pictures can always be found if you know where to look. Creating a fresh approach using stock images is an exercise in reinvention. Use your newly developed ability to see things differently, and transform the ordinary into something fresh and inventive. Try duotones, tritones, or spots of brilliant color on neutral fields. Think about layers of texture or open space, and fresh typography to pull it all together.

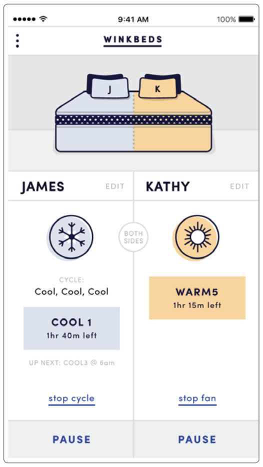
Photographers, illustrators, and libraries

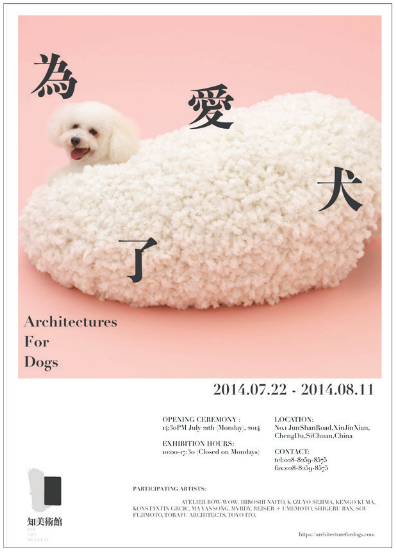
You may be working on a self-initiated project or to a brief; either way, the illustrative approach may be immediately clear, or you may have to work harder to decide on the right style of image. First, ask yourself what would be suitable for the market and the message you are trying to communicate, then consider the scope of your budget and your timeframe as you research your potential sources.

Begin this phase as you begin all others, with research. You may need to create images yourself, or commission a freelance illustrator or photographer. There are many ways of looking at people's work beyond flipping through a portfolio. For example, you can see work on the Internet, social media outlets (Flickr, Instagram, Facebook, Pinterest, etc.), at exhibitions, graduate degree shows and agencies, and in other graphic works and design publications. Professional associations have active websites where

Photography and illustration

Combining photography and illustration can sometimes feel overcrowded. In this example, Winkbeds has created a set of minimal photographs with a limited color scheme, supported by delicate product illustrations. By stripping back both types of imagery and leaving some white space, the spreads and applications are allowed breathing space, and are therefore easy to understand and follow.




為
愛
犬
了
Architectures
For
Dogs
知美術館

2014.07.22 - 2014.08.11

OPENING CEREMONY :
14:30PM July 21th (Monday), 2014

EXHIBITION HOURS:
10:00-17:30 (Closed on Mondays)

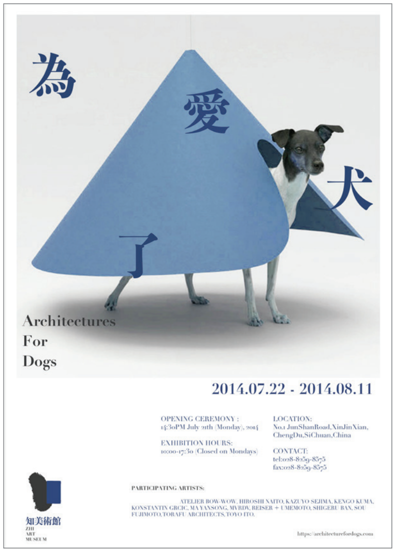
LOCATION:
No.1 JunShanRoad,XinJinXian,
ChengDu,SiChuan,China

CONTACT:
tel:028-8259-8575
fax:028-8259-8575

PARTICIPATING ARTISTS:

ATELIER BOW-WOW, HIROSHI NAITO, KAZUYO SEJIMA, KENGO KUMA, KONSTANTIN GRCIC, MA YANSONG, MVRDV, REISER + UMEMOTO, SHIGERU BAN, SOU FUJIMOTO, TORAFU ARCHITECTS, TOYO ITO.

https://architecturefordogs.com


為
愛
犬
了
Architectures
For
Dogs
知美術館
ZHI
ART
MUSEUM

2014.07.22 - 2014.08.11

OPENING CEREMONY :
14:30PM July 21th (Monday), 2014

EXHIBITION HOURS:
10:00-17:30 (Closed on Mondays)

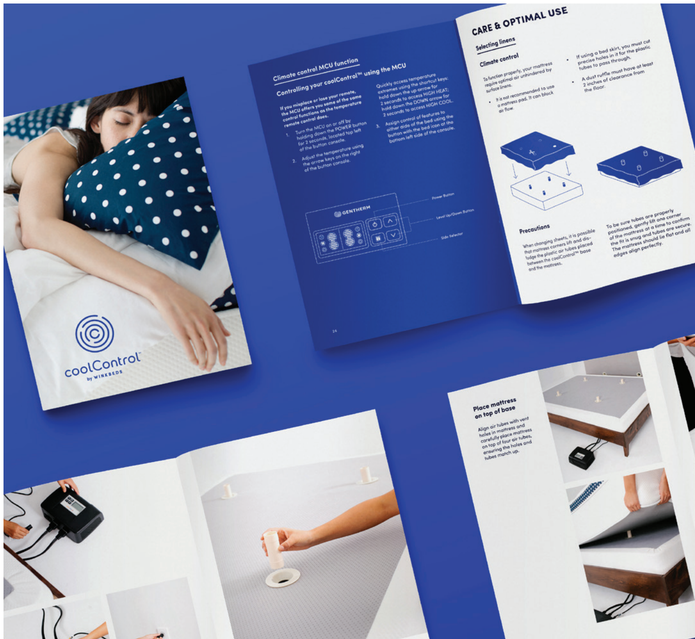
LOCATION:
No.1 JunShanRoad,XinJinXian,
ChengDu,SiChuan,China

CONTACT:
tel:028-8259-8575
fax:028-8259-8575

PARTICIPATING ARTISTS:

ATELIER BOW-WOW, HIROSHI NAITO, KAZUYO SEJIMA, KENGO KUMA, KONSTANTIN GRCIC, MA YANSONG, MVRDV, REISER + UMEMOTO, SHIGERU BAN, SOU FUJIMOTO, TORAFU ARCHITECTS, TOYO ITO.

https://architecturefordogs.com

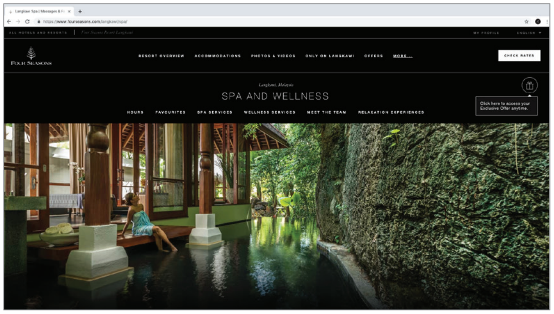

CARE & OPTIMAL USE
Selecting linens
Climate control
Climate control MCU function
Controlling your coolControl™ using the MCU
Precautions
GENTHERM
coolControl
by WINKBEDS
Place mattress on top of base

members often post work and you can view those that win awards for excellence.

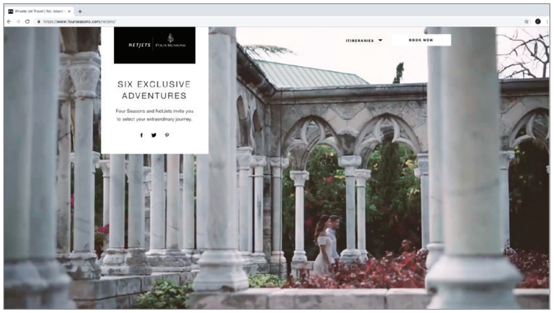
There are also several online photographic resources that represent photographers and illustrators: type "picture library" or "illustration agency" into a search engine and you will find plenty. Generally, such companies allow you to use a low-resolution version for rough concepts, either for free or for a small fee. Then, when you have finalized your idea, you can buy the rights to use that picture. Always check what the final fee will be before committing yourself. These sources also now supply downloads, scans, or CDs of royalty-free images (you can use them without paying further fees)—so if you intend to cover a certain subject or style repeatedly, it might make sense to buy one of these. Another source is archival, copyright-free images, which can be useful in a number of ways.

Collect and store

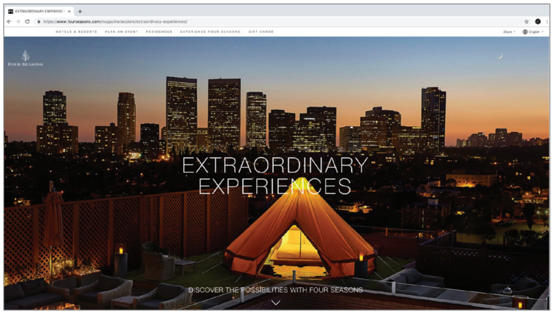
The best way to ensure you have imagery at hand as you need it is to keep an image bank of your own. Most designers keep files of photographers' and illustrators' work. Sometimes you'll receive promotional work that has been sent in speculatively. If you like it, or think it might prove useful in the future, file it away carefully for potential future use. If you have a need for specialty photography, perhaps architectural interiors, food styling, or fashion photography, look for experts with strength in that area.


Langkawi Spa | Massages & Fa
https://www.fourseasons.com/langkawi/spa/
ALL HOTELS AND RESORTS
Four Seasons Resort Langkawi
MY PROFILE
ENGLISH
FOUR SEASONS
RESORT OVERVIEW
ACCOMMODATIONS
PHOTOS & VIDEOS
ONLY ON LANGKAWI
OFFERS
MORE...
CHECK RATES
Langkawi, Malaysia
SPA AND WELLNESS
HOURS
FAVOURITES
SPA SERVICES
WELLNESS SERVICES
MEET THE TEAM
RELAXATION EXPERIENCES

Click here to access your Exclusive Offer anytime.


Private Jet Travel | Six Island
https://www.fourseasons.com/netjets/
NETJETS | FOUR SEASONS
ITINERARIES
BOOK NOW
SIX EXCLUSIVE ADVENTURES

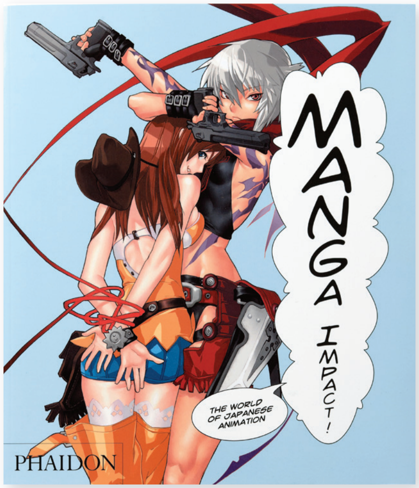
Four Seasons and NetJets invite you to select your extraordinary journey.


EXTRAORDINARY EXPERIENCE
https://www.fourseasons.com/magazine/explore/extraordinary-experiences/
HOTELS & RESORTS
PLAN AN EVENT
RESIDENCES
EXPERIENCE FOUR SEASONS
GIFT CARDS
Share
English
FOUR SEASONS
EXTRAORDINARY EXPERIENCES
DISCOVER THE POSSIBILITIES WITH FOUR SEASONS

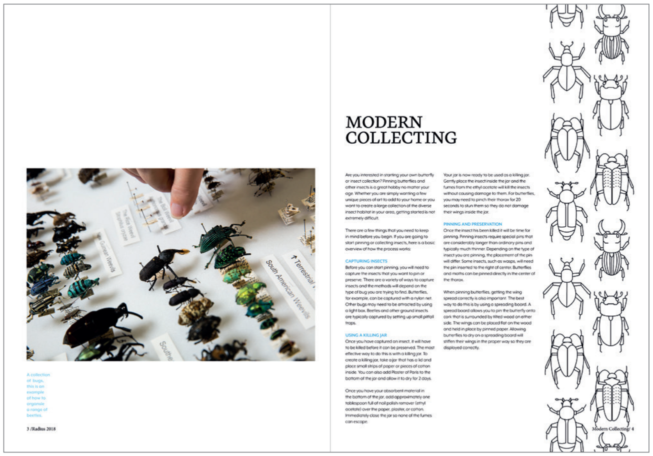
Photographic subjects Strong photography commands attention in this website design. The viewers' close proximity to these rich panoramic location images transports them to their destinations in fine style.

SEE ALSO: THEORIES OF IMAGE AND TEXT, P20

Line art The photography and body copy in the *Modern Collecting* publication is supported by a series of line art illustrations of beetles. The features rendered in the clean, black-and-white line art provide the viewer with a level of diagrammatic detail that a photograph would struggle to achieve, as well as reinforcing the concept of building a personal collection.


MANGA IMPACT!
THE WORLD OF JAPANESE ANIMATION
PHAIDON

Manga style Versatile styling is displayed in the choice of manga artwork for the cover of a book on the impact of the manga style. Hand-drawn type and a thought balloon reinforce the subject and an arresting composition gives it a fresh perspective.


Gumean Weevils
The Rice Weevil
The Boll Weevil
South American Weevils
Terrestrial
Southe

A collection of bugs, this is an example of how to organsie a range of beetles.

3 /Radius 2018

MODERN COLLECTING

Are you interested in starting your own butterfly or insect collection? Pinning butterflies and other insects is a great hobby no matter your age. Whether you are simply wanting a few unique pieces of art to add to your home or you want to create a large collection of the diverse insect habitat in your area, getting started is not extremely difficult.

There are a few things that you need to keep in mind before you begin. If you are going to start pinning or collecting insects, here is a basic overview of how the process works:

CAPTURING INSECTS

Before you can start pinning, you will need to capture the insects that you want to pin or preserve. There are a variety of ways to capture insects and the methods will depend on the type of bug you are trying to find. Butterflies, for example, can be captured with a nylon net. Other bugs may need to be attracted by using a light box. Beetles and other ground insects are typically captured by setting up small pitfall traps.

USING A KILLING JAR

Once you have captured an insect, it will have to be killed before it can be preserved. The most effective way to do this is with a killing jar. To create a killing jar, take a jar that has a lid and place small strips of paper or pieces of cotton inside. You can also add Plaster of Paris to the bottom of the jar and allow it to dry for 2 days.

Once you have your absorbent material in the bottom of the jar, add approximately one tablespoon full of nail polish remover (ethyl acetate) over the paper, plaster, or cotton. Immediately close the jar so none of the fumes can escape.

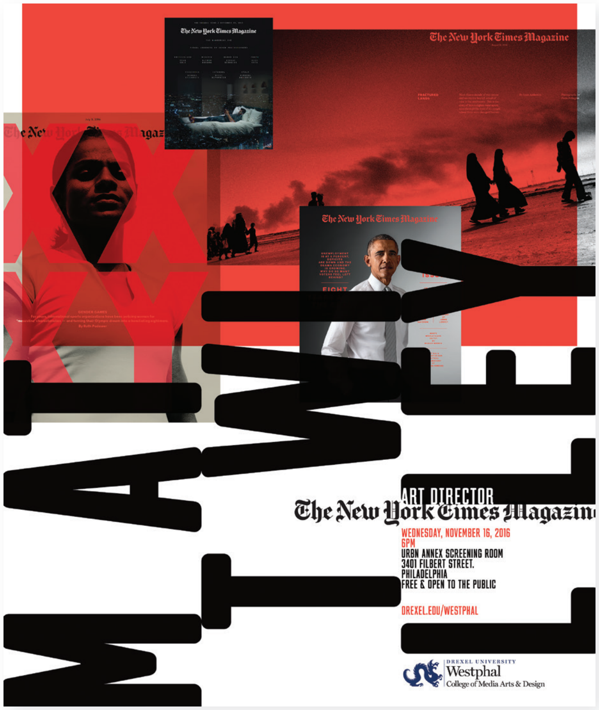
Your jar is now ready to be used as a killing jar. Gently place the insect inside the jar and the fumes from the ethyl acetate will kill the insects without causing damage to them. For butterflies, you may need to pinch their thorax for 20 seconds to stun them so they do not damage their wings inside the jar.

PINNING AND PRESERVATION

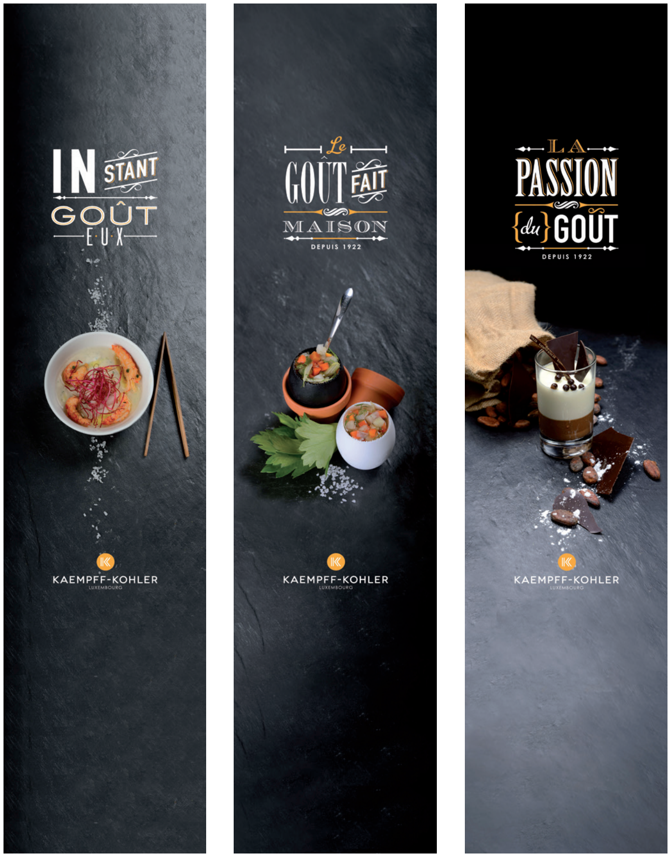
Once the insect his been killed it will be time for pinning. Pinning insects require special pins that are considerably longer than ordinary pins and typically much thinner. Depending on the type of insect you are pinning, the placement of the pin will differ. Some insects, such as wasps, will need the pin inserted to the right of center. Butterflies and moths can be pinned directly in the center of the thorax.

When pinning butterflies, getting the wing spread correctly is also important. The best way to do this is by using a spreading board. A spread board allows you to pin the butterfly onto cork that is surrounded by tilted wood on either side. The wings can be placed flat on the wood and held in place by pinned paper. Allowing butterflies to dry on a spreading board will stiffen their wings in the proper way so they are displayed correctly.

Modern Collecting/ 4


The New York Times Magazine
ART DIRECTOR
The New York Times Magazine
WEDNESDAY, NOVEMBER 16, 2016
6PM
URBN ANNEX SCREENING ROOM
3401 FILBERT STREET.
PHILADELPHIA
FREE & OPEN TO THE PUBLIC
DREXEL.EDU/WESTPHAL
DREXEL UNIVERSITY
Westphal
College of Media Arts & Design

Type as image
Typography is a system of simple shapes that can be used to make complex patterns when they are combined in a dynamic composition. These dramatically positioned letterforms create an innovative and bold solution that supports the dynamic color schemes and photography.


IN STANT
GOÛT
E U X
KAEMPFF-KOHLER
LUXEMBOURG
Le
GOÛT FAIT
MAISON
DEPUIS 1922
KAEMPFF-KOHLER
LUXEMBOURG
LA
PASSION
du GOÛT
DEPUIS 1922
KAEMPFF-KOHLER
LUXEMBOURG

Background check
Plan your composition, photographic subjects, and text before you photograph your finished subject. Clean, textural slate in neutral gray serves as the perfect backdrop for richly colored images and decorative display type on these menus. Repetition in the composition and variation in type and subject keeps the series inventive.

Tips and checklist for selecting images

- **Image, style, and theme** Determine the look before you commit. It's fine to be inspired by images you see in your research, but be sure to resolve the concept before you make a purchase or hire a freelancer.
- **Be contrary** Consider the opposite of what is expected: this will either give you a new angle or help to consolidate your original thoughts.
- **Budget and schedule** Check that your solution is affordable and feasible in the time you have available.
- **Age/gender/socioeconomics of the target audience** Who will see it? The visuals for the horoscope page of a teenage magazine, for example, could certainly be more quirky and abstract than the imagery for a financial company report and accounts.
- **Shelf life** The images in a weekly magazine can be transient, whereas those in an expensive book with a selling potential of ten years or more need to have more lasting resonance.
- **Clarity of information** The images for an editorial design might be deliberately obscure, whereas those for a technical manual must be clear and didactic.
- **Perceived value** This is tricky to pinpoint, since often something that is inexpensive is marketed as valuable through its image, and something that is really expensive can seek to appeal to a mass market through a casual, trendy approach.
- **Design criteria and usage** Do you want a dynamic cut-out shape or a square image bled off the page? Will you use it in black and white or color?
- **DIY** Can you create this image yourself? Graphic designers with image generation skills are more likely to be hired than those without.

CHAPTER 2: ASSIGNMENTS

Poster-brochures

For this exercise, you will need to create three poster-brochures, each made by folding a 16½ x 11¾-in (A3) sheet or paper twice, to produce four rectangular pages of the same size. Each task can be done electronically or by hand; however, it is highly recommended that you develop your craft skills and work with traditional media. You can use cut paper, or draw each of the elements with pencil and fill them with black paint, but be precise.

Begin by creating 20 thumbnail sketches for each exercise, then select the best one for each final version. Pay attention to the negative space that is created when you crop information off the edge of the page or overlap them, and remember that negative space is part of the composition. Think about the effects of symmetry and asymmetry, closure, and field ground as you work.

1 Positive/negative

- On page 1, using only black squares, create a layout that suggests something positive, looking at positive space or "positive placement."
- On page 2, using only black squares, create a layout that suggests something negative, looking at negative space or "negative placement."
- Apply what you've learned from these tasks to create a poster on the reverse of the paper.
- Create a front cover that visually summarizes your poster-brochure.
- Create a back cover that verbally (written) summarizes your poster-brochure.

2 Hierarchy

- On page 1, using only images, create a layout that has hierarchy in the top half of the page.
- On page 2, using only typography, create a layout that has hierarchy in the bottom half of the page.
- Apply what you've learned from these tasks to create a poster on the reverse of the paper.
- Create a front cover that visually summarizes your poster-brochure.
- Create a back cover that verbally (written) summarizes your poster-brochure.

3 Minimalism/maximalism

- On page 1, using any form of black square/type/image, create a layout that uses as few squares/type/images as possible (minimalism).
- On page 2, using any form of black square/type/image, create a layout that uses as many squares/type/images as possible (maximalism).
- Apply what you've learned from these tasks to create a poster on the reverse of the paper.
- Create a front cover that visually summarizes your poster-brochure.
- Create a back cover that verbally (written) summarizes your poster-brochure.

4 Additional tasks

Create two additional poster-brochures, each made by folding a 16½ x 11¾-in (A3) sheet twice, thus creating four rectangular pages of the same size.

4a Symmetry

- On the front and back covers, then on pages 1 and 2 (the spread), create a symmetrical composition.
- Create a poster on the reverse of the paper that explains the history and benefit of symmetrical composition.

4b Asymmetry:

- On the front and back covers, then on pages 1 and 2 (the spread), create an asymmetrical composition.
- Create a poster on the reverse of the paper that explains the history and benefit of asymmetrical composition.

Grids and systems

For these exercises you will need three full spreads (two opposite pages) from a printed newspaper. These should include feature editorial spreads and spreads that contain a mixture of multiple images and text.

1 Grids

- Using a pencil, identify and trace the grid lines on each of the page designs. Look for the column widths and where possible rows could sit. Consider the margins at the top, sides, and bottom, and to the left and right of each column (gutters). Look carefully for the edges of all the elements placed on the page, some of which may reach over two or three columns, so your lines may cross right through an element on the page. When you are happy, draw your final grid in pen on the newspaper.
- When you have finished, identify the system on each page. Is your selection based on a two-column, six-column, or a modular system?
- Write a brief summary of your findings, explaining why you were attracted to the pages you selected and how you think the grid system supports the design work.

2 Typographic structures

- Using a black pen, color each section (e.g. header, subheading, quote, body text, caption, image, etc.) so you are left with a series of black squares and rectangles.
- Write a brief summary reflecting on the typographic and editorial structures. How valuable is the information of typographic structures beyond the visual message?

3 Your newspaper

- Spend 24 hours noting down all the information you receive via your smartphone. Consider what people tell you in a call and the information you receive via text, emails, and social media—perhaps you look up timetables or Google an unfamiliar term. If you don't have enough content, keep collecting information until you do.
- Using your understanding of grids and typographic structures, create the front page of a newspaper containing all the information you have collected.

4 Additional tasks

Carry out these tasks again on/with novels, newspapers, and websites. Can you determine any patterns? Why do you think this is?

10, 20, 30 pages

Publication design requires attention to detail and a keen eye for organization and the hierarchy of information. The following tasks require you to think carefully about how layout, typography, and imagery can be structured to lend variety, anticipation, and drama, whether the publication is printed or appears online.

1 Start by carrying out some research. Select a printed magazine, brochure, or book. Identify the design strategies used to vary the pace. How is the white space used? Are there variations in the grid system? Does the placement of type and image vary in size and scale? Is there a smart use of contrast and scale? Are certain pages making you pause for a lengthier examination? If so, why? Do the same for an online publication, noting the similarities and differences used to set the visual pace as you click through. Can you follow the flow of information? Is there enough variety to keep you interested? Make a special note of any tools that might be unique to the online experience.

2 The following exercises require a basic understanding of InDesign (see pages 106–109). When you select your text or imagery, consider the grid system and typographic structures that would be most appropriate. Think about the hierarchy of the layouts—what is the most important feature on each page—and the pace of each page as you navigate your way through the text. A dramatic story, for example, might need to be dynamic and full of information, but equally could be slower and more paced for suspense. Consider the tone of voice when choosing your typefaces. Think about scale, tension, and visual drama, and about telling the story.

Begin by sketching out ideas for layouts. Using InDesign, set up the most appropriate grid from your sketches, for your information. Consider margins, columns, and gutters. Select a typeface that best represents the tone of voice for the information. Experiment with serif, sans serif, point size, weight, and leading.

- Using a news article of your choice, create a 19¾ x 14-in (B3) 10-page booklet. Create a photographic cover for your booklet.
- Using a fairytale or short story of your choice, create a 14 x 10-in (B4) 20-page booklet. Create an illustrative cover for your booklet.
- Using only imagery, create a 10 x 7-in (B5) 30-page booklet. Create a photographic and illustrative combined cover for your booklet.

3 Repeat the exercises, altering the grid systems each time. Experiment with different typefaces and type systems. Remember how symmetry and asymmetry affect composition. Think about placement on the page and test the flexibility of the grid systems you have chosen.

4 Additional task
Consider how you would translate your print publication into an online equivalent. What needs to change and what must be kept the same? Consider the use of the scroll, the click, and the reveal of hidden information.

Extended systems

1a Create an identity for your future graphic design business. It can include any type of logo—pictorial, letterform, or abstract. Consider your character, your services, and professionalism. Start with sketches and develop your identity by digitizing your logo into a vector using Adobe Illustrator (see pages 114–117), making sure your designs can be reduced and enlarged without losing legibility.

1b Identify three characteristics that make your system constant on all three designs (e.g. color scheme, positioning, scale, etc.)

1c Using what you've discovered about extended system patterns in Chapter 2, apply your logo across multiple printed formats (e.g. business cards, a credit in a magazine spread, packaging, a poster, a billboard, clothing, signage, etc.).

2 Additional task
Add a fourth digital element and extend your system. It could be the design of a website, or you might imagine your graphic design business has its own app or animation. To do this, look carefully at the work you have just completed on the logo and supporting material. What needs to be added or amended for it to work on a screen?

Further reading

Amaranth Borsuk, *The Book*, The MIT Press, 2018
Jennifer Cole Phillips and Ellen Lupton, *Graphic Design: The New Basics, revised and updated*, Princeton Architectural Press, 2015
Helen Drew, *The Fundamentals of Photography*, AVA Publishing, 2005
Steven Heller, *Teaching Graphic Design History*, Allworth, 2019
Ellen Lupton and J. Abbott Miller, *The ABC's of Triangle, Square, Circle: The Bauhaus and Design Theory*, Princeton Architectural Press, 2019
Phillip B. Meggs and Alston W. Purvis, *Meggs' History of Graphic Design*, Wiley, 2016
Josef Müller-Brockmann, *Grid Systems in Graphic Design: A Handbook for Graphic Artists, Typographers, and Exhibition Designers*, Verlag Niggli, 2008
Catharine Slade-Brooking, *Creating a Brand Identity: A Guide for Designers*, Laurence King Publishing, 2016
Beth Tondreau, *Layout Essentials: 100 Design Principles for Using Grids*, Rockport Publishers, 2011
Lawrence Zeegen and Louise Fenton, *The Fundamentals of Illustration*, AVA Publishing, 2012

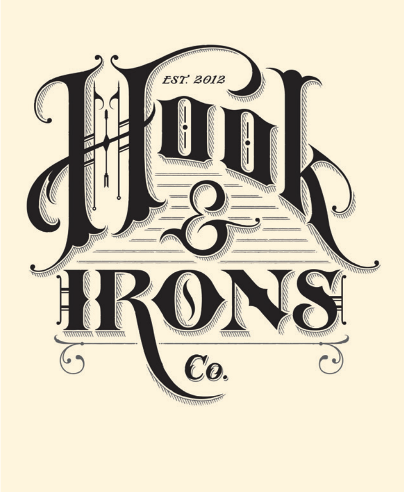
3

Fundamentals of Typography

Typography is the process of arranging letters, words, and text for almost any context imaginable, and it is among the most important tools a designer masters for effective visual communication. Graphic designers learn the nuances of typography in order to use it creatively, with imagination and a sense of exploration, while maintaining respect for its rules and traditions.

In design, typography is the visual manifestation of language, utilizing all its expressive and practical qualities, and occupies a unique place where art, science, and communications connect. You need only look at work presented by concrete poets, or to various art movements such as Futurism and Dada, to see typography's significance as an esthetic medium.
It also involves the design and selection of type for both legibility and communication of information, and, in some instances, esthetic experimentation takes a backseat to pragmatic concerns.

Expressive typography and hand-drawn letterforms are a calligraphic art form in their own right. With so many interpretative typographic choices, sketching and hands-on experimenting with layouts will help you learn to evaluate the readability and nuance of the message before working onscreen, essential stages that help in learning about the subtleties of type.



New vintage
Hand-drawn letterforms evoke the decorative typography of another century in this beautiful logotype by Tom Lane. The configuration of the letterforms, the overall shape created by the type design, and the selective use of ruled lines for depth and underscoring keep the composition unified. The overall effect is one of tradition and craftsmanship.

PART 1	PRINCIPLES
CHAPTER 3	FUNDAMENTALS OF TYPOGRAPHY
MODULE 1	**TYPOGRAPHY AND MEANING**

By definition, a typographic message, aside from an intrinsic beauty, must convey a meaning. Meaning, and its expression, is at the core of typographic activity, at the level of both individual words and entire passages of text. This is called linguistic meaning, since it resides in language.

Letters and words have an abstract beauty, seen and appreciated through experiments in type anatomy, which isolate the forms and separate elements of individual letters, and frequently reveal them as shapes, rather than meaningful linguistic objects. However, the instant words materialize on page or on screen, they begin to express ideas and possess this elusive quality we call meaning. Linguistic meaning, an essential element of typography, can be expressed, controlled, and amplified through such typographic variables as size, weight, typeface (or font), placement on the page, and letterspacing.

Sometimes, as in the pages of a book, the visual aspects of typography must take a backseat to the process of understanding. However, designers use such visual techniques all the time, to communicate messages effectively; building confidence in working with text in this way is important, so that linking typographic form to linguistic meaning becomes second nature.

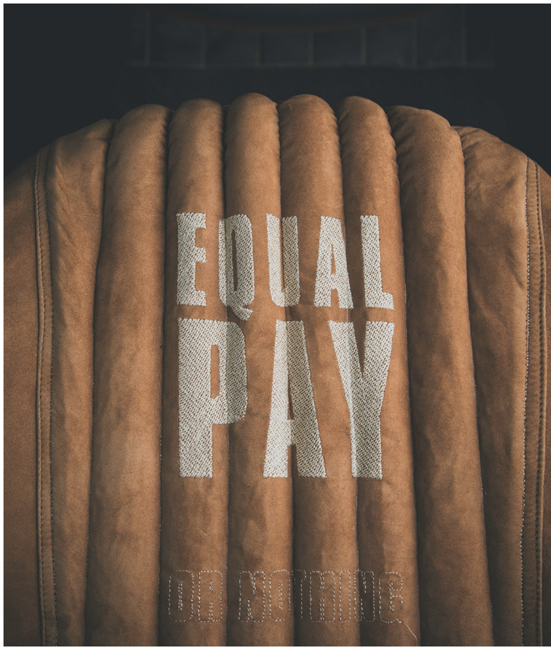
Meaning

But what is "meaning"? An alternative term is "semantics," an important subtopic within all aspects of design, which is worth exploring in more detail. Semantics is the study of meaning and applies to both images and language. "Syntax" (or grammar) refers to the rules that govern the organization of elements of a sentence or paragraph, so that meaning is conveyed. If the syntax is wrong, then language becomes nonsense, or meaningless. In a general sense, to say that something has a meaning (a semantic value) relies upon its ability to present its idea in a form that can be communicated and shared. In linguistic meaning (the language-based meaning that typography participates in), this communicability is based on sets of symbols in the given language, which include letters and words, and also on the space between words, punctuation, and placement of the characters.

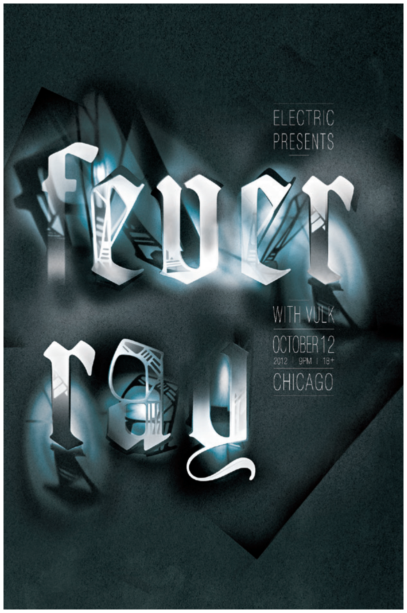
Typographers such as Wolfgang Weingart, Willem Sandberg, and H. N. Werkmann pushed the expression of meaning in typography to its very limit and, in so doing, expanded its visual vocabulary and expressive potential by working at the boundary between language and meaning.

Dada and Futurist artists such as Kurt Schwitters and Tristan Tzara, Marinetti, and Wyndham Lewis experimented with the relationship between language and meaning. These historical practitioners are worth studying closely, as are their inspirational typographic experiments. Look at the works of the concrete poets e.e. cummings and Apollinaire, and contemporary designers such as Robert Massin, Johanna Drucker, and Erik Spiekermann. Look at the experimental work of David Carson, who used type as texture in *Ray Gun* magazine, and at Paula Scher's graphic type solutions in poster design and environmental graphics.

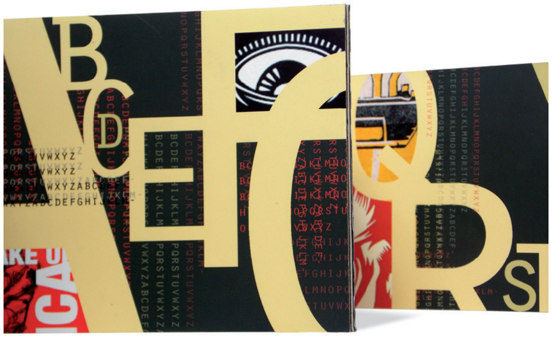
Word as object, object as word
Expressive typography can be used as an image, and the meaning of the words can be linked to the image for impact. Here, the term "equal pay" is physically stitched onto the seat of a public transport vehicle, alluding to many political themes surrounding feminism and equal rights.



Constructed letterforms Dimensional letterforms die-cut with lacy patterns are illuminated to create graphic shadows in the composition. The positive and negative shapes are defined by light and shadow in the delicately half-toned photographic image used in the final poster.



Abstract composition Oversized and carefully cropped letters create dynamic abstract forms in this strong composition. Depth is added through variation in scale and texture, and bold color adds to the strong declarative voice.



GLOSSARY

Font: One size, weight, and width of a typeface: Garamond Roman 12pt is a font.

Linguistic: Of, or relating to, language.

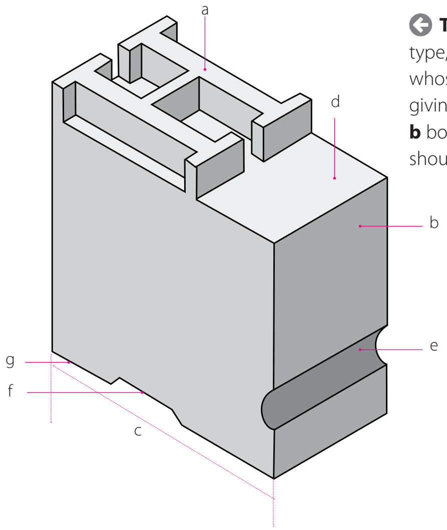
Semantics: The study of meaning in language and elsewhere.

Syntax: The study of the rules for the formation of grammatically correct sentences.

Typeface: The set of visual attributes (design or style) of a particular group of letters: Garamond is a typeface.

PART 1	PRINCIPLES
CHAPTER 3	FUNDAMENTALS OF TYPOGRAPHY
MODULE 2	**THE ANATOMY OF TYPE**

Familiarity with the basic structure of letterforms, the anatomy of type, is essential to understanding how typefaces differ and what characteristics they share, and allows the designer to make decisions about selecting and using the multitude of typefaces now available. The most basic element of typography is the letterform, and each typeface has its own unique characteristics, while sharing a basic language that describes its parts.



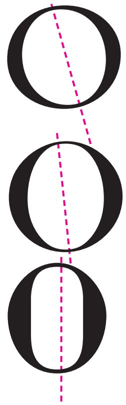
Typeface A block of letterpress type, showing the face of the letter, whose surface is inked and printed, giving us the term "typeface." **a** face, **b** body or shank, **c** point size, **d** shoulder, **e** nick, **f** groove, **g** foot.

Common terminology of typefaces includes the size of the x-height, counterform, serif (or sans-) style, and stress of the letter (vertical/oblique). The ability to compare these characteristics between typefaces establishes essential knowledge about the suitability of a particular typeface. By providing valuable information, or "earmarks," about how typefaces relate to classification systems, such as old-style, transitional, humanist, modern, and serif/sans serif, knowledge of type anatomy helps graphic designers to identify and select appropriate typefaces for different purposes.

Technology has accelerated the creation of new faces and produced digital versions of classics. There are so many choices available that selecting an appropriate typeface can be daunting. There are some digital fonts on the market that are of limited use, often downloadable for free. Many don't have much to offer in terms of versatility and lack a timeless quality. An argument can be made that they do appear different or somewhat experimental, and novelty has its uses in certain circumstances. For general use, especially where readability is a key concern, however, it is better to select classical fonts. Criteria for selection should normally be based on a careful evaluation of the media, the readership, and the design objective.

Key terms

There are over 25 anatomical terms applicable to letterforms. For general typography it's not necessary to know all of them, but some are essential to making visual judgments that aid typeface selection for different situations, and you should be able to describe those



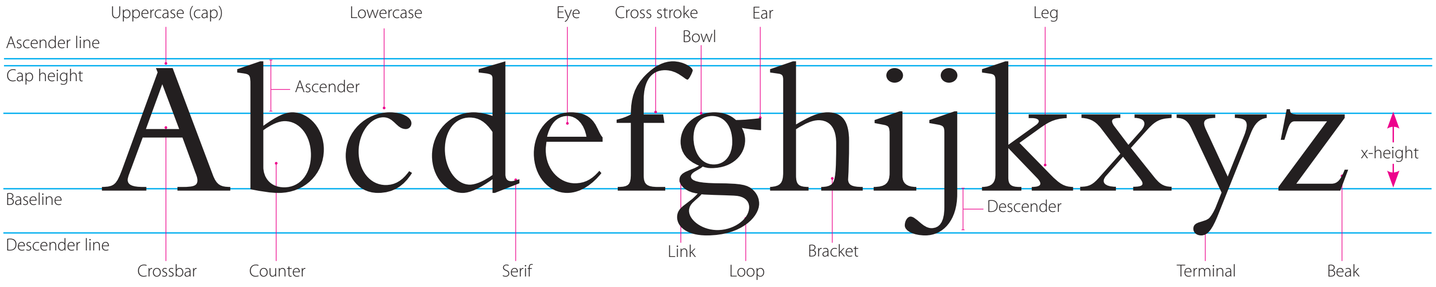
Oblique, angled stress, associated with old-style typefaces

Semi-oblique stress, associated with transitional typefaces

Vertical stress, associated with modern and sans-serif typefaces

Identifying characteristics The different stresses of typefaces are essential information in identifying their place within the classification systems, and to locating them within an historical timeline.

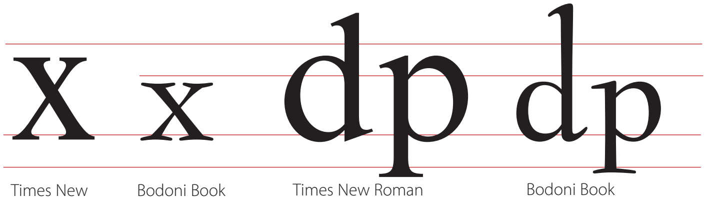
Language of letterforms Each distinct part of a letter has its own name, forming a "language of letterforms."

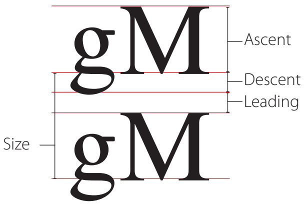


differences in a technically correct way. For example, you may want to argue for the use of the beautiful 18th-century typeface Bodoni in a particular design. You should be able to state that its characteristics include a vertical stress and a high degree of contrast between thick and thin strokes, and that the humanist quality of the font is appropriate to the readership and message.

Information about the difference between x-heights of typefaces is very helpful, since this allows the designer to choose typefaces that are more or less readable at smaller sizes. The x-height is the size of a lowercase "x" in a given typeface, and the ratio between x-height and the ascenders and descenders of the lowercase letters, such as "g" and "h," define the overall appearance of a font. As with all design decisions, the space around the design elements, type, or image is part of the picture and should be considered. Typefaces that have a large x-height may need more space between the lines (leading), so that they don't appear visually heavy on the page.

Typefaces of the same point size can appear larger or smaller. Futura has a small x-height, and long ascenders/descenders, whereas most sans-serif typefaces, such as Helvetica, typically have large x-heights. Although a general understanding of the terminology of typefaces is adequate for most designers, if you become interested in designing typefaces you will need to develop an intimate knowledge of type anatomy, in all its nuances, and have an excellent understanding of typeface history and development.





Measuring The point size of type is measured from the baseline of one line of type to the baseline of another. Leading is the vertical space between lines of type, which affects the readability of text.

Impact of x-height The x-height is the height of a lowercase x and determines the visual size of type. The x-height size varies from typeface to typeface: some, like Bodoni, have a small x-height, whereas Times New Roman has a large x-height. However, each type has the same body size. Type with large x-heights tend to have small ascenders and descenders, whereas type with small x-heights have large ones.

Small x-heights
In typefaces with small x-heights, such as Caslon and Futura, there is more white space above and below the lowercase letters. Such type is easier to read, because the eye can travel back and forth along lines without difficulty. Use less leading in these typefaces, or even set them without any additional leading ("solid"), and set them in a larger point size.

Large x-heights
In typefaces with large x-heights, such as Bookman or Helvetica, the lack of white space above and below the lowercase letters, and the larger white spaces within the letters, requires more space between lines. Increase the leading so that text is easier to read, and the overall "color" (another term for density or texture of the type) on the page is less heavy.

GLOSSARY

Baseline: The line on which the lowercase letters sit and below which the descenders fall.

Earmark: Identifying or distinguishing marks or characteristics of a typeface.

Point size/pica: The relative size of a font. There are 72 points in an inch.

Stress/axis: The angle of the curved stroke weight change in a typeface. Seen clearly in letters such as "o."

Type anatomy: The language used to describe the various parts of letterforms.

x-height: The height of a lowercase "x" in any typeface.

SEE ALSO: UNDERSTANDING AND SELECTING TYPEFACES, P66

1234567890
1234567890

Numerals Aligning (above, set in Palatino) and non-aligning (or old-style) numbers (below, set in Bembo Expert).

Helvetica Futura Bembo

Typefaces of | the same size | look different

sizes | because they | have varying | x-heights |

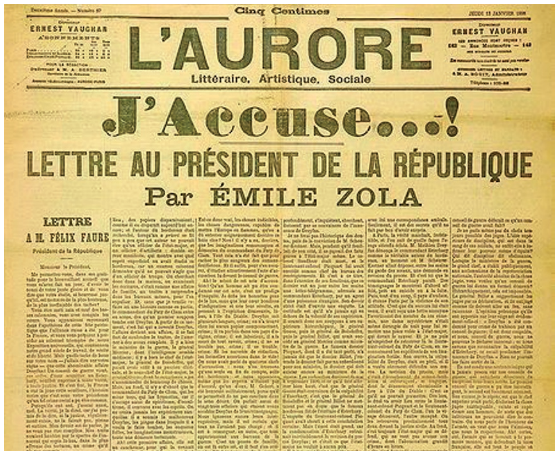
Bodoni Bernhard Modern Times New Roman

PART 1 | PRINCIPLES
CHAPTER 3 | FUNDAMENTALS OF TYPOGRAPHY

MODULE 3 | UNDERSTANDING AND SELECTING TYPEFACES

Since the introduction of digital typefaces, the number of fonts available has increased exponentially; it is virtually impossible to know them all, or be able to reference all of their attributes. However, it is always advantageous to know a typeface's historical background, since this can help in relating its characteristics to the content of the text. Selecting and understanding typefaces is a complicated business, one that becomes easier with practice.

For example, a sans-serif typeface such as Univers references modernity in a way that a serif font such as Garamond does not. Bodoni, designed in the late 1700s, has certain formal characteristics that, in their own era, were considered modern, including its use of perfectly vertical stress and sharp contrast between thick and thin lines, departing from "old-style" typefaces based on pen-drawn forms. In a modern setting this font is associated with classicism and history. Although it can be used in a contemporary way, it's important to understand Bodoni's history and associations, and to take these into account when considering its use. Understanding a typeface's historical origins and references, and its associated formal (visual) characteristics, is crucial when it comes to matters of selection. Broadly, contemporary typefaces such as Futura and Univers tend to work in modern contexts, whereas traditional type such as Garamond might be more apt for a literary classic. Of course, all these conventions are there to be played with and broken, but only when you have a full understanding of their significance. Research and read books on graphic design history, since our design past is always influencing the present.


Cinq Centimes

ERNEST VAUGHAN

L'AURORE

Littéraire, Artistique, Sociale

J'Accuse...!

LETTRE AU PRÉSIDENT DE LA RÉPUBLIQUE

Par ÉMILE ZOLA

LETTRE A M. FÉLIX FAURE

Newspaper fonts Sans-serif fonts were first seen in 1786. Shown above is an early use of a sans serif working with serif fonts, in a French newspaper, from 1898. Until this time, all newspaper text and headings were set in serif fonts, and to this day, text setting is usually in serif.

SERIF				SANS SERIF		
oAad Bembo regular	oAad Baskerville regular	oAad Bodoni Book	oAad Rockwell regular	oAad Gill Sans Book	oAad Helvetica regular	oAad Futura Book
Humanist Old-Style	Transitional	Modern	Egyptian and Slab Serif	Humanist Sans Serif	Anonymous Sans Serif	Geometric Sans Serif
Typefaces of the 15th and 16th centuries are based on hand-drawn calligraphic letterforms. They are characterized by having slanted (oblique or diagonal) stress, bracketed serifs, and low contrast between thick and thin strokes. Sabon, designed by Jan Tschichold in 1966, is a contemporary example, based on the 16th-century typeface Garamond.	A more vertical axis is visible in these 18th-century typefaces. The sharp contrast between thick and thin strokes was considered controversial at the time. Serifs are still bracketed, but they are moving away from the calligraphic influence. Baskerville is an example of a transitional typeface.	In the late 18th and early 19th centuries, typefaces became significantly more abstract. Bodoni shows a highly exaggerated contrast between thick and thin strokes, a perfectly vertical stress, and serifs that are no longer bracketed, but straight lines.	In the early 19th century, in response to the Industrial Revolution, many new typefaces were designed for use in advertising. Their bold, robust, decorative forms grew from this context. Egyptian typefaces are typical of this period, with their heavy, slab serifs and 'industrial' quality.	Sans-serif typefaces originated in the early 19th century but became dominant in the 20th century. Gill Sans, designed in 1928, combined the characteristics of both old-style serif and sans-serif fonts, with its calligraphic qualities but lack of serifs.	Sans-serif fonts were first produced by Caslon in 1816 (in capitals only), and William Thorowgood in 1832 (with lowercase), and they were known as Grotesques, since they were thought to be ugly. Helvetica was designed in 1957 by Max Miedinger, and is one of the best known sans serifs.	Typefaces such as Futura (designed by Paul Renner in 1927) are extensions of earlier sans serifs, but have a more geometric design, based on monolines (lines of one thickness, with no variation of thick and thin as in old-styles), perfect circles, and triangular shapes. Such typefaces are associated with Modernism in the early part of the 20th century, but continue to be popular.

Type classification

Before you examine the various factors involved in selecting type, it is worth considering the broad categories into which typefaces can be placed: type classification systems. Categorizing type is never an exact process, and there are many layers to the classification process, but a rough guide can help in distinguishing the characteristics of typefaces and learning the appropriate uses for the various type families. A clear initial division is sometimes made between text and display type, each of which has its own criteria for selection, but there are also faces that function well in both roles.

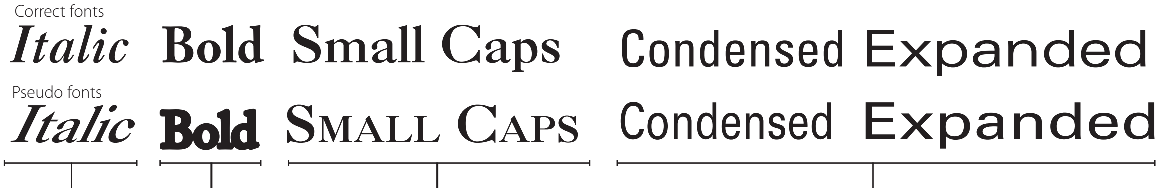
Text type: old style, transitional, and modern

Primarily, text types are meant to be read in continuous form or at least with few interruptions.

- Old-style serif typefaces, such as Bembo, Garamond, and Caslon, are ideal for this purpose. They are regarded as "classic" fonts because they have stood the test of time and still command respect. These Roman fonts have been in use since the origins of printing in the 15th century, and are considered humanist, because the original designs referenced the hand-drawn characteristics of manuscripts. Much later, during the 1930s, a number of new "Romans" were introduced to coincide with the new monotype hot-metal typesetting system and many of the classics were also recut for the same purpose. Times New Roman and Imprint are good examples of this group, known as 20th-century Romans. Later the German type designers Hermann Zapf and Jan Tschichold added, respectively, Palatino and Sabon to this group. Contemporary Romans, such as Minion, have now been designed using digital tools.
- Transitional Roman fonts have a vertical stress, sharp and bracketed serifs, and in most cases a medium to high contrast between thick and thin letterstrokes. Baskerville and Century Schoolbook are prime examples. The term captures a movement away from the old-style group, influenced by pen-drawn forms, toward modern faces rooted in geometry rather than the traditional pen stroke.
- Modern serif faces also have a vertical stress, but an abrupt contrast between the thick and thin letterstrokes, fine horizontal serifs, and a narrow set width (in most cases). Bodoni is one of the earliest and best-known examples; Walbaum is a slightly more contemporary version of a "modern" typeface.

There are many fonts in these three groups, which cover pretty much all kinds of book work. They can also be found in brochures and magazines, but other groups are more often used for this kind of publication.

Classifying differences Type classification charts are useful guides to the various characteristics (sometimes known as "earmarks") of different typefaces. They allow you to place typefaces within their historical contexts and to see how their basic visual attributes are shared across different, but related, fonts. For example, Romans always have serifs, while sans-serif humanist typefaces such as Gill Sans share properties associated with both old-style Roman and sans-serif typefaces.



Unless you choose a real italic from the font menu, a computer will only slant Roman letterforms

Pseudo bold is simply thickened digitally rather than being the true, carefully crafted font

Small caps are used within lowercase text when smaller, non-dominant capital letters are required. They are used for emphasis within traditional typesetting

Artificially condensed or expanded letterforms should be avoided, since the computer distorts them by applying a percentage reduction or expansion. Always use a "true" condensed or expanded typeface

Old-style serif faces

ABCabc
Bembo

ABCabc
Garamond

ABCabc
Caslon

ABCabc
Times New Roman

ABCabc
Imprint

ABCabc
Palatino

ABCabc
Sabon

ABCabc
Minion

Traditional Roman fonts

ABCabc
Baskerville

ABCabc
Century Schoolbook

Modern serif faces

ABCabc
Walbaum

ABCabc
Bodoni

Display type

Major social changes in the 19th century brought about the need for display type. The Industrial Revolution brought the masses into the cities, increasing production and consumption of goods and services, which led to the need to communicate to a wider audience. Existing fonts were used primarily for books, then limited to an elite sector. Printers found the available typefaces inadequate for the new billboards, posters, and pamphlets produced, especially since there were many more messages being displayed in public spaces, all vying for attention. Bolder, stronger faces were needed to suit this new context, and to meet demand.

The sans-serif typeface was bolder and more "industrial" in its look, along with slab serifs and thickened modern letters known as fat faces. The Victorians were innovative; their typefaces are full of vigor and still fascinate today. John Lewis' book *Printed Ephemera* has excellent examples of Victorian display fonts used on posters and playbills.

Sans-serif and script typefaces

The 20th century saw the extensive development of the sans serif, notably by the Bauhaus school in the 1920s and 1930s. Their philosophy was to sweep away the traditional forms characterized by excessive ornament, employing the principle of "form equals function." Simple typographic structures called for clean, functional typefaces, hence the interest in the sans serif with its mono weight and functional forms. Futura was introduced in 1927, and two years later Gill Sans was unveiled. In the decades that followed, well-known fonts such as Helvetica and Optima in Europe, and Franklin Gothic and Avant Garde in the USA, kept the sans serif among the most popular of type styles.

A significant advantage of the sans serif is the large number of potential variants within one typeface. In 1957 Adrian Frutiger introduced a complete family of different weights and forms when he conceived the design of Univers, which comprises 21 variants ranging from light condensed to bold expanded.

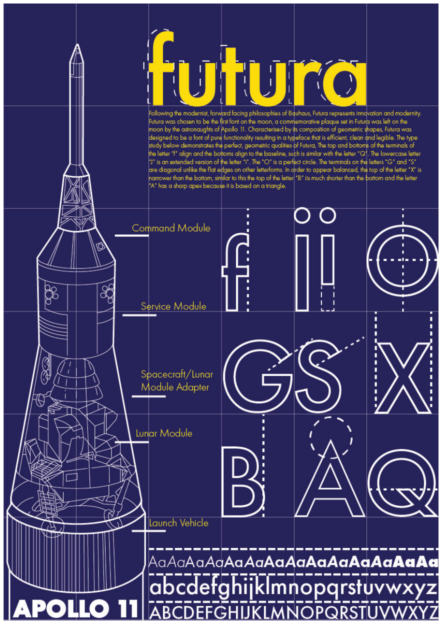
Stone Sans Semibold

Stone Sans Medium

This intro type is set in Stone Serif Semibold, this intro type is set in Stone Serif Semibold

This body type is set in Stone Serif Medium. Designed in 1987, the Stone family consists of three types of font—a serif, a sans-serif, and an informal style—all designed to work together. The styles are legible, modern, and dynamic, combining the old with the new. The Stone fonts integrate perfectly with each other, giving the typeface a wide range of design applications.

Perfect harmony Type designers have recently produced serif and sans-serif versions of the same typeface—for example, Officina and Stone. The advantage is that you can use a serif for the text setting and a sans for the display, and they will harmonize perfectly because they have been specifically designed to work together.

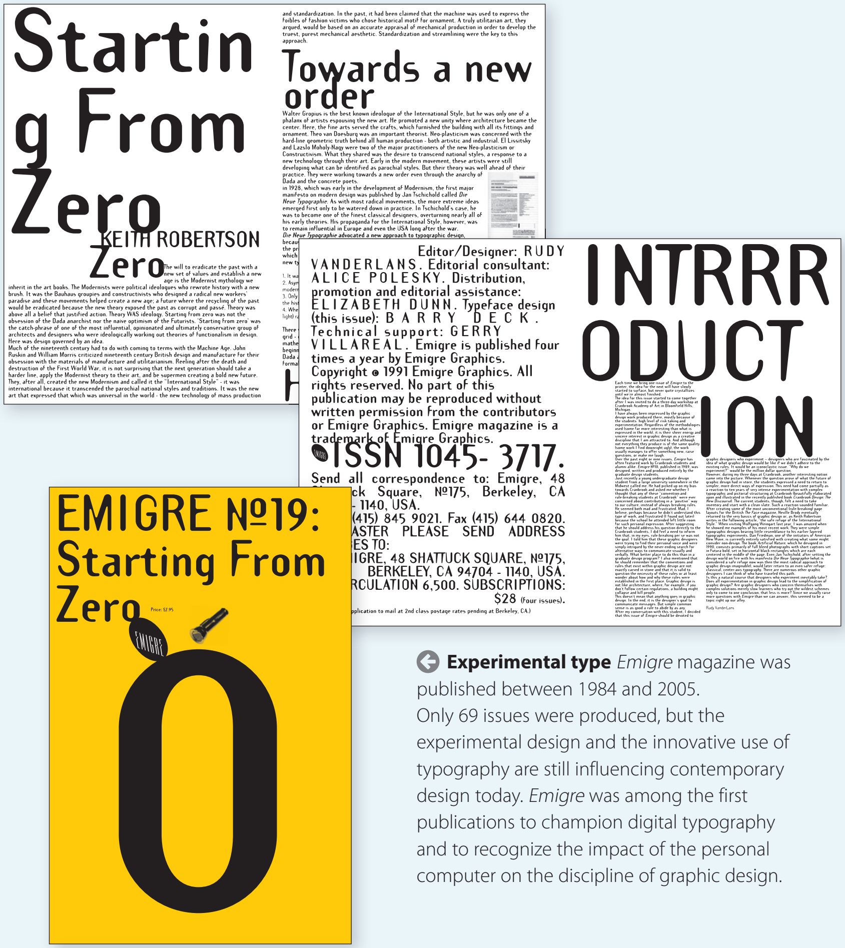

futura
Command Module
Service Module
Spacecraft/Lunar Module Adapter
Lunar Module
Launch Vehicle
f ïï O
GS X
B Å Q
AaAaAaAaAaAaAaAaAaAaAaAaAaAa
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
APOLLO 11
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

Following the modernist, forward facing philosophies of Bauhaus, Futura represents innovation and modernity. Futura was chosen to be the first font on the moon, a commemorative plaque set in Futura was left on the moon by the astronaughts of Apollo 11. Characterised by its composition of geometric shapes, Futura was designed to be a font of pure functionality resulting in a typeface that is efficient, clean and legible. The type study below demonstrates the perfect, geometric qualities of Futura, The top and bottoms of the terminals of the letter "f" align and the bottoms align to the baseline, such is similar with the letter "Q". The lowercase letter "J" is an extended version of the letter "i". The "O" is a perfect circle. The terminals on the letters "G" and "S" are diagonal unlike the flat edges on other letterforms. In order to appear balanced, the top of the letter "X" is narrower than the bottom, similar to this the top of the letter "B" iis much shorter than the bottom and the letter "A" has a sharp apex because it is based on a triangle.

Future efficiency Paul Renner's 1927 Futura typeface has been used creatively to convey a sense of efficiency and forwardness in this type specimen poster. Illustrative and composition design elements—such as using architectural blueprint paper as a background—and detailed technical drawing lines heighten the connotation of proficiency.

Elegant letterforms In this example, beautifully formed mixed serif and sans-serif letters are centered on each page composition in this promotion for *U&lc* magazine.

A U T E U R
SB
PS
FW
PG
PP
RM



Startin g From Zero

KEITH ROBERTSON

Towards a new order

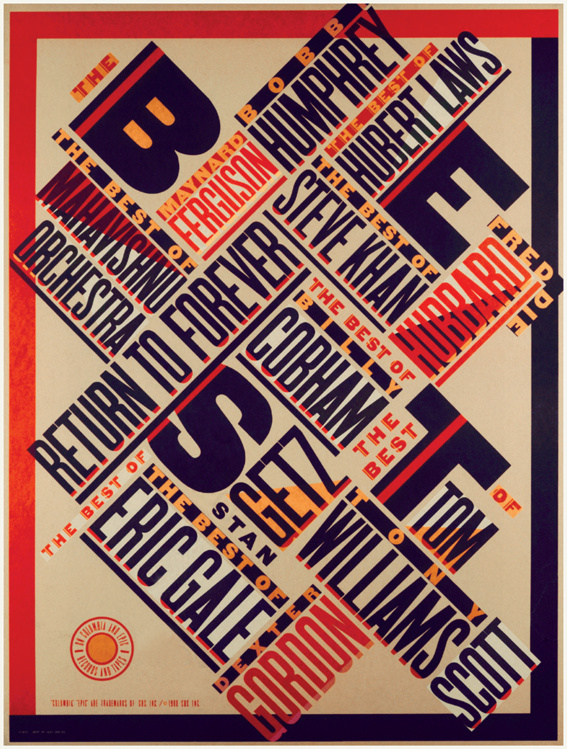
Editor/Designer: RUDY VANDERLANS. Editorial consultant: ALICE POLESKY. Distribution, promotion and editorial assistance: ELIZABETH DUNN. Typeface design (this issue): BARRY DECK. Technical support: GERRY VILLAREAL. Emigre is published four times a year by Emigre Graphics. Copyright © 1991 Emigre Graphics. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced without written permission from the contributors or Emigre Graphics. Emigre magazine is a trademark of Emigre Graphics. ISSN 1045- 3717. Send all correspondence to: Emigre, 48 S
ck Square, №175, Berkeley, CA
- 1140, USA.
(415) 845 9021. Fax (415) 644 0820.
ASTER PLEASE SEND ADDRESS
ES TO:
IGRE, 48 SHATTUCK SQUARE, №175, BERKELEY, CA 94704 - 1140, USA.
RCULATION 6,500. SUBSCRIPTIONS: $28 (four issues).
plication to mail at 2nd class postage rates pending at Berkeley, CA.

INTRRRODUCTION

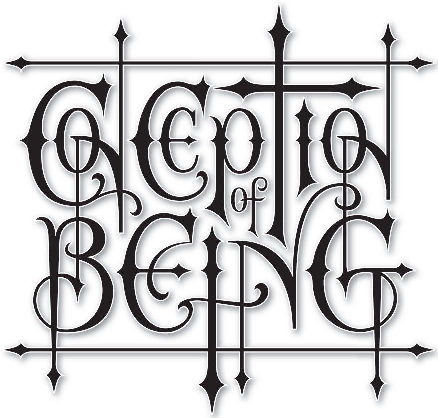
EMIGRE №19: Starting From Zero

Price: $2.95

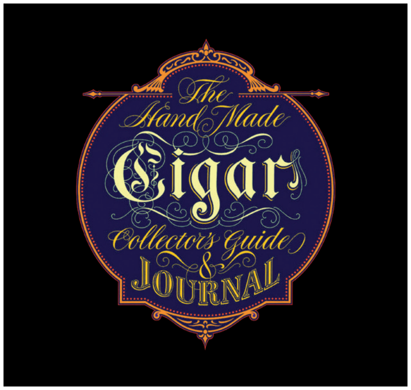
Experimental type *Emigre* magazine was published between 1984 and 2005. Only 69 issues were produced, but the experimental design and the innovative use of typography are still influencing contemporary design today. *Emigre* was among the first publications to champion digital typography and to recognize the impact of the personal computer on the discipline of graphic design.


THE BEST OF
B
E
S
T
BOBBY HUMPHREY
MAYNARD FERGUSON
MAHAVISHNU ORCHESTRA
RETURN TO FOREVER
STEVE KHAN
HUBERT LAWS
BILLY COBHAM
FREDDIE HUBBARD
STAN GETZ
ERIC GALE
DEXTER GORDON
TONY WILLIAMS
TOM SCOTT

Inspiration before and after Iconic graphic designer Paula Scher's Best of Jazz poster for CBS Records in 1979 shows the influence of constructivism and the beginnings of her own influence on the contemporary use of type as image. Recommended reading: *Make it Bigger* by Paula Scher (2002).


Conception of Being

Custom typography Master typographer John Langdon styled this custom lettering for a heavy-metal band. The designer cited the influence of Century for its classic formality. Designing custom letterforms requires excellent knowledge of typefaces and letterform construction. Work your way up to it, and reference existing fonts when you begin.


The Hand Made Cigar Collector's Guide & Journal

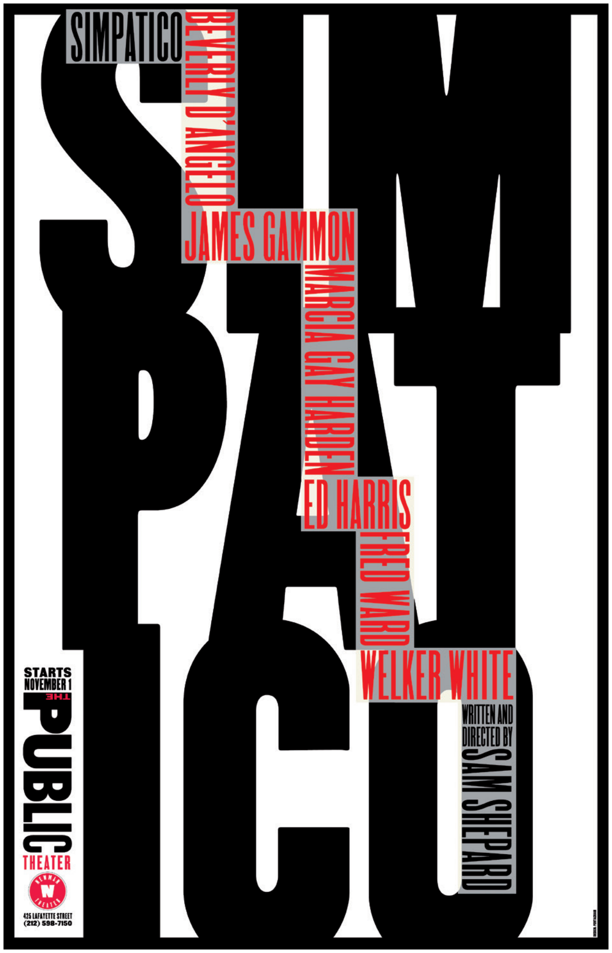
Handmade Logo and type-design legend Gerard Huerta handcrafted custom letterforms that connect with elaborate swashes and cartouches, creating a beautifully decorative emblem for the *Cigar Collector's Guide & Journal*.

Selecting fonts

The content of the material and the purpose of the design are the main factors in deciding your choice of font. Design clarity is essential in information dissemination, and it is telling that sans-serif types such as Interstate, with their simple mono-weight structures, are designed to maximize readability for highway signage. Sans serif is also ideal for small notation in diagrams, captions, and maps. The font Futura is one of the most widely used for onscreen and web, and arrives pre-installed in most computers.

- Font choice can be influenced by subject matter, and knowledge of the font origins might help in the final decision; for example, Caslon and Baskerville are classical English, Garamond is French, Goudy American, Bodoni Italian, and so on.
- Publication design can be more adventurous, because magazine readers tend to jump in and out of the text rather than reading from cover to cover. With small segments of copy, unusual fonts can sometimes bring freshness to the overall feeling of the design. However, it's wise not to mix too many fonts together in one design.
- Display types offer much more variety than text types because their purpose is expression rather than readability, so you can engage in playful experimentation in your headline design.
- Sans-serif and slab-serif faces are seen as more authoritative and bolder than typefaces that are designed for reading over long periods. If you are reversing out type or printing tints in small sizes, sans serifs are a good bet. For elegance, serifs have the advantage of tradition.
- Not all fonts are web-friendly. When designing an outcome that runs across online and offline mediums it is important that you research compatibility before you start.

SEE ALSO: THE ANATOMY OF TYPE, P64



Simplicity rules The development of the logo for New York's Public Theater, and the sophisticated simplicity of the sans-serif type on the theater's promotional materials, show the influence of old wood type in different weights. Designer Paula Scher developed a typographic style that defined the theater for years to come. For Sam Shepard's play *Simpatico*, 1994, a staircase of condensed letterforms easily brings the eye up and down through the composition.

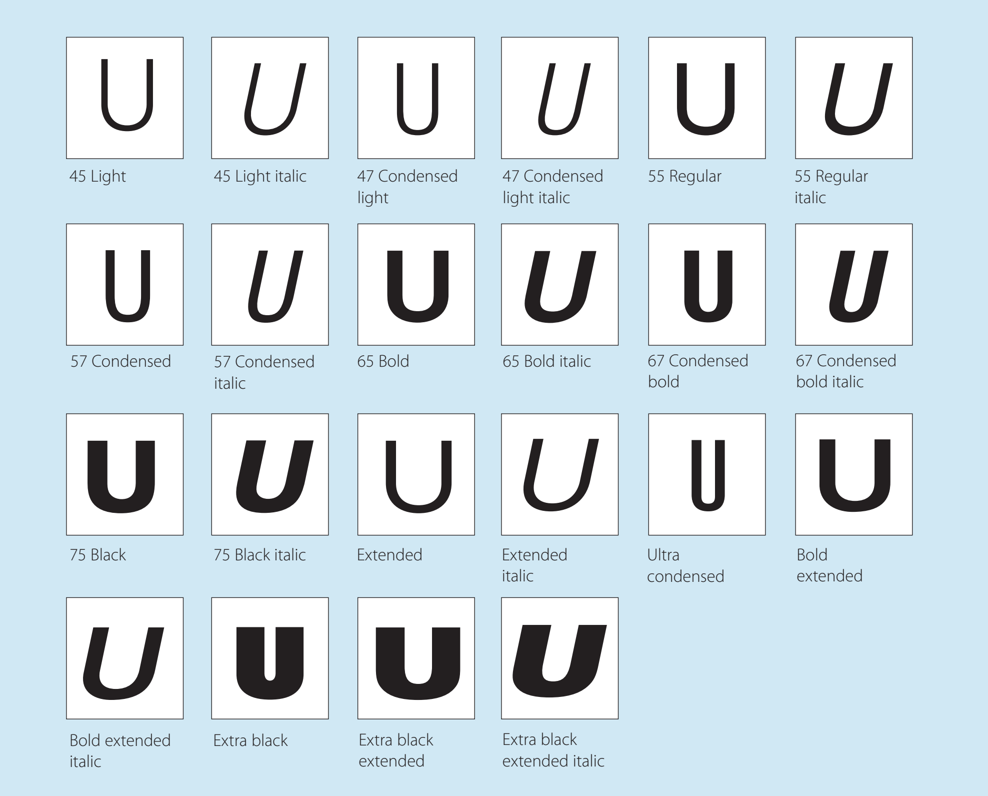
The Devil
GOD
is in the details

Opposites attract Design Bridge used contrasting fonts to reflect the subject content in their self-promotion book *25 Stories*.

GLOSSARY

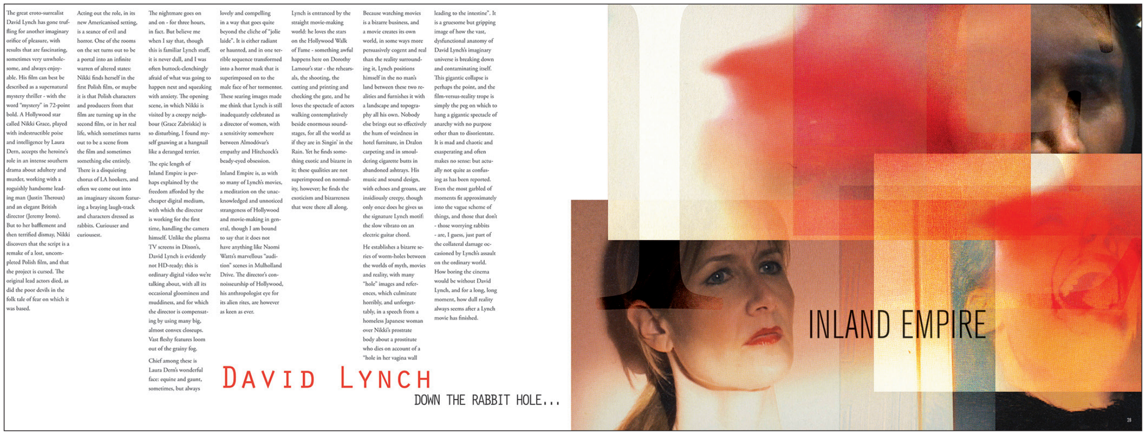
Sans serif: Without serif. Typefaces such as Univers, Helvetica, Aksidenz Grotesque, and Futura, characterized by their lack of serifs. Predominantly associated with the 19th/20th centuries.

Serif: Structural details at the ends of some strokes in old-style capital and lowercase letters.



Univers Designed by Adrian Frutiger in 1957, Univers is a modular system, with 21 numbered typefaces in various weights, widths, and oblique versions. This flexibility makes the font ideal for incorporating many differing levels of information within a design. It's interesting to compare the slight but important differences with other sans-serif typefaces such as Helvetica. You should learn to observe the fine distinctions when choosing between one sans serif and another.

Clarity Well-chosen fonts for the body text can support the message it delivers. Here, a rigid column of justified, sans-serif text offers descriptive support to the direct and unblinking works of Gilbert and George.



The great eroto-surrealist David Lynch has gone truffling for another imaginary orifice of pleasure, with results that are fascinating, sometimes very unwholesome, and always enjoyable. His film can best be described as a supernatural mystery thriller - with the word "mystery" in 72-point bold. A Hollywood star called Nikki Grace, played with indestructible poise and intelligence by Laura Dern, accepts the heroine's role in an intense southern drama about adultery and murder, working with a roguishly handsome leading man (Justin Theroux) and an elegant British director (Jeremy Irons). But to her bafflement and then terrified dismay, Nikki discovers that the script is a remake of a lost, uncompleted Polish film, and that the project is cursed. The original lead actors died, as did the poor devils in the folk tale of fear on which it was based.

Acting out the role, in its new Americanised setting, is a seance of evil and horror. One of the rooms on the set turns out to be a portal into an infinite warren of altered states: Nikki finds herself in the first Polish film, or maybe it is that Polish characters and producers from that film are turning up in the second film, or in her real life, which sometimes turns out to be a scene from the film and sometimes something else entirely. There is a disquieting chorus of LA hookers, and often we come out into an imaginary sitcom featuring a braying laugh-track and characters dressed as rabbits. Curiouser and curiousest.

The nightmare goes on and on - for three hours, in fact. But believe me when I say that, though this is familiar Lynch stuff, it is never dull, and I was often buttock-clenchingly afraid of what was going to happen next and squeaking with anxiety. The opening scene, in which Nikki is visited by a creepy neighbour (Grace Zabriskie) is so disturbing, I found myself gnawing at a hangnail like a deranged terrier.

The epic length of Inland Empire is perhaps explained by the freedom afforded by the cheaper digital medium, with which the director is working for the first time, handling the camera himself. Unlike the plasma TV screens in Dixon's, David Lynch is evidently not HD-ready; this is ordinary digital video we're talking about, with all its occasional gloominess and muddiness, and for which the director is compensating by using many big, almost convex closeups. Vast fleshy features loom out of the grainy fog.

Chief among these is Laura Dern's wonderful face: equine and gaunt, sometimes, but always lovely and compelling in a way that goes quite beyond the cliche of "jolie laide". It is either radiant or haunted, and in one terrible sequence transformed into a horror mask that is superimposed on to the male face of her tormentor. These searing images made me think that Lynch is still inadequately celebrated as a director of women, with a sensitivity somewhere between Almodóvar's empathy and Hitchcock's beady-eyed obsession.

Inland Empire is, as with so many of Lynch's movies, a meditation on the unacknowledged and unnoticed strangeness of Hollywood and movie-making in general, though I am bound to say that it does not have anything like Naomi Watts's marvellous "audition" scenes in Mulholland Drive. The director's connoisseurship of Hollywood, his anthropologist eye for its alien rites, are however as keen as ever.

Lynch is entranced by the straight movie-making world: he loves the stars on the Hollywood Walk of Fame - something awful happens here on Dorothy Lamour's star - the rehearsals, the shooting, the cutting and printing and checking the gate, and he loves the spectacle of actors walking contemplatively beside enormous soundstages, for all the world as if they are in Singin' in the Rain. Yet he finds something exotic and bizarre in it; these qualities are not superimposed on normality, however; he finds the exoticism and bizarreness that were there all along.

Because watching movies is a bizarre business, and a movie creates its own world, in some ways more persuasively cogent and real than the reality surrounding it, Lynch positions himself in the no man's land between these two realities and furnishes it with a landscape and topography all his own. Nobody else brings out so effectively the hum of weirdness in hotel furniture, in Dralon carpeting and in smouldering cigarette butts in abandoned ashtrays. His music and sound design, with echoes and groans, are insidiously creepy, though only once does he gives us the signature Lynch motif: the slow vibrato on an electric guitar chord.

He establishes a bizarre series of worm-holes between the worlds of myth, movies and reality, with many "hole" images and references, which culminate horribly, and unforgettably, in a speech from a homeless Japanese woman over Nikki's prostrate body about a prostitute who dies on account of a "hole in her vagina wall leading to the intestine". It is a gruesome but gripping image of how the vast, dysfunctional anatomy of David Lynch's imaginary universe is breaking down and contaminating itself. This gigantic collapse is perhaps the point, and the film-versus-reality trope is simply the peg on which to hang a gigantic spectacle of anarchy with no purpose other than to disorientate. It is mad and chaotic and exasperating and often makes no sense: but actually not quite as confusing as has been reported. Even the most garbled of moments fit approximately into the vague scheme of things, and those that don't - those worrying rabbits - are, I guess, just part of the collateral damage occasioned by Lynch's assault on the ordinary world. How boring the cinema would be without David Lynch, and for a long, long moment, how dull reality always seems after a Lynch movie has finished.

DAVID LYNCH

DOWN THE RABBIT HOLE...

INLAND EMPIRE

Fluid Serif type in long columns of uneven lengths seems to drift down the page in concert with hazy watercolor-hued images in an article about filmmaker David Lynch, titled *Down the Rabbit Hole.*

PART 1 | PRINCIPLES
CHAPTER 3 | FUNDAMENTALS OF TYPOGRAPHY

MODULE 4 | SPACING

DAVID WELCH
PERSUADING THE PEOPLE
Chapter Five
WE HAPPY FEW

Understanding how to deal with space in typography is essential. Proper spacing affects legibility, and space is also an integral and powerful part of any composition, whether symmetrical or asymmetrical. Develop an eye for detail, and consider the role of space in both legibility and meaning as you progress at every stage of the design development.

In most cases, the designs you produce will consist of a mixture of images and copy in the form of either headings (display type) or body copy (text). Display type ranges in size from 14pt and upward, whereas the main text (also referred to as body copy or body text) generally falls between 8 and 14pt. It is advisable to avoid the default setting of 12pt where you can, because it is industry default and suggests you have not made a design decision to change it. As you design, important choices will need to be made regarding typefaces, sizes, and measure (width of line). You will also need to decide about spacing (letter, word, and line) and, later, adjustments will need to be made by eye, even if the tool is a computer. There is no automated function on any computer that can replace the keen eye of an experienced designer.

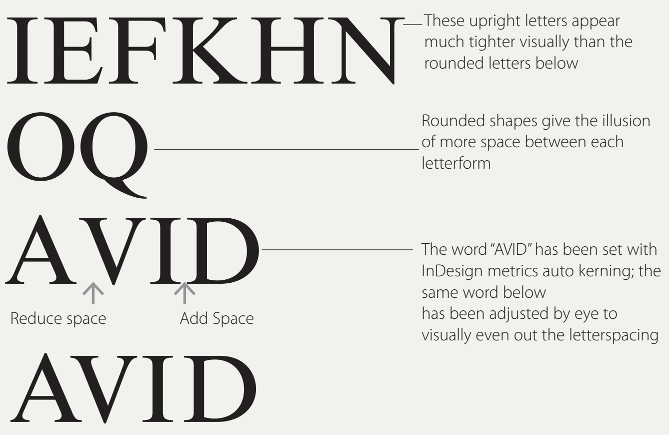
Letterspacing

When you keystroke or import text from a file, a computer sets the type at default space settings, both between individual letters (letterspace) and between lines of type (leading). The computer doesn't make the fine-tuning decisions that a designer must. If your type is too close together, with the letters almost touching, the letterspacing needs to be adjusted (called kerning). If they are too far apart, individual word shapes break down and legibility is compromised. One of the most common mistakes that new designers make is to set their text either too closely or too widely, or to accept the computer's spacing decisions. Designers need to learn as much as possible about the ways in which leading affects readability and impacts on the overall texture, sometimes called "tone," of the text on the page. There are many programs to help you understand readability, and the website type.method.ac is a particularly useful reference.

Extra or negative letterspace can be inserted to customize and reinforce a particular idea, but these are the exceptions and need to be carefully considered. Hyphenation is often used to allow for more text on a page, but it is notorious for disrupting reading flow. Bear these factors in mind when deciding how to lay out your text. Type designers for software programs are

➔ **Kern your caps** Kerning is the process of optically adjusting the space between (mostly capital) letters, so that they appear evenly spaced.

⬆ **Delicate balance** The variation in type hierarchy within this publication means consideration needs to be given to spacing. The cover heading, pull quotes, body copy, and captions are all different typographic devices used for different reasons, so it is vital that the typography keeps the correct visual balance in letterspacing, even when there are dramatic changes in scale.


IEFKHN
These upright letters appear much tighter visually than the rounded letters below
OQ
Rounded shapes give the illusion of more space between each letterform
AVID
The word "AVID" has been set with InDesign metrics auto kerning; the same word below has been adjusted by eye to visually even out the letterspacing
Reduce space
Add Space
AVID

careful to produce settings for good visual spacing between letters at different sizes. However, never take this for granted. For instance, condensed typefaces should always be treated cautiously, as should those set in justified measures: in these cases, small additions or subtractions can improve the evenness of spacing, or allow a word to be taken into a line to avoid widows or orphans (single words from the end of a paragraph left at the end or beginning of a column of text).

Design objectives

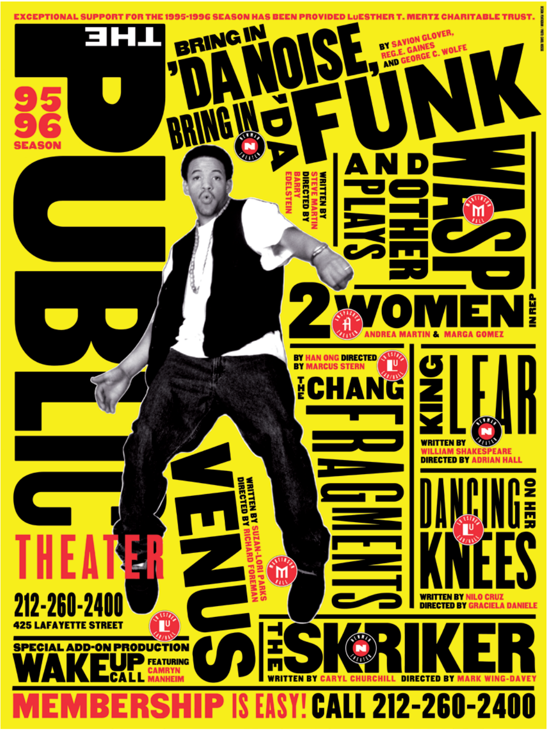
The main aim in display and text type is to try to achieve visual evenness throughout a series of characters. Consistency is important, because readers interpret shapes of words rather than individual letters. If there is unevenness in letterspacing, the eye can be distracted by the space rather than seeing the words.

You can test the importance of even letterspacing by setting text with different spacing, including altering it within the same line. As type size increases the unevenness can worsen, requiring the designer to make optical adjustments. This problem is prevalent with capital letters, as they fit together in complicated ways because of their inherent forms. Characters with straight stems such as "I," "J," "E," and "F," when placed together, require more space between individual letters than those with rounded shapes, like "O" and "Q," or those with diagonal strokes, such as "A," "V," "Y," and "W." Letters in certain words may need adjusted spacing to compensate for the reduced space between characters, such as "A" and "V." This is because the letters occupy different amounts of space, having varied widths.

Kerning allows for individual reductions or incremental increases to the letterspacing, whereas tracking increases or reduces space between words. Always trust your eyes.

Word spacing

In display type, one way to gauge the amount of space to leave between words is the width of a lowercase "i," but it will depend on the design sensibility. In some fonts, more than an "i" space will exacerbate difficulties in reading.


EXCEPTIONAL SUPPORT FOR THE 1995-1996 SEASON HAS BEEN PROVIDED LuESTHER T. MERTZ CHARITABLE TRUST.
THE PUBLIC THEATER
95 96 SEASON
BRING IN 'DA NOISE, BRING IN 'DA FUNK
BY SAVION GLOVER, REG.E. GAINES AND GEORGE C. WOLFE
WASP AND OTHER PLAYS
WRITTEN BY STEVE MARTIN DIRECTED BY BARRY EDELSTEIN
2 WOMEN IN REP
ANDREA MARTIN & MARGA GOMEZ
BY HAN ONG DIRECTED BY MARCUS STERN
THE CHANG FRAGMENTS
KING LEAR
WRITTEN BY WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE DIRECTED BY ADRIAN HALL
DANCING ON HER KNEES
WRITTEN BY NILO CRUZ DIRECTED BY GRACIELA DANIELE
VENUS
WRITTEN BY SUZAN-LORI PARKS DIRECTED BY RICHARD FOREMAN
THE SKRIKER
WRITTEN BY CARYL CHURCHILL DIRECTED BY MARK WING-DAVEY
212-260-2400
425 LAFAYETTE STREET
SPECIAL ADD-ON PRODUCTION
WAKE UP CALL FEATURING CAMRYN MANHEIM
MEMBERSHIP IS EASY! CALL 212-260-2400

Type in motion Paula Scher's 1996 iconic poster design for New York City's Public Theater is a masterful example of text management that redefined designing with type for a generation of graphic designers. The movement of the dancer is embodied in the placement of the letterforms, creating enormous energy while managing a huge amount of information at the same time. Note the use of a controlled palette to assist the hierarchy.

SEE ALSO: THE ANATOMY OF TYPE, P64

READABILITY AND LEGIBILITY, P76

GLOSSARY

Alignment: The setting of text relative to a column or page.

Centered: Text that is aligned neither to the left nor to the right: symmetrical, with an even gap at the end of each line.

Hyphenation: The point at which a word is broken at the end of a line in continuous text and a hyphen is inserted.

Justified: Text that is aligned on both the left and right margins of a column (lines are equal in length).

Kerning: Adjustments to the spaces between two letters (used extensively for capitals).

Leading: Measured from baseline to baseline, leading is the horizontal space between lines of type. Related to the historical use of strips of lead in letterpress printing.

Ligatures: Two or more letterforms joined to create a single character.

Optical adjustment: Making adjustments to letterspacing by eye, not mechanically.

Orphan: A single word or line of text that overruns into the top of the next column, breaking how the text is read.

Ragging: When text is aligned left, some words at the ends of the lines might jut out farther than the rest and cause uneven-looking paragraphs.

Ranged (or Ragged) left/right: Text that is aligned to a column, either left or right.

Tracking: The space between words, which can be adjusted.

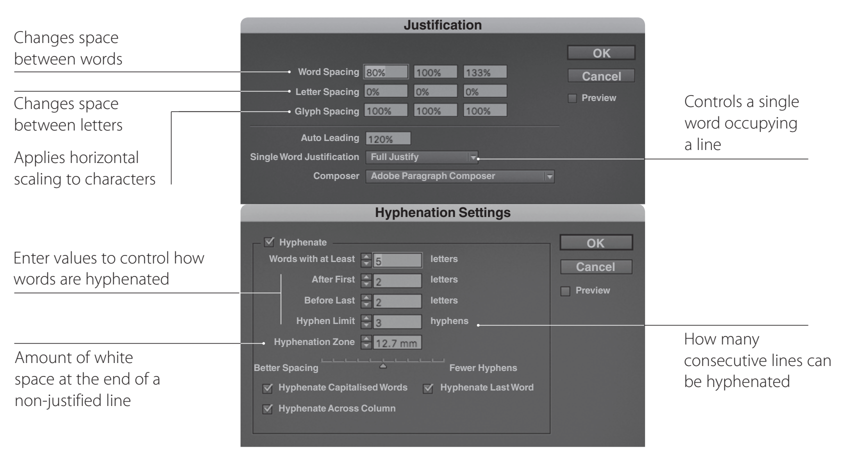
Widow: A single word on its own at the beginning of a line. It should be typeset to sit at the end of the previous line.

Theilowercaseiiiisiaigoodiguide

Word spacing is traditionally based upon a space equivalent to the body width of a lowercase "i."

Word spacing in text type also needs careful scrutiny, and typesetting style plays an important part. There are two basic setting styles for continuous reading: justified and ranged (or ragged) left. With justified setting, word spacing will vary because words are pushed out to fill the requirements of the measure. Space between words can become excessive, particularly if the chosen measure is too small or the typeface too large. Hyphenation (word breaks) can be adjusted to even out word spacing as far as possible, but justified setting is always tricky unless type size in relation to set measure is carefully considered. Setting justified text on a short measure with many long words is especially difficult, since fewer words end up on a line. This often occurs in newspapers.

With ranged-left setting, you have the advantage of being able to space words consistently. Many designers prefer this style for obvious reasons, although problems of legibility can still arise and ragging text (lines that jut out farther than others causing unevenness) becomes a major issue. Type style also plays an important part in word spacing. Percentage adjustments can be made within the hyphenation and justification (H and J) settings of electronic page-layout programs, to accommodate closer or wider word spacing depending on the width of character of the typeface. In general, ranged-left setting should not be hyphenated, except sometimes for shorter column widths; otherwise you can end up with lines of uneven length.



Changes space between words

Changes space between letters

Applies horizontal scaling to characters

Enter values to control how words are hyphenated

Amount of white space at the end of a non-justified line

Controls a single word occupying a line

How many consecutive lines can be hyphenated

Justification

Word Spacing 80% 100% 133%
Letter Spacing 0% 0% 0%
Glyph Spacing 100% 100% 100%
Auto Leading 120%
Single Word Justification Full Justify
Composer Adobe Paragraph Composer

Hyphenation Settings

☑ Hyphenate
Words with at Least 5 letters
After First 2 letters
Before Last 2 letters
Hyphen Limit 3 hyphens
Hyphenation Zone 12.7 mm
Better Spacing / Fewer Hyphens
☑ Hyphenate Capitalised Words ☑ Hyphenate Last Word
☑ Hyphenate Across Column

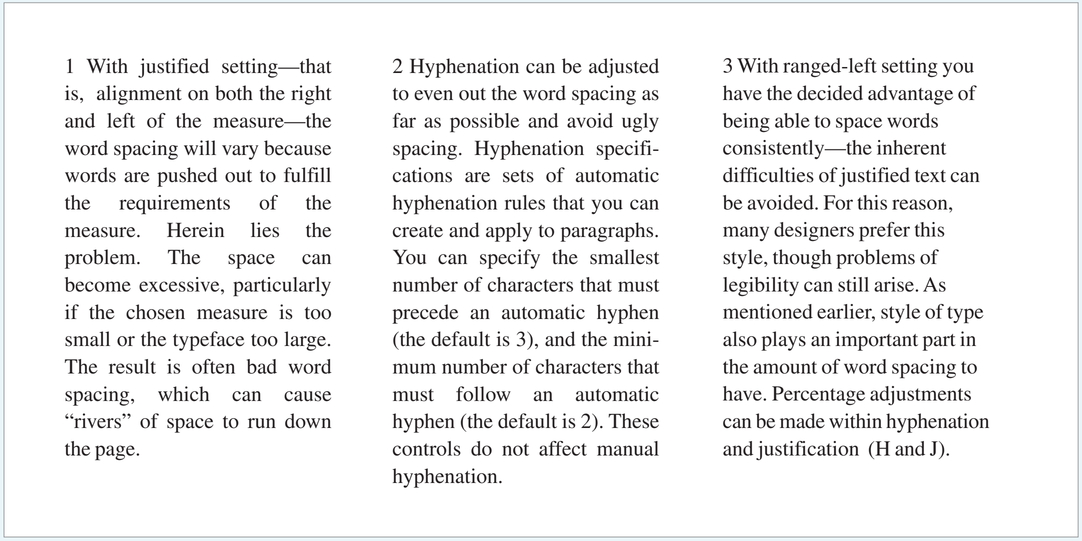
H and Js Hyphenation and justification can be fine-tuned manually, giving an excellent level of control; here the dialog boxes from InDesign are shown.

Justification options

1 No H and J This justified setting has no word breaks. You can easily see the problem of excessive word spacing, which causes rivers of space to form.

2 Hyphenation Using hyphens can help to reduce the problem of excessive word spacing, but don't hyphenate too often in a block of text.

3 Unjustified Excessive word spacing can be made to disappear with the ranged-left style of setting. With no word breaks you can shorten lines, giving a ragged look.



1 With justified setting—that is, alignment on both the right and left of the measure—the word spacing will vary because words are pushed out to fulfill the requirements of the measure. Herein lies the problem. The space can become excessive, particularly if the chosen measure is too small or the typeface too large. The result is often bad word spacing, which can cause "rivers" of space to run down the page.

2 Hyphenation can be adjusted to even out the word spacing as far as possible and avoid ugly spacing. Hyphenation specifi-cations are sets of automatic hyphenation rules that you can create and apply to paragraphs. You can specify the smallest number of characters that must precede an automatic hyphen (the default is 3), and the mini-mum number of characters that must follow an automatic hyphen (the default is 2). These controls do not affect manual hyphenation.

3 With ranged-left setting you
have the decided advantage of
being able to space words
consistently—the inherent
difficulties of justified text can
be avoided. For this reason,
many designers prefer this
style, though problems of
legibility can still arise. As
mentioned earlier, style of type
also plays an important part in
the amount of word spacing to
have. Percentage adjustments
can be made within hyphenation
and justification (H and J).

Leading

This term derives from “hot-metal” typesetting, where strips of lead were placed between lines of type.Measured from baseline to baseline, it refers to the amount of spacing between lines of type. In display type, the designer will invariably have to adjust individual lines and not just rely on a constant setting. Each line of type is spaced differently, according to need. The role of leading becomes particularly important when setting large areas of text, notably in books. There are no clear rules regarding the adjustments of line spacing for display matter; it is a matter of skill in developing an even look and in letting your eye be your guide. Every time you use display type, analyze each case individually. For example, designers sometimes use negative leading (in which the leading has a lower numerical value than the type size). This can be effective in giving a dynamic visual appearance, but should be used with care. You can also set preferences for a baseline grid (a horizontal grid structure that helps guide text layout) and align your text to sit upon it.

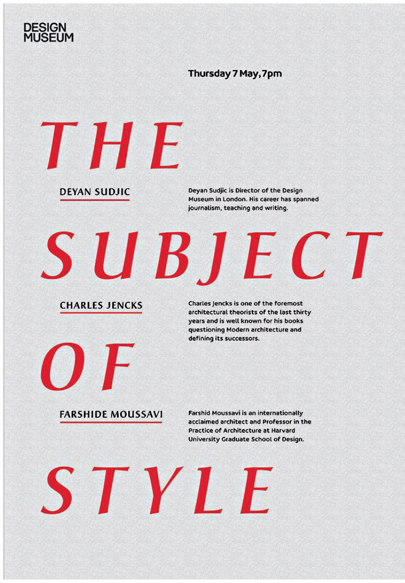
All type settings are enhanced by the careful consideration of leading. Factors such as x-height, measure, and weight of typeface will all influence the amount of leading you should employ

Left versus right Ranged-right text is considered harder to read than ranged-left text, because the eye travels to the end of the line and seeks a consistent location for the beginning of the next line. If the lines (on the left) are uneven, it’s more difficult to do this.

Ragging This typographic event poster embraces ragged text. Ranged-left, the ragged speaker biographies continue the ragged title treatment.

Ragging text

Creating ragging text, which is ranged left, takes time, practice, and patience. The key is to create a “soft” right-hand edge to the type, by bringing words down onto the following lines, and avoiding making harsh, obvious shapes—such as sharp diagonals—at the right edge of the text that distract the eye. A tried-and-true rule of thumb is to alternate longer and shorter lines. Avoid putting in hyphenation to solve ragging issues; it is better to work with the natural flow of the words in the copy and only break where it’s absolutely necessary.



DESIGN
MUSEUM

Thursday 7 May,7pm

THE

DEYAN SUDJIC

Deyan Sudjic is Director of the Design Museum in London. His career has spanned journalism, teaching and writing.

SUBJECT

CHARLES JENCKS

Charles Jencks is one of the foremost architectural theorists of the last thirty years and is well known for his books questioning Modern architecture and defining its successors.

OF

FARSHIDE MOUSSAVI

Farshid Moussavi is an internationally acclaimed architect and Professor in the Practice of Architecture at Harvard University Graduate School of Design.

STYLE

X-heights and readability

Helvetica Medium, designed in 1957 by Max Miedinger, a Swiss type designer, is a sans-serif typeface that has a relatively large x-height in relation to its ascenders and descenders. This means that when setting text in this font you may need to add extra leading (space between the lines) to ensure maximum readability.

Set in 8pt, with 4 points of leading, or 8/12pt.

The same size of type in Futura Medium, designed in the mid-1920s by Paul Renner and based on simple geometric forms, has a relatively small x-height for a sans-serif typeface. However, its long ascenders and descenders (see the “l” and the “y”) mean that when setting text in this font you may need to add extra leading to ensure maximum readability.

Set in 8pt, with 4 points of leading, or 8/12pt.

This text is set in the same size of type, in the transitional serif typeface Times New Roman, designed specifically for *The Times* newspaper in 1931, by Stanley Morison. It has a smaller x-height in relation to its ascenders and descenders, and therefore an overall smaller appearance on the page, needing less leading.

Set in 8pt, with 3 points of leading, or 8/11pt.

The same size of type in the old-style typeface Bembo, originally cut by Francesco Griffo in 1496, has an even smaller x-height, although it is in the same size as before. This means that when setting text in this font you may want to reduce the space between the lines to ensure maximum readability. This typeface also looks less visually dense when set as text on the page, because the weight of its strokes is less heavy.

Set in 8pt, with 2 points of leading, or 8/10pt.

PART 1 | PRINCIPLES
CHAPTER 3 | FUNDAMENTALS OF TYPOGRAPHY

MODULE 5 | READABILITY AND LEGIBILITY

Debate continues between traditionalists and modernists as to whether sans-serif typefaces are more or less legible than serif faces. Traditionalists argue that serifs aid legibility by helping to differentiate letterforms, factors that keep the eye moving along the horizontal line. However, modernists argue that sans serifs do not really decrease legibility; it is just a question of readers becoming culturally acclimatized to the sans-serif face aided by electronic devices.

Certain rules have evolved about setting type and using letterforms that still apply. One rule is that long passages composed entirely of either capital letters or very bold text are difficult to read. Multiple capitals can be difficult to read because the words have similar visual shapes or outlines and all are the same height. Ascenders and descenders in capital and lowercase settings aid in the differentiation between words.

Justified versus ranged left

Another perennially hot topic is the relative virtues of justified and ranged-left settings. Justified text may be no easier to follow than lines ranged left. Ranged-right settings force the reader to search for the beginning of each line, which can get very annoying over long passages and should generally be avoided. If you are reversing type out of black or a color, then a sans-serif typeface might be a safer option than the alternative, with its finer lines and serifs. Of course, much will depend on the size of type, choice of color, and quality of paper or media.

Between 60 and 72 characters per line (on any given measure) is the best number for optimum readability. However, these parameters will change according to type size. When lines are too long, the eye loses its place; too short and the reader will become distracted by the constant returning to the start of a new line. The text throughout these paragraphs is set in Berthold Akzidenz Grotesk at 9 points, with a leading measure of 11 points.

Contrast Serif and sans-serif fonts can be used successfully in the same system. Sans serif is used here to emphasize the difference between the call-out text and body text, and again to highlight and separate the captions. All of the selected typefaces are well proportioned, with weights relatively balanced to keep the system elegantly consistent.

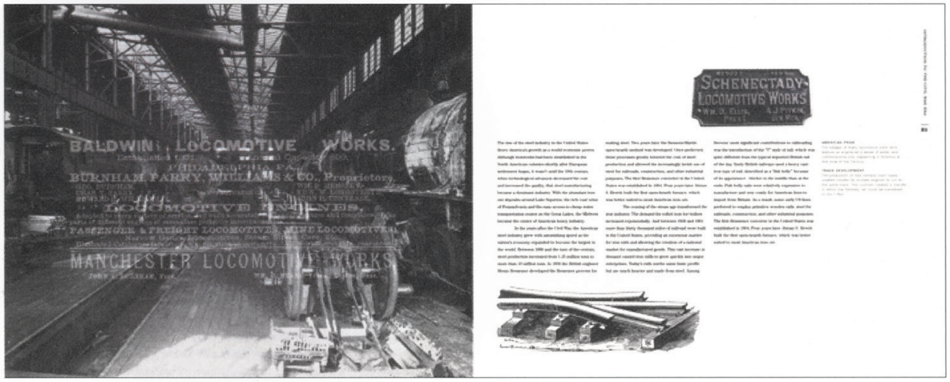
GLOSSARY

Justified: Lines or paragraphs of type aligned to both margins simultaneously, creating different spacing in between words.

Measure: The length of a line of text on a page, based in inches, centimeters, points, or picas.

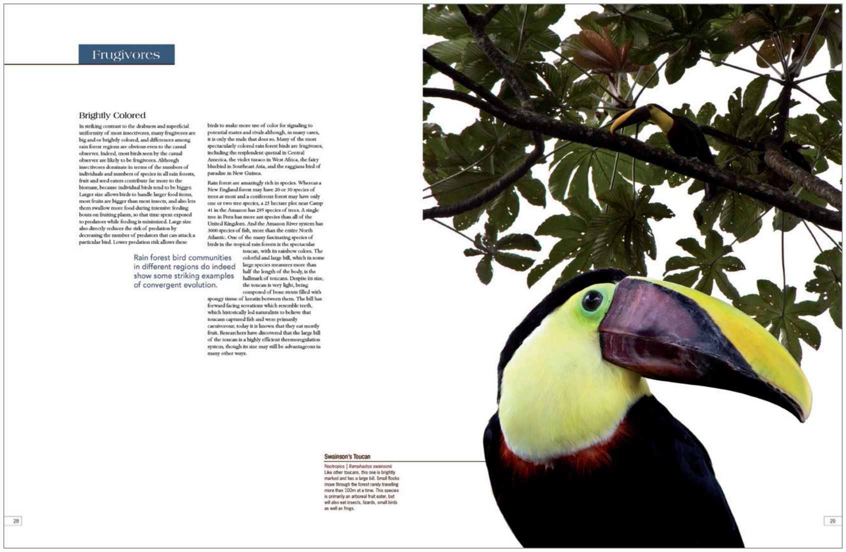
Ranged left: Paragraphs or lines of text aligned to the left-hand side margin.

Ranged right: Paragraphs or lines of text aligned to the right-hand side margin.


BALDWIN LOCOMOTIVE WORKS.
PHILADELPHIA, PA.
BURNHAM, PARRY, WILLIAMS & CO., Proprietors.
LOCOMOTIVE ENGINES.
PASSENGER & FREIGHT LOCOMOTIVES, MINE LOCOMOTIVES
MANCHESTER LOCOMOTIVE WORKS
SCHENECTADY LOCOMOTIVE WORKS

Systems A change in the typographic styling can be used as a navigation device that separates elements in the extended system: pagination, captions, body text, and in this case, evocative display type used as part of the photographic image, all have distinct styles that work together.

SEE ALSO: UNDERSTANDING AND SELECTING TYPEFACES, P66
SPACING, P72



Frugivores

Brightly Colored

In striking contrast to the drabness and superficial uniformity of most insectivores, many frugivores are big and or brightly colored, and differences among rain forest regions are obvious even to the casual observer. Indeed, most birds seen by the casual observer are likely to be frugivores. Although insectivores dominate in terms of the numbers of individuals and numbers of species in all rain forests, fruit and seed eaters contribute far more to the biomass, because individual birds tend to be bigger. Larger size allows birds to handle larger food items, most fruits are bigger than most insects, and also lets them swallow more food during intensive feeding bouts on fruiting plants, so that time spent exposed to predators while feeding is minimized. Large size also directly reduces the risk of predation by decreasing the number of predators that can attack a particular bird. Lower predation risk allows these birds to make more use of color for signaling to potential mates and rivals although, in many cases, it is only the male that does so. Many of the most spectacularly colored rain forest birds are frugivores, including the resplendent quetzal in Central America, the violet turaco in West Africa, the fairy bluebird in Southeast Asia, and the raggiana bird of paradise in New Guinea.

Rain forest are amazingly rich in species. Whereas a New England forest may have 20 or 30 species of trees at most and a coniferous forest may have only one or two tree species, a 25 hectare plot near Camp 41 in the Amazon has 295 species of trees. A single tree in Peru has more ant species than all of the United Kingdom. And the Amazon River system has 3000 species of fish, more than the entire North Atlantic. One of the many fascinating species of birds in the tropical rain forests is the spectacular toucan, with its rainbow colors. The colorful and large bill, which in some large species measures more than half the length of the body, is the hallmark of toucans. Despite its size, the toucan is very light, being composed of bone struts filled with spongy tissue of keratin between them. The bill has forward facing serrations which resemble teeth, which historically led naturalists to believe that toucans captured fish and were primarily carnivorous; today it is known that they eat mostly fruit. Researchers have discovered that the large bill of the toucan is a highly efficient thermoregulation system, though its size may still be advantageous in many other ways.

Rain forest bird communities in different regions do indeed show some striking examples of convergent evolution.

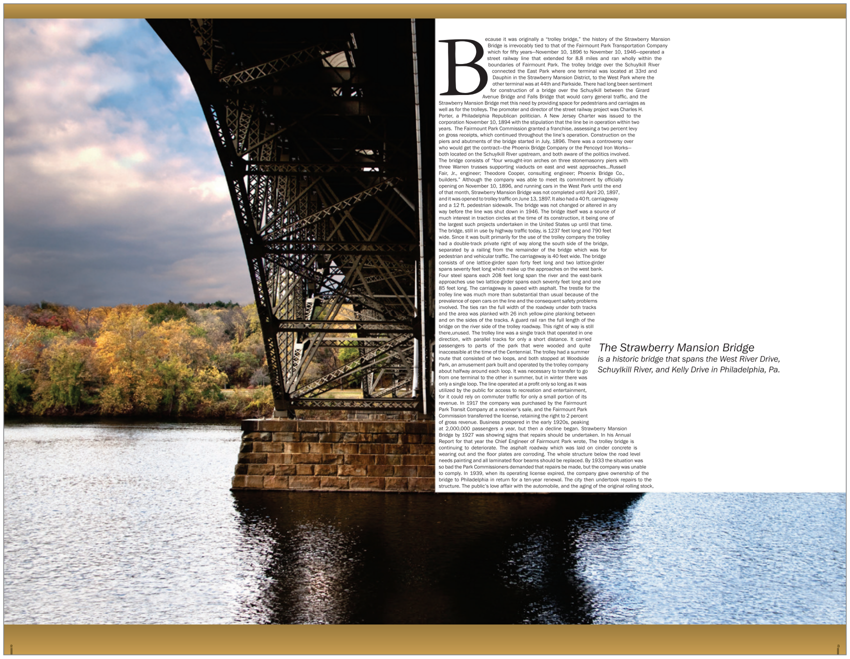
Swainson's Toucan

Neotropics | *Ramphastos swainsonii*

Like other toucans, this one is brightly marked and has a large bill. Small flocks move through the forest rarely travelling more than 100m at a time. This species is primarily an arboreal fruit eater, but will also eat insects, lizards, small birds as well as frogs.

28

29



Because it was originally a "trolley bridge," the history of the Strawberry Mansion Bridge is irrevocably tied to that of the Fairmount Park Transportation Company which for fifty years—November 10, 1896 to November 10, 1946—operated a street railway line that extended for 8.8 miles and ran wholly within the boundaries of Fairmount Park. The trolley bridge over the Schuylkill River connected the East Park where one terminal was located at 33rd and Dauphin in the Strawberry Mansion District, to the West Park where the other terminal was at 44th and Parkside. There had long been sentiment for construction of a bridge over the Schuylkill between the Girard Avenue Bridge and Falls Bridge that would carry general traffic, and the Strawberry Mansion Bridge met this need by providing space for pedestrians and carriages as well as for the trolleys. The promoter and director of the street railway project was Charles H. Porter, a Philadelphia Republican politician. A New Jersey Charter was issued to the corporation November 10, 1894 with the stipulation that the line be in operation within two years. The Fairmount Park Commission granted a franchise, assessing a two percent levy on gross receipts, which continued throughout the line's operation. Construction on the piers and abutments of the bridge started in July, 1896. There was a controversy over who would get the contract—the Phoenix Bridge Company or the Pencoyd Iron Works—both located on the Schuylkill River upstream, and both aware of the politics involved. The bridge consists of "four wrought-iron arches on three stonemasonry piers with three Warren trusses supporting viaducts on east and west approaches...Russell Fair, Jr., engineer; Theodore Cooper, consulting engineer; Phoenix Bridge Co., builders." Although the company was able to meet its commitment by officially opening on November 10, 1896, and running cars in the West Park until the end of that month, Strawberry Mansion Bridge was not completed until April 20, 1897, and it was opened to trolley traffic on June 13, 1897. It also had a 40 ft. carriageway and a 12 ft. pedestrian sidewalk. The bridge was not changed or altered in any way before the line was shut down in 1946. The bridge itself was a source of much interest in traction circles at the time of its construction, it being one of the largest such projects undertaken in the United States up until that time. The bridge, still in use by highway traffic today, is 1237 feet long and 790 feet wide. Since it was built primarily for the use of the trolley company the trolley had a double-track private right of way along the south side of the bridge, separated by a railing from the remainder of the bridge which was for pedestrian and vehicular traffic. The carriageway is 40 feet wide. The bridge consists of one lattice-girder span forty feet long and two lattice-girder spans seventy feet long which make up the approaches on the west bank. Four steel spans each 208 feet long span the river and the east-bank approaches use two lattice-girder spans each seventy feet long and one 85 feet long. The carriageway is paved with asphalt. The trestle for the trolley line was much more than substantial than usual because of the prevalence of open cars on the line and the consequent safety problems involved. The ties ran the full width of the roadway under both tracks and the area was planked with 26 inch yellow-pine planking between and on the sides of the tracks. A guard rail ran the full length of the bridge on the river side of the trolley roadway. This right of way is still there,unused. The trolley line was a single track that operated in one direction, with parallel tracks for only a short distance. It carried passengers to parts of the park that were wooded and quite inaccessible at the time of the Centennial. The trolley had a summer route that consisted of two loops, and both stopped at Woodside Park, an amusement park built and operated by the trolley company about halfway around each loop. It was necessary to transfer to go from one terminal to the other in summer, but in winter there was only a single loop. The line operated at a profit only so long as it was utilized by the public for access to recreation and entertainment, for it could rely on commuter traffic for only a small portion of its revenue. In 1917 the company was purchased by the Fairmount Park Transit Company at a receiver's sale, and the Fairmount Park Commission transferred the license, retaining the right to 2 percent of gross revenue. Business prospered in the early 1920s, peaking at 2,000,000 passengers a year, but then a decline began. Strawberry Mansion Bridge by 1927 was showing signs that repairs should be undertaken. In his Annual Report for that year the Chief Engineer of Fairmount Park wrote, The trolley bridge is continuing to deteriorate. The asphalt roadway which was laid on cinder concrete is wearing out and the floor plates are corroding. The whole structure below the road level needs painting and all laminated floor beams should be replaced. By 1933 the situation was so bad the Park Commissioners demanded that repairs be made, but the company was unable to comply. In 1939, when its operating license expired, the company gave ownership of the bridge to Philadelphia in return for a ten-year renewal. The city then undertook repairs to the structure. The public's love affair with the automobile, and the aging of the original rolling stock,

The Strawberry Mansion Bridge
is a historic bridge that spans the West River Drive, Schuylkill River, and Kelly Drive in Philadelphia, Pa.

Structure and shape Justified type can be used decoratively, but the lines and the H & Js need to be managed line by line, as does the tracking and kerning on each word. When it's done correctly, the results can be a stunning integration of type and image. Choose a typeface that is easy to read, in this case a clean sans serif, and manage your paragraph breaks carefully to avoid widows.

Key features: readability

Measure (line length), type size, and leading (spacing between lines) work in concert and affect readability.

- We have established that the optimum number of characters per line is between 60 and 72. Any more and the eye has problems picking up the next line; fewer characters per line can interrupt reading flow. Of course, the needs of different design types will influence these decisions; in fact, context is everything. In magazines, measures tend to be shorter because readers dip into articles rather than reading from cover to cover. Novels, which have to satisfy a criterion of continuous reading, look very different to advertisements, where immediate impact is a primary concern. Indeed, it is a useful exercise to ask why certain publications—newspapers, timetables, cookbooks, etc.—differ in their standards of readability depending on their function.
- Choice of type size and measure also depends on the amount of copy. Readers can cope with small amounts if the setting is smaller or on a narrower measure than the recommended optimum.
- Leading is a major element in readability. If there is insufficient space between lines, the eye will be hampered from moving smoothly to the next line. Increased leading is also required if the typeface is condensed, or if a serif typeface with a heavy or bold characteristic is being used.
- Typefaces with large x-heights have reduced ascenders and descenders, resulting in less differentiation in word shapes. Therefore, these typefaces need to have more leading.

PART 1 | PRINCIPLES

CHAPTER 3 | FUNDAMENTALS OF TYPOGRAPHY

MODULE 6 | TYPOGRAPHIC EMPHASIS AND HIERARCHY

Knowing how to solve problems of emphasis using type is a critical skill. This involves considering the relationship between multiple elements—the size and weight of type, the position on the page, and the dynamic between elements—as well as developing an understanding of how these decisions call forth some contents while suppressing others. These kinds of typographic decisions relate to what are called hierarchies of information, since in any design some things will need to be read first, with secondary information to follow.

SANZO
CALAMANSI
SPARKLING WATE
Made with real fruit.
0g of sugar.
12 FL OZ (355 ML)

Refreshing The striking use of a zesty green palette and the soft, sans-serif typeface complement the contents of this can. Evoking thoughts of the taste and the quenching of thirst is a clever and successful way to represent the fizzy beverage and entice the buyer in.

Before starting any design, it is crucial to understand where the main points of emphasis fall in terms of headings, subheadings, intro copy, captions, quotes, and so on. These levels of importance are called hierarchies. Once established, hierarchies can be indicated in various ways: by space, weight, color, and form.

- **Adding vertical "white" space** in the form of a one-line or half-line space above or below a heading, separating it from the surrounding elements, creates emphasis.
- **The density of black ink** creates its own visual emphasis. Sans-serif typefaces, such as Univers, are good for this because they typically have various weight combinations you can use: light with bold, medium with extra bold, and so on. Bear in mind that a smaller size of bold type is visually "heavier" than a larger size of regular-weight type.
- **Changing the typestyle** is a third method—switching from roman to italics, for example. Italics add informality and movement to a design and are also effective for highlighting key phrases within text. Because of their more delicate form, you will probably need to increase the size proportionally for readability where needed.
- **Changing some lowercase to capitals** can add formality to a design. Capitals need more letterspacing, and so consume more space, though you don't have the problem of ascenders clashing with descenders. Small capitals provide an even more subtle shift of emphasis.

The power of contrast

Other techniques involving the use of contrast can be applied to add emphasis effectively.

- **Contrasting condensed with extended type** can be effective, but use it sparingly with short, concise headlines. Remember that condensed type requires more leading, and that expanded type pushes out the length of the copy. Simple, effective paragraph styling adds emphasis, too, such as indents at the start of paragraphs or sections.
- **Color is a valuable tool** and type does not have to be black and white to create contrast. Make sure that you have tested ink color on the stock color if you are printing. Transparent inks can compromise readability, and colors too close together in value or hue will not work. Colors with complementary values, such as red and green, can cause type to vibrate. When adding delicate color to type, consider using a typeface with more weight, and provide a larger area of color. Experiment with reversing out type or adding rules to draw attention to parts of the text.
- **Changing type size or weight** is a popular option. Again, when using shifts of size for emphasis,

GLOSSARY

Contrast: The difference between elements, which allows for comparison and emphasis. Contrast is closely related to hierarchy, since it allows different levels of information to be identified.

Hierarchy: In this context, the name for differing levels of text in a document. A page title, for example, is at the top of the hierarchy, whereas paragraphs of text are below.

SEE ALSO: SPACING, P72

ensure that there is a substantial difference between the main text and the heading. If the sizes are too close, then the point is not well made. The difference in size has to be great enough to make the point.

Less is more

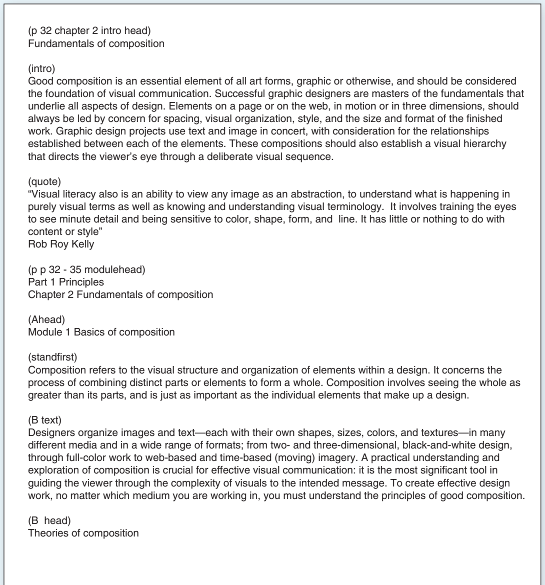
Try not to have too many means of emphasis going on at once. Too many techniques in one place will confuse the eye and detract, rather than add, to the concept. "Less is more" is often a good principle when trying to work through problems of emphasis and hierarchy. Don't overstate your points by setting type in a large point size, bold, italics, underlined, and at an angle. With computers, it is easy to change things, and you need to be disciplined to avoid creating a mishmash of weights, sizes, forms, and indents. Resist the temptation to use all your techniques at once—and remember, you do not always have to shout to be heard.

swell
Advanced
Volumizing
Shampoo
swell
Advanced
Volumizing
Conditioner
swell
Advanced
Root Nutrient
Complex

Customize and complement
A slight parting in the negative space at the base of the logo's double letter "l" is just enough to express the root-to-tip promise of swell haircare products, designed by Aloof. Keeping the rest of the type clean and simple allows the subtlety of the logo to shine and stays true to the brand.

Anatomy of a page

Work with your copywriter and your client to assign the page hierarchy before you begin your design work. If you have a system that repeats formats, as in book design, be sure to stay consistent in assigning fonts and weights to your style sheets.



(p 32 chapter 2 intro head)
Fundamentals of composition

(intro)
Good composition is an essential element of all art forms, graphic or otherwise, and should be considered the foundation of visual communication. Successful graphic designers are masters of the fundamentals that underlie all aspects of design. Elements on a page or on the web, in motion or in three dimensions, should always be led by concern for spacing, visual organization, style, and the size and format of the finished work. Graphic design projects use text and image in concert, with consideration for the relationships established between each of the elements. These compositions should also establish a visual hierarchy that directs the viewer's eye through a deliberate visual sequence.

(quote)
"Visual literacy also is an ability to view any image as an abstraction, to understand what is happening in purely visual terms as well as knowing and understanding visual terminology. It involves training the eyes to see minute detail and being sensitive to color, shape, form, and line. It has little or nothing to do with content or style"
Rob Roy Kelly

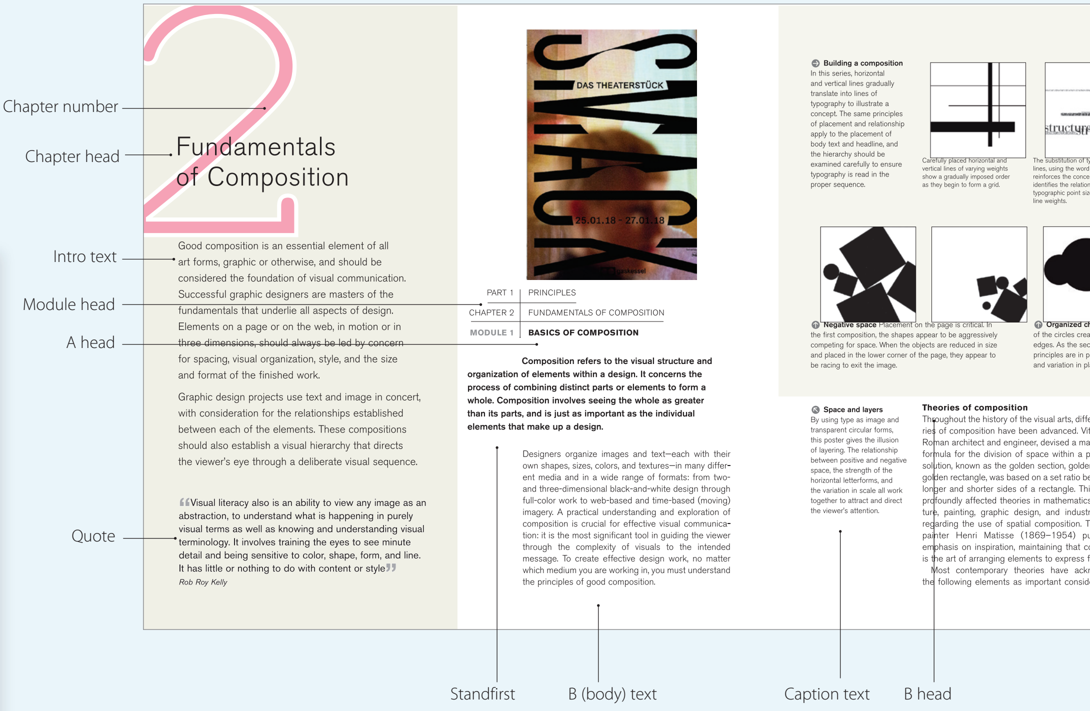
(p p 32 - 35 modulehead)
Part 1 Principles
Chapter 2 Fundamentals of composition

(Ahead)
Module 1 Basics of composition

(standfirst)
Composition refers to the visual structure and organization of elements within a design. It concerns the process of combining distinct parts or elements to form a whole. Composition involves seeing the whole as greater than its parts, and is just as important as the individual elements that make up a design.

(B text)
Designers organize images and text—each with their own shapes, sizes, colors, and textures—in many different media and in a wide range of formats; from two- and three-dimensional, black-and-white design, through full-color work to web-based and time-based (moving) imagery. A practical understanding and exploration of composition is crucial for effective visual communication: it is the most significant tool in guiding the viewer through the complexity of visuals to the intended message. To create effective design work, no matter which medium you are working in, you must understand the principles of good composition.

(B head)
Theories of composition



Fundamentals of Composition

Good composition is an essential element of all art forms, graphic or otherwise, and should be considered the foundation of visual communication. Successful graphic designers are masters of the fundamentals that underlie all aspects of design. Elements on a page or on the web, in motion or in three dimensions, should always be led by concern for spacing, visual organization, style, and the size and format of the finished work.

Graphic design projects use text and image in concert, with consideration for the relationships established between each of the elements. These compositions should also establish a visual hierarchy that directs the viewer's eye through a deliberate visual sequence.

"Visual literacy also is an ability to view any image as an abstraction, to understand what is happening in purely visual terms as well as knowing and understanding visual terminology. It involves training the eyes to see minute detail and being sensitive to color, shape, form, and line. It has little or nothing to do with content or style"
Rob Roy Kelly

PART 1 | PRINCIPLES
CHAPTER 2 | FUNDAMENTALS OF COMPOSITION
MODULE 1 | **BASICS OF COMPOSITION**

Composition refers to the visual structure and organization of elements within a design. It concerns the process of combining distinct parts or elements to form a whole. Composition involves seeing the whole as greater than its parts, and is just as important as the individual elements that make up a design.

Designers organize images and text—each with their own shapes, sizes, colors, and textures—in many different media and in a wide range of formats: from two- and three-dimensional black-and-white design through full-color work to web-based and time-based (moving) imagery. A practical understanding and exploration of composition is crucial for effective visual communication: it is the most significant tool in guiding the viewer through the complexity of visuals to the intended message. To create effective design work, no matter which medium you are working in, you must understand the principles of good composition.

Building a composition In this series, horizontal and vertical lines gradually translate into lines of typography to illustrate a concept. The same principles of placement and relationship apply to the placement of body text and headline, and the hierarchy should be examined carefully to ensure typography is read in the proper sequence.

Carefully placed horizontal and vertical lines of varying weights show a gradually imposed order as they begin to form a grid.

The substitution of ty
lines, using the word
reinforces the conce
identifies the relation
typographic point siz
line weights.

Negative space Placement on the page is critical. In the first composition, the shapes appear to be aggressively competing for space. When the objects are reduced in size and placed in the lower corner of the page, they appear to be racing to exit the image.

Organized ch
of the circles crea
edges. As the sec
principles are in p
and variation in pl

Space and layers By using type as image and transparent circular forms, this poster gives the illusion of layering. The relationship between positive and negative space, the strength of the horizontal letterforms, and the variation in scale all work together to attract and direct the viewer's attention.

Theories of composition
Throughout the history of the visual arts, diffe
ries of composition have been advanced. Vit
Roman architect and engineer, devised a ma
formula for the division of space within a p
solution, known as the golden section, golde
golden rectangle, was based on a set ratio be
longer and shorter sides of a rectangle. Thi
profoundly affected theories in mathematics
ture, painting, graphic design, and industr
regarding the use of spatial composition. T
painter Henri Matisse (1869–1954) pu
emphasis on inspiration, maintaining that co
is the art of arranging elements to express f
Most contemporary theories have ackn
the following elements as important consid

Type size

Your choice of font, weight of heading, or amount of leading all depend on other decisions you have made. The same is true of type size: point size is an absolute measure of how big type is, but remember the same-sized type can look very different depending on other factors—the amount of space around it, the relative size of the text copy, the weight of font used, and so on. The central point about increasing type size is that it works as a strong form of emphasis, providing a focal point that attracts the reader's attention.

Headings

Once agreement has been reached about the different levels of importance in the main text, they need to be translated into appropriate sizes and a format for the document should be designed. If headings are of varying levels of importance, try to make sure they are visually segregated.

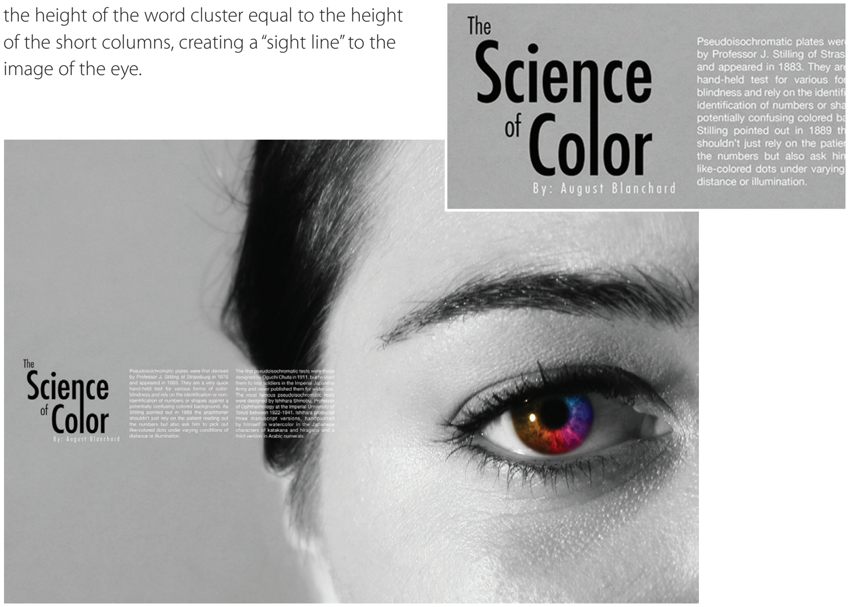
There are numerous ways in which you can play with headings to improve the visual feel of a design.

- Breaking a line or word into different parts, or using alternating sizes with a heading, can look dynamic. For example, articles and conjunctions ("a," "the," "and," "or") could be made smaller to give important words more stress.
- The logotypes of magazines (known as mastheads), billboards, newspaper headlines, and posters are all working to catch people's attention in a short time span, so they often need to have large, well-differentiated typography to communicate effectively and quickly. Books, on the other hand, work on a slower timetable and their typographic presentation can be subtle.

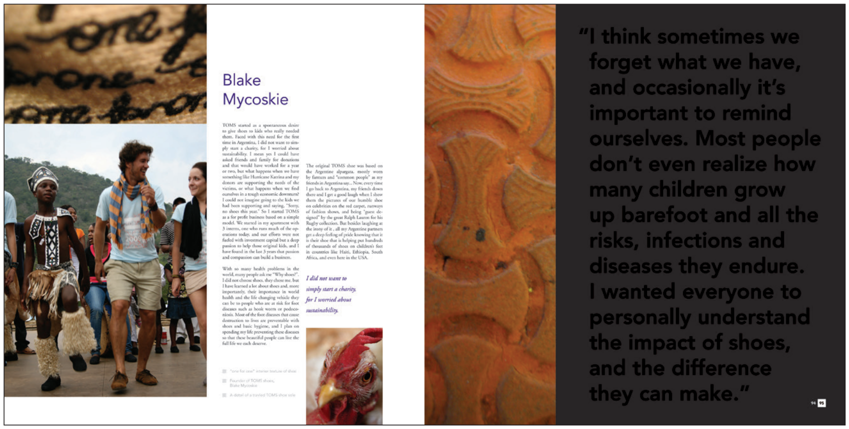
Size variations A sidebar accommodates a pull quote set in oversize text. The hierarchy is tightly controlled by the use of black text on a nearly black background, effectively making the quote function as background information, but preserving the readability because of the size and weight.

Sizing
If you think it should be 10pt, make it 9. It's often the case that when we try to differentiate and create hierarchies through type, we overemphasize the importance of size. Try to use space and position before enlarging the size of your type. Depending on your client, market, and product, keep the type slightly smaller than you think it should be until you have become really familiar with the details of your favorite fonts.

Titling components Assigning importance to the components of the titling in this article adds interest. It also allowed the designer to keep the height of the word cluster equal to the height of the short columns, creating a "sight line" to the image of the eye.



Pseudoisochromatic plates wer
by Professor J. Stilling of Stras
and appeared in 1883. They ar
hand-held test for various fo
blindness and rely on the identifi
identification of numbers or sha
potentially confusing colored ba
Stilling pointed out in 1889 th
shouldn't just rely on the patie
the numbers but also ask hi
like-colored dots under varying
distance or illumination.



TOMS started as a spontaneous desire to give shoes to kids who really needed them. Faced with this need for the first time in Argentina, I did not want to simply start a charity, for I worried about sustainability. I mean yes I could have asked friends and family for donations and that would have worked for a year or two, but what happens when we have something like Hurricane Katrina and my donors are supporting the needs of the victims, or what happens when we find ourselves in a tough economic downturn? I could not imagine going to the kids we had been supporting and saying, "Sorry, no shoes this year." So I started TOMS as a for profit business based on a simple model. We started in my apartment with 3 interns, one who runs much of the operations today, and our efforts were not fueled with investment capital but a deep passion to help those original kids, and I have found in the last 3 years that passion and compassion can build a business.

With so many health problems in the world, many people ask me "Why shoes?". I did not choose shoes, they chose me, but I have learned a lot about shoes and, more importantly, their importance in world health and the life changing vehicle they can be to people who are at risk for foot diseases such as hook worm or podoconiosis. Most of the foot diseases that cause destruction to lives are preventable with shoes and basic hygiene, and I plan on spending my life preventing these diseases so that these beautiful people can live the full life we each deserve.

"one for one" interior texture of shoe

Founder of TOMS shoes, Blake Mycoskie

A detail of a travled TOMS shoe sole

The original TOMS shoe was based on the Argentine alpargata, mostly worn by farmers and "common people" as my friends in Argentina say... Now, every time I go back to Argentina, my friends down there and I get a good laugh when I show them the pictures of our humble shoe on celebrities on the red carpet, runways of fashion shows, and being "guest designed" by the great Ralph Lauren for his Rugby collection. But besides laughing at the irony of it , all my Argentine partners get a deep feeling of pride knowing that it is their shoe that is helping put hundreds of thousands of shoes on children's feet in countries like Haiti, Ethiopia, South Africa, and even here in the USA.

I did not want to simply start a charity, for I worried about sustainability.

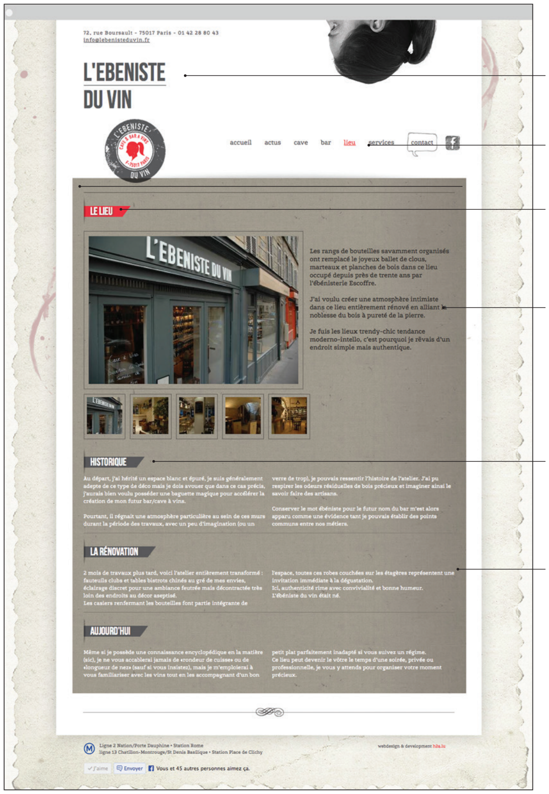
"I think sometimes we forget what we have, and occasionally it's important to remind ourselves. Most people don't even realize how many children grow up barefoot and all the risks, infections and diseases they endure. I wanted everyone to personally understand the impact of shoes, and the difference they can make."

Title	46pt
Subtitle	28pt
Subhead	18pt
Text	10pt
caption	8pt

Number series Some typographers determine a hierarchy of sizes by using a Fibonacci series, in which each number is the sum of the preceding two. This may result in a sequence such as 8, 10, 18, 28, 46 or 8, 12, 20, 32, 52. Do the math if you like, but trust your sense of proportion and be true to the content.

Establish a hierarchy Choose a font family that gives you plenty of options such as light, book, medium, bold, and Xtrabold weights, and good italics and numerals. Keep your choices limited to one to three fonts per layout.

Call-outs and pull quotes Both are used effectively to add emphasis to highlighted sections of the content in this architecturally styled page design. On the right-hand page, the emphasized phrase forms a bridge across the gutter, linking the two columns inventively, but maintaining the separation from the body text.



72, rue Boursault - 75017 Paris - 01 42 28 80 43
info@lebenisteduvin.fr

L'EBENISTE
DU VIN

accueil actus cave bar lieu services contact

LE LIEU

Les rangs de bouteilles savamment organisés ont remplacé le joyeux ballet de clous, marteaux et planches de bois dans ce lieu occupé depuis près de trente ans par l'ébénisterie Escoffre.

J'ai voulu créer une atmosphère intimiste dans ce lieu entièrement rénové en alliant la noblesse du bois à pureté de la pierre.

Je fuis les lieux trendy-chic tendance moderno-intello, c'est pourquoi je rêvais d'un endroit simple mais authentique.

HISTORIQUE

Au départ, j'ai hérité un espace blanc et épuré, je suis généralement adepte de ce type de déco mais je dois avouer que dans ce cas précis, j'aurais bien voulu posséder une baguette magique pour accélérer la création de mon futur bar/cave à vins.

Pourtant, il régnait une atmosphère particulière au sein de ces murs durant la période des travaux, avec un peu d'imagination (ou un verre de trop), je pouvais ressentir l'histoire de l'atelier. J'ai pu respirer les odeurs résiduelles de bois précieux et imaginer ainsi le savoir faire des artisans.

Conserver le mot ébéniste pour le futur nom du bar m'est alors apparu comme une évidence tant je pouvais établir des points communs entre nos métiers.

LA RÉNOVATION

2 mois de travaux plus tard, voici l'atelier entièrement transformé : fauteuils clubs et tables bistrots chinés au gré de mes envies, éclairage discret pour une ambiance feutrée mais décontractée très loin des endroits au décor aseptisé.
Les casiers renfermant les bouteilles font partie intégrante de l'espace, toutes ces robes couchées sur les étagères représentent une invitation immédiate à la dégustation.
Ici, authenticité rime avec convivialité et bonne humeur.
L'ébéniste du vin était né.

AUJOURD'HUI

Même si je possède une connaissance encyclopédique en la matière (sic), je ne vous accablerai jamais de «rondeur de cuisse» ou de «longueur de nez» (sauf si vous insistez), mais je m'emploierai à vous familiariser avec les vins tout en les accompagnant d'un bon petit plat parfaitement inadapté si vous suivez un régime.
Ce lieu peut devenir le vôtre le temps d'une soirée, privée ou professionnelle, je vous y attends pour organiser votre moment précieux.

Ligne 2 Nation/Porte Dauphine • Station Rome
ligne 13 Chatillon-Montrouge/St Denis Basilique • Station Place de Clichy

webdesign & development h2a.lu

J'aime Envoyer Vous et 45 autres personnes aimez ça.

Title, sans serif, all caps, condensed

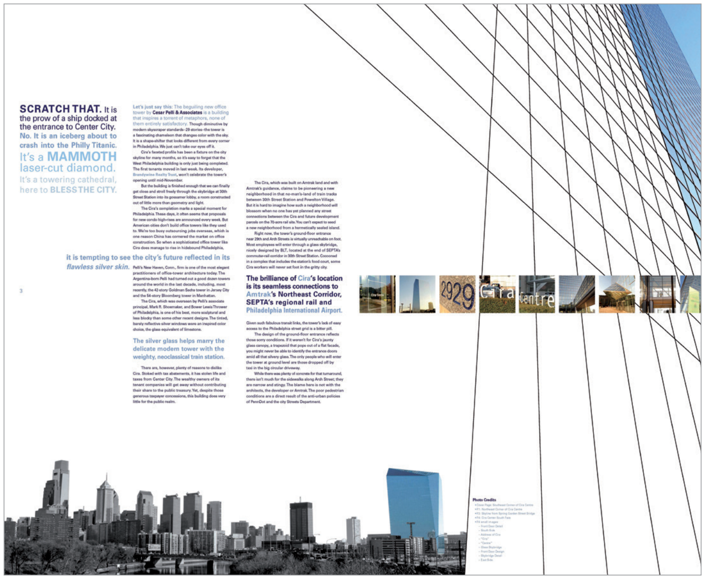
Navigation bar, lower case, serif

Subject headlines, caps, sans-serif, condensed

Body text, serif

Subject headlines, caps, sans serif, color change

Body text in two columns



SCRATCH THAT. It is the prow of a ship docked at the entrance to Center City. No. It is an iceberg about to crash into the Philly Titanic. It's a MAMMOTH laser-cut diamond. It's a towering cathedral, here to BLESS THE CITY.

Let's just say this: The beguiling new office tower by **Cesar Pelli & Associates** is a building that inspires a torrent of metaphors, none of them entirely satisfactory. Though diminutive by modern skyscraper standards–29 stories–the tower is a fascinating chameleon that changes color with the sky. It is a shape-shifter that looks different from every corner in Philadelphia. We just can't take our eyes off it.

Cira's faceted profile has been a fixture on the city skyline for many months, so it's easy to forget that the West Philadelphia building is only just being completed. The first tenants moved in last week. Its developer, Brandywine Realty Trust, won't celebrate the tower's opening until mid-November.

But the building is finished enough that we can finally get close and stroll freely through the skybridge at 30th Street Station into its gossamer lobby, a room constructed out of little more than geometry and light.

The Cira's completion marks a special moment for Philadelphia. These days, it often seems that proposals for new condo high-rises are announced every week. But American cities don't build office towers like they used to. We're too busy outsourcing jobs overseas, which is one reason China has cornered the market on office construction. So when a sophisticated office tower like Cira does manage to rise in hidebound Philadelphia,

it is tempting to see the city's future reflected in its *flawless silver skin.*

Pelli's New Haven, Conn., firm is one of the most elegant practitioners of office-tower architecture today. The Argentina-born Pelli had turned out a good dozen towers around the world in the last decade, including, most recently, the 42-story Goldman Sachs tower in Jersey City and the 54-story Bloomberg tower in Manhattan.

The Cira, which was overseen by Pelli's associate principal, Mark R. Shoemaker, and Bower Lewis Thrower of Philadelphia, is one of his best, more sculptural and less blocky than some other recent designs. The tinted, barely reflective silver windows were an inspired color choice, the glass equivalent of limestone.

The silver glass helps marry the delicate modern tower with the weighty, neoclassical train station.

There are, however, plenty of reasons to dislike Cira. Stoked with tax abatements, it has stolen life and taxes from Center City. The wealthy owners of its tenant companies will get away without contributing their share to the public treasury. Yet, despite those generous taxpayer concessions, this building does very little for the public realm.

The Cira, which was built on Amtrak land and with Amtrak's guidance, claims to be pioneering a new neighborhood in that no-man's-land of train tracks between 30th Street Station and Powelton Village. But it is hard to imagine how such a neighborhood will blossom when no one has yet planned any street connections between the Cira and future development parcels on the 70-acre rail site. You can't expect to seed a new neighborhood from a hermetically sealed island.

Right now, the tower's ground-floor entrance near 29th and Arch Streets is virtually unreachable on foot. Most employees will enter through a glass skybridge, nicely designed by BLT, located at the end of SEPTA's commuter-rail corridor in 30th Street Station. Cocooned in a complex that includes the station's food court, some Cira workers will never set foot in the gritty city.

The brilliance of Cira's location is its seamless connections to Amtrak's Northeast Corridor, SEPTA's regional rail and Philadelphia International Airport.

Given such fabulous transit links, the tower's lack of easy access to the Philadelphia street grid is a bitter pill.

The design of the ground-floor entrance reflects those sorry conditions. If it weren't for Cira's jaunty glass canopy, a trapezoid that pops out of a flat facade, you might never be able to identify the entrance doors amid all that silvery glass. The only people who will enter the tower at ground level are those dropped off by taxi in the big circular driveway.

While there was plenty of concrete for that turnaround, there isn't much for the sidewalks along Arch Street; they are narrow and stingy. The blame here is not with the architects, the developer or Amtrak. The poor pedestrian conditions are a direct result of the anti-urban policies of PennDot and the city Streets Department.

3

Photo Credits
- Cover Page: Southeast Corner of Cira Centre
- P1: Northeast Corner of Cira Centre
- P3: Skyline from Spring Garden Street Bridge
- P4: Cira Center South Face
- P4 small images
  - Front Door Detail
  - South Side
  - Address of Cira
  - "Cira"
  - "Centre"
  - Glass Skybridge
  - Front Door Design
  - Skybridge Detail
  - East Side

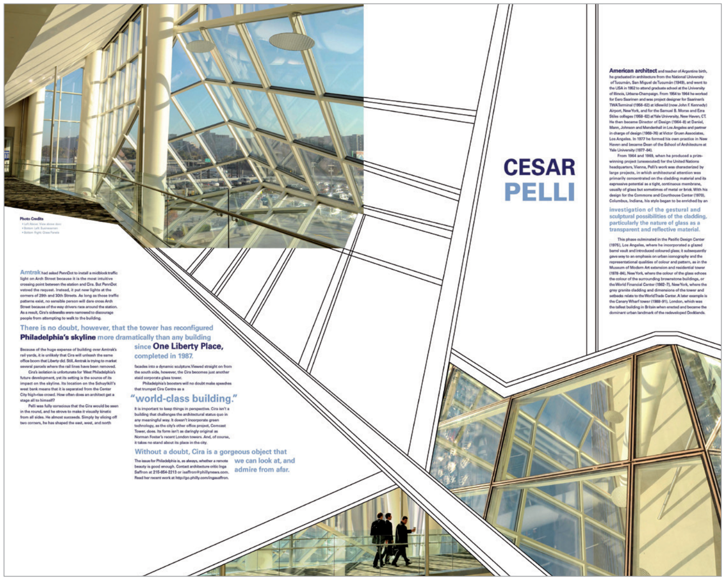


Photo Credits
- Left Above: View above door
- Bottom Left: Businessmen
- Bottom Right: Glass Panels

Amtrak had asked PennDot to install a midblock traffic light on Arch Street because it is the most intuitive crossing point between the station and Cira. But PennDot vetoed the request. Instead, it put new lights at the corners of 29th and 30th Streets. As long as those traffic patterns exist, no sensible person will dare cross Arch Street because of the way drivers race around the station. As a result, Cira's sidewalks were narrowed to discourage people from attempting to walk to the building.

There is no doubt, however, that the tower has reconfigured **Philadelphia's skyline** more dramatically than any building since **One Liberty Place,** completed in 1987.

Because of the huge expense of building over Amtrak's rail yards, it is unlikely that Cira will unleash the same office boom that Liberty did. Still, Amtrak is trying to market several parcels where the rail lines have been removed.

Cira's isolation is unfortunate for West Philadelphia's future development, yet its setting is the source of its impact on the skyline. Its location on the Schuylkill's west bank means that it is separated from the Center City high-rise crowd. How often does an architect get a stage all to himself?

Pelli was fully conscious that the Cira would be seen in the round, and he strove to make it visually kinetic from all sides. He almost succeeds. Simply by slicing off two corners, he has shaped the east, west, and north facades into a dynamic sculpture. Viewed straight on from the south side, however, the Cira becomes just another staid corporate glass tower.

Philadelphia's boosters will no doubt make speeches that trumpet Cira Centre as a

"world-class building."

It is important to keep things in perspective. Cira isn't a building that challenges the architectural status quo in any meaningful way. It doesn't incorporate green technology, as the city's other office project, Comcast Tower, does. Its form isn't as daringly original as Norman Foster's recent London towers. And, of course, it takes no stand about its place in the city.

Without a doubt, Cira is a gorgeous object that we can look at, and admire from afar.

The issue for Philadelphia is, as always, whether a remote beauty is good enough. Contact architecture critic Inga Saffron at 215-854-2213 or isaffron@phillynews.com. Read her recent work at http://go.philly.com/ingasaffron.

CESAR
PELLI

American architect and teacher of Argentine birth, he graduated in architecture from the National University of Tucumán, San Miguel de Tucumán (1949), and went to the USA in 1952 to attend graduate school at the University of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign. From 1954 to 1964 he worked for Eero Saarinen and was project designer for Saarinen's TWA Terminal (1956–62) at Idlewild (now John F. Kennedy) Airport, New York, and for the Samuel B. Morse and Ezra Stiles colleges (1958–62) at Yale University, New Haven, CT. He then became Director of Design (1964–8) at Daniel, Mann, Johnson and Mendenhall in Los Angeles and partner in charge of design (1968–76) at Victor Gruen Associates, Los Angeles. In 1977 he formed his own practice in New Haven and became Dean of the School of Architecture at Yale University (1977–84).

From 1964 and 1969, when he produced a prize-winning project (unexecuted) for the United Nations headquarters, Vienna, Pelli's work was characterized by large projects, in which architectural attention was primarily concentrated on the cladding material and its expressive potential as a tight, continuous membrane, usually of glass but sometimes of metal or brick. With his design for the Commons and Courthouse Center (1970), Columbus, Indiana, his style began to be enriched by an

investigation of the gestural and sculptural possibilities of the cladding, particularly the nature of glass as a transparent and reflective material.

This phase culminated in the Pacific Design Center (1975), Los Angeles, where he incorporated a glazed barrel vault and introduced coloured glass; it subsequently gave way to an emphasis on urban iconography and the representational qualities of colour and pattern, as in the Museum of Modern Art extension and residential tower (1978–84), New York, where the colour of the glass echoes the colour of the surrounding brownstone buildings, or the World Financial Center (1982–7), New York, where the grey granite cladding and dimensions of the tower and setbacks relate to the World Trade Center. A later example is the Canary Wharf tower (1988–91), London, which was the tallest building in Britain when erected and became the dominant urban landmark of the redeveloped Docklands.

PART 1 | PRINCIPLES

CHAPTER 3 | FUNDAMENTALS OF TYPOGRAPHY

MODULE 7 | TYPOGRAPHIC RULES/BOXES AND ORNAMENTS

Typographic rules (lines) and ornaments have been inherited from the letterpress tradition of setting and arranging type matter. They are still invaluable to the designer today because they serve both functional and esthetic roles.

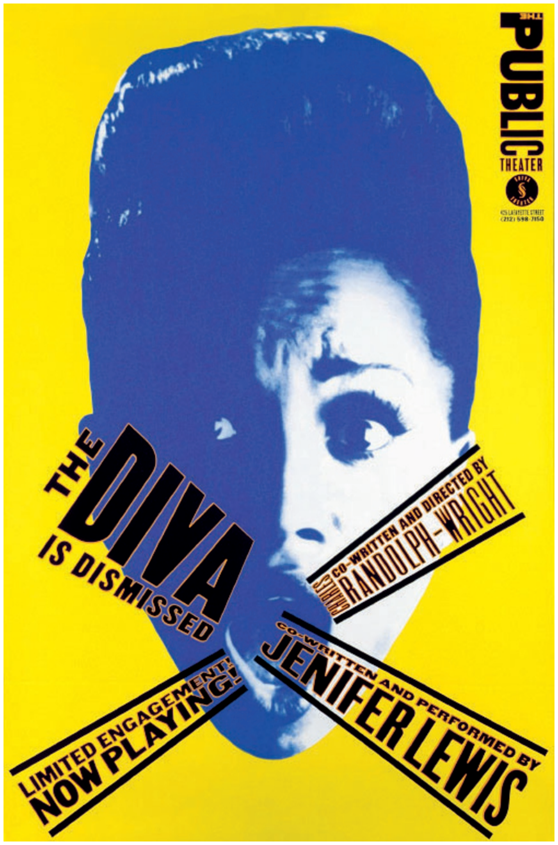
Rules draw attention to specific parts of copy and break it into sections. Vertical rules can be used to separate blocks of text when other means of division are neither possible nor sufficient.

Generally, the weight (thickness) of the rules should match the tonal value of the text to which they relate. Horizontal rules work well for organizing information and aiding readability. Examples can be found in tabular matter, such as timetables and contents pages, and sometimes between columns of text in newspapers and/or in books, where they can be used between each entry and to help direct the eye from item to page number.

Highlighting text—rules and panels

Rules have gained in popularity since computer commands can underline a word or words. Some designers argue that there are more subtle means available if you want to emphasize typographic elements. Nevertheless, rules can be effectively used to highlight a piece of copy by placing them in the margin alongside the text, or as a dynamic component in the composition of a design. Widths available range from a 0.5pt (hairline) rule upward, and are often measured in points, so that we might use a 1pt or 2pt rule.

Tinted, outlined, or solid-colored panels are popular in magazines for their ability to provide in-depth focus on a particular editorial theme, while relieving the eye from the potential strain caused by reading column after



Punctuate The classic forms that serve as punctuation and ornament are celebrated as design elements in their own right. Given dimension and scale, they become the beautiful subjects of this article.

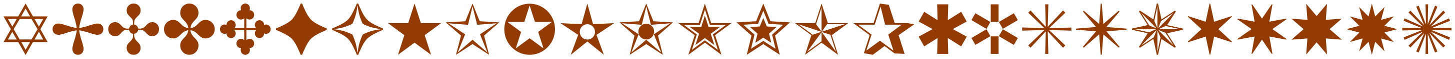
Exclaim Paula Scher used matched weights of rules above and below each copy point to house each one in radiating shapes of near equal size. Note the control of the hierarchy through the point sizes and weights.

GLOSSARY

Ornaments: Typed characters that embellish the page. Also known as flowers.

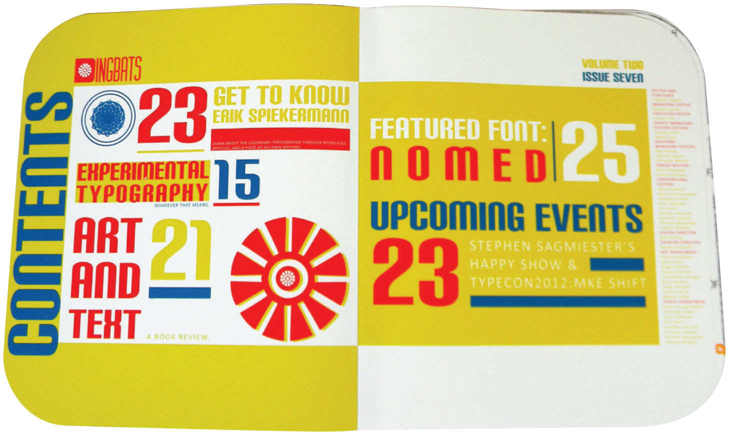
Panel: Device used to highlight information. Also known as a sidebar.

Typographic rules: Printed lines that direct the reader's eye.



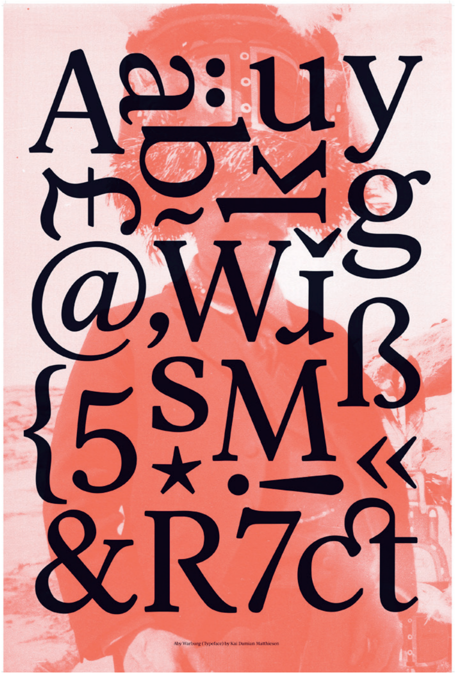
Zapf Dingbats

CONSTRUCT
THE
FUTURE
FROM THE
POWER
OF THE
PAST


CONTENTS
DINGBATS
23 GET TO KNOW ERIK SPIEKERMANN
EXPERIMENTAL TYPOGRAPHY 15
ART AND TEXT 21
VOLUME TWO ISSUE SEVEN
FEATURED FONT: NOMED 25
UPCOMING EVENTS
23 STEPHEN SAGMEISTER'S HAPPY SHOW & TYPECON2012: MKE SHIFT

Construct Powerful words in tightly fitted boxes add sharp diagonals to this composition, and build an interlocked urban landscape of image and text.

Decorate Printer's flowers and dingbats can be incorporated into a design system with great effect. The exuberance of these pages owes much to the enlarged ornaments that separate sections of information.



Creative glyphs Glyphs are a fundamental part of type design. This type specimen poster showcases the variety and styles in the letterforms, and also the punctuation marks and diacritics. Elements are arranged creatively, resulting in an engaging composition.

column of main text type in a single size. These "sidebars" are most effective when they contain supplementary information and are used to distinguish separate content. However, rules and boxes can easily overtake a design, particularly when they are used "decoratively" rather than functionally.

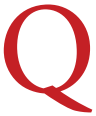
Rules in display type

In display setting, rules can create emphasis by drawing attention. The Constructivist art movement in early 20th-century Russia pioneered the use of rules in this way. Very heavy rules were used, running alongside, or at angles to, the copy. The popularity of the rule is still evident in today's designs.

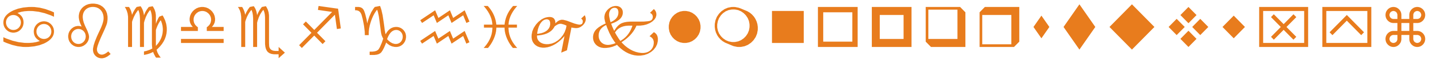
Ornaments

Ornaments have been in use since the origin of printing. They give a decorative feel to a layout and invoke a sense of tradition. They can also separate information, as in the title pages of traditional books. Zapf Dingbats is a well-known digital font made up of ornaments, as is Whirligig, by Zuzana Licko. However, as with rules and boxes or sidebars, overuse of ornaments should generally be avoided. If your content is unique, invent your own ornaments, icons, or embellishments to enhance your type design and stay constant with your concept.

Poetica



SEE ALSO: TYPOGRAPHIC EMPHASIS AND HIERARCHY, P78



Wingdings

Media as message Paper letters are cut, stacked, blown, and photographed to create a beautiful and truly unique composition. Letters can be constructed out of different media, reconstructed from found objects, hand- painted to become illustrations, and handled in inventive ways to convey motion or other metaphors.

PART 1 | PRINCIPLES

CHAPTER 3 | FUNDAMENTALS OF TYPOGRAPHY

MODULE 8 | TEXT AS IMAGE

Contemporary designers know that type not only communicates specific meaning, but also possesses esthetically powerful characteristics in its own right. If you think about how many expressive fonts are now available, and the way in which one can apply color, weight, form, and spacing to customize and achieve specific effects, it is possible to see type functioning as an image in its own right.

Illustrative, photographic, calligraphic, and shaped text are further variations that add excitement to a design and effectively convey the mood and concept. Working with text as image requires an understanding of both the communicative and esthetic properties of typography, and beautiful, illustrative typographic artworks are considered a collectable art form as well as a form of visual communication.

Display type

Display type is chosen, in part, for mood, and each face has its own characteristics. Just as an artist can create mood through illustration, so can a typographer subtly illustrate meaning by choice of font, type size, and weight. This effect of typography is normally seen at its fullest potential when type is used for display (above a certain size, for example 14pt), since smaller type is meant for reading. Display type exploits the specific characteristics of a given typeface.

Symbolization

Designers can exploit the familiarity of type by carefully manipulating suggestive letterforms so that they become images in their own right. This means that type can actually stand in for objects. Conversely, objects that resemble images can replace letters.

Form matching content

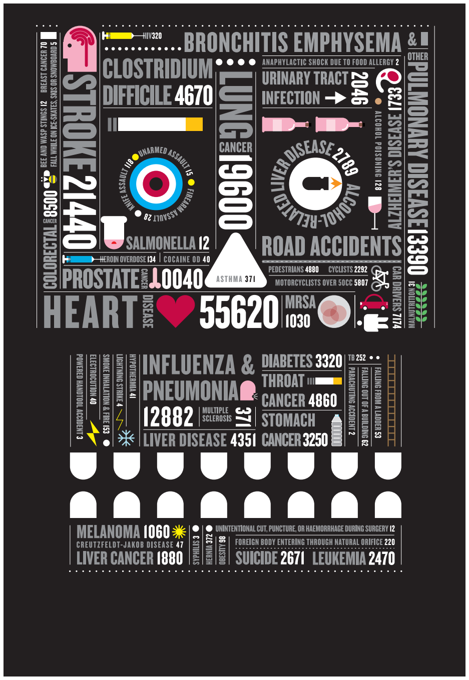
Techniques for using type as illustration are numerous and transcend type as simple objects and vice versa. Certain words, such as verbs indicating action, particularly lend themselves to typography reflecting meaning. There can be word repetition; overlapping of characters; distorting characters to break them up, blur, or roughen them; outlining or shadowing type; setting type along a curved path or in a circle; adjusting color, weight, or form; and so on. To be effective, however, positions and forms in type arrangement must reflect meaning and, as always, try to avoid clichés.

To be used effectively, our Latin alphabet, composed basically of straight lines, circles, and part circles, has to be resourcefully manipulated. The decorative nature of shaped text transforms reading into a visual experience, and advertising and logotype design frequently use these techniques to give text enhanced visual impact to convey a specific message.

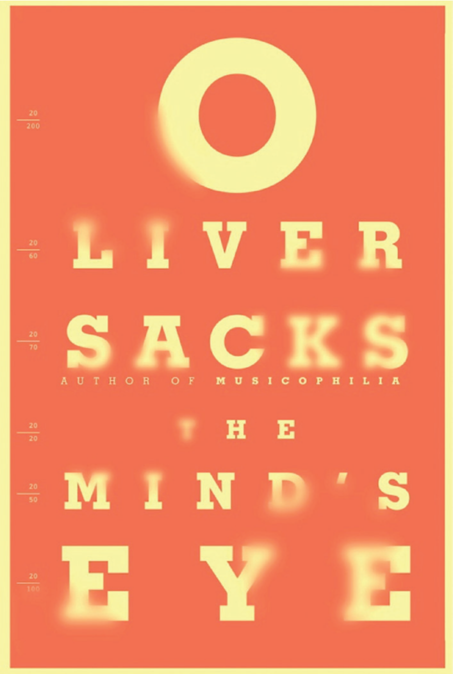
Type and narrative
With imagination, flat letterform shapes can be artworked into creative three-dimensional objects. This quote, taken from the 1976 film *Carrie*, represents the 16-year-old protagonist's use of telekinetic powers to take revenge on her classmates for humiliating her. The design detail, eerie red palette, and striking blue background give the composition a sense of chilling discomfort to reflect the storyline.

GLOSSARY

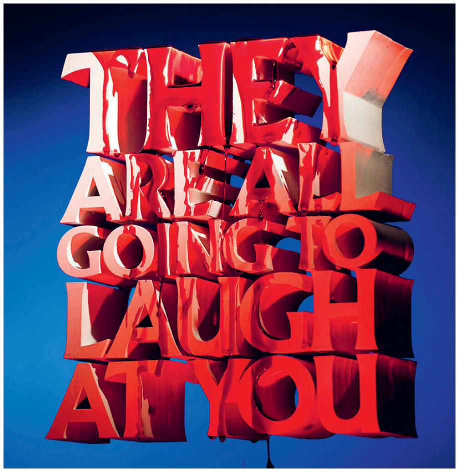
Onomatopoeia: In typography, the use of type to suggest the sounds of a spoken language, such as adding a large "o" to the word "open." Marinetti and the Futurists were effective in employing onomatopoeia, in the design of books such as *Zang Tumb Tumb*.


BRONCHITIS EMPHYSEMA
CLOSTRIDIUM DIFFICILE 4670
STROKE 21440
LUNG CANCER 19600
URINARY TRACT INFECTION 2046
LIVER DISEASE 2789
ALCOHOL-RELATED
ROAD ACCIDENTS
PULMONARY DISEASE 13390
ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE 1733
SALMONELLA 12
PROSTATE CANCER 10040
HEART DISEASE 55620
MRSA 1030
COLORECTAL CANCER 8500
INFLUENZA & PNEUMONIA 12882
DIABETES 3320
THROAT CANCER 4860
STOMACH CANCER 3250
LIVER DISEASE 4351
MULTIPLE SCLEROSIS 371
MELANOMA 1060
LIVER CANCER 1880
SUICIDE 2671
LEUKEMIA 2470

Information is beautiful Peter Grundy's witty commentary on the statistics of death for *Men's Health* magazine arranges lines of type into a grinning and winking skull. Masterful scale management and excellent spatial relationships keep the illustration balanced, and establish the headline hierarchy by the highest numbers.

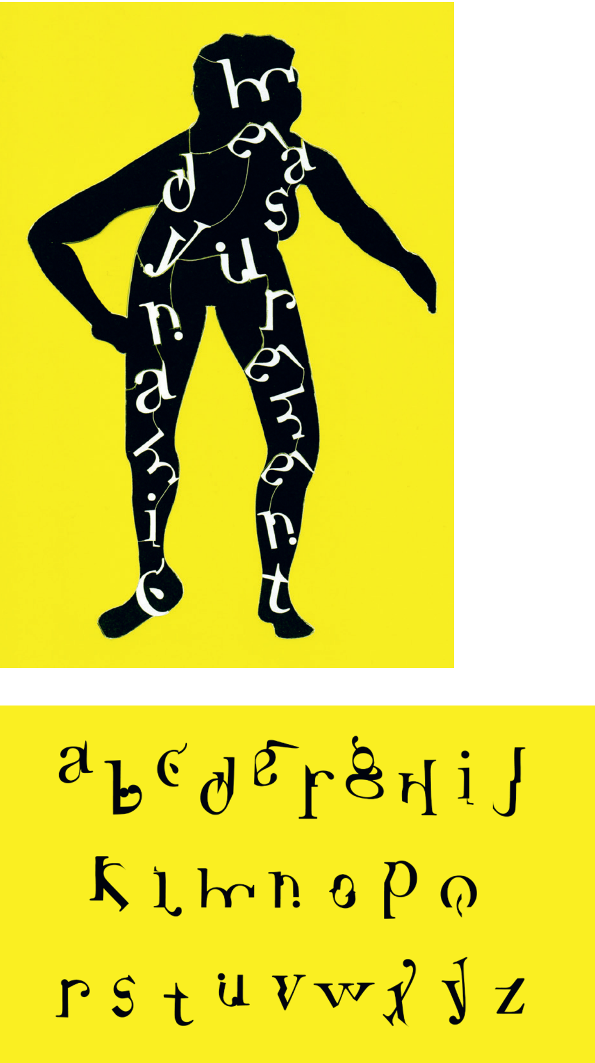

O
LIVER
SACKS
AUTHOR OF MUSICOPHILIA
THE
MIND'S
EYE

Intelligent design This design concept by book designer Chip Kidd uses a recognizable typographic arrangement with a twist to illustrate points made by the author, Dr. Oliver Sacks. The book examines how the visual cortex processes visual information. The title was designed to evoke an eye-chart, then key areas were blurred in Photoshop.


THEY
ARE ALL
GOING TO
LAUGH
AT YOU

Design history

Having a good knowledge of design history enables you to pursue type-as-image concepts in a more informed way. Look at the work of Josef Müller-Brockmann, H. N. Werkman, and Philippe Apeloig. Also, see examples of calligraphy and shaped text throughout history, and you will see how typographers, artists, and designers have exploited type as image to enhance meaning.


a b c d e f g H i j
k l m n o p q
r s t u v w x y z

Interpretive typography Ergonomic glyphs and their composition have been created to mimic the body and movement using letterforms. The type specimen poster illustratively alludes to the concept behind this typeface by inverting the text onto a black background shaped like a moving figure.

CHAPTER 3 ASSIGNMENTS

Modular type

1 Using paper cutouts, design a basic upper and lowercase Latin alphabet (A–Z and a–z) with modules built from the primary forms (circle, triangle, square) and combinations thereof. The modules can be rotated, flipped, overlapped, but not scaled or distorted beyond these parameters.

This exercise asks you to design your own typeface in a simple manner. Working with modular shapes (cut from paper) to construct type in this way will help you to understand the architecture of letterforms and the coherence and harmony intrinsic to type design.

Look for repetition in the letters. Where can you repeat your designs, and what letters are unique? Once complete, digitize the alphabet by scanning your sketches or redrawing them individually in Illustrator (see pages 114–117). Use the process of digitizing to clean up the alphabet, correcting any errors and smoothing edges.

2 Create a type specimen poster for your new typeface. This should display the complete set of letters, its name, and some supporting text outlining the concept behind it. It should include examples/mock-ups of how the type can be used and arranged. Make sure that the text used relates to the concept of the typeface.

3 Additional task
Complete this exercise without looking at the example on page 64, then look back to check your accuracy and compare the two typefaces.

Using what you've learned about the anatomy of type in Chapter 3, annotate a premade typeface of your choice and your own modular typeface with the following anatomy:

- An ascender and the ascender line.
- An uppercase (cap) and the cap height.
- A lowercase, x-height, and the baseline.
- A descender and the descender line.
- An eye, a bowl, and a counter.
- A cross stroke and a crossbar.
- An ear, leg, link, and loop.
- A bracket, terminal, and beak.
- Whether your typeface is serif (highlight the serif) or sans serif.

Cut and space

There are several approaches to successful kerning. Remember the following short tasks and tips when kerning type in your final projects.

1 Kerning is visual, not mathematical, so the more practice you have, the better you will be at making amends. Visit https://type.method.ac/# regularly and before you know it you'll be getting 100% each time. If in doubt, you should always print your text and look at the layout from multiple perspectives.

2 Kerning is defined as the spacing between letter pairs, but looking at the space in three-letter groups makes it easier to spot where amends need to be made.

Type out ten three-letter words or initials in a 60pt sans-serif typeface, in both upper and lower cases (e.g. COW and cow). Print and cut out each individual letter. Stick each letter back down onto a new sheet, looking at each letter pair twice. By isolating letters during the process of kerning, you can focus on the letterforms individually.

3 Remember, the space between the last letter of one word and first letter of the next word is also a kerning pair. Word spacing is just as important because you want clear distinction from word to word to ensure readability. Following the guidelines for Task 2, print, cut, and stick each letter of the phrase "Railroads in crisis" in upper and lower cases. Remember that good-quality typefaces are unlikely to need as much amendment as free typefaces.

4 Flipping your word or phrase upside down is another great trick to help with kerning. Following the guidelines for Task 2, print, cut, and stick (kerning from left to right) each letter of the words "upside down" in upper and lower cases.

5 Kerning in color or with reverse type needs extra consideration. Color contrasts can make letters appear closer than they are, especially with odd contrast pairs, screen brightness, and even the type of paper used for print jobs. In many of these situations, the solution is to kern a little looser than normal, but the key is testing so you know how letters will look when it comes to the finished product.

Following the guidelines for Task 2, print, cut, and stick each letter of the words "cyan," "magenta," "yellow," and "black" in upper and lower cases and their corresponding colors. Remember that kerning should be the last thing you do in a project to avoid repeating your workload.

Legibility and readability

Two issues when handling type are legibility and readability. Legibility is achieved with careful consideration of what gives words and sentences clarity, and readability is the measure by which one is inclined to read the particular information. An understanding of legibility and readability can be gained by studying and practicing typesetting, the composition of text by means of arranging physical types or the digital equivalents. Refer back to what you've learned in Chapter 3 to help you with this exercise.

1 Using InDesign (see pages 106–109), create a typographic dictionary by matching a typographic term from List 1 (opposite) with an adjective from List 2. You can complete this exercise as a group, each taking a term, or as an individual to complete the whole 52-word set.

List 1 (typographic terms)
Accent, ascender, baseline, body copy, bold, bowl, cap-height, contrast, counter, descender, font family, golden section, geometric, grayscale, grid, grotesque, headline, height, humanist, hyphenation, justified, kerning, leading, legibility, letterspacing, line length, lowercase, negative space, open-source, orphan, outline, pica, point size, punctuation, rag, readable, reduction, rhythm, sans serif, script, serif, small caps, symbol, system, tracking, underline, unjustified, uppercase, vernacular, visual hierarchy, white space, x-height.

List 2 (adjectives)
Aggressive, agreeable, ambitious, ancient, bewildered, brave, broad, calm, clumsy, cold, crooked, curved, damaged, embarrassed, faithful, fast, fierce, flat, fluffy, futuristic, gentle, helpless, hollow, immense, jealous, lazy, lively, loud, melodic, microscopic, modern, mysterious, nervous, obedient, obnoxious, pitiful, polite, proud, refined, repulsive, rhythmic, rough, shallow, sharp, slow, straight, strong, swift, thundering, victorious, young, zealous.

2 Set your pages to 8½ x 6in (A5), allowing one spread for each typographic term. On the left-hand side write the definition of your term, a short personal description about the importance of the term for you as a designer, and how it relates to shaping space and creating visual hierarchy. Consider how the justification of your text, the line length, characters per line, choice of type size and measure, leading, and the x-height of your typeface all affect the legibility of your description.

3 On the right-hand side of the spread, set the typographic term in the center of the page. Make your design decisions (typeface, weight, color, etc.) using the adjective you've chosen/been given from List 2. Paying particular attention to the kerning, consider how the size and weight of your typeface(s), capitalization, and color all affect the readability of your typographic term. Do not overcomplicate your composition. These are considerations and not all of these amends have to be made to one project.

Type hierarchy

Type plays two key roles in communication design. Esthetically and conceptually, it should have an impact on the viewer—it should evoke a response or some kind of connection. In addition to this, and arguably more importantly, it must communicate clearly.

Find a poster for an event that highlights the event title, description, location, and date. The purpose of this task is to examine how emphasis, structure, and hierarchy can be created within text-based information. Emphasis can be achieved through a change in contrast in size, weight, position, and color of type. Typographic devices such as rules can also be used to draw the eye. Take care not to alter too much of your design and risk defeating the original purpose of communicating with clarity.

1 Position
Using only one typeface, one size, one weight, and one color, recreate the poster on an 8½ x 6-in (A5) sheet (digitally or by hand). Keeping to the set rules, create four variations of the design, each focusing on the positioning of your information to create hierarchy.

2 Weight
Using only one typeface, one size, two weights, and one color, recreate the poster on an 11¾ x 8½-in (A4) sheet (digitally or by hand). Keeping to the set rules, create four variations of the design, each focusing on the weight of the type and information to create hierarchy.

3 Size
Using only one typeface, two sizes, one weight, and one color, recreate the poster on a 16½ x 11¾-in (A3) sheet (digitally or by hand). Keeping to the set rules, create four variations of the design, each focusing on the size of your type and information to create hierarchy.

4 Additional task
Annotate your 12 experiments. What works well and what doesn't? Using your findings, recreate your poster on a 23½ x 16½in (A2) sheet (digitally or by hand), experimenting with position, weight, size, type choices, and color on one document. Create four further experiments before settling on your final design. Be prepared to explain your design choices to your peers in class.

The quick brown fox

"The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog" is an English-language pangram, a sentence that contains all the letters of the alphabet.

Using each letterform once, create a readable typographic layout that illustrates the pangram. You may use any media or format you find appropriate, such as traditional media in a booklet, a three-dimensional construction photographed, or photography on a poster.

Further reading

Robert Bringhurst, *The Elements of Typographic Style*, Hartley and Marks Publishers, 2013
Stephen Coles and Erik Spiekermann, *The Geometry of Type: The Anatomy of 100 Essential Typefaces*, Thames & Hudson, 2016
Jost Hochuli, *Detail in Typography*, Hyphen Press, 2008
Ellen Lupton, *Thinking with Type*, Princeton Architectural Press, 2010
Lindsey Marshall and Lester Meachem, *How to Use Type*, Laurence King Publishing, 2013
Paula Scher, *Make It Bigger*, Princeton Architectural Press, 2006
Gerard Unger, *While You're Reading*, Mark Batty Publisher, 2007

4

Fundamentals of Color

A thorough understanding of color is essential to expert design, and is one of the most important tools in graphic design. There are infinite variations of colors at the designer's disposal, and endless ways of combining them across many media, from printed inks to screen-based colors, each with their own characteristics.

Color has a unique, complex language, and the ability to change its meaning when partnered with other colors. When choosing colors to incorporate into your design, you will need to consider issues of contrast and harmony, and how these might affect legibility in typography. You can also set the mood of a design by using the psychology of color, but you must be sure your selected colors convey the correct message at an unconscious level, and that they are suitable for the audience your project is intended to reach.

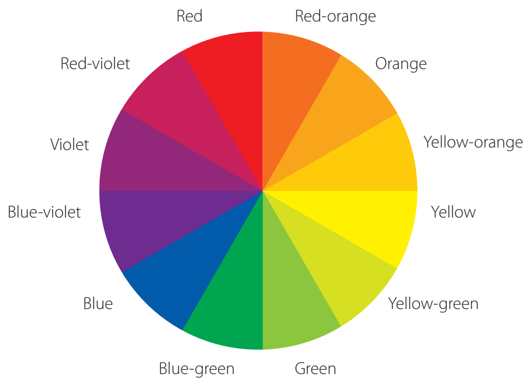
PART 1 | PRINCIPLES
CHAPTER 4 | FUNDAMENTALS OF COLOR

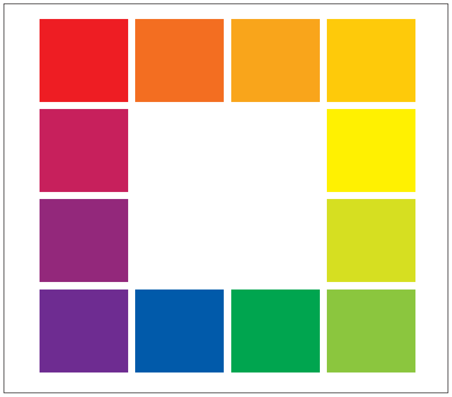
MODULE 1 | COLOR TERMINOLOGY

To understand how to choose or assign color for a specific purpose, designers must first develop knowledge of how color works, how colors are classified, and the terms used to describe them.

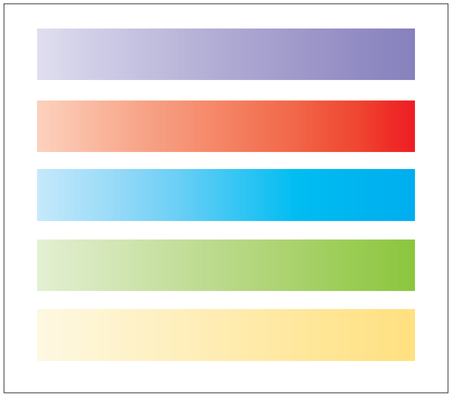
Color is differentiated in three main ways: hue, tone, and saturation. "Hue" refers to the color's generic name—for example, red, yellow, or blue. A single hue will have many variations ranging from light (tint) to dark (shade). This is called tone or value. A single hue will also vary according to its saturation or chroma (also known as intensity). Saturation ranges from full intensity to low intensity, or from brightness to grayness. Color can also be described by its temperature and movement. Hues in the red spectrum appear warmer and closer to the viewer than hues in the blue spectrum, which appear colder and farther away.

Complementary colors, such as red and green, lie opposite each other on the color wheel, whereas analogous colors, such as green and blue, lie adjacent to each other. The former are associated with contrast; the latter are linked to harmony. Certain colors have a profound effect on each other when combined. They can vibrate or blend, appear vibrant when partnered with one color and muted when placed with another. The more you experiment with color, the more you will understand how to select and group various hues for meaning.

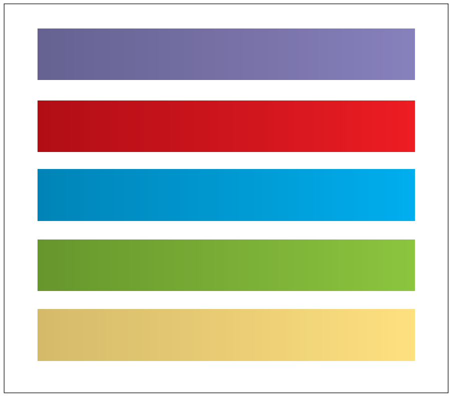




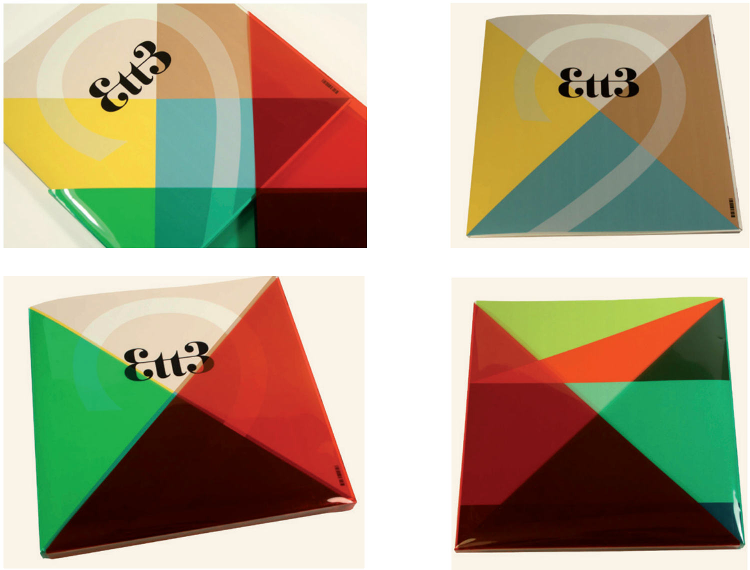
Hue distinguishes one color from another. It is the generic name of the color—red, say, as opposed to blue.



Tone (or value) is the relative lightness or darkness of a color. A color with added white is called a tint; a color with added black is called a shade.



Saturation (or chroma) is roughly equivalent to brightness. A line of high intensity is a bright color, whereas one of low intensity is a dull color. Two colors can be of the same line but have different intensities.



Color wheel Primary, secondary, and tertiary colors of pigment are shown on the wheel. The primary colors are red, yellow, and blue. Secondary colors are made by mixing any two primary colors together, producing orange, green, and violet. A tertiary color is produced by mixing a primary color with the secondary color nearest to it on the wheel. The tertiary colors here are red-orange, yellow-orange, yellow-green, blue-green, blue-violet, and red-violet.

Subtractive color An acetate envelope printed with transparent primary colors transforms the cover of a publication and creates multiple triangles in varying hues and tones as it is removed. This same effect can be viewed digitally by working with transparencies and adding layers to your file. Experimenting with color will help you learn to control the hierarchy in page design, create readability in typography, and set the mood and pace.

GLOSSARY

Additive color: System used on monitors and televisions, based on RGB (red, green, blue). When combined, these form white light.

Analogous color: Colors that lie adjacent to each other on the color wheel—for example, blue and green.

CMYK: Cyan, magenta, yellow, key (black): the four colors that make up the full-color printing process.

Complementary color: Colors that lie opposite each other on the color wheel—for example, red and green.

Gamut: The complete range of colors available within one system of reproduction—for example, CMYK or RGB gamut.

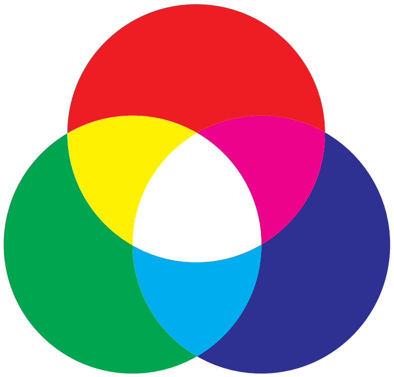
Primary color: Red, yellow, or blue.

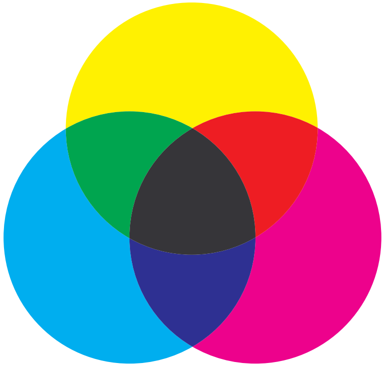
Secondary color: A mix of any two primaries: orange, green, or violet.

Spot color: Any flat color, like Pantone or Toyo colors, printed as a solid, and not made up of CMYK.

Subtractive color: System used in printing, based on CMYK colors.

Tertiary color: The resulting color formed when an equal amount of a primary and a secondary color are mixed. The primary and secondary colors must be beside each other on the color wheel.





On-screen color Additive primaries and RGB light are used to create colors on computers, televisions, and monitors. Combined, the additive primaries result in white light.

Printing primaries Subtractive primaries and CMYK—cyan, magenta, yellow, and key (black)—are the primaries used in printing. When combined, subtractive colors make black.

Additive and subtractive primaries

To understand how color works, the most important point to know is that colored light (additive colors or the RGB system) and colored pigment (subtractive colors or the CMYK system) do not work in the same way. To put this differently, if you are working with your computer, the color on your monitor (RGB system) will not be the same as the color that is printed (CMYK system). This phenomenon creates problems for printed projects, since colors on screen appear brighter than in print.

With printed matter you will be working with subtractive color. Here, each color printed onto a paper stock subtracts from white, and if the three primaries overlap, black results. The color wheel shows primary colors; the subtractive primaries are red, yellow, and blue. Secondaries are a mix of any two primaries, resulting in orange, green, and violet, and tertiaries are a mix of an adjacent primary and secondary color. The term “full color” refers to four-color printing and to achieve a full range of colors printers use cyan, yellow, magenta, and black (known as CMYK; K = black = key color).

Pantone

An additional color used in a design project is called a flat color or sometimes a spot color. When selecting colors for this, you should use a universal matching system known as Pantone Matching System (PMS). Pantone color is mixed from 15 pigments (including black and white) and is primarily used for print color matching. This system is different from the CMYK system and few colors can be matched between them. For more information, see pages 132–133.

Process charts and modes

When printing in full color (CMYK), you will find it useful to identify and specify the exact color that you want to see printed by using a printer’s process color guide. This will show you all of the colors that you can make by specifying and combining different tints of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black. When designing for print on a screen, be sure you are working in CMYK mode, not RGB. Once you have chosen your color, you can make a new swatch on your document, specifying the different tints. This is the only accurate way to specify the printed color that you will achieve when ink goes onto paper.

GLOSSARY

Advancing and receding color: Colors in the red spectrum appear to advance to the human eye, whereas those in the blue spectrum appear to recede.

Color modes: The expression of color in numerical values that enable us to mix them efficiently: CMYK, LAB, RGB.

Simultaneous contrast: The human eye tends to differentiate between two neighboring colors by emphasizing their differences rather than their similarities—background colors affect foreground colors (the image).

Vibration: Complementary colors of equal lightness and high saturation tend to make each other appear more brilliant, and cause the illusion of motion along the edges where they meet.

Weight: Colors differ in perceived “weight.” For example, if a man were to move two large boxes equal in size, one pale green and the other dark brown, he would probably pick up the green one because it appeared lighter. It is generally assumed that blue-greens look lighter whereas reds appear stronger, and therefore heavier.

SEE ALSO: PRINTED COLOR, P132

Printer relationship

A good relationship with a printer is fundamental for getting the most successful outcomes. Software is in a continuous state of updating, so it is easy to be left behind and have to address software conversion issues between computers. As a result, simple design elements such as colors, fonts, bleeds, and pagination can all go wrong after the file is sent. Becoming familiar with a limited number of printers not only means they are aware of your preferences, but you'll have someone that is willing to catch mistakes before production.

Communication

Communication is key; if your printer is using terms you are unfamiliar with, ask them to elaborate. When your printer says 300gsm cover stock or 4/4 perfect bound, do you know what they are talking about? Basic print terminology is important to come to terms with, not only for avoiding mistakes but also for understanding the print options available to you.

Preparation

Prepress and file preparation can vary from printer to printer, so it is important that you have a conversation about file formats, color palettes, and bleed in advance of printing your work. If in doubt about your choices, ask the printer for a mock-up, although this usually comes with an extra fee.

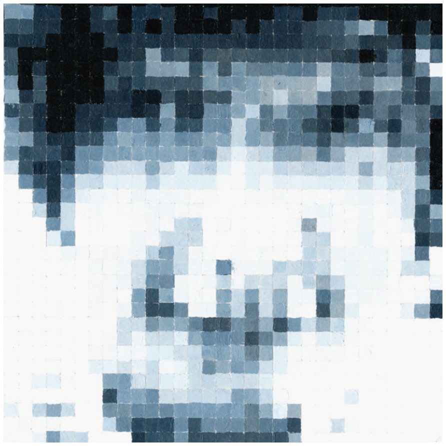
Calibration

If you are working on a project that requires very specific color specifications you should talk to the printer about the possibility of calibrating your computer screen to the print machines, or being aware of the variety of colors when using different printers.

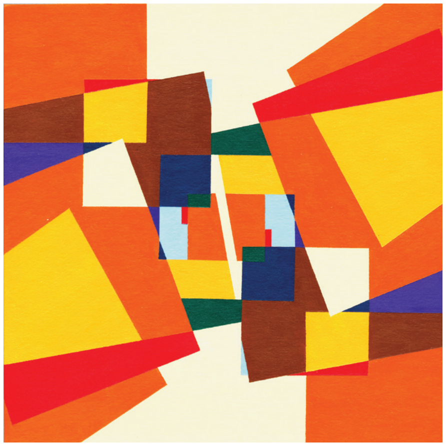
Loyalty

And finally, loyalty is important. Printers do not usually turn a profit when dealing with student projects; you are an investment, so make sure you bring custom to them when you are working in the professional world.

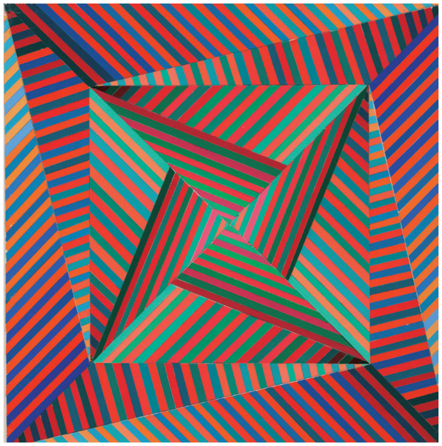
Grayscale Squares in tones of black and white create halftones and can define light and shadow in both an abstract and a representational way. Subtle variations in the value of each square will create gradients that blend seamlessly.



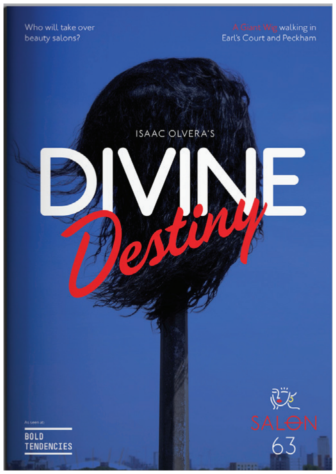
Movement and contrast Reds, yellows, and orange values come to the foreground of the composition, and blues and greens seem to be farther away. This example adds scale change to color theory to complete the effect of motion.



Vibrating edge When complements in red and green are adjacent, the eye perceives a faint white line along the edge. Vibrating edge is used to stunning effect in this design, but the same technique can render typography unreadable.



SUPER GARDEN
PREMIUM SPICES
freeze-dried
PARSLEY
LEAF FLAKES
GARLIC
GRANULES
PEPPER
POWDER



Contrast The use of contrasting colors in this poster creates a perfect attention-grabbing visual. Using a very simple, limited palette can provide a variety of different visual solutions for varying formats, while still being bold and cohesive. This contrast is also applied to the choice of visuals—a flat blue background and textured black image—and the type choices: a white sans-serif and a red script-style font.

PART 1 PRINCIPLES

CHAPTER 4 FUNDAMENTALS OF COLOR

MODULE 2 COLOR LEGIBILITY, CONTRAST, AND HARMONY

PEPPER
BASIL
PARSLEY
GARLIC
THYME
OREGANO
ROSEMARY
DILL
freeze-dried

Knowledge of the context in which finished work will be viewed is fundamental to the use of color in graphic design. How that color is perceived, and how legible it is, will vary greatly depending on whether it is viewed on a screen or in a print-based medium. Color has a dramatic effect on legibility and needs to be considered very carefully. Contrast and harmony are ways in which a design can be further enhanced.

Pastel tones Super Garden's herb packaging uses an extensive pastel palette to evoke an organic/health-oriented product line. The gentle color treatments result in a delicate touch throughout, distinguishing and unifying the individual products while being esthetically pleasing.

If you are designing a website or an onscreen project such as film credits, you'll be working with additive colors in the RGB mode. These are somewhat reliable monitor to monitor and have the lumens associated with onscreen colors. Very subtle variations may go unnoticed on screen, and care should be taken to avoid additional vibration when combining colors. If you are designing for print, be sure you are working in CMYK mode. This will enable you to come reasonably close to your intended selections, but test printing is the only reliable way to be sure your colors are correct. As explained in Module 1, problems can occur on translation to print in subtractive colors. Both clients and designers can be misled into expecting printed colors to have the same saturation and tonal range as those approved on screen. Don't rely on your monitor unless the finished design work is intended for the screen. Request scatter proofs and view your work in the same context as your intended audience to determine if your colors are successful before the final print run.

Color legibility

Legibility refers to how clearly something can be read. Many factors can influence color perception and legibility; for example:

- lighting and viewing conditions in the reading environment will have a clear effect on the legibility of both print- and screen-based work—compare viewing a monitor in a darkened room and under direct sunlight;
- selection of colors;
- background colors and textures on which colors are printed; and
- size and shape of type or image used.

SEE ALSO: READABILITY AND LEGIBILITY, P76

COLOR TERMINOLOGY, P88

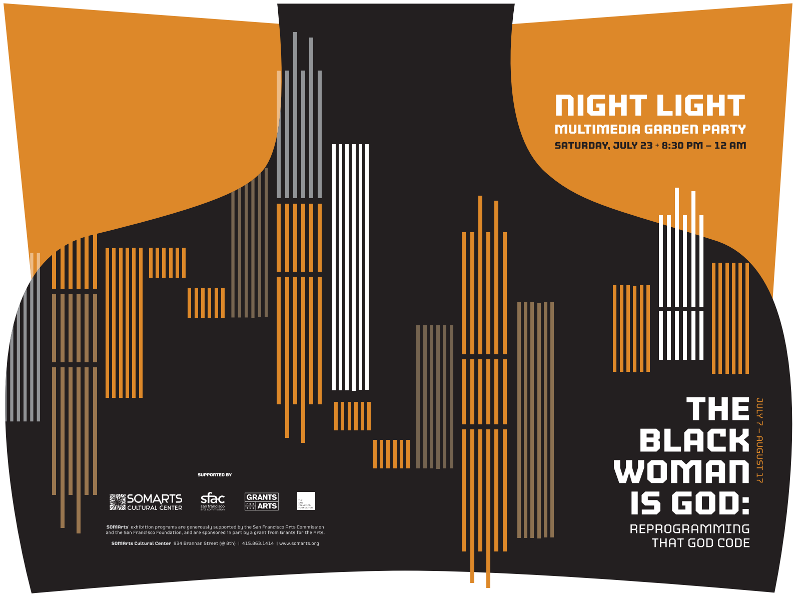
Good color legibility is achieved when ground and color have contrast—for example, deep violet (the color nearest to black) on a white ground. The legibility decreases by moving the image color toward yellow, however, because violet and yellow are complementary and may cause a vibrating edge. Changing the contrast is key to legibility, and this means using your knowledge of the color wheel.

Contrast and harmony

Color should both contribute to and support the content of a design, and it should reinforce the ideas you are giving visual form to. Therefore, it is important to understand how color can work in contrast and in harmony. Both are related to legibility and color associations, and affect design function and perception.

Allocating color proportion is a critical decision. For example, a small amount of bright red in a complementary scheme can have a stronger impact than equal proportions of red and green. Equal amounts of a saturated red and green can actually result in unpleasant visual discord, and may bisect your composition in undesirable ways. You can avoid this by varying the saturation levels of the hues. By using a greater proportion of green with less saturation and a red with good saturation, the red is given extra emphasis. You can reduce the vibrancy of a hue by adding a bit of its complement to it, graying the color effectively enough to change the relationship between your selections. With analogous schemes, the hues tend to have less vibrancy and therefore similar proportions can be used to pleasing effect.

Designers who develop an understanding of the complex and subtle ways in which colors interact will be able to explore new ways to express graphic ideas. Practical needs, such as legibility and the requirements of the work, should always be considered as a fundamental part of the design process. Experimentation will further your color expertise; try a design project without using black or white, and use the values, tints, and hues of color to solve your design challenges.



Limited colors By keeping the color palette to a minimum, you can create a striking, complementary visual. For the event Night Light for The Black Woman is God series, the designer has used a limited palette of orange, black, and white. The colors create various areas of focus, including the sharp white text on the heavy black background that draws the viewer to the important text on the design.

Layers and texture The use of subtle color schemes and the layering of textures creates an alluring design for Silk Events. The solid blocks of color and typographic shapes combined with the cloudy overlay create dynamic and deluxe visuals.

SILK
EVENTS
STAUFFACHERSTRASSE 75
3014 BERN
WWW.SILK-EVENTS.CH
INFO@SILK-EVENTS.CH

GLOSSARY

Analogous: Similar, comparable, alike; for example, two colors that are near to each other, such as grass green and leaf green, are analogous.

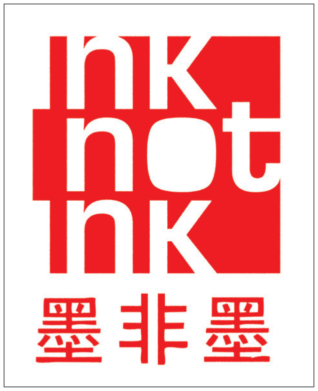
Contrast: Differentiation between two or more elements, in this context, of image color. For example, high contrast is between black and white, or blue and orange; low contrast is between two similar shades of blue, such as cyan and cornflower blue.

Harmony: Image with a balance of two or more colors that work together—for example, taupe and gray.

PART 1 | PRINCIPLES
CHAPTER 4 | FUNDAMENTALS OF COLOR

MODULE 3 | COLOR ASSOCIATIONS

Why are certain colors preferred, or seen to be more effective? It is because colors have, throughout history, come to hold particular associations that most likely derive from nature, and have, over time, become rooted in human psychology. They have come to possess cultural, symbolic, and often personal associations. To use it well, you need to understand how color works both as a language and as a system of signs, and how it creates an emotional response.



Seeing red The color red is associated with caution in most Western cultures, but with good fortune and luck in China. This bilingual logo type uses the brilliance of a nearly primary red to evoke the imprint made by a traditional Chinese ink seal and to announce an American exhibition of contemporary Chinese artists. The strength of the color also allows the viewer to see the letter "I" in ink, even though it is bleeding off the edge.

Intelligence, memory, experience, history, and culture all play a part in color perception. Although individuals may perceive colors with slight variation, color perceptions have different meanings depending on psychology and cultural background. Colors have symbolic associations in all societies, depending on context, and different cultures assign different meanings.

- Black is the color of mourning and death in the industrialized West, whereas in China and India the color of mourning is white.
- Red does not have the instant conventional association with "stop" in those countries where automobiles are less pervasive, and is associated with good luck in China.
- Green was associated with poison in the 19th century through its links with arsenic, whereas today it is seen as the color of spring and environmental awareness.
- Blue is associated with postage in the US, where the mailboxes are blue, whereas in Sweden or Britain you would look for the color red.
- Yellow is the color of courage in Japan.

The meaning of color can change over time and across different cultures. If you are designing for international markets, you need to be particularly aware of such differences.

Color in emotion and language

While color associations are highly subjective, despite local differences, colors and hues may have some universal characteristics. Reds, oranges, and yellows stimulate the senses and tend to be perceived as warm, capable of exciting feelings of cheeriness, good health, or aggression. Opposite on the color wheel, blues and greens are seen as cool, with connotations of calmness, peace, safety, and/or depression.

Other dimensions also influence perception. Compositions close in value may seem hazy, vague, or introspective, whereas dark combinations might evoke night, fear, or mystery. High color intensities are dynamic and create a feeling of movement. Clearly, color perceptions are rooted in psychology. They are even used figuratively to describe feelings. "Seeing red" or "singing the blues" are common descriptions of states of mind.

Color schemes The use of a flamboyant color scheme can be impactful and eye-catching. When designing with any color combination, place an emphasis on a contrast between background and foreground elements to ensure that each element is easy to see and read.

Cool palette In this poster, cool blue combined with black and white creates simplicity, allowing the abstracted typographic forms to take center stage. The use of layers and white space allows the image to breathe, avoiding overcomplicating already quite detailed imagery.

Color theorists

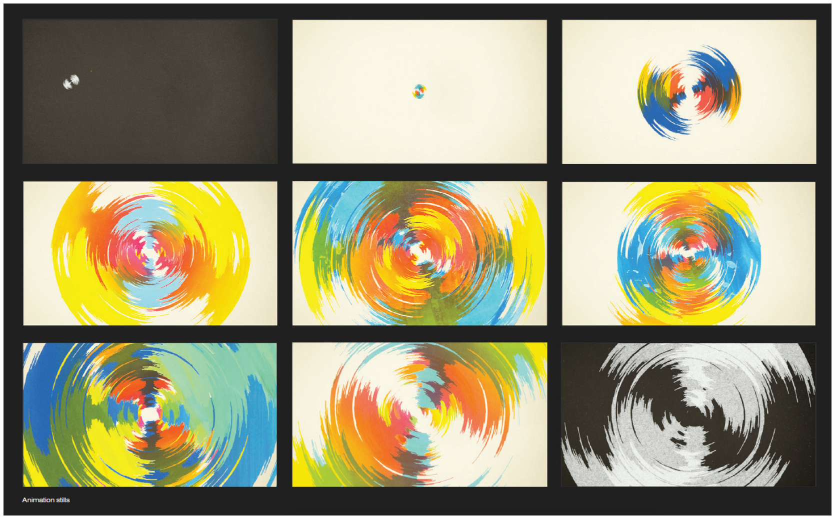
Josef Albers (1888–1976) proposed that colors are never stationary; that is, they are constantly changing in relation to the colors surrounding them.

Johannes Itten (1888–1967) created color experiments based on contrasts such as temperature or hue, and associations based on seasons.

Wassily Kandinsky (1866–1944) developed his color usage in terms of spiritual moods and relations to musical instruments and sounds. His paintings are a synthetic color expression of sound.

Wilhelm Ostwald (1853–1932) set up an order of colors based around the concepts of harmony and disharmony.

Mary Gartside (1765–1809) had her work on color theory published privately under the disguise of traditional watercoloring manuals. Art Historian Alexandra Loske claims she is the only woman known to have published a theory of color until the 20th century due to gender issues with regard to publishing, self-promotion, and the intellectual activity of women artists in the early 19th century.

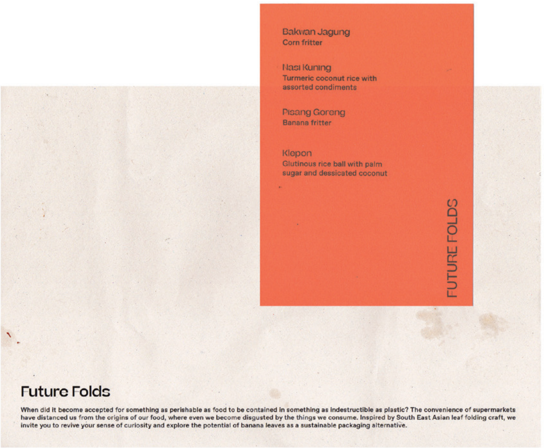


Animation stills

Bright palette The right palette can immediately associate the viewer with the intended message or product. This colorful display of sound waves and vibrations has a palette inspired by the energy of music. The moving image sequence allows the colors to blur together, furthering the concept of movement and sound.

Muted palette Sophisticated, muted values have previously been associated with a higher price point in retail packaging, but are more commonly associated with organic or natural materials. Natural color values and repeated forms combine with a sudden pop of vibrant orange in this anti-plastic packaging campaign, to add an edgy element to an environment-conscious treatment.

A-TEC THE OTHERLEFT ONESIXFIVE DJ SMOG B2B SESSION
DRUM 'N' BASS & JUNGLE
CONVEX
gaskessel
22 12 17
KULTUR STATT LUXUS!



Bakwan Jagung
Corn fritter

Nasi Kuning
Turmeric coconut rice with assorted condiments

Pisang Goreng
Banana fritter

Klepon
Glutinous rice ball with palm sugar and dessicated coconut

FUTURE FOLDS

Future Folds

When did it become accepted for something as perishable as food to be contained in something as indestructible as plastic? The convenience of supermarkets have distanced us from the origins of our food, where even we become disgusted by the things we consume. Inspired by South East Asian leaf folding craft, we invite you to revive your sense of curiosity and explore the potential of banana leaves as a sustainable packaging alternative.

KLEPON
-
GLUTINOUS RICE BALL WITH PALM SUGAR FILLING
BAKWAN JAGUNG
-
CORN FRITTERS
PISANG GORENG
-
BANANA FRITTER
NASI KUNING
-
TURMERIC AND COCONUT RICE

GLOSSARY

Associations: Connections between colors and emotions, culture, experience, and memory.

Connotations: A color's broader associations, for example: green—jealousy, naivety, illness, environment, nature.

Denotations: What the color literally means, or is; for example, a red rose is a green stem with red petals.

SEE ALSO: COLOR TERMINOLOGY, P88

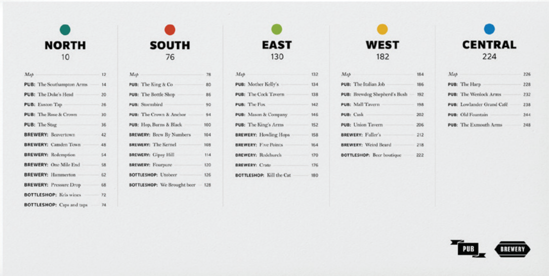
WEST
LONDON
THE ITALIAN JOB
BREWDOG SHEPHERD'S BUSH
FULLER'S

PART 1 | PRINCIPLES

CHAPTER 4 | FUNDAMENTALS OF COLOR

MODULE 4 | COLOR AS INFORMATION

Color is a powerful tool, especially in information design, where it is used to help the designer organize data into various structures, and to aid the experience of "reading" a design. Psychologists have proved that the color of an object is seen before its shape and details. Because color works at this basic level, it is very good at keeping things defined, reinforcing informational hierarchies, guiding the eye through complex systems and data, and aiding navigation through physical spaces.


NORTH
10

Map 12
PUB: The Southampton Arms 14
PUB: The Duke's Head 20
PUB: Euston Tap 26
PUB: The Rose & Crown 30
PUB: The Stag 36
BREWERY: Beavertown 42
BREWERY: Camden Town 48
BREWERY: Redemption 54
BREWERY: One Mile End 58
BREWERY: Hammerton 62
BREWERY: Pressure Drop 68
BOTTLESHOP: Kris wines 72
BOTTLESHOP: Caps and taps 74

SOUTH
76

Map 78
PUB: The King & Co 80
PUB: The Bottle Shop 86
PUB: Stormbird 90
PUB: The Crown & Anchor 94
PUB: Hop, Burns & Black 100
BREWERY: Brew By Numbers 104
BREWERY: The Kernel 108
BREWERY: Gipsy Hill 114
BREWERY: Fourpure 120
BOTTLESHOP: Utobeer 126
BOTTLESHOP: We Brought beer 128

EAST
130

Map 132
PUB: Mother Kelly's 134
PUB: The Cock Tavern 138
PUB: The Fox 142
PUB: Mason & Company 146
PUB: The King's Arms 152
BREWERY: Howling Hops 158
BREWERY: Five Points 164
BREWERY: Redchurch 170
BREWERY: Crate 176
BOTTLESHOP: Kill the Cat 180

WEST
182

Map 184
PUB: The Italian Job 186
PUB: Brewdog Shepherd's Bush 192
PUB: Mall Tavern 198
PUB: Cask 202
PUB: Union Tavern 206
BREWERY: Fuller's 212
BREWERY: Weird Beard 218
BOTTLESHOP: Beer boutique 222

CENTRAL
224

Map 226
PUB: The Harp 228
PUB: The Wenlock Arms 232
PUB: Lowlander Grand Café 238
PUB: Old Fountain 244
PUB: The Exmouth Arms 248

Charting information
Beautifully organized, well-designed information grabs the attention and is likely to be examined thoroughly. Here, a simple color system is used in an infographic for London beer. The chart follows a clear, five-color coded system for the easy navigation of the geographical location of both breweries and public houses.

Systems are anything that contain a flow of complex information—maps, signage, sections, structures, web pages. Color helps to categorize that information. Environmental graphic designers specialize in designing wayfinding systems, architectural signage, exhibition design, and data mapping, and rely on color as an important organizational tool.

- Complex buildings, such as hospitals and airports, need excellent signage systems to help people navigate through large, complicated architectural spaces. Color is an obvious means to correct paths. Many shopping malls are so large that parking zones are now color coded—a memorable way to help you remember where you left your vehicle.
- The London Underground map, developed by engineer Harry Beck, is one of the most famous maps in city transport. Beck used color to differentiate lines, so that people could readily identify the right route. The map is schematic: it is a simplified diagram that uses abstract graphic elements (lines) to represent a complex real-world situation. This most original of designs is a model copied in various forms throughout the world, including on maps for the Paris and New York City metro systems.
- In finance, color has traditionally been used in many ways. Debits in balance sheets would be in red to denote arrears, hence the phrase "in the red." This custom is still in use to separate trading figures from year to year.
- Charts apply color to quantitative and statistical information, where differing quantities of data need to be reinforced.
- Catalogs and books often have different color-coded sections to aid navigation through pages. Penguin Books introduced the first paperbacks in Britain in the 1930s using a bright orange background. This color quickly became fused with the books' identity. Later, the same publisher introduced another imprint, called Pelican, whose books were given a blue background. Customers quickly came to recognize the differences through the use of color. Such visual associations can also help to delineate sections within a body of text and highlight a number of different levels of importance. The designer can set crucial parts in a bold typeface and use a different color from the rest of the text. The eye picks up this difference very quickly.
- Web designers use color to help people navigate through the structure of a site.

GLOSSARY

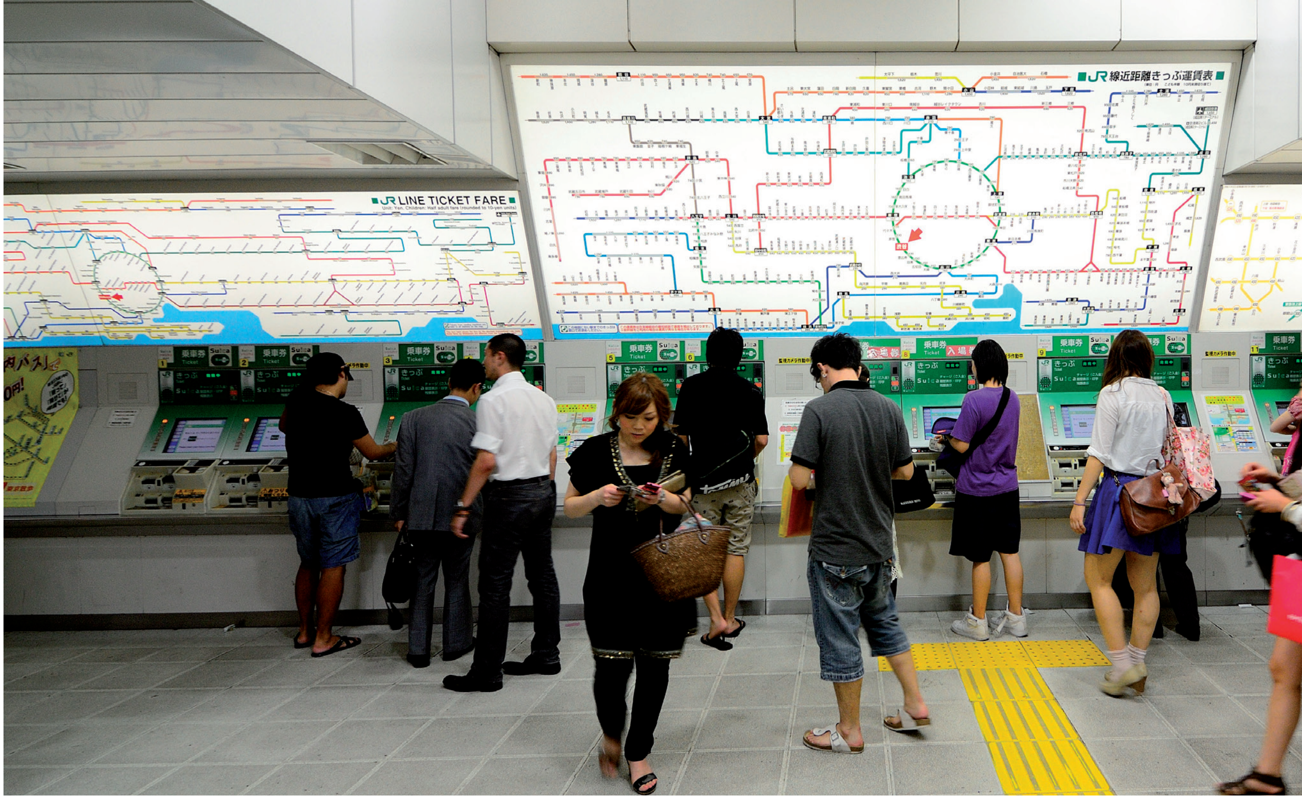
Data: Facts or pieces of information of any kind.

Diagram: Drawing or plan that explains the parts of something, or how something works.

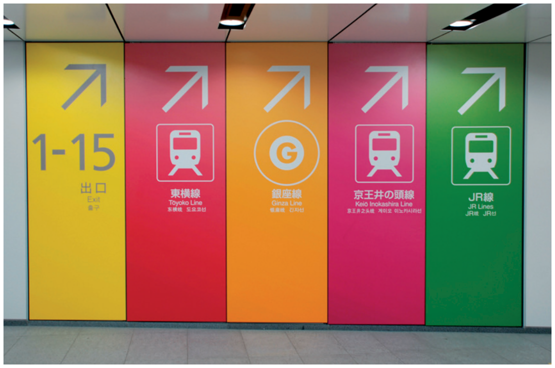
Quantitative: Related to quantities of things, or measurements (numerical).

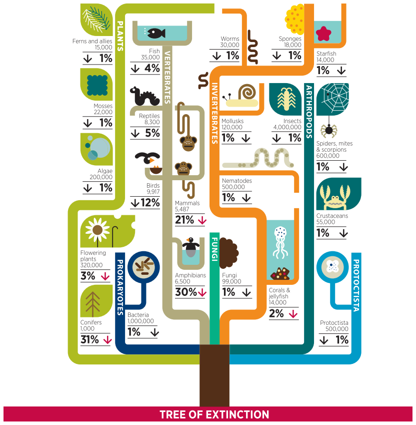
Schematic: Simplified diagram or plan related to a larger scheme or structure.

Statistical: Related to the collection, classification, and organization of (often numerical) information.


JR LINE TICKET FARE
JR線近距離きっぷ運賃表
乗車券
Suica

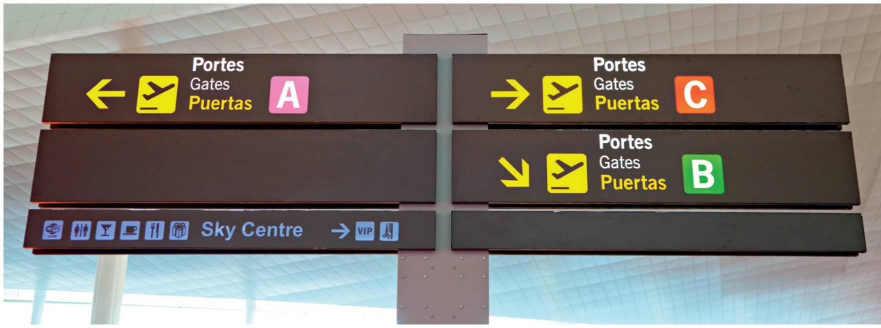
Finding the way Navigating a city requires an organized map. The London Underground map, originally developed by engineer Harry Beck in 1931, was the first to use this schematic system and has served as the model for cities all over the world. The color-coded navigation system in Shibuya Station in Tokyo, Japan (above), has a circuit board-like diagram and is seen by 2.4 million passengers on an average day. The color coding extends to the directional signage in the Tokyo subway system (right).


1-15
出口
Exit
東横線
Toyoko Line
G
銀座線
Ginza Line
京王井の頭線
Keio Inokashira Line
JR線
JR Lines



Diagrams as information The use of diagrams to convey information is a simple, universal way to communicate complex messages. A playful style of diagram and illustration is used in the infographic, Tree of Extinction. The chart follows a six-column modular grid system and is color-coded for easy navigation.

Universal language Color is a universal way to communicate. In a setting where many languages are spoken, such as an airport or a hospital, color-coded pictograms and information systems are easily understood.


Portes
Gates
Puertas
A
Portes
Gates
Puertas
C
Portes
Gates
Puertas
B
Sky Centre
VIP

CHAPTER 4 ASSIGNMENTS

Terminology of color

Using InDesign or Illustrator (see pages 106–109 and 114–117), create thirty 6 x 4-in (152 x 102-mm) postcards. On the back, title the postcard with a term from the list below. Write a short definition of the term and how it supports visual communication. On the front, create a digital composition showing the color term in action.
Print the cards and post them to your peers.

Color terminology
Additive color, advancing color, analogous color, associations, calibration, CMYK, color legibility, color wheel, connotations, contrast, denotations, gamut, grayscale, harmony, hue, movement, palette, Pantone, primary color, receding color, RGB, saturation (or chroma), secondary color, simultaneous contrast, spot color, subtractive color, tertiary color, tone (or value), vibration, weight.

Color experiments

1 By hand, draw a series of 12 x 12-in (30 x 30-cm) squares divided into five 4-in (10-cm) rectangles. Use three primary colors, three secondary colors, and three uncolored (black, white, gray) to create experimental compositions using color (you can draw, paint, or collage for this task). The specific color and arrangement of the rectangles is up to you, so long as they are horizontal or vertical, and not diagonal. Use each color at least once. Experiment several times with each task before settling on one composition.

- Emphasize the center.
- Balance top and bottom.
- Create a sense of calm.
- Create a sense of chaos.

2 Digitize your designs and introduce an overlay of typography to experiment with contrast and legibility. Limit yourself to the colors you have selected, then repeat the exercise adding additional colors.

- Create an example of poor legibility.
- Create an example of good legibility.
- Create an example of high contrast.
- Create an example of low contrast.

3 Additional task
Digitize and print your experiments at full scale. With the rest of the class, pin them up on the wall in the eight task categories. Discuss the similarities and differences between the compositions in each category and across different categories.

Ten-step scales

1 Using InDesign, Photoshop, or Illustrator (see pages 106–117), create a row of ten 1¼-in (3-cm) squares. Starting with a white square on the left and ending with a black square on the right, fill the row with a ten-step grayscale, from white to black.

2 Starting with a white square on the left and ending with a black square on the right, fill the eight steps between with a scale of different chromatic hues.

3 Starting with a white square on the left and ending with a black square on the right, fill the eight steps between with a scale of different tints and shades of a single color. The eight individual tonalities should be equivalent to the grays in the first scale.

Without good reason

1 Using InDesign (see pages 106–109), lay out a 16½ x 11¾-in (A3) poster with only the phrase “Without good reason, don’t do this again.” Set your type to yellow (C0 M0 Y100 K0) and print it out on white paper as a stark reminder that yellow text on a white background is very difficult to read.

2 Reprint your poster ten times, altering the contrast of the type and the background gradually as you go. Note which contrasts work well, which color combinations cause vibration, and which combinations result in zero legibility.

3 Additional task
What other design rules can you break and design into a 16½ x 11¾-in (A3) poster for similar effect? Concentrate on color to begin with, but note that this is a useful reminder for all graphic design fundamentals. Paste them up around the classroom—if you can bear to look at them!

An investigation into color

Begin by investigating, researching, and exploring a single color of your choice, ready to compile a collection of verbal and visual information based on the color for presentation. Select a color that you have a strong connection with, whether that is one you like or dislike, a color you see all the time, or one you’ve never seen before.

1 Data
Collect examples of your color being used or referenced in the following areas: architecture, art history, consumer culture, contemporary art, emotion, the environment and environmental issues, the everyday, graphic design, history, literature, music, non-Western art, print making, politics, popular culture, society and societal issues, and any other category you can find.

Organize your collection into a publication. The format and medium of the publication should be dictated by the collection.

2a Physical swatches
Collect at least 100 physical—not downloaded—10-in (4-cm) square swatches of your color: for

example, squares cut from magazines and newspapers, paint sample cards, fabric cuttings, printed photographs, ephemera, found items, screen-printed offcuts, ceramic shards, painted and unpainted signage, food packaging, etc.

Organize your collection into a publication. The format and medium of the publication should be dictated by your collection.

2b Digital swatches
Repeat this task using only digital swatches: for example, screengrabs taken from digital logos, films, animations, websites, social media channels, swatches constructed on digital software programs, digital photographs, etc.

Organize your collection into a digital publication. The format and medium of the publication should be dictated by your collection.

3 Organization
Using the two publications created in Tasks 1 and 2, brainstorm and sketch ways in which you can bring this information together. What is the most interesting finding you have come across? Is it an individual piece of information, a combination of pieces of information, or something about the pure volume of information you have unearthed? What is it about this information you find interesting and how could you communicate this to someone who is unfamiliar with your color?

Create a final outcome that communicates something of interest to your peers. Present your research publications and final publications together for the class.

Wayfinding

1 Using only one color, design a set of dingbats (phone, restroom, directional icons, etc.) to be placed in your place of work or study. Consider a singular concept for your designs, and think about how reduction and simplicity can keep your dingbats cohesive and clear.

2 Repeat the exercise, adding another color to differentiate the labels and icons. How much flexibility has been created in your design system with the introduction of an additional color?

3 Repeat the exercise, adding a background color to each dingbat. Where is it appropriate to feature a high contrast, and why?

4 Finally, repeat the exercise using any tints or colors you find appropriate. Note how important it is for information design to be clear and immediately readable as you work.

Waylosing

A sign system or wayfinding is an interpretation of the space. By suggesting the shortest way from A to B, the wayfinding shows that selective nature; of all the possible ways to go from A to B, the wayfinding displays only one. For this task, find an existing wayfinding system, perhaps at your school, a museum, or exhibition. Document it in depth, noting down the design elements in detail.

1 Create a set of additional symbols and/or instructions for wayfinding that divert people in an alternative direction. Consider the long way around, the scenic route, or the route past the café, for example. The signage must start at the original point A and end at the original B, but the in between is up to you.

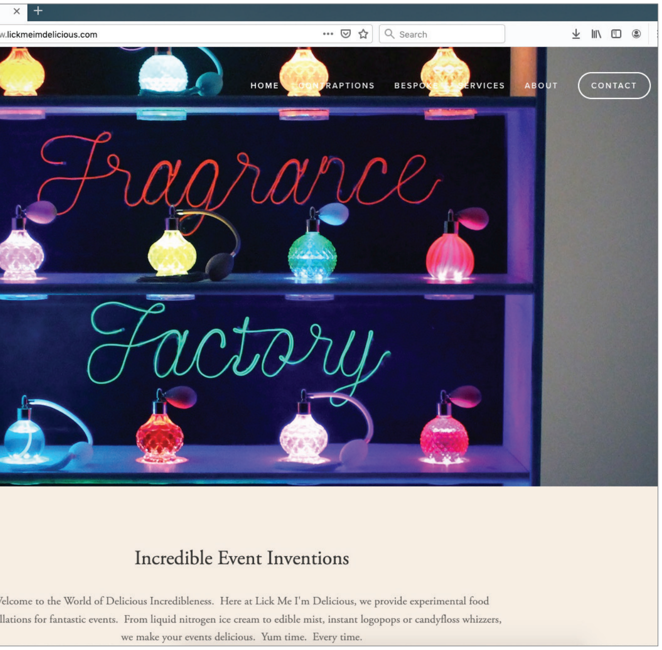
2 Create a set of additional symbols and/or instructions for wayfinding, with the intention of negatively disrupting the flow of people. Consider conflicting sign systems, incorrect sign systems, and signage that is difficult/impossible to interpret. The signage must start at the original point A but can end wherever you feel is conceptually most appropriate for your signage.

Further reading

Sean Adams, *Color Design Workbook: New, Revised Edition: A Real World Guide to Using Color in Graphic Design*, Rockport, 2017
Josef Albers and Nicholas Fox Weber, *Interaction of Color: New Complete Edition*, Yale University Press, 2013
Chris Calori and David Vanden-Eynden, *Signage and Wayfinding Design: A Complete Guide to Creating Environmental Graphic Design Systems*, 2nd Edition, Wiley, 2015
Leatrice Eisman and Keith Recker, *Pantone: The Twentieth Century in Colo*r, Chronicle Books, 2011
Jim Krause, *Color for Designers: Ninety-five Things You Need to Know When Choosing and Using Colors for Layouts and Illustrations (Creative Core)*, New Riders, 2014
Regina Lee Blaszczyk, *The Color Revolution*, The MIT Press, 2012
Lindsey Marshall and Lester Meachem, *How to Use Images*, Laurence King Publishing, 2010
Richard Mehl, *Playing with Color: 50 Graphic Experiments for Exploring Color Design Principles*, Rockport, 2013
Kassia St Clair, *The Secret Lives of Color*, John Murray, 2018
Victionary, *You Are Here: A New Approach to Signage and Wayfinding*, Victionary, 2013

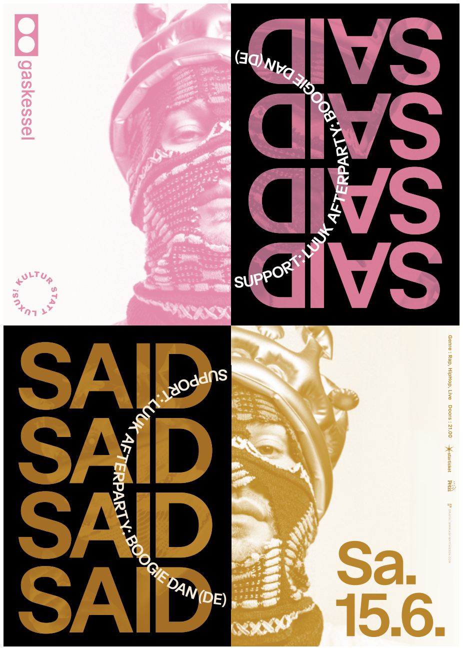
Practice

In this part, you will be introduced to the tools and techniques of design, which form a key group of skills for professional practice in any field. No designer can ignore the requirements of technology, and while you may use powerful digital tools regularly in the production of work, it is essential that you familiarize yourself with the industry-standard technologies that designers utilize. However, these tools cannot generate the idea, nor can they execute the design for you, and the kinds of conceptual, intellectual, and formal skills you bring are what will differentiate you from other designers. In short, you need both an excellent understanding of principles alongside outstanding technical skills. Being able to design formally and/or conceptually eloquent and innovative work is only half the story, since you then need to get the work into print, on screen, in three dimensions, or across multiple platforms, and so on. "Design is the battle, but printing is the war" used to be the designer's battle cry, describing the problems designers face when getting a design from the sketch stage to a final, printed piece of work. Those problems still exist but designers now need to be able to deliver graphics that will be viewed in multimedia applications, the screen being preeminent. Chapter 5 introduces basic image making and sourcing, followed by an overview of the key technical and software skills used in design today, including Photoshop and InDesign. In Chapter 6, various production issues, including color for print, PDFs, paper stocks, and press checks, are introduced. Chapter 7 is dedicated to design for web and mobile applications, and summarizes the specific technical skills,



Incredible Event Inventions

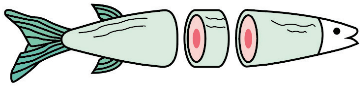
elcome to the World of Delicious Incredibleness. Here at Lick Me I'm Delicious, we provide experimental food llations for fantastic events. From liquid nitrogen ice cream to edible mist, instant logopops or candyfloss whizzers, we make your events delicious. Yum time. Every time.

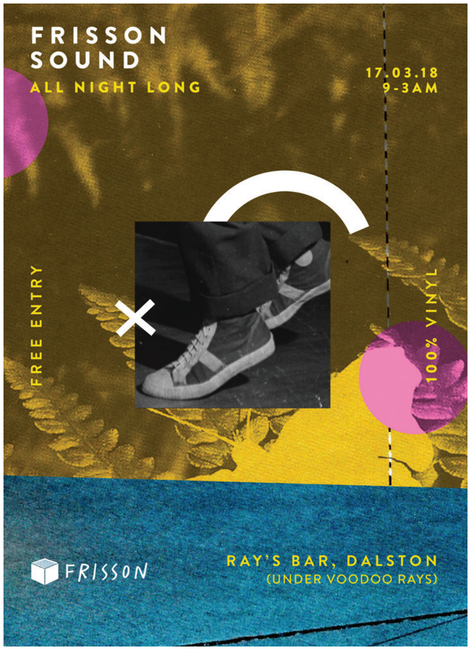


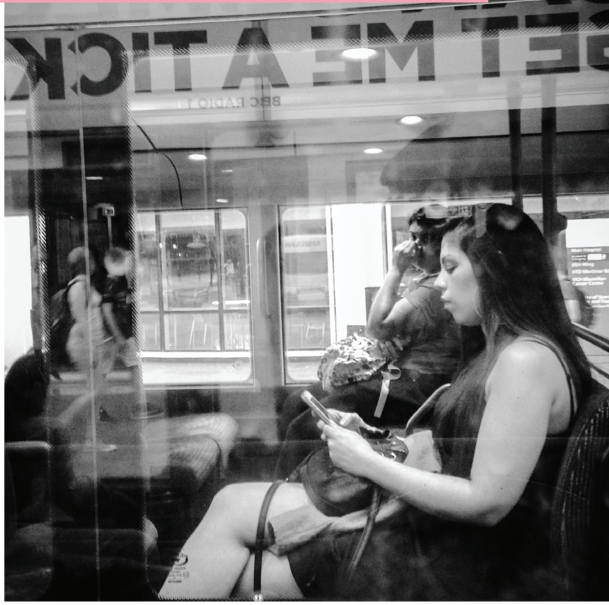
レモン
関東
レモン
果汁
関東

tools, and languages these platforms require. Here, you'll find design considerations for different styles of website, key software tools, and how to bring creativity to an "off-the-peg" CMS (and the acronyms are explained, too!). There is even a tick list of questions to ask a client during the website planning stages. Chapter 8 overviews seven of the key areas of design, including editorial design, web design, and motion graphics. These "tasters" aim to give a sense of the key skills and aptitudes needed to work in each field, and of the highs and lows of each profession, and to provide pointers to additional resources, including "Best in the business," which highlights some of the most influential practitioners in that area of design.

PART 2




FRISSON
SOUND
ALL NIGHT LONG
17.03.18
9-3AM
FREE ENTRY
100% VINYL
FRISSON
RAY'S BAR, DALSTON
(UNDER VOODOO RAYS)



5

Tools and Technologies

Graphic design production and practice is almost completely digital, and dependent on changing technologies. Previously, typographers would set type, pre-press production would be crafted by specialists at a printing company, and designers would commission a photographer. Now, one person can do all of these jobs on a computer, under the gamut of desktop publishing (DTP).

This chapter introduces you to the software applications and tools that are most commonly used in the graphic design industry. Each module focuses on a specific medium, such as photography, or a specific software application, such as Photoshop, grounding you in its unique tools, history, and terminology and giving you the opportunity to explore further. New applications, and updated versions of the ones in use now, will continue to be adopted into the practice of graphic design. The best way to prepare for a constant learning curve is to recognize the commonalities in the way they function, and gain proficiency through practice.

PART 2 | PRACTICE
CHAPTER 5 | TOOLS AND TECHNOLOGIES
MODULE 1 | **PHOTOGRAPHY BASICS AND SOURCING IMAGES**

Photography and image-making/sourcing are key skills for graphic designers. Not all designers are good photographers, but an understanding of the skills needed to compose and shoot images is essential. Your photograph may only serve as a placeholder, but having the image on hand will help you work out rough proportions, assign and design a composition, and can serve as research for drawing and/or digital illustration.

Fortunately, the rules of good design—composition, contrast, hierarchy, rule of thirds, and color theory—don't change much for different design disciplines. Frame your photos the way you would approach any design assignment, and compose each shot with purpose.

Types of photography

There are many broad categories of photography and image production that are relevant to designers. For our purposes, we'll focus on the most common, which are:

- objects and products
- portraits and images of people
- landscapes and buildings
- ephemera and texture
- reference and research

GET ME A TICKET

➔ **Layers** Thoughtful framing and the clever use of reflection, darks, and lights can add depth and drama to an image.

Consider the purpose of your design challenge and what your needs might be before you shoot. Make sure the resulting images fit the purpose, and that you have considered all aspects of your image as it relates to your design work. For example, product images are generally brightly lit, sharp, and clear, whereas landscapes and portraits may have a variety of styles and convey a specific mood.

Your designs will be more powerful if you learn how to spot an effective, well-composed picture and can recognize a good tonal range. Think about how the image can combine effectively with typography, color treatments, and other illustrations.

There are many reasons why one image will make you stop and stare and another will make you turn the page without stopping to look at all. It certainly helps if a picture is in focus, correctly exposed, placed where it is shown off at its best, and has some interesting content, but images can be a powerful form of expression within a design. Try to capture images that reflect the design sensibility you need to communicate your message, and note that there are limits to how much you can alter them electronically in post-production.

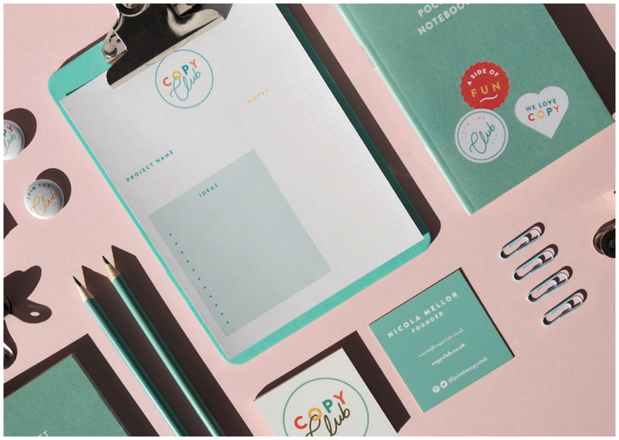
Rule of thirds The rule of thirds involves mentally dividing up your image using two horizontal lines and two vertical lines, and positioning the important elements along those lines, or at the points where they meet. In this image, the face and yellow bag lie roughly where the lines would meet, and therefore pull in your focus. The black column of color on the left runs down a vertical line of this grid, creating an esthetically balanced composition.

Asymmetry Positioning the focal point off-center breaks the traditional layout of a photograph, capturing the attention of the viewer by adding a sense of dynamism to the composition.

Symmetry Centered and still, a symmetrical composition can evoke calm and emptiness. Drama is intensified in this case by the use of an ominous monochromatic palette.

Perspective The variance in distance and the use of the perspective of the viewer within this photograph evoke powerful sensations of being inside the construction, at the location itself.

Contrast The strong contrast in black-and-white photography can create a compelling and striking composition. In this instance, the exaggerated shadows and light within the environment pull the focus to different areas of the image.



Composition Composition plays a big part in what is being communicated. The design detail in the identity across this stationery range is amplified through the composition of the arranged objects. As a result, the organization's message is clear, esthetically pleasing, and professional.

Cropping By cropping photographs you can alter the impact and composition for application. By applying this thinking and the use of bold typography, the covers for *The Art of Everyday Life* series are very engaging and intriguing, persuading the audience to learn more.

THE ART OF EVERYDAY LIFE
HIGH MASS
WITH ALL-SAINTS-CHURCH
THE ART OF EVERYDAY LIFE
ULTRAS
WITH the Holmesdale Fanatics
THE ART OF EVERYDAY LIFE
DOG BREEDING
WITH MYMSIN SHIBAS

SEE ALSO: FUNDAMENTALS OF COMPOSITION, P32

FUNDAMENTALS OF COLOR, P88

PHOTOSHOP, P110

PHOTOMONTAGE AND COLLAGE, P113

Which camera?

Digital cameras and smartphones enable high-quality, high-resolution images to be created instantly and with ease. Digital cameras and smartphones are immediate, versatile, and capable of taking reasonable-quality images in less-than-ideal lighting conditions. Most have great storage space, and you can select and delete unwanted images immediately. Many smartphones have great internal cameras that offer instant availability and the option to email or upload the photo to social media as soon as you have taken it, but the quality may not have the tonal range you need for a final image.

To take a good picture you will need a decent camera. If possible, beginners should use at least an 8 megapixel digital SLR (single lens reflex) with a 22–80mm zoom range, a viewfinder or viewing screen, and a macro setting option. A macro setting will allow easy focusing for closeups and detail. Good SLR cameras allow you to shoot what you see, and choose where to focus the image and exactly how to compose it. Automatic digital cameras calculate lighting, focal distance, and aperture settings with no input from the photographer, setting up a point-and-shoot attitude with reasonable results. For manual digital photography, a knowledge and understanding of how the camera works is necessary to give the photographer far greater control. Practice and study will allow you to create unorthodox and striking images.

Light and color, composition, and cropping

If you are creating photographs for illustration work, you want the initial photograph to feature as much detail and clarity, and balanced lighting, as possible. Further effects can be added electronically or manipulated in Photoshop, if desired, but you are always limited in post-production. You can always blur a clear image, then return to a clear image, but a blurred photo will be of limited use. Consider what you need from the photo before you shoot. You might be thinking in terms of high-saturated color, black and white, or sepia tone, but always shoot in color first to give yourself the option to experiment with all types of color manipulations in post-production. Also consider the lighting: direct bright sunlight may bleach out the image, whereas overcast conditions will flatten the contrast. Most cameras have a built-in light meter. When composing your shot, make sure that it is as close to the center of the contrast range as possible. To crop an image is to select only a part of the final shot. Often, cropping is used to take out an unwanted part of the picture. It is a useful tool that

Which lens?

Different lenses extend the capabilities of the camera.

- A normal lens on a digital or film SLR is 35mm, considered to be near enough to human vision.
- A macro lens captures sharp, extreme close-ups of objects.
- A wide-angle lens captures a wider vision, but with perspective distortion.
- A telephoto lens captures objects at a distance.

can help improve composition and eliminate superfluous information to strengthen the image.

Archiving your images

The storage of digital images needs care. It is not enough to have them saved only on a computer; they also need to be backed up on portable external hard drives or a cloud-based (virtual) system of digital storage, such as Dropbox, iCloud, or Carbonite. If a negative is scratched, it can still be printed and retouched, but the failure of a hard drive will result in complete loss of all your images.

Sourcing images

When making decisions regarding what images to use, the principal point to consider is whether the brief, timetable, and fee allow or justify producing an image from scratch, or if it might be necessary to source, or purchase, a ready-made image from elsewhere. The Internet provides the quickest way to source stock images, from websites such as iStockphoto, Getty Images, or Dreamstime. These images can be purchased and downloaded from a website on a royalty-free basis using a credit system, and are usually priced by usage. For example, on some sites a picture of a dog can be purchased for one credit for a 72dpi image, acceptable for a web-based illustration, or for five credits as a 300dpi image, for a print-based illustration.

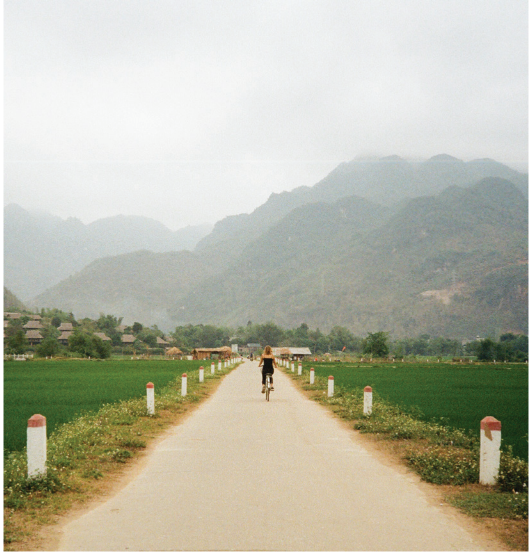
Images can be bought either for specific time periods or outright. A drawback to purchasing a temporary license is that there is no guarantee that other designers will not use the same picture in their designs. Your client may prefer that you purchase the picture outright, which will cost more. Customizing the image is always the best creative option. You can select the elements you need and create your own image through collage or retouching.

Tips and terms

Take time to check and adjust your settings, and always bracket your shots—adjust your f-stop up and down as you take multiple versions.

- **Depth of field:** The zone of sharpness in an image from the nearest point to the farthest point that appears to be sharp. Lens aperture, focal length, point of focus, and distance from the camera will all affect this zone of sharpness.

- **F-stop/focal length and aperture:** Size of aperture or "iris" inside a camera, which controls the amount of light that hits the film or pixel sensor; the range on a general camera is f4 (large aperture) to f22 (small aperture). A large aperture (f2, for example) brings more light into the camera and results in a softer image; a small aperture (f16, for example) allows less light into the camera but gives a sharper image.
- **Filter:** Plates of glass or plastic attached to the front of the lens in order to accentuate different qualities. For example, a polarizing filter cuts down light glare; a color filter enhances different colors. This is also a term that has carried over to various software applications and social-media outlets as a post-production tool.
- **SLR:** Single lens reflex. These types of camera use a viewfinder and mirrors so that the photographer's sightline goes through the main lens and results in a what-you-see-is-what-you-get image.



Depth The use of depth and distance in this image pinpoints two areas of focus. The first is the cyclist, who is more in focus and vividly colored. The second is the landscape in the distance, which is less sharp to suggest the expansiveness and remoteness of the area.

GLOSSARY

ISO: International Organization for Standardization. This sets a standard range for virtual film speeds in digital cameras: ISO 100, for example, works best in good lighting conditions for stationary objects; ISO 1600 works best in poor lighting conditions and for mobile objects.

Placeholder or FPO (For Position Only): A temporary or low-resolution image in place of the high-quality counterpart during the design process.

Resolution: The resulting output from a digital camera. Digital cameras and some top-of-the-range camera phones have up to 12 megapixel sensors and can produce less pixelated, sharper, and higher-quality images.

PART 2 | PRACTICE
CHAPTER 5 | TOOLS AND TECHNOLOGIES
MODULE 2 | **INDESIGN**

InDesign is the industry-standard page assembly and desktop publishing application. The software allows you to bring all your lessons in composition, page layout, contrast, and typography into play. Elements you create in vector software (Illustrator), or the imagery you edit in raster-based applications (Photoshop), can be combined with text and images to create brochures, magazines, posters, or multi-volume publications for print and interactive application.

Adobe InDesign is the industry-standard desktop publishing software and updates on a regular basis. Generally, Adobe files will open in any edition of the software; however, if using a higher upgrade of InDesign that will then be opened in a lower upgrade, you will first have to save it as a mark-up or IDML file. There are many features that overlap in Adobe Illustrator, Photoshop, and InDesign, but it is vital you are using the correct software. For example, typography should be handled in Illustrator, as this is a vector-based design program, and photographs in Photoshop as this is a pixel-based design program. Everyone has their own unique way of using these software applications; the key is finding what works best for you.

GLOSSARY

Crop mark: Vertical and horizontal lines at the corners of an image or page to indicate to a vendor where to trim off the bleed area.

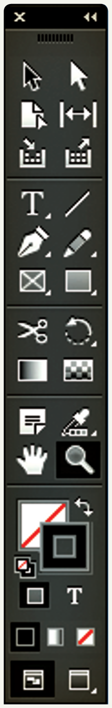
Gutter: The inside margins or blank space between two facing pages in a publication. Used to accommodate binding, the amount of gutter needed changes depending on how the project will be bound.

Handle: An anchor point in a design program connected to the main vector path by tangential lines that can be manipulated to change the shape of the curve.

Margin: The usually blank space to the top, bottom, and sides of a page between the trim and the live printing area. Headers, footers, and page numbers are traditionally placed within this area.

Work area

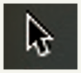
The main toolbar sits to the left of the screen, the canvas in the center, and the secondary toolbars to the right.



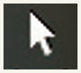
➔ **Main toolbar**
InDesign localizes its main tools into one long toolbox. Mirroring many of the functions found in Illustrator and Photoshop, the tools in this panel can be accessed by clicking the icons or utilizing the keystrokes assigned to each item, such as "V" for the Selection Tool, "P" for the Pen Tool, and "G" for the Gradient Tool. Note that some of the items with a small arrow also reveal other fly-out tools such as Rounded Frames, the Fill Tool, and the Measure Tool.

Useful tools and features

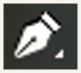
InDesign has many tools full of features and functions to help create compositions. Here are some of the more basic yet powerful tools that are the mainstays of any InDesign user. The keyboard commands for each tool are shown in brackets.



1 Selection Tool (V)
Selects the entire shape or line, which can then be stretched, rotated, or moved anywhere on the page.



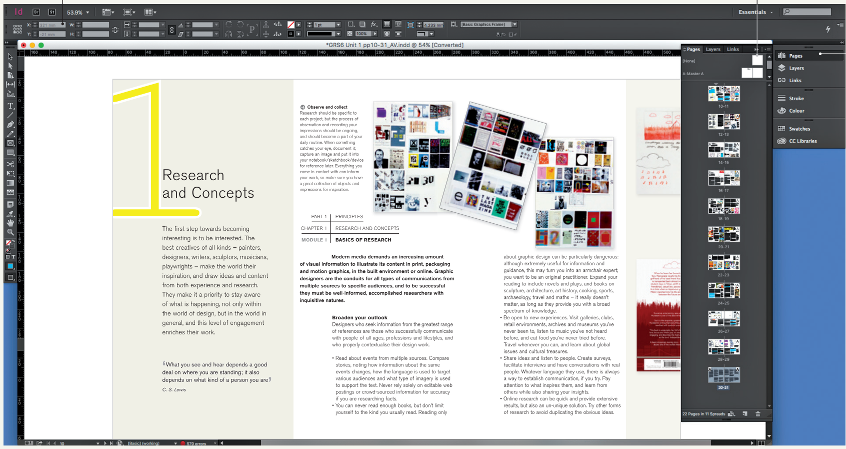
2 Direct Selection Tool (A)
Selects and manipulates specific lines, path points, or handle ends distinctly to change the position of individual lines, points, or curves of a shape.



3 Pen Tool (P) Enables you to create straight or curved lines by selecting two points on the page and "bending" to your desired shape. By clicking the Pen Tool, you can reveal the Add Anchor Point, Delete Anchor Point, and Convert Direction Point Tools to manipulate the points that make up curves and lines.

The Control panel can be docked at the top or bottom of the screen, as well as float freely, like all of the panels

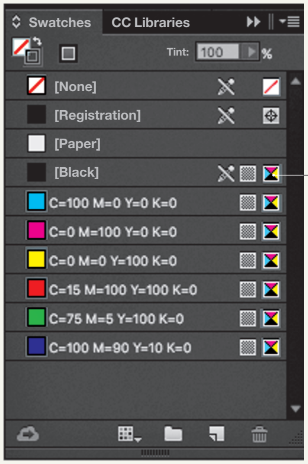
Master pages are the page templates upon which you can program elements such as grids, header and footer elements, and automatic page numbering



Click on Popup windows to activate

Popup windows Window organization is important, because the amount of panels and tools necessary to do a job can easily fill up your screen. The Adobe CC applications help reclaim screen real estate by allowing users to "dock" and minimize panels as they see fit. With a variety of options available under Window > Workspace, you can select one of the pre-organized panel arrangements or create your own. There is also a handy option to reset these workspaces if you lose something.

Swatches panel This is where all the colors used in a document are located.



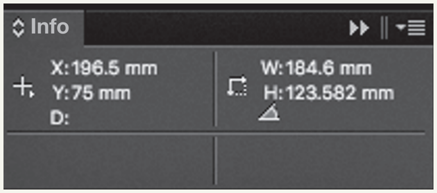
Tint: 100 %

[None]
[Registration]
[Paper]
[Black]
C=100 M=0 Y=0 K=0
C=0 M=100 Y=0 K=0
C=0 M=0 Y=100 K=0
C=15 M=100 Y=100 K=0
C=75 M=5 Y=100 K=0
C=100 M=90 Y=10 K=0

A simple colored icon to the right of your swatch indicates if the swatch is CMYK or RGB color

To modify a color's mix—either by typing in its numerical values or PMS number—double- click a swatch to reveal the Color Mixer. You can also alternate between CMYK and RGB in these settings.

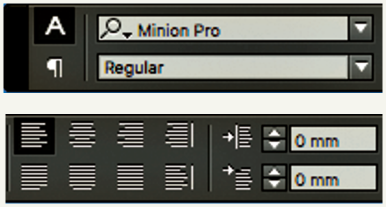
Standard color swatches that accompany every document are "None" or empty, 100% white, 100% black, and Registration. They cannot be modified in InDesign. Registration black is formed by all four CMYK colors for printing on plates, as opposed to 100% black. It's called this because it is used to print the registration marks, which are those marks that the printer uses to align the four plates once your job is on press.



X:196.5 mm
Y:75 mm
D:
W:184.6 mm
H:123.582 mm

Info panel Displays layout information for the document or selected objects, including values for position, color, size, text, and rotation. For viewing only—you cannot enter or edit the information in the panel, but you can ascertain many qualities of an on-page object by hovering over it with your cursor.

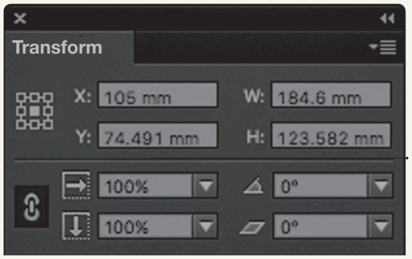
4 Type Tool (T) Used in the creation of text boxes and edits the type within them. By working in conjunction with the Control panel and Type panels, this tool will allow you to select and modify text to create headlines, paragraph blocks, and captions.



Minion Pro
Regular
0 mm
0 mm

5 Control panel Provides a customizable array of functions for the tool you have selected from the main toolbar. The Type Tool, for example, allows you to adjust the font, leading, tracking, text weight and style, paragraph alignment, column count, and margin spacing.

6 Rectangle Frame Tool (F) and Rectangle Tool (M) Both create rectangular, polygon, and rounded forms: the Rectangle Frame Tool creates frames to insert graphics and imagery; the Rectangle Tool is for drawing shapes to fill or outline with color. Precise adjustments can be made to size and position with the Transform panel.



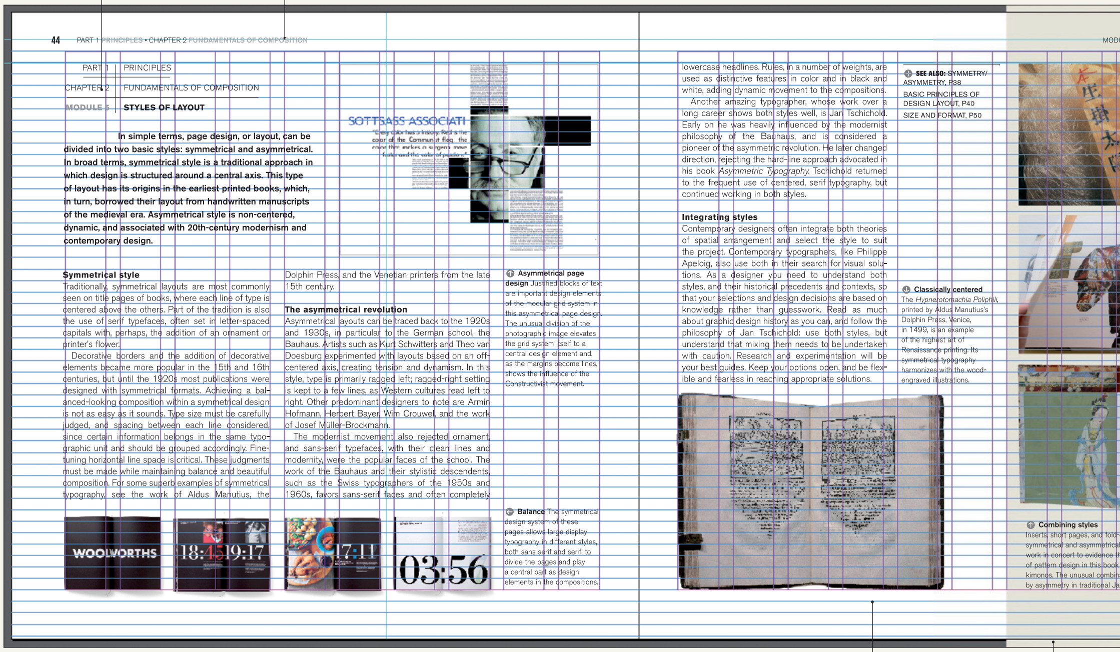
X: 105 mm
Y: 74.491 mm
W: 184.6 mm
H: 123.582 mm
100%
100%
0°
0°

Page layout

Creative layout design utilizes different on-page items such as text boxes and image boxes to help place imagery and content, and assign color in compositions on a generated pasteboard. These compositions can be sorted into a virtual pagination structure, comfortably up to hundreds of pages. The program also manages issues such as page size, orientation, and output. The following tools are standard.

➔ **Guides** Imaginary rules are pulled over the page and viewed upon request. They do not print, but help in creating layouts and grids and lining up items. Usually gutters, margins and baseline grids are set with guidelines in the Master Pages.

! **Bleed**
When preparing imagery, remember to compensate for the bleed. If any of your pictures go to the edge of the page, remember to add about 3–5mm (dependent on print requirements) to that side of the image to be clipped off at press-time. This goes for background colors and lines as well.



Reoccurring graphics can be set up in the Master Pages

Page numbers and running heads are set in the Master Pages

Grid lines can be switched on or off

Image bleed

44 PART 1 PRINCIPLES • CHAPTER 2 FUNDAMENTALS OF COMPOSITION

PART 1 | PRINCIPLES
CHAPTER 2 | FUNDAMENTALS OF COMPOSITION
MODULE 5 | STYLES OF LAYOUT

In simple terms, page design, or layout, can be divided into two basic styles: symmetrical and asymmetrical. In broad terms, symmetrical style is a traditional approach in which design is structured around a central axis. This type of layout has its origins in the earliest printed books, which, in turn, borrowed their layout from handwritten manuscripts of the medieval era. Asymmetrical style is non-centered, dynamic, and associated with 20th-century modernism and contemporary design.

Symmetrical style
Traditionally, symmetrical layouts are most commonly seen on title pages of books, where each line of type is centered above the others. Part of the tradition is also the use of serif typefaces, often set in letter-spaced capitals with, perhaps, the addition of an ornament or printer's flower.

Decorative borders and the addition of decorative elements became more popular in the 15th and 16th centuries, but until the 1920s most publications were designed with symmetrical formats. Achieving a balanced-looking composition within a symmetrical design is not as easy as it sounds. Type size must be carefully judged, and spacing between each line considered, since certain information belongs in the same typographic unit and should be grouped accordingly. Fine-tuning horizontal line space is critical. These judgments must be made while maintaining balance and beautiful composition. For some superb examples of symmetrical typography, see the work of Aldus Manutius, the Dolphin Press, and the Venetian printers from the late 15th century.

The asymmetrical revolution
Asymmetrical layouts can be traced back to the 1920s and 1930s, in particular to the German school, the Bauhaus. Artists such as Kurt Schwitters and Theo van Doesburg experimented with layouts based on an off-centered axis, creating tension and dynamism. In this style, type is primarily ragged left; ragged-right setting is kept to a few lines, as Western cultures read left to right. Other predominant designers to note are Armin Hofmann, Herbert Bayer, Wim Crouwel, and the work of Josef Müller-Brockmann.

The modernist movement also rejected ornament, and sans-serif typefaces, with their clean lines and modernity, were the popular faces of the school. The work of the Bauhaus and their stylistic descendents, such as the Swiss typographers of the 1950s and 1960s, favors sans-serif faces and often completely lowercase headlines. Rules, in a number of weights, are used as distinctive features in color and in black and white, adding dynamic movement to the compositions.

Another amazing typographer, whose work over a long career shows both styles well, is Jan Tschichold. Early on he was heavily influenced by the modernist philosophy of the Bauhaus, and is considered a pioneer of the asymmetric revolution. He later changed direction, rejecting the hard-line approach advocated in his book *Asymmetric Typography.* Tschichold returned to the frequent use of centered, serif typography, but continued working in both styles.

Integrating styles
Contemporary designers often integrate both theories of spatial arrangement and select the style to suit the project. Contemporary typographers, like Philippe Apeloig, also use both in their search for visual solutions. As a designer you need to understand both styles, and their historical precedents and contexts, so that your selections and design decisions are based on knowledge rather than guesswork. Read as much about graphic design history as you can, and follow the philosophy of Jan Tschichold: use both styles, but understand that mixing them needs to be undertaken with caution. Research and experimentation will be your best guides. Keep your options open, and be flexible and fearless in reaching appropriate solutions.

Asymmetrical page design Justified blocks of text are important design elements of the modular grid system in this asymmetrical page design. The unusual division of the photographic image elevates the grid system itself to a central design element and, as the margins become lines, shows the influence of the Constructivist movement.

Balance The symmetrical design system of these pages allows large display typography in different styles, both sans serif and serif, to divide the pages and play a central part as design elements in the compositions.

SEE ALSO: SYMMETRY/ASYMMETRY, P38
BASIC PRINCIPLES OF DESIGN LAYOUT, P40
SIZE AND FORMAT, P50

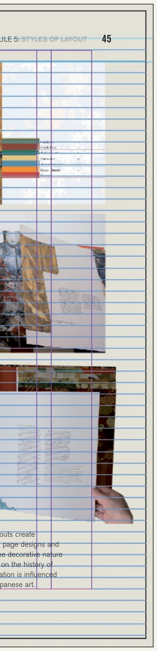
Classically centered The *Hypnerotomachia Poliphili*, printed by Aldus Manutius's Dolphin Press, Venice, in 1499, is an example of the highest art of Renaissance printing. Its symmetrical typography harmonizes with the wood-engraved illustrations.

Combining styles
Inserts, short pages, and fold-
symmetrical and asymmetrical
work in concert to evidence th
of pattern design in this book
kimonos. The unusual combin
by asymmetry in traditional Ja

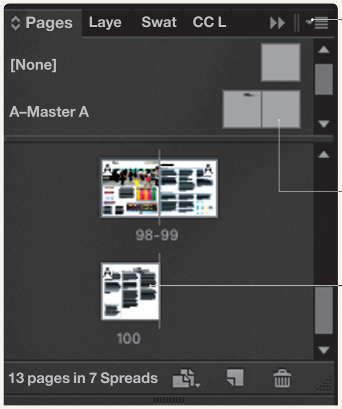
Page layout concepts

Beyond placing and sizing imagery, the designer can use desktop publishing programs to express content meaning with extensive control of typography. Through automatic flowing of text from multiple columns to multiple pages, hierarchy and information organization is easily controlled and experimentation and changes are easily handled. Creative composition and invention in text layout require manipulation of the page items, and will cause countless ragging and adjusting. Make it part of your process to address this and leave time to fine-tune your typography when the document is completed. Magazines and newspapers around the world use desktop publishing programs to get as many words as is comfortably legible and esthetically pleasing on a page, with grids, layouts, templates, and columns to make this happen.

Master Pages and Style Sheets will help you to create almost any composition and project. In Master Pages, you can create formats to be repeated throughout a multi-page document—for example, headers, page numbers, and call-outs. In the Style Sheet palette window, you can select your typographic hierarchy and set it to be constant throughout the document.



Master Pages These template pages, upon which predefined pages mimic grid elements and on-page template elements such as text block items, header and footer elements, and automatic page numbering, are usually found at the top of the Pages or Page Layout panel. These pre-styled layouts help in creating uniform changes throughout a large document, but can be specifically changed on a per-page basis when necessary. To unlock a Master Page item select Command/Ctrl + Shift + click.


Pages
Laye
Swat
CC L
[None]
A–Master A
98–99
100
13 pages in 7 Spreads

Click on drop-down menu > Override All Master Page Items to alter elements on the pages highlighted on the pages menu

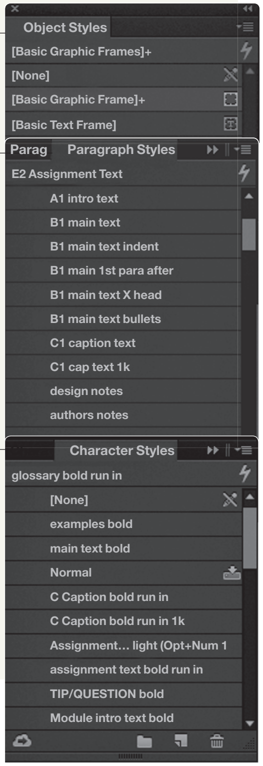
Click on icons to get to Master Pages

Thumbnails show the content of each page

Page numbering

On a Master Page, create a text box and go to Type > Insert Special Character > Markers—Current Page Number. Now, that same text block on each page will reflect the appropriate page number.

Style Sheets Design and typographic styles such as color, size, leading, position, and decoration may be applied to text automatically with Style Sheets. Selections of text may be tagged with certain predefined meta-information at the click of a button. By naming a series of elements Headline, you can globally affect the styles and attributes of each selection, which is helpful and time-saving for last-minute design changes.


Object Styles
[Basic Graphic Frames]+
[None]
[Basic Graphic Frame]+
[Basic Text Frame]
Parag
Paragraph Styles
E2 Assignment Text
A1 intro text
B1 main text
B1 main text indent
B1 main 1st para after
B1 main text X head
B1 main text bullets
C1 caption text
C1 cap text 1k
design notes
authors notes
Character Styles
glossary bold run in
[None]
examples bold
main text bold
Normal
C Caption bold run in
C Caption bold run in 1k
Assignment... light (Opt+Num 1
assignment text bold run in
TIP/QUESTION bold
Module intro text bold

Object Styles can be assigned to objects, groups, and frames to modify the stroke, color, fill, drop shadows, transparency, text wrap, and more

In Paragraph Styles, character and paragraph formatting attributes can be applied to a paragraph or series of paragraphs to adjust overall spacing, leading, and style

Character Styles are formatting attributes that can be applied to selected items of text, such as size, weight, tracking, and italics

Holding page

InDesign is a holding page. Unlike Photoshop and Illustrator, InDesign links images from the folders on your computer. If you move or rename these folders the links will break and will not export correctly. It is therefore vital that you are organized and have a good file management system (i.e. a folder for images, a folder for typefaces, etc.). To relink a broken link, select Window and Links. You will see a small icon alerting you to the broken link.

Packaging

Exporting documents for proofing—most commonly with PDFs—and file preparation for publishing with an outside printing vendor are important details usually handled well by page-assembly programs, but you should know what vendors are looking for. Packaging allows you to group your updated InDesign file, PDF for proofing, and all the assets and links to the file, including a folder of imagery and a folder of all fonts in use. Make sure to check your font and image licensing before sending these files to your printer.

SEE ALSO: PHOTOSHOP, P110

ILLUSTRATOR, P114

PREPARING FILES FOR PRINT, P124

PART 2 | PRACTICE
CHAPTER 5 | TOOLS AND TECHNOLOGIES
MODULE 3 | **PHOTOSHOP**

Photoshop is the industry-standard software package for raster-graphics editing and manipulation, and is frequently used for collecting images and to select elements for montage or photo retouching, both for print and digital. It also has the ability to perform basic 3D modeling, basic animation, and a variety of output-for-web options.

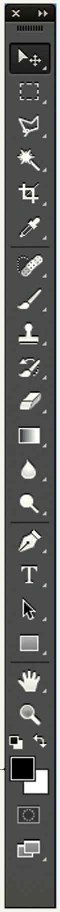
Photoshop replaces and enhances darkroom techniques such as retouching and editing brightness and contrast, and allows for ease of cropping while providing a cleaner, "dry," chemical-free environment for editing.
The most common tools used in Photoshop for photo editing are the Spot Healing Brush, the Clone/Stamp Tool, and the Patch Tool. These allow the editor to remove imperfections and unwanted objects.

Photoshop's major advantage is that imported images can be moved, edited, and layered over a potentially infinite canvas without loss of information, quality, or resolution. Photoshop documents with multiple layers can get quite large and may compromise the memory allocated on your computer. Be sure to save and archive the original PSD version, and flatten and save the document correctly. All Photoshop artists must have knowledge of all the selection tools available and an understanding of layering and saving options.

! Scanning
One way to import images into Photoshop for modification and incorporation into a design is to scan them. Most scanners will provide their own software, designed to work seamlessly with Photoshop. Options can range from the most simplistic image capture to a full range of customizable color settings, and resolution options for photos, line art, documents, or pre-screened printed material. Scanning is an essential skill, and many scanners will allow the capture of actual objects if the depth of field is not too great. For example, if you need an image of a key, you can actually place a key on the scanner bed and capture the image. The image can then be altered like any other photographic subject.

Work area

This section shows the general layout of Photoshop. Additional pull-outs can be accessed through the "Window" menu on the header bar.

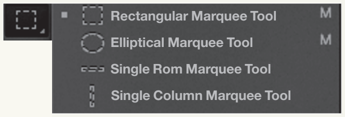


➔ Main toolbar
This bar has easy icon access to all of the main tools, some of which also have keyboard shortcuts.

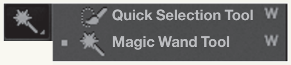
Foreground/background color selection. Clicking on the squares selects the color, whereas the "X" key swaps them over.

Useful tools and and features

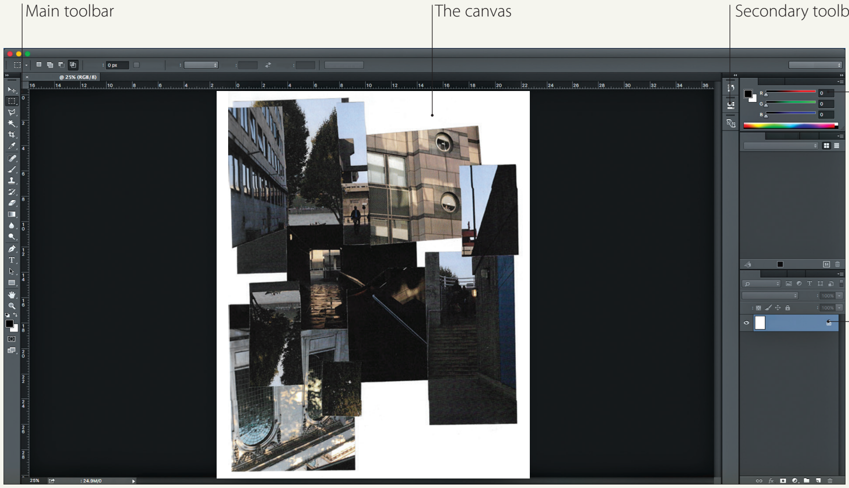
There are five main tools that enable you to edit an isolated area of pixels without altering the rest of the image. Each of these can be accessed through the main toolbar, and many have additional options to customize the tool, located at the top of your screen in the header bar. The keyboard commands for each tool are shown in brackets.


Rectangular Marquee Tool M
Elliptical Marquee Tool M
Single Rom Marquee Tool
Single Column Marquee Tool

1 Marquee Tool (M) Selects an area or sets up a boundary within the layer that is being worked on. Different Marquee Tools can select rectangles and ovals, and, when holding down the Shift key, geometric circles and squares can be selected. This tool also allows you to select a one-pixel-width line down or across the entire layer. This is useful when making a striped page pattern or creating a boundary line.



2 Magic Wand Tool (M) Selects pixels of the same color with the Tolerance option set to 1, but within a range of color with Tolerance set to more than 1. If the Contiguous box is unchecked, the tool will select all the pixels in the entire document that are of the same color value, regardless of whether they are joined together or not. Use the Shift key to add pixels to the selection and the Alt key to subtract.


Main toolbar
The canvas
Secondary toolbars

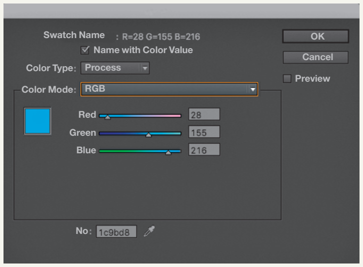
The color pull-out lets you adjust the color by altering the RGB or CMYK measures

The Layers pull-out details each canvas layer and which filters or additions are on each layer

Shortcuts

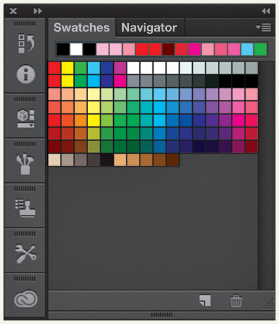
These keyboard shortcuts are helpful and save time:

- ctrl or /C Copy
- ctrl or /V Paste
- ctrl or /Z Undo
- ctrl or /M Marquee
- ctrl or /+ Zoom In
- ctrl or /- Zoom Out
- ctrl or /W Magic Wand
- ctrl or /T Free Transform
- Space key + mouse movement: move canvas around in window.



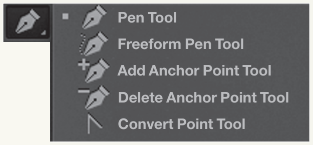
Swatch Name : R=28 G=155 B=216
☑ Name with Color Value
Color Type: Process
Color Mode: RGB
Red 28
Green 155
Blue 216
☐ Preview
No: 1c9bd8

Color editor The Photoshop Color editor when set to the CMYK (cyan, magenta, yellow, key/black) range is used for print color. The RGB (red, green, blue) color editor is used when designing for the web/ television. Each range has different effects on the color usage.

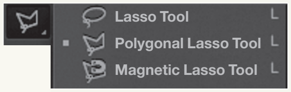

Swatches
Navigator

Preset color swatches The swatches are used as a standard range of colors, for example black, white, 10%, 20%, and 50% grays. If you have mixed your own standard swatch, or have been set a range in a brief, you can save and keep it to select when working on a design.

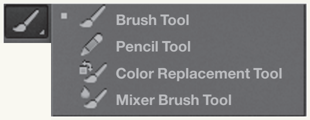
Tablet
A tablet with stylus pen is the preferred tool of many Photoshop artists. The pen gives the designer free range of hand movement and pinpoint precision by emulating the feel of using a brush or a pencil. The most common brand of tablet is made by Wacom.


Pen Tool
Freeform Pen Tool
Add Anchor Point Tool
Delete Anchor Point Tool
Convert Point Tool

3 Pen Tool (P) Creates vector-based lines and curves with control points (see Illustrator, page 114). These points can be dragged over the layer for a better fit, converting them from fixed points. An area enclosed by the Pen Tool boundary can be affected by various fill functions or made transparent to add texture and depth.


Lasso Tool L
Polygonal Lasso Tool L
Magnetic Lasso Tool L

4 Lasso Tool (L) Draws and selects freehand shapes. Use the Shift key to add a new selection or the Alt key to subtract. The Polygonal Lasso draws straight-line sections. Use the Alt key to toggle between the Lasso and the Polygonal Lasso Tool, and the Shift key to draw perpendicular or 45º angles. The Magnetic Lasso is the fastest way to outline and isolate a shape. The Magnetic Lasso will attach to the pixels that describe the outer edges of any photographic subject, making it a simple matter to eliminate a background or copy and paste the object into a different layer or file.

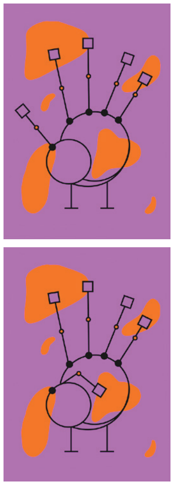

Brush Tool
Pencil Tool
Color Replacement Tool
Mixer Brush Tool

5 Brush Tool (B) The size, shape, and color of the Brush Tool can be changed, as can its hardness and scatter range. Alter the brush's flow rate or opacity to achieve different effects for use in retouching, adding texture, or digital painting. The Brush Tool options can be found under the header bar.

Pixels

The best way to describe a pixel is as a tiny square in a grid of squares on the monitor screen. Each square is lit by different intensities of red, green, or blue light (RGB) to form the entire gamut of colors. These pixels can be modified either on their own or as a group. If these pixels are tiny enough, they merge together to form a smooth picture. Another name for this is a raster image.

⊕ **SEE ALSO:** INDESIGN, P106



➔ **Animation** Creating a GIF requires only a few frames to make something attention-grabbing and dynamic. These vivid illustrations are brought to life with a quick and simple animation technique.

Animated GIF

An animated GIF can be created using a limited amount of animation, designed to catch the viewer's attention. This art can be created and easily animated in Adobe Photoshop by displaying a sequence of static images or "frames." Timing can be adjusted to further control the presentation. Animated GIFs must comply with established standards, relating to overall file size, limiting the number of animation slides—usually three, since any more would exceed the maximum file size online—and a number of controlled rotations. Typically, animations are set to loop three times and then stop. The artwork is supplied in the GIF file format or Animated GIF file format, depending on which application you are using.

Resolution

Image resolution is a key area of knowledge for a graphic designer. The most common measurement of resolution is dots per inch, or DPI. At 25dpi an image is heavily pixelated; at 72dpi (used for all web-based imagery) it is clearer but not a high-enough quality for print. The standard resolution for photo quality and print images is 300dpi, or for large posters, 600dpi. Be sure your image is at 100% scale, and at the right DPI. If you enlarge a small 300dpi image by 200%, it becomes 150dpi, and will not print at a high quality. You can easily adjust a high-resolution image, e.g. 300dpi, to a low resolution, e.g. 72dpi, in Photoshop. But you cannot increase a low resolution to a high resolution, e.g. 72dpi to 300dpi.

Shows image/document proportions will remain the same

Image resolution is altered here

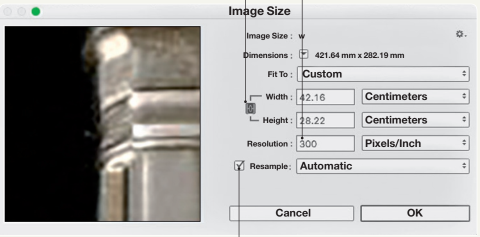


Image Size

Image Size : w

Dimensions : 421.64 mm x 282.19 mm

Fit To : Custom

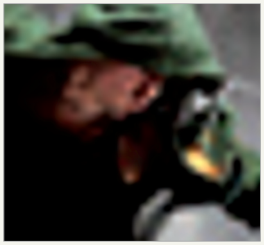
Width : 42.16 Centimeters

Height : 28.22 Centimeters

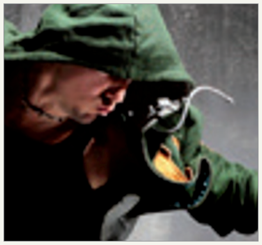
Resolution : 300 Pixels/Inch

☑ Resample : Automatic

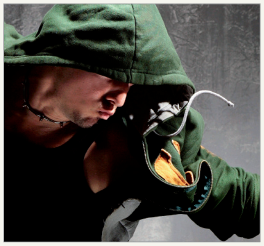
Checking this box ensures the document proportions are kept the same or "constrained"



25dpi



72dpi



300dpi

GLOSSARY

Canvas: The virtual "ground" that images are placed onto in Photoshop.

Collage: Derived from the French word for "to glue," involving the assemblage of elements of texture, found materials, and newspapers.

DPI: Dots per inch; the common form of resolution measurement. Designers typically use 72dpi-sized images for web images and 300dpi-sized images for photo-realistic prints.

Ephemera: Objects such as newspapers, bus and train tickets, and other found textures and typography.

Juxtaposition: The process of putting two or more unrelated or opposite elements or objects together to create different effects.

Montage: Derived from the French word for "assemble"; a picture made from pieces of other pictures.

Layering

Photoshop can layer different images and elements so that each can be worked on separately without altering the rest of the image:

Opacity Changes how translucent each layer is.

Presets Adds color styles and textures to the layer.

Layer styles Adds effects such as shadows, strokes, glowing edges, and textures to the layer.

Blending options Changes the properties of the layer.

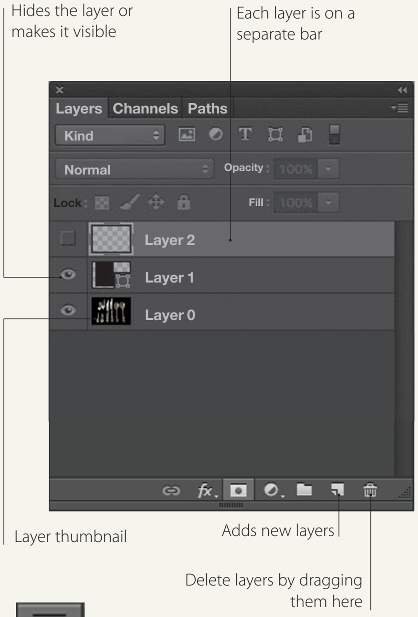
Layer > Merge/Flatten Merges all or some of the layers together.

Filter Applies effects such as blur, sharpen, lighting, and textures.

Use these to adjust the size, resolution, color values, and white balance of each layer:

Image > Adjustments > Hue/ Saturation
Brightness/Contrast
Image Size/Resolution
Canvas Size

Click and hold on a layer to drag it to different positions, bringing it to the front or moving it behind other layers.

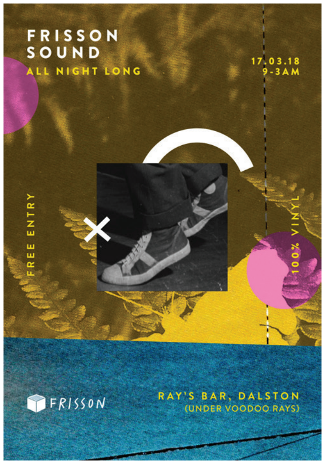


MASKS

Quick Mask selects and masks out an area that needs to be protected from editing. Using a selection tool, outline the area you want to edit, then select the Quick Mask option from the main toolbar. To add to the selection, paint in black; to subtract, paint in white. When you select the Standard Editing mode, the selection will reflect the edits made in the Quick Mask mode. Layer Mask creates an isolated section of the existing image to which more effects can be added. When you select the Layer Mask it will tell you that you are in "layer mask edit mode" in your filename. Remember to check the status of your layer before you alter the image, otherwise you may be working outside the masked area.

Photomontage and collage

Photomontage and collage are historical artistic methods, in which fragments of photographs, images, elements, textures, and typography are brought together to create new meanings and new images. Photoshop extends this process by making it possible to hide the methods of assembly, creating a seamless picture. Photomontage is a process concerned with manipulation of photographs and is historically associated with graphic artists such as Hannah Höch and John Heartfield, as well as contemporary illustrators such as Dave McKean. The process pulls in and reassembles fragments to construct images that appear seamless, or that leave the edges exposed for a handmade look. Collage is a process more concerned with the assemblage of ephemera, textures, and typography, and can be seen in the work of artists Kurt Schwitters and Romare Bearden. Many of these images are based on found objects or materials, and result in abstract assemblages and patterns that are rich with texture and esthetic qualities but do not, necessarily, convey any particular meaning.



Collage By using color, image, texture, and scale, you can create beautiful compositions by hand or on a computer, like this dynamic poster for a music event in London.

GLOSSARY

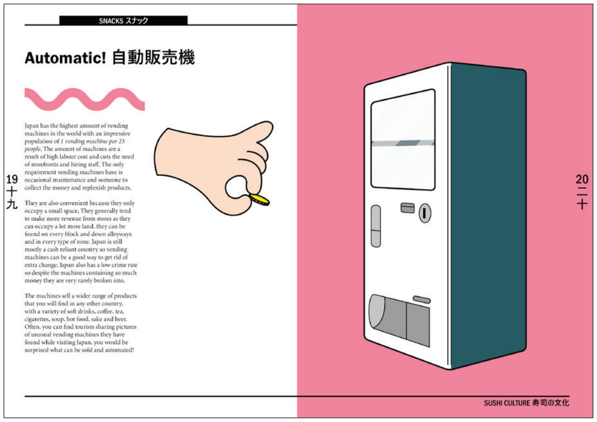
Photomontage: The assemblage of various fragments of photographs.

Pixel: The smallest element of a computer screen or printed image. The word "pixel" is an amalgamation of picture (pix-) and element (-el).

PPI: Pixels per inch.

Raster: Assemblages of pixels on a 2D grid system that can be viewed on computer screens or print media.

Resolution: The clarity of a digital image. A low-resolution image (25dpi, for example) will have clearly visible pixels; a high-resolution image (300dpi, for example) will not.



SNACKS スナック

Automatic! 自動販売機

Japan has the highest amount of vending machines in the world with an impressive population of *1 vending machine per 23 people*. The amount of machines are a result of high labour cost and cuts the need of storefronts and hiring staff. The only requirement vending machines have is occasional maintenance and someone to collect the money and replenish products.

They are also convenient because they only occupy a small space. They generally tend to make more revenue from stores as they can occupy a lot more land, they can be found on every block and down alleyways and in every type of zone. Japan is still mostly a cash reliant country so vending machines can be a good way to get rid of extra change. Japan also has a low crime rate so despite the machines containing so much money they are very rarely broken into.

The machines sell a wider range of products that you will find in any other country, with a variety of soft drinks, coffee, tea, cigarettes, soup, hot food, sake and beer. Often, you can find tourists sharing pictures of unusual vending machines they have found while visiting Japan, you would be surprised what can be sold and automated!

19 十九

20 二十

SUSHI CULTURE 寿司の文化

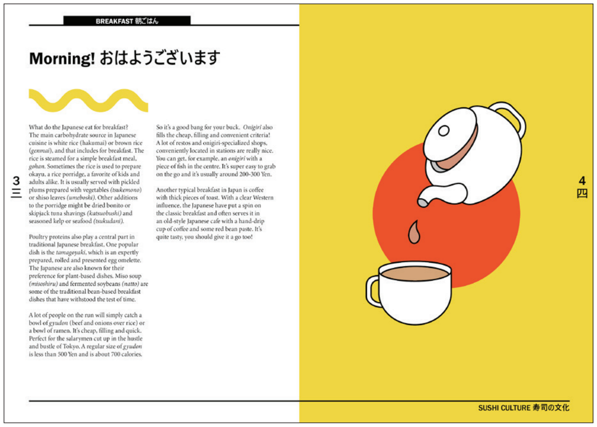
PART 2 | PRACTICE

CHAPTER 5 | TOOLS AND TECHNOLOGIES

MODULE 4 | **ILLUSTRATOR**

Adobe Illustrator is a vector-based package used for illustrative, logo, and page-layout design, because of its shape-rendering and text-editing capabilities. Its linear handling complements Photoshop's pixel-based format, and most designers have knowledge of both programs.

Vector illustration
Illustrator's vector-based format allows for a variety of image-making techniques, object edits, and custom typography. This makes it an excellent format for many illustrations, such as these colorful pictures in a publication spread.



BREAKFAST 朝ごはん

Morning! おはようございます

What do the Japanese eat for breakfast? The main carbohydrate source in Japanese cuisine is white rice (hakumai) or brown rice (*genmai*), and that includes for breakfast. The rice is steamed for a simple breakfast meal, *gohan*. Sometimes the rice is used to prepare okayu, a rice porridge, a favorite of kids and adults alike. It is usually served with pickled plums prepared with vegetables *(tsukemono)* or shiso leaves *(umeboshi)*. Other additions to the porridge might be dried bonito or skipjack tuna shavings *(katsuobushi)* and seasoned kelp or seafood *(tsukudani)*.

Poultry proteins also play a central part in traditional Japanese breakfast. One popular dish is the *tamagoyaki*, which is an expertly prepared, rolled and presented egg omelette. The Japanese are also known for their preference for plant-based dishes. Miso soup *(misoshiru)* and fermented soybeans *(natto)* are some of the traditional bean-based breakfast dishes that have withstood the test of time.

A lot of people on the run will simply catch a bowl of *gyudon* (beef and onions over rice) or a bowl of ramen. It's cheap, filling and quick. Perfect for the salarymen cut up in the hustle and bustle of Tokyo. A regular size of *gyudon* is less than 500 Yen and is about 700 calories.

So it's a good bang for your buck. *Onigiri* also fills the cheap, filling and convenient criteria! A lot of restos and onigiri-specialized shops, conveniently located in stations are really nice. You can get, for example, an *onigiri* with a piece of fish in the centre. It's super easy to grab on the go and it's usually around 200-300 Yen.

Another typical breakfast in Japan is coffee with thick pieces of toast. With a clear Western influence, the Japanese have put a spin on the classic breakfast and often serves it in an old-style Japanese cafe with a hand-drip cup of coffee and some red bean paste. It's quite tasty, you should give it a go too!

3 三

4 四

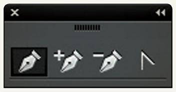
SUSHI CULTURE 寿司の文化

Illustrator's main advantage is the resizing of vector-based illustration without loss of detail, from its "point and line" function. For example, at billboard size a raster image becomes pixelated and blurry, whereas a vector image retains design by angle geometry and proportion, and remains sharp.

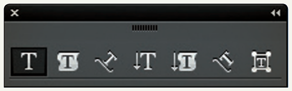
For the graphic designer, Illustrator offers a clean, crisp edge to the produced objects and brushes, and mapped along "paths" can also be moved, edited, and recolored easily. As in Photoshop, you can build layers of illustration using textures and transparencies, and typography, and create finished artworks to import into a desktop publishing program.

Useful tools and features

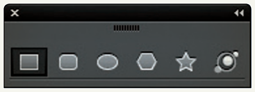
Many of the tools found in Photoshop are duplicated across the Adobe range, such as the Selection Tools, Lassos, and Pen Tools. Here are five of the most commonly used tools in Illustrator. The keyboard commands for each tool are shown in brackets.



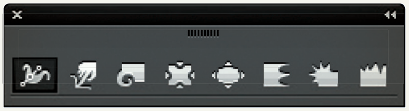
1 Pen Tool (P) Creates vector-based lines and editable points.



2 Type Tool (T) The most useful tool in the best program for creating crisp logos and typographic solutions.



3 Rectangle Tool (M) Creates customized shapes.



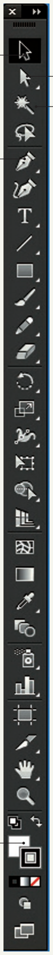
4 Warp Tools (Shift + R) These tools change the geometry of vector objects. The Warp Tool drags a specific area of an object. The Twirl Tool changes the local geometry/color into a spiral. The Crystallize Tool changes the local geometry/color to splines.

5 Mesh Tool (U) Creates color graduations within a 2D vector object. For example, making a star with the Star Tool and clicking within the shape with the Mesh Tool sets up a gradient, which can then be edited.

Work area

The main toolbar sits to the left of the screen, the canvas in the center, and the secondary toolbars to the right.

Main toolbar This toolbar is very similar to Photoshop's. The main differences are the tools described.



Selection Tool

Pen Tool

Direct Selection Tool

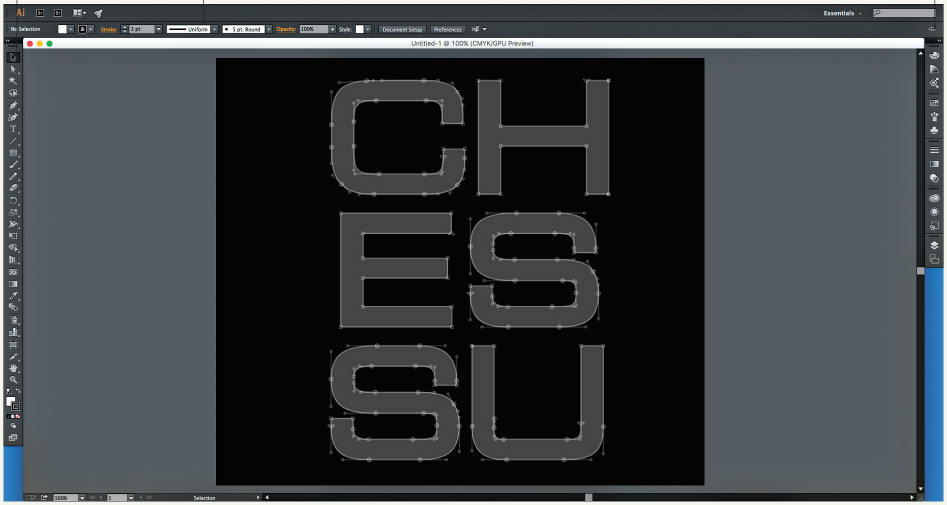
Magic Wand and Lasso Tools

Stroke/Fill color selector. Clicking on the squares swaps them over, as does the "X" key

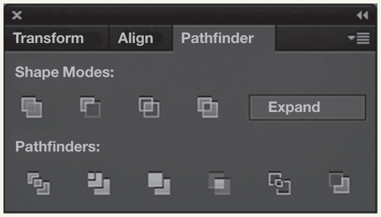
Main toolbar

Header bar

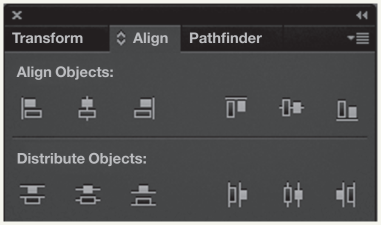
Palettes, including Swatches and Layers


Untitled-1 @ 100% (CMYK/GPU Preview)
Essentials
CH
ES
SU

Pathfinder Use these boxes to transform simple shapes into more complex ones, through merging, overlapping, and subtracting parts.


Transform
Align
Pathfinder
Shape Modes:
Expand
Pathfinders:

Align Clicking on these options will realign selected objects into the formations shown or add space evenly between objects as desired.


Transform
Align
Pathfinder
Align Objects:
Distribute Objects:

Flat design Illustrator offers a platform to generate flat design, which is a series of minimalist, stylistic elements that give the illusion of three dimensions (such as the use of vectors, shadows, gradients, and textures). This is particularly useful when designing for websites or applications since it enables interfaces to load faster and use less memory.

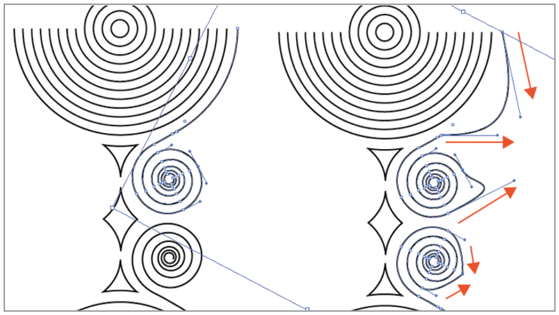
App Builder
App Settings
Insight Analytics
AEX
Notifications
Localisation
Users/Permissions
Support

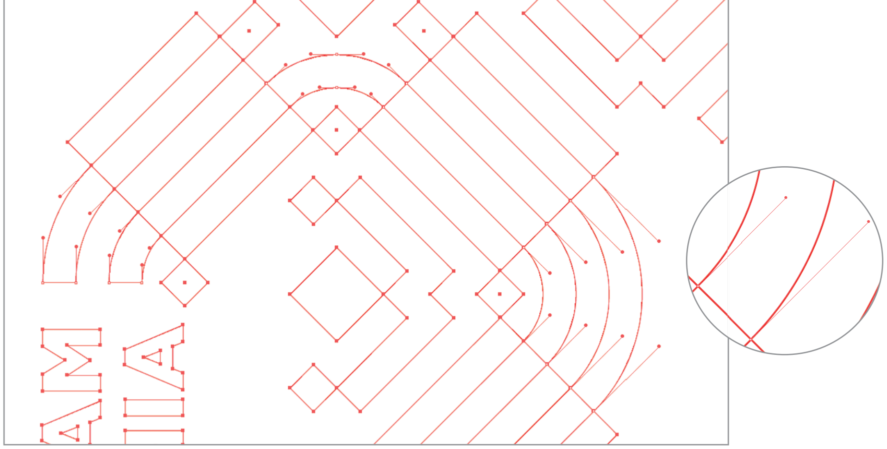
File types

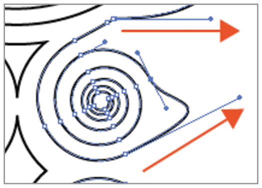
There are three main file types: PDF (Portable Document Format); EPS (Encapsulated PostScript); and AI (Adobe Illustrator Artwork). Generally, PDF format is used for final images sent for print or submission, whereas EPS and AI are file formats kept in-house.

CMYK

Illustrator documents need initially to be set to CMYK in preparation for the output to be delivered to print.







The Bézier curve in Illustrator with anchor points at either end and handles (straight blue lines) that control the curve.

Anchor points and handles In Illustrator these are constructed as mathematical algorithms, as opposed to pixels. This means that a small drawing in Illustrator can be enlarged to any size without losing quality. The versatility of this type of design works well for Team Romania, who have a variety of outputs and color schemes.

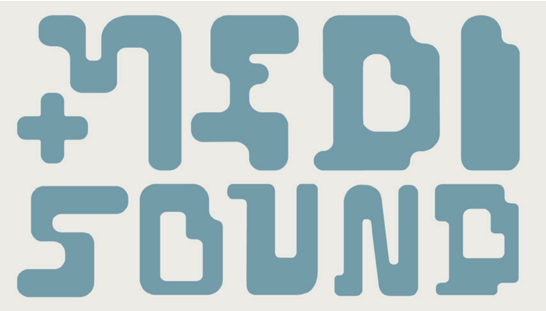
Illustrator has many great functions worth investigating further; these include changing type into an image, live tracing accuracy, and setting up files for CAD (laser cutting/engraving, vinyl, etc.).

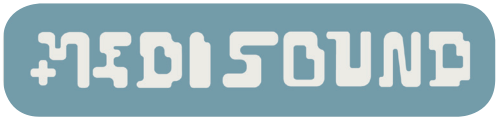
Vectors

Bézier curves are mathematically determined paths or vectors created between two points, which can be manipulated by anchors at either end. These curves, popularized by Pierre Bézier in 1962 from Paul de Casteljau's algorithms, provide the backbone of objects produced in Illustrator, and are found in the Adobe range as paths and anchors or handles created by the Pen Tool and lines, objects, and type guides in InDesign. They are also the basis for digital type used in publishing, text-editing software, and 3D software programs. To manipulate a typeface, select the bounding box with your Selection Tool, click type and create outlines. This will turn your letters into vectors with visible paths and anchor points.

Clean control

Precise adjustments and easy scaling are perfect for logo design work, whether the logo is pictorial or typographic. Vector.eps images are used because they can be enlarged to fit a billboard or scaled down for a business card without loss of detail. Customized typography should always be done in Illustrator; because the resolution does not change with size, typography will always be crisp.





Versatility The use of vector shapes and vector typography allows the designer to experiment freely with form. The Medisound logo has been drawn in Adobe Illustrator, which will allow the client to apply it at a small scale on a business card or resize it to fit a billboard with ease.

GLOSSARY

Anchor: A point on or at the end of a curve or line that can be "grabbed" by the cursor and moved around the canvas, either to change the curve shape or to move the entire curve.

Artboard: Like Photoshop, the virtual "ground" into which images are placed.

Handle: An anchor point connected to the main vector path by tangential lines that can be manipulated to change the shape of a curve.

Path: A drawn line, mathematically determined; also called a vector.

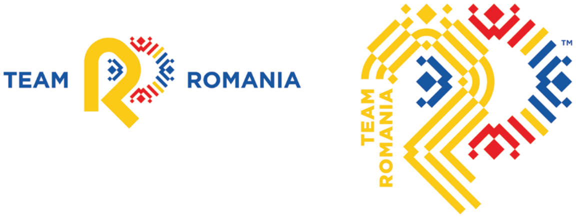
SEE ALSO: COLOR TERMINOLOGY, P88

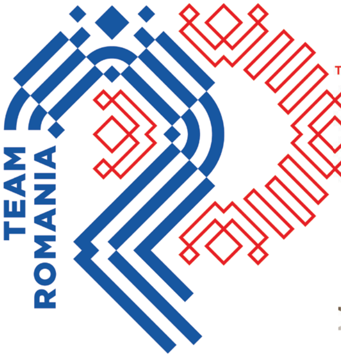
INDESIGN, P106

PHOTOSHOP, P110

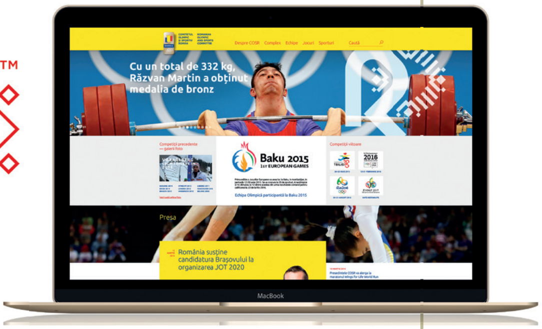
PREPARING FILES FOR PRINT, P124

17:55
42%
MediSound
20 PLAYLISTS
293 FOLLOWERS
73 FOLLOWING
Public Playlists
Ref 1234.01


TEAM ROMANIA
TM
TEAM ROMANIA


TEAM ROMANIA
TM

Application of Illustrator This example shows how fundamental and versatile Illustrator, along with other programs, can be in establishing a corporate identity, and how it can be applied in print, digital, and in large scale without losing quality.

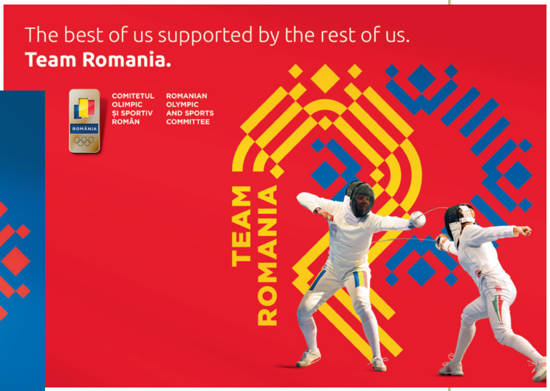

Cu un total de 332 kg, Răzvan Martin a obținut medalia de bronz

Baku 2015 1st EUROPEAN GAMES

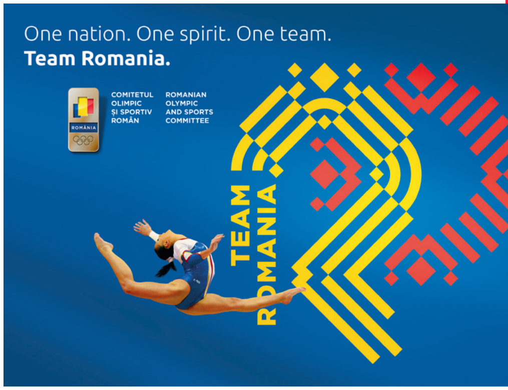
Presa

România susține candidatura Brașovului la organizarea JOT 2020

2016
MacBook


The best of us supported by the rest of us.
Team Romania.
COMITETUL OLIMPIC ȘI SPORTIV ROMÂN
ROMANIAN OLYMPIC AND SPORTS COMMITTEE
ROMÂNIA
TEAM ROMANIA

TEAM ROMANIA
ROMÂNIA
TEAM ROMANIA
ROMÂNIA


One nation. One spirit. One team.
Team Romania.
COMITETUL OLIMPIC ȘI SPORTIV ROMÂN
ROMANIAN OLYMPIC AND SPORTS COMMITTEE
ROMÂNIA
TEAM ROMANIA

TEAM ROMANIA

Team Romania.
Made of 20 million supporters.
COMITETUL OLIMPIC ȘI SPORTIV ROMÂN
ROMANIAN OLYMPIC AND SPORTS COMMITTEE
TEAM ROMANIA

PART 2 | PRACTICE

CHAPTER 5 | TOOLS AND TECHNOLOGIES

MODULE 5 | ANIMATE AND AFTER EFFECTS

Adobe Animate and Adobe After Effects are two of the main software packages for the creation of time-based presentation. Both compose “moving imagery” for screen or web, use timelines and keyframes, and incorporate both pixel and vector graphics. They differ in how material is rendered in the program and how it is delivered to the audience.

Animate

Known for many years as Flash, Animate excels with vector graphics, and is used for interactive web-based applications and animation, with a range of features. It uses Action Scripting, which dramatically extends the functionality and interactivity features of the application.

- Illustrator images can be imported, then animated, or created in the design stage, then output to virtually any format (including SVG, PNG/JPEG sequence, FXG graphic interchange format, QuickTime movie and animated GIF).
- Complex animations are built one stage/movement at a time using keyframes. “Tweening” then creates transitions between two keyframes. A higher number of frames per second (common frame rates are 24fps, 25fps, and 30fps) creates a smoother transition. Unlike After Effects, transitions between different scenes or forms need to be built in by hand.
- Animate supports ActionScript, which is an object-oriented programming (OOP) language that is designed specifically for website animation and interaction.
- Open-source community libraries of script are there to be utilized by a user for assembling into the desired forms. Animate is prevalent on the Internet, in the form of animations, navigation, and video, due to its discreet file size. And, unlike Flash, Animate incorporates native HTML5 Canvas and WebGL support to leverage web standards.

After Effects

After Effects uses both vector and raster graphics, from either stills or video clips imported from Photoshop, Illustrator, video cameras, or animation packages, and is used primarily as a post-production effects and compositing tool. As a stand-alone product for viewing (.mpeg or .qt [QuickTime] file formats), clips and stills are

GLOSSARY

Clip: The name for a sequence of images or length of developed film or video.

SWF: The “Small Web Format” is an uncompressed and editable file format that allows you to place Animate content in another application, such as Dreamweaver.

Keyframe: Either the frame of an animation at a key stage or a frame in a layer, composition, or a clip where a transition is due to start. (After Effects uses the following Spatial Interpolation keyframes: Linear, Auto Bézier, Continuous Bézier, Bézier, and Hold.)

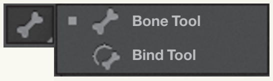
Timeline: The linear timeline in both Animate and After Effects, in which keyframes can be added in order to design animated milestones in a production.

HTML5 Canvas: The HTML <canvas> container is used to draw graphics, via scripting (usually JavaScript).

WebGL: Web Graphics Library is used for rendering interactive 2D and 3D computer graphics without the use of plug-ins.

Useful tools and features

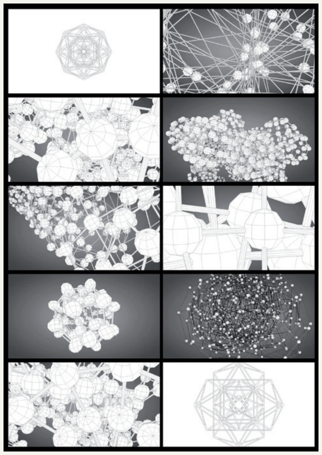
The Animate interface is set up in a similar way to most of the Adobe software. The After Effects interface is less similar to the Adobe range, which reflects its use as a motion graphic, animation, and compositing application. Here are some tools and resources that stand out from both programs.

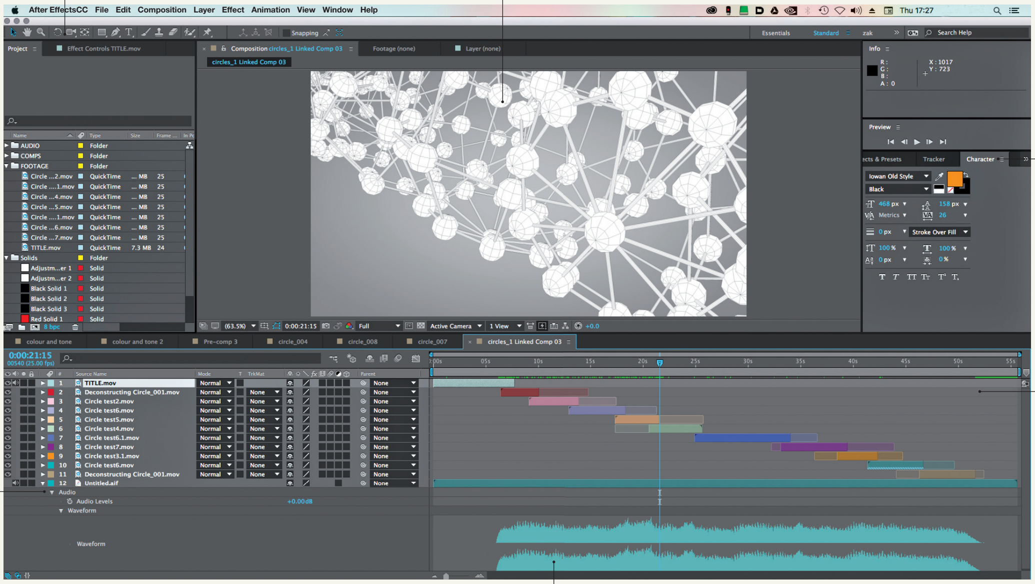


1 Animate: Bone Tool The Bone Tool can be used for inverse kinematics (IK)—in other words, to link several elements on the canvas with armatures, so that movement of one element will translate back through the link and respond as if the elements are connected by bones.

2 Animate: Packaging
Much like the package file option in InDesign, Animate allows .OAM packaging, which is a compression .zip format allowing you to package up assets to import into other Adobe tools like Muse or Dreamweaver.

3 After Effects: Cartoon Effect Creates a cartoon esthetic. Import live footage into the work environment, go to Effects, and choose Stylize. Collapse Stylize and select Cartoon Effect. Drag and apply to the footage in the timeline. Tweaking the presets parameters changes the overall look and feel of the imported footage.




After EffectsCC File Edit Composition Layer Effect Animation View Window Help
Project
Composition circles_1 Linked Comp 03
Info
Preview
Character

Main toolbar menu. Tools that are used daily are situated in this toolbar menu

Composition Workspace is one of the most important panels in After Effects: this is where you can see the progress of your work

The Character panel is used to manipulate text. There are many panels in After Effects, which can be found from the Window menu

Layers are used to organize the workspace. Labeling layers with colors is an easy way to stay organized in After Effects

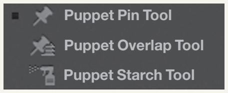
The audio icon indicates that the audio is present in the timeline

Audio waveforms. The height of the line indicates the strength of volume in the audio: long vertical lines indicate loud audio, small vertical lines describe quiet audio

Deconstructed Circle
The storyboard shows the key sequences for compositing the final animation. Deconstructed Circle was produced by Zak Peric in After Effects, and the animation can be seen using the weblink https://vimeo.com/85708559.

organized on tracks similar to video-editing programs like Adobe Premiere Pro and Final Cut X.

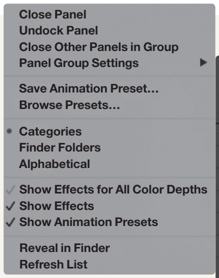
Transitions, effects, and presets can be drag-and-dropped between compositions that will then render using computer RAM Memory (more RAM memory means quicker rendering times). After Effects has many filters, effects, and presets, such as film scratches or blurring, to create a mood or tone in your project. What makes After Effects popular and powerful is the range of third-party plug-ins that can be used to extend the functionality of the application (e.g. Red Giant Trapcode Suite and Boris FX Boris Continuum Complete), although it can be argued that AE Scripts website (http://aescripts.com) is the most complete repository of current plug-ins available for After Effects and other animation, 3D, and compositing applications.

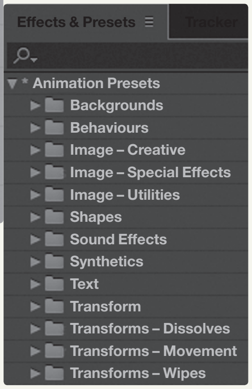

Puppet Pin Tool
Puppet Overlap Tool
Puppet Starch Tool

4 After Effects: Puppet Tool Excellent for creating bone structure in bitmap images. Select the Puppet Tool and place pins in order to create hierarchy. Each pin can be animated separately to create complex movement.

5 After Effects: Mocha This stand-alone application, which comes with After Effects, enables you to motiontrack (planar track) objects within a film so that words, images, or symbols can be spliced into the film, even if the film tracks fast or is blurred. For example, you could track a different billboard image onto a billboard as a car passes and the camera pans to follow the car. This method of tracking is called planar track (which is similar to the four-corner pin-tracking technique).

6 After Effects: Animation Presets Menu Ideal for those who are new to animation and compositing, After Effects features pre-animated presets that can be utilized in any project. The benefit of using these presets lies in their flexibility and speed. (Each preset keyframe can be changed to create a new effect/visual outcome).


Close Panel
Undock Panel
Close Other Panels in Group
Panel Group Settings
Save Animation Preset...
Browse Presets...
Categories
Finder Folders
Alphabetical
Show Effects for All Color Depths
Show Effects
Show Animation Presets
Reveal in Finder
Refresh List


Effects & Presets
Tracker
Animation Presets
Backgrounds
Behaviours
Image – Creative
Image – Special Effects
Image – Utilities
Shapes
Sound Effects
Synthetics
Text
Transform
Transforms – Dissolves
Transforms – Movement
Transforms – Wipes

CHAPTER 5: ASSIGNMENTS

PHOTOSHOP

There are endless tutorials available online that will help you navigate your way around the most up-to-date version of Adobe Photoshop. The Adobe site itself has the most comprehensive at https://helpx.adobe.com/uk/photoshop/tutorials.html. Use these tutorials to build confidence and learn the correct terminology. When you are ready, complete the task below. Remember, you can always return to the tutorials or search for anything you specifically want more practice with.

Editing images

1 Artist David Hockney has a beautiful series of photo montage images, or what he calls "joiners." He began to create these pieces by taking pictures with his Polaroid camera and gluing them together as reference pieces for his paintings. Study these images, looking particularly at the notion of a complete picture created from a series of individually photographed details and angles.

2 Select a scene of your own and take photographs while stood in the same spot, but from multiple angles. If digital, load them directly onto your computer. If film, develop and then scan the images onto your computer.

3 Open Photoshop and edit your images. To edit an existing image select File > Open [your image].

4 It is important to establish the output for your work before starting; if in doubt, always set up as if you are printing to high quality, since it's much easier to reduce than increase image size and quality. Select Image > Image Size > Resize to 300p/inch (not cm). Note: p stands for pixel, a word that originated from the term "picture element"—the basic unit of programmable color on a digital image.

5 Similarly, knowing if your work is going to be screen- or print-based will alter the way you set up the Color Mode. To set Color Mode, select Image > Mode > RGB (Screen), CMYK (Print), Grayscale, Mono/Duotone—you need to set your Color Mode to grayscale first before having the option to Mono/Duotone it. Note: The specific color that a pixel describes is made from red, green, and blue, which produces the screen format RGB. Printer colors are made by combining cyan, magenta, yellow, and black—CMYK—and won't look the same on screen as when you print them. For this project set your images to CMYK.

6 Once you are happy with your edits, select File > New and enter the 8 x 8-in (20 x 20-cm) dimensions of the canvas you will be working on.

Selection tools

Photoshop layers are like sheets of stacked acetate. You can see through transparent areas of a layer to the layers below. When you move a layer into position the content on the layer slides like a sheet of acetate in a stack. You can also change the opacity of a layer to make content partially transparent.

The selection tools (Quick Selection, Magic Wand, Marquee/Lasso, Magnetic Lasso, etc.) isolate one or more parts of your image. By selecting specific areas, you can edit and apply effects and filters to portions of your image, while leaving the unselected areas untouched.

It's also possible to make selections based on a range of colors in an image using Select > Color Range. Using the Eyedropper Tool, choose the color you want, then alter the settings in Color Range to increase/decrease your selection. In addition to pixels, vector data can also be used to make selections. Use the Pen or Shape Tools to produce precise outlines called paths, which can be converted to selections. Once a layer or selection is created, that area is now isolated and can be duplicated, moved, or edited in some way. Explore the adjustment options for hue/saturation, opacity/brightness, and contrast, etc.

7 Spend time experimenting with the selection tools, cutting shapes from your images. When you are happy with your edits, Save As > EPS to save the transparent background.

Joiners

8 Open a new Photoshop document, select File > New and create an 8 x 8-in (20 x 20-cm) document. Make the resolution 300dpi, so you can print it, and name the file Joiners 1.

9 Under the Layers tab, select Background and change it to Layer 0. Import one of your photographs.

10 Import all the photographs, with each having its own layer. Using the Move Tool, you can reposition or scale any of your imported images. Hold down the Shift button to scale your images without distorting them.

11 Create a Hockney-inspired joiner, placing your photographs thoughtfully to make one composition. Experiment with filters to affect the color. Pay attention to the lighting in the foreground and background, and see if you can adjust them to work well together.

12 When you have a file you are happy with, save it with all the layers intact. Then, flatten the image, crop it to your liking, and, using the Save As selection, rename the file and save the compressed version with a different name. It will be smaller and easier to import, but always save the original, layered version, in case you want to make a change.

Outsourcing

13 Repeat the exercise, but, instead of taking your own images, source them from online. In practice, you should only outsource an image if you cannot make it yourself. No matter how complicated, look upon this as a creative problem to be solved. You could stage a scene and capture your own image, or capture a series of elements and compile an image in Photoshop.

It is good practice to organize and store imagery for future use. Whether you print things out or keep them filed away on a computer, creating a visual reference library will result in much more scope and ideas for image making. Make sure to always have a camera, whether it be digital, film, or a smartphone, so you can take images you find engaging and could use for future projects.

ILLUSTRATOR

There are endless tutorials available online that will help you navigate your way around the most up-to-date version of Adobe Illustrator. The Adobe site itself has the most comprehensive at https://helpx.adobe.com/uk/illustrator/tutorials.html. Use these tutorials to build confidence and learn the correct terminology. When you are ready, complete the task below. Remember, you can always return to the tutorials or search for anything you specifically want more practice with.

● Morphed alphabet

1 This assignment requires you to convert a typeface into a vector and manipulate its shape. Look at the typefaces you have on your computer, or a typeface you can purchase and download online. You can use a free typeface, but remember these aren't usually designed to a high standard. Once you've selected a typeface, study it in detail, looking at the anatomy and how the letters sit alongside each other in the alphabet.

2 Open Illustrator and create an 8 x 8-in (20 x 20-cm) canvas. Select the Type Tool and type the letter A and the letter B in your chosen typeface.

3 Select the text box with the Direct Selection Tool and click Type > Create Outlines. Illustrator has just turned your letterforms into vector shapes. This technique is often used when printing vinyl or creating screen prints; make sure to keep an un-outlined version to one side in case you need to go back and edit.

4 Using the Direct Selection Tool, you will notice the letter now has handles. Grab the handles and start moving them around to experiment with how the letterform changes.

5 Using the various Pen Tool options, add and subtract handles and add and remove curves. Using these tools, and remembering that this is a legible letter, create an interesting connection between the A and the B, turning them into one letter. Use the Pen Tool to join handles, or overlap your two letters and select Pathfinder > Shape Modes: Unite to create a single compound shape.

6 Continue to do this with all the letters of the alphabet (e.g. A and B, B and C, C and D, etc.)

7 Now you have grasped how vectors are moved and shaped, experiment with your new vector letterforms and vector shapes. You can draw shapes freehand with the Pen Tool, or use existing shapes available through the Rectangle Tool and others. Make sure your colors are set to RGB, and experiment with various hues and tones. Explore and experiment with the Transform Tool and other effects available through Illustrator.

INDESIGN

There are endless tutorials available online that will help you navigate your way around the most up-to-date version of Adobe InDesign. The Adobe site itself has the most comprehensive at https://helpx.adobe.com/uk/indesign/tutorials.html. Use these tutorials to build confidence and learn the correct terminology. When you are ready, complete the tasks below. Remember, you can always return to the tutorials or search for something you specifically want more practice with.

● Interactive

In this assignment you'll be creating a single-page interactive poster, using the content from the previous Illustrator assignment (left).

1 File management
The most important thing to remember about InDesign is that it does not hold information you place in the file, but links it from an external source. If you rename or delete the original file the InDesign link will be broken and it will not appear in your InDesign document. Therefore, it is always advisable to set up a file management system. Create a folder called Single Page Poster. Within this folder save the InDesign file and create subfolders for text and images.

2 Set up
Open InDesign and select File > New > Document (command+n). On the top tab select Web and select the 595.276 pixels width by 841.89 pixels height (letter-paper size) option from the blank document presets. Ensure the Portrait option has been selected using the icon and untick Facing Pages. You can also adjust Columns and Margins here if you wish, although there is another option once you're inside the program. Click OK/Create.

3 Layout
Select Layout > Margins and Columns > to set your margins to 10mm, except for the bottom margin which should be set at 15mm. You may need to double-click the Lock icon to enter different values. Select Layout > Create Guides > where you can set your columns. Set three Rows to four Columns to the Margins. Click OK.

4 Add images
Import your experimental typeface. One way to do this is to select File > Place and draw to grids. Alternatively, as your typeface is vector-based, you can copy and paste it straight from Illustrator. Arrange the typeface so each letterform is equal in weight apart from the first A and B letterform, which should hold the hierarchy. Add supporting text using the Type Tool if necessary.

5 Hyperlink
Using the Selection Tool, right click/control and click the first A and B letterform to open a menu. Select Hyperlinks > New Hyperlink to open a dialog box. There is a drop-down menu with options to create a hyperlink from a URL, file, email, page, text anchor, or shared destination. For this assignment create a hyperlink from a URL, copying the website you want to link the typeface to in the destination box. If you have your own website, link it here; otherwise, enter the web page of a graphic designer that you admire.

6 Export
When you are happy with your final design and your hyperlink is in place, select File > Export. Name your file in the top of the dialog box and select Adobe (Interactive) from the format drop-down. The Export PDF dialog box gives you a

CHAPTER 5: ASSIGNMENTS CONTINUED

multitude of options. Look through and make amends where you feel appropriate. Make sure to export your document as pages so the poster stands alone. Reopen your PDF once exported to check the layout and that the hyperlink works.

● Print

In this assignment, you'll be creating a double-page spread for print, using the content from the previous Photoshop assignment (see page 120).

1 File management
To set up a file management system (see Interactive: Step 1, page 121), create a folder called Double Page Spread. Within this folder, save the InDesign file and create subfolders for text and images.

2 Set up
Open InDesign and select File > New > Document (command+n). On the top tab select Print and select the 8½in width by 11¾in height (A4) option from the blank document presets. Ensure the Portrait option has been selected using the icon and tick Facing Pages, which allows you to design spreads for a publication rather than a single page. Enter 4 into the Pages box. If you select More Options you will see there is space to enter values for Bleed. This allows the printers to control elements that run flush to the page; the standard tends to be 3–5mm, but always check with your printer first. Enter a value. You can also adjust Columns and Margins here if you wish, although there is another option once you're inside the program. Click OK/Create.

3 Layout
Follow the instructions for Interactive: Step 3, page 121.

4 Master pages
Once inside the program and looking at the blank document, it is time to start thinking about setting up a framework. If you select Pages from the right-hand workspace, you will see the Master at the top. If you cannot see Pages, go to Window > Workspace > Essentials—you may need to "reset" Essentials if you're using a public computer. Anything edited or added to a Master page or spread will be implemented throughout the whole document. Double-click both pages on the spread to begin. Any amends you make should have both spreads selected to apply them to both pages.

5 Add text
Now you have a framework set up, start to lay out a 250-word paragraph describing how the David Hockney joiner projects have inspired your imagery across a spread. In the toolbar, select the Type Tool and draw a text box to fit one of your columns. You can type directly into InDesign or import your text by using File > Place and locating the Word document. Your text will appear in the box, but it may not all fit. If there is more text, you'll see a small red plus symbol (+) in the lower right corner of the box. With the Selection Tool, click on the symbol and draw another text box on your page. The text will flow from the first box to the other, and will indicate the connection with a thin blue line that connects each box.

You can now edit your type for size, font, and location—for more options select Window > Workspace > Typography. Change it at least once, just to see the differences in the type flow and word count per line. Add a headline and subheads if you need them. Give the text a title and typeset the heads in a way that complements the body copy you originally wrote. Think about how these four elements work together. Have you left negative space, and have you used both pages in an inventive way that complements each other?

6 Add images
To insert your photomontage image or individual images, select File > Place and draw to grids. Alternatively, create a shape and, while it is highlighted, select File > Place and the image will fill the shape. Use Control + Click > Fitting or use the Direct Selection Tool to experiment with how the image occupies this shape. If you need to alter the colors in your photo or make any edits, go back into Photoshop and change it; as long as you save the file in the same place with the same name it will update automatically. If in doubt, replace the image.

7 Personalization
Now that you are getting to grips with the fundamentals, experiment with the color of the document using various tools. Add a title page and a back cover. Could you add more pictures? Or do something inventive with the typography?
It is always difficult to design on the computer, so take a step back into your sketchbook.

8 Export
When you are happy with your final design, select File > Export. Name your file in the top of the dialog box and select Adobe (Print) from the format drop-down. The Export PDF dialog box gives you a multitude of options. Have a look through these and make amends where you feel appropriate. Make sure to export your document as spreads so the pages sit alongside each other. Reopen your PDF once exported to check layout.

ANIMATE/AFTER EFFECTS

There are endless tutorials available online that will help you navigate your way around the most up-to-date version of Adobe Animate and After Effects. The Adobe site itself has the most comprehensive at https://helpx.adobe.com/uk/animate/tutorials.html and https://helpx.adobe.com/uk/after-effects/tutorials.html. Use these tutorials to build confidence and learn the correct terminology. When you are ready, complete the task below. Remember, you can always return to the tutorials or search for anything you specifically want more practice with.

● Animate text layer with After Effects animation presets

Set by Zac Peric
In this assignment you will create a six-second typographical animation using the After Effects animation presets feature.

1 Select Composition Menu > New Composition and, from the Presets drop-down menu, select HDV/HDTV 1080, 29.97. Change the time of the animation by editing the duration to 0;00;06;00 (six seconds)—see image1, opposite.

2 Use the Type Tool (see image 2) and in the main Composition 1 (Comp 1) type the words: "This is my text." Position your text to the title safe option by finding Title/Action Safe at the bottom of the main composition window (see image 3). Position your text to the bottom of the Title/Action Safe line.

3 Find the Effects & Presets Menu (see image 4), then collapse Animation Presets Menu > locate Text folder > Animate In > Typewriter preset. Drag and drop Typewriter to your composition. Note that when you add typewriter preset, your text will disappear in your main comp.

4 Test the animation, making sure that you are at the beginning of the timeline (see image 5). Press the spacebar to play the animation. Your written text should fully appear in two seconds and 15 frames.

5 To manipulate this animation, click the disclosure triangle next to the text layer to reveal the animation properties of that layer (see image 6). You will see an additional property called Animator 1, which has the Range Selector 1 animation property (see image 7).

6 In the next step you will use already added keyframes (diamond shapes in your timeline) to manipulate the speed of the animation. Shorter distances between keyframes means faster animation; longer distances means slower animation. Move the last keyframe to four seconds (moving it to the right of the timeline). Press the spacebar to play the slower animation. Moving the last keyframe to the left of your timeline (to the one-second mark) will make this animation faster.

7 Go back to the Effects & Presets Menu and locate the folder called Animate Out, situated in the Text folder of the Animation Presets. Click on the disclosure triangle to collapse that menu. Find the preset called Fade Out Slow. Before you drop it onto your text layer, move your timeline (blue tooltip) to the four-second mark. Drag and drop this preset to the text layer (see image 8). Press the spacebar to test the animation, which will start to fade out at the four-second mark.

8 Go to File > Export > Export to Render Queue. You will be presented with a new Render Queue window with three options highlighted—Render Settings: Best Settings; Output Module: Lossless; and Output To: Not Yet Specified. Click on Not Yet Specified, which will open a new finder window. The file will be called Comp1.mov. Save the animation to the preferred location. When the Save button is pressed the window will disappear.

9 Click on the Render button in your Render Queue window. After the render is complete the movie will appear wherever it was saved to, as in the previous step. Play your final render to test the animation in a movie player (such as QuickTime).

⊕ Further reading

Derek Brazell and Jo Davies, *Becoming a Successful Illustrator*, Bloomsbury, 2017

Russell Chun, *Adobe Animate CC Classroom in a Book*, Adobe, 2018

Martin Evening, *Adobe Photoshop CC for Photographers*, Routledge, 2018

Andrew Faulkner and Conrad Chavez, *Adobe Photoshop CC Classroom in a Book*, Adobe, 2018

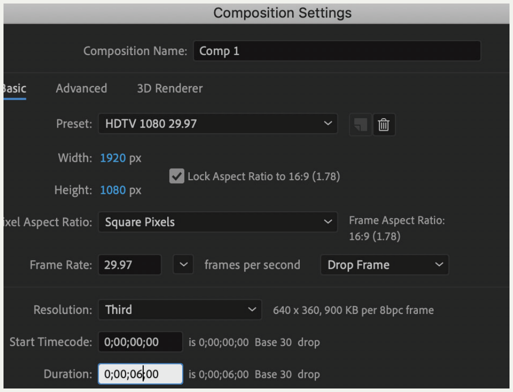
Nigel French, *InDesign Type: Professional Typography with Adobe InDesign*, Adobe, 2018

Lisa Fridsma and Brie Gyncild, *Adobe After Effects CC Classroom in a Book*, Adobe, 2018 Kelly

Kordes Anton and Tina DeJarld, *Adobe InDesign CC Classroom in a Book*, Adobe, 2018

Austin Shaw, *Design for Motion: Fundamentals and Techniques of Motion Design*, Routledge, 2019

Brian Wood, *Adobe Illustrator CC Classroom in a Book*, Adobe, 2019


Composition Settings

Composition Name: Comp 1

asic Advanced 3D Renderer

Preset: HDTV 1080 29.97

Width: 1920 px

☑ Lock Aspect Ratio to 16:9 (1.78)

Height: 1080 px

xel Aspect Ratio: Square Pixels

Frame Aspect Ratio: 16:9 (1.78)

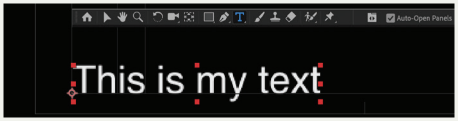
Frame Rate: 29.97 frames per second Drop Frame

Resolution: Third 640 x 360, 900 KB per 8bpc frame

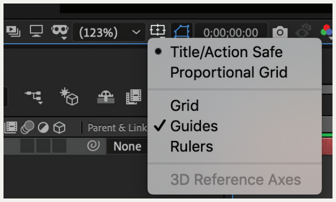
Start Timecode: 0;00;00;00 is 0;00;00;00 Base 30 drop

Duration: 0;00;06;00 is 0;00;06;00 Base 30 drop

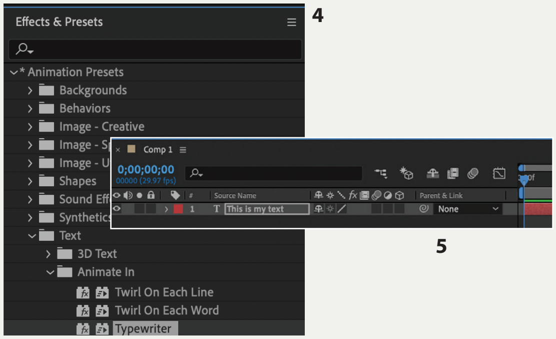
1


Auto-Open Panels
This is my text

2

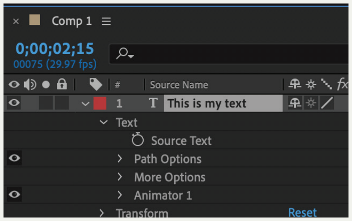

(123%)
0;00;00;00
Title/Action Safe
Proportional Grid
Grid
✓ Guides
Rulers
3D Reference Axes
Parent & Link
None

3

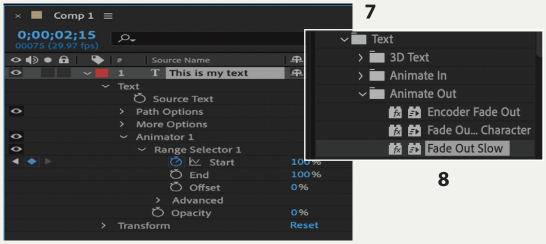

Effects & Presets
* Animation Presets
Backgrounds
Behaviors
Image - Creative
Image - S
Image - U
Shapes
Sound Eff
Synthetics
Text
3D Text
Animate In
Twirl On Each Line
Twirl On Each Word
Typewriter
Comp 1
0;00;00;00
00000 (29.97 fps)
Source Name
This is my text
Parent & Link
None

4

5


Comp 1
0;00;02;15
00075 (29.97 fps)
Source Name
1
This is my text
Text
Source Text
Path Options
More Options
Animator 1
Transform
Reset

6


Comp 1
0;00;02;15
00075 (29.97 fps)
Source Name
1
This is my text
Text
Source Text
Path Options
More Options
Animator 1
Range Selector 1
Start
100%
End
100%
Offset
0%
Advanced
Opacity
0%
Transform
Reset
Text
3D Text
Animate In
Animate Out
Encoder Fade Out
Fade Ou... Character
Fade Out Slow

7

8

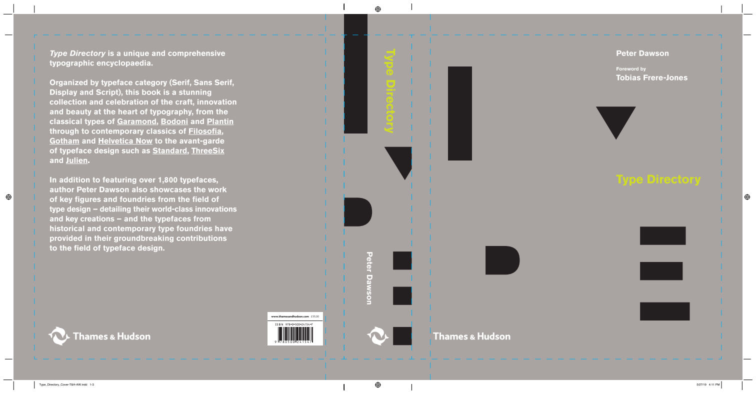
6

Print Production and Presentations

When working in the realm of printed media, print production is the last stage in the design process, but it can be the first to be overlooked by the junior designer focusing intently on “design.” It is really the final oversight of the creative decision-making process, and there are still options to be considered, even with the most detailed planning. If you have considered the project carefully and chosen colors, paper stocks, and processes to suit, this final phase becomes a shared creative experience between designer and vendor.

Familiarity with print-production techniques and issues is vital to ensure the final printed job looks and feels the way it was intended. Planning for the use of a special-effect ink, stock, or particular finish will only be achievable if you have a thorough (and up-to-date) understanding of the print-production process and a good relationship with your printer. Make it a habit to make a plan or enlist your production representative early in the process. Whoever takes on the task can provide dummy booklets on various stock samples, help to adjust packaging templates, solve bindery and fastening challenges, and provide ink-on-paper samples (ink draw-downs) so you can see how a Pantone ink color might behave on colored stock.

Proofing Print your PDF files and check them for typos, scale, and color fidelity, and assemble them to a finished artifact to avoid mistakes. This book cover, for example, should be printed to scale and wrapped around a book of the exact dimensions to assess the impact of the design over three dimensions.



Type Directory is a unique and comprehensive typographic encyclopaedia.

Organized by typeface category (Serif, Sans Serif, Display and Script), this book is a stunning collection and celebration of the craft, innovation and beauty at the heart of typography, from the classical types of Garamond, Bodoni and Plantin through to contemporary classics of Filosofia, Gotham and Helvetica Now to the avant-garde of typeface design such as Standard, ThreeSix and Julien.

In addition to featuring over 1,800 typefaces, author Peter Dawson also showcases the work of key figures and foundries from the field of type design – detailing their world-class innovations and key creations – and the typefaces from historical and contemporary type foundries have provided in their groundbreaking contributions to the field of typeface design.

PART 2 | PRACTICE

CHAPTER 6 | PRINT PRODUCTION AND PRESENTATIONS

MODULE 1 | **PREPARING FILES FOR PRINT**

Keeping your digital work habits pristine will restrict to an absolute minimum the need to tidy up files just before sending them. By this stage your bleeds should be set, your colors checked against samples and swatches, all photography should have been purchased/prepared, page items should be aligned, ragging adjusted, and the spell check complete. Creating a positive workflow, from design stage to finished product, will help ensure a successful outcome every time. A true measure of a designer is not only apparent in your conceptual design and typographic skills, but also in your handling of the process from start to finish, including preparing and sending out files to service bureaus and print vendors.

After a final proof is signed off by the client, many issues often remain before work can be printed. Remind yourself that because every piece of design work is unique, it creates a unique set of problems: this stage is your last chance to check your work before handing it over to a printer.

PDF advantages

- Highly compressed files can be generated—with optimized imagery and fonts embedded—to create a very close copy to the original working document. This condensed and mobile format can be easily emailed *en masse* to clients and co-workers for feedback, with edits and mistakes more easily caught during the production process.
- To print, the recipient needs only the free Adobe Acrobat Reader download. Many systems have this pre-installed, but it is always best to get the latest version.
- Newspaper and magazine publishers often receive ads as high-resolution PDFs only, with properly embedded fonts and images at the correct resolution and profile. Advanced tools in Adobe Acrobat Professional, such as Preflight, optimizer, and fix-ups, can be key to achieving a successful run.
- Email and Internet creators can link files to web pages for online viewing or attach files to emails.

Note: Keep in mind that you cannot easily edit a PDF document. Any changes that might be needed after a PDF leaves your computer will require the original document for editing. That means edits can only be done by the designer, in the original format, unless you decide to provide the native file to your vendor, but be aware of image and font licensing when you do this.

PDF options

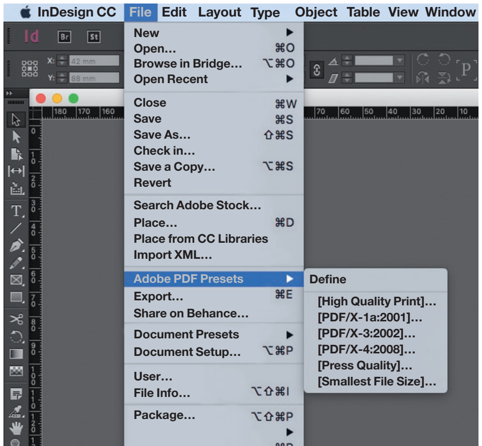
When Preflighting, you can bring your PDF to PDF/X and PDF/A standards. These file types, defined by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO), adhere to standards that facilitate reliable PDF transmission. They apply the wills and will-nots of a file. Using a PDF-X1, a file generated from Acrobat Preflight (a recognizable preset option in the Pre-Flight menu), is considered the best way to ensure that your file is correct and secure, and is an option in InDesign.

- Be meticulous. It is your responsibility to check everything from tint specifications and image color spaces to tidying up unused colors in your palette menu, style sheets, unintentional indents on justified edges, extra spaces, and missing fonts. Programs such as InDesign have spell check, an option to show hidden characters (such as spaces and paragraph breaks) and Preflight capabilities.
- Have a conversation with your printer about printers' marks, crop marks, bleeds, single pages, and other export options.
- Printers are often sent postscript or PDF files—locked documents including all fonts and images—thereby reducing the potential for error. PDFs play an important role these days in near-instant proofing, and are the primary format used for sending files.

The role of PDFs

The Portable Document Format (PDF) has come a long way from the aim of the "paperless office," and is now a means to instantaneously review in-progress drafts and final sign-offs (or soft proofs) with clients, vendors, and colleagues. PDF has become the standard for version editing, as well as submitting ads and media to newspaper and periodical publishers; the final output for the printer is itself a high-resolution PDF.

Many programs create reliable PDFs automatically, ensuring correct color profiles and linking to final images and fonts. In creating PDFs using Acrobat, InDesign, or Illustrator, you should start the press optimization process using predefined settings. In InDesign you can go to Adobe PDF Presets > Press Quality. To customize the PDF settings, first go to File > Export and choose your format for print from the drop-down



PDF presets Select the correct PDF Preset setting for your file. Choose low-resolution, 72-dpi formats for sending files for email review, and high-resolution files for production.

GLOSSARY

AAs: Author's alterations are edits made to the content of a file by the client. Usually handled before sent to press, if the client makes edits while the job is at the printer—usually in the proofing stage—AAs can prove very costly.

Adobe Acrobat: The family of Adobe programs that create and manage PDFs.

Downsampling: A form of compression that lowers the resolution of images by eliminating unnecessary pixel data.

Embedding: A PDF removes the need for multiple requisite files by including fonts and compressed imagery in one file.

Lossy: A compression format that removes or "loses" certain areas to achieve a smaller file size, yet reopening the file causes the program to "guess" at the missing data, possibly creating a lower-quality version.

PEs: Printers' errors are mistakes and omissions found at the proofing stage by the designer or client that did not, for whatever reason, make it from the supplied file to the press. The cost of these errors is usually absorbed by the vendor as a matter of customer service.

window. When you select Save, another option window will allow you to select Compression > Do Not Downsample; then select Marks and Bleeds to set your crops, bleeds, and printer's registration marks. Always double-check the PDF in Acrobat to make sure everything is correct.

Font embedding When a font is not embedded, it is usually because it is missing from the document folder or has vendor restrictions; when opened or printed, a generic typeface might be substituted. Nothing is worse than opening a publication with your client's advertisement—a masterpiece in Gill Sans, say—and being greeted with a horror dripping in Courier. Proper embedding during your process prevents font substitution at the viewing stage, and ensures that vendors reprint the text in its intended font. Preflight tools in InDesign and Illustrator usually help you steer clear of errors before reaching PDFs, and you can always check Properties when viewing PDFs to check that fonts are embedded.

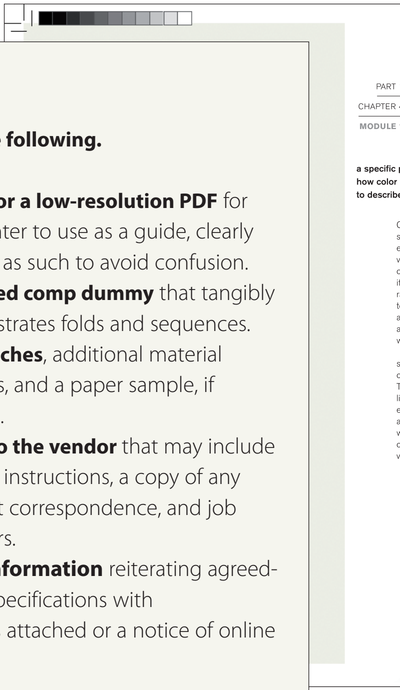
What to send

When collecting a project for output, essentially you are mirroring requisite elements that make up the design: fonts, images, and page layouts. However, you are also augmenting these with as many items as possible to help translate to your vendor what you are trying to achieve in production. You can do this by including a satisfactory comp (comprehensive) printout to be used as a guide.

Traditionally, elements such as images and fonts were strung together in desktop publishing programs such as InDesign; naturally, these included a suite of Preflight and Packaging capabilities to check and collect everything for output.

File types and compression

Different applications store and compress data in various ways. Misunderstand or misuse these formats and you are heading for trouble. For example, you might spend hours scanning-in files and creating artwork for a magazine, only to save your hard work in the wrong format. At best, this will cost you hours; at worst, the job. A working knowledge of file formats and the process of compression could go a long way in preventing this scenario.



Print checklist

To send a file electronically, be sure to include all of the following.

- **Your final approved document** (InDesign: .indd; high-res pdf, and an .idml mark-up if your printer is not using the most up-to-date software.)
- **A folder of all linked images** (.eps, .tif, .pdf), entitled either "links" or "images." You should also include original files in .psd or .ai, in case your printer needs to make an adjustment.
- **A folder of all fonts** (PostScript, TrueType, OpenType). Be wary of typography sharing licenses.
- **Printer instructions and profiles** (included in the Preflight and Packaging options).
- **Output or a low-resolution PDF** for the printer to use as a guide, clearly labeled as such to avoid confusion.
- **A detailed comp dummy** that tangibly demonstrates folds and sequences.
- **Ink swatches**, additional material samples, and a paper sample, if needed.
- **A note to the vendor** that may include specific instructions, a copy of any relevant correspondence, and job numbers.
- **Email information** reiterating agreed-upon specifications with the files attached or a notice of online upload.

Electronic files appear to travel many distances around the city or around the globe, when in fact one computer is just copying from another. During this process, corruption can occur, especially to page layout and font files. Compressing files before sending via email or FTP (File Transfer Protocol) is an effective way of preventing this.

Most files that are not native application formats can include some sort of compression to facilitate use in other programs or transmission via the Internet. The amount and type of compression, especially with imagery, video, and audio projects, can affect the quality and performance of your final file.

.ZIP compression file types reduce the number of bytes by removing the redundant areas of underlying code that make up every file. These repeated and replaceable areas are put back into the file using a program such as WinZip or Stuffit to "unzip" or "unstuff" the file back to its original format. The final,

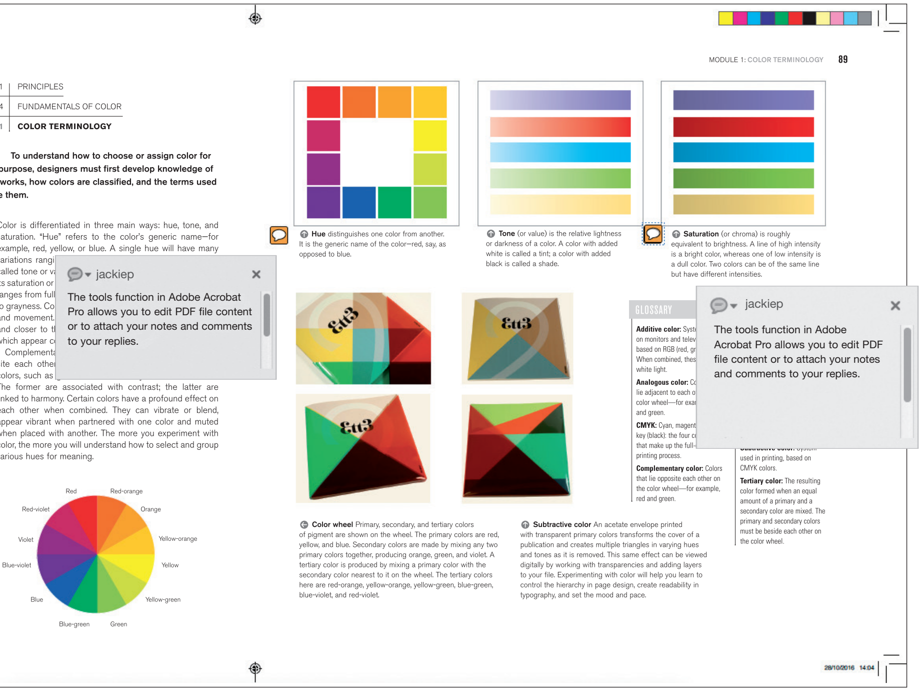
File naming

- Do not put any spaces in the name or extension; if you need to separate words, use an underscore: "my_file.jpg."
- Use lowercase, not uppercase, characters.
- Use only alpha (abc) or numeric (123) characters. Avoid characters such as @%^&*(), and use a period (.) to separate name and extension.

expanded file is identical to the original before it was compressed. Macs and PCs natively create and open ZIP files, whereas Stuffit file creation and expansion needs a separate program.

Sometimes called archives, these compression formats are in all walks of design and production because they speed up and simplify data transmission across the Internet. Used primarily to send large files within emails, many studios and companies utilize an FTP set-up on their web server to easily transfer files online.

There are many online transfer sites that enable you to send large files and avoid compression. Dropbox and Google Drive are file-sharing programs, so will update in your recipient's folder when you update them in yours. WeTransfer is a great resource for sending one-off files.



To understand how to choose or assign color for
purpose, designers must first develop knowledge of
works, how colors are classified, and the terms used
e them.

Color is differentiated in three main ways: hue, tone, and
aturation. "Hue" refers to the color's generic name—for
example, red, yellow, or blue. A single hue will have many
ariations rangi
alled tone or va
s saturation or
anges from full
o grayness. Co
nd movement.
nd closer to t
which appear c
Complementa
ite each other
olors, such as
The former are associated with contrast; the latter are
nked to harmony. Certain colors have a profound effect on
each other when combined. They can vibrate or blend,
ppear vibrant when partnered with one color and muted
when placed with another. The more you experiment with
olor, the more you will understand how to select and group
arious hues for meaning.

jackiep

The tools function in Adobe Acrobat Pro allows you to edit PDF file content or to attach your notes and comments to your replies.

Hue distinguishes one color from another. It is the generic name of the color—red, say, as opposed to blue.

Tone (or value) is the relative lightness or darkness of a color. A color with added white is called a tint; a color with added black is called a shade.

Saturation (or chroma) is roughly equivalent to brightness. A line of high intensity is a bright color, whereas one of low intensity is a dull color. Two colors can be of the same line but have different intensities.

Additive color: Syst
on monitors and telev
based on RGB (red, gr
When combined, thes
white light.

Analogous color: Co
lie adjacent to each o
color wheel—for exa
and green.

CMYK: Cyan, magent
key (black): the four c
that make up the full-
printing process.

Complementary color: Colors that lie opposite each other on the color wheel—for example, red and green.

used in printing, based on CMYK colors.

Tertiary color: The resulting color formed when an equal amount of a primary and a secondary color are mixed. The primary and secondary colors must be beside each other on the color wheel.

jackiep

The tools function in Adobe Acrobat Pro allows you to edit PDF file content or to attach your notes and comments to your replies.

Color wheel Primary, secondary, and tertiary colors of pigment are shown on the wheel. The primary colors are red, yellow, and blue. Secondary colors are made by mixing any two primary colors together, producing orange, green, and violet. A tertiary color is produced by mixing a primary color with the secondary color nearest to it on the wheel. The tertiary colors here are red-orange, yellow-orange, yellow-green, blue-green, blue-violet, and red-violet.

Subtractive color An acetate envelope printed with transparent primary colors transforms the cover of a publication and creates multiple triangles in varying hues and tones as it is removed. This same effect can be viewed digitally by working with transparencies and adding layers to your file. Experimenting with color will help you learn to control the hierarchy in page design, create readability in typography, and set the mood and pace.

PDF Tools PDFs are commonly sent as email attachments for approval and opinion during the design process. The Tools function in Adobe Acrobat Pro allows you to edit PDF file content or to attach your notes and comments to your replies.

Key graphic file formats

PSD and **AI** are the file formats for Adobe Photoshop and Adobe Illustrator used for image creation.

Compatible with: Photoshop, Illustrator, and InDesign with minor restrictions.

Tip: Make sure to always save an unflattened master version of your Photoshop files to fall back on, and save Illustrator files with unoutlined text.

EPS used to be the most widely used file format in artwork preparation for print. It can contain either vector or bitmap information and is best used when dealing with logos and illustrations as well as vinyl printing and one- and two-color jobs.

Compatible with: Illustrator for edits and InDesign for layout.

Tip: EPSes themselves can contain font data that may need to be backed up with a font file at the collection stage, or font outlines can be created.

TIFF creates one of the largest files because it saves an alpha channel in the file, which allows for transparency at the art's edge, not at the pasteboard's edge. Best when dealing with monotone, grayscale, or watermarks for color toning, TIFF is the highest-quality image format for full-color photography as well.

Compatible with: Photoshop for editing and InDesign for layout.

Tip: Make sure to check with your printer as to whether they accept files with LZW compression, which is an option while saving.

JPEG is a format that uses lossy compression—meaning that a certain amount of the image quality is lost during the saving process. With a complex photographic image this would usually remain unnoticed (unless the image is over-compressed).

Compatible with: Photoshop for editing and InDesign for layout.

Tip: Nowadays, most digital cameras save as large JPEGs, which can be resaved as high-quality images for print due to advances in image resampling and printing. For large, high-quality reproduction, you should be using .tif files.

WOOLWORTHS ESSENTIALS
LEMON CRUMBLES
RIPEN AT HOME PLUMS
FRESHLY FROZEN MIXED DICED VEGETABLES
MIXED DICED VEGETABLES
BATHROOM CLEANER
OXYGENATED AUTOMATIC WASHING POWDER
Active oxygen technology for exceptional stain removal
1 kg

Presentation Packaging prototypes for retail, food, and beverages should represent how they will look and function at the point of purchase. There are software packages that will render images onto a digital object, but your client may want to simulate the consumer experience to help them decide.

PART 2 | PRACTICE

CHAPTER 6 | PRINT PRODUCTION AND PRESENTATIONS

MODULE 2 | **CREATING A CONVINCING PRESENTATION**

It is critical that your client approve the final version of the electronic file, usually a PDF document, but presenting the idea clearly at the concept approval stage can influence the client's choice on which concept to produce. A comp, or comprehensive, is the designer's finished concept shown in the closest possible approximation to the produced product as is possible. Good craft skills are essential and, although a bad concept can't be saved by good craft, a great concept can sometimes suffer if it is poorly crafted.

Color

Electronic output from a high-quality desktop printer can come very close to matching the four-color process intended in production. Matching Pantone colors can be trickier. Colors on screen can be misleading, and will only come close if your monitor is perfectly calibrated. A Pantone number encoded in your document will ensure the color ink that prints, but to show that exact color to your client in comp form you may need to depend on a custom blend that adjusts the color for comping only. Make a separate file named "Comp" and adjust your colors there. That way you won't send the wrong document to the supplier. Alternatively, although expensive, it is worth investing in a Pantone swatch book so you can show the client the exact colors without having to fork out for Pantone scatter proofs.

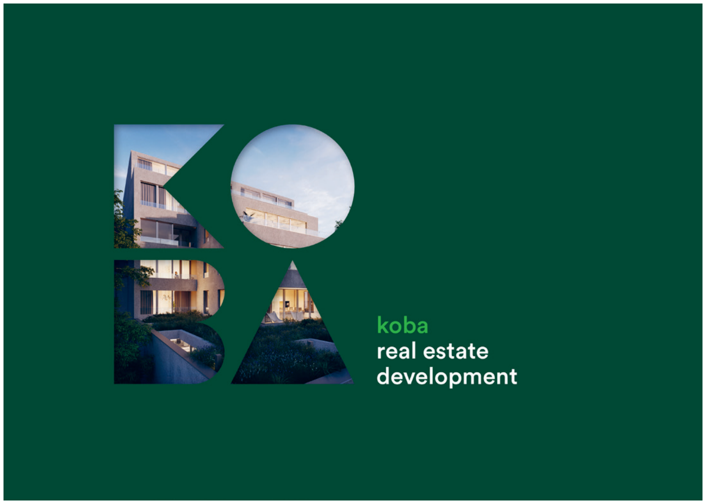
Format

With your color perfected, you need to assemble the document into whatever form the product will take, such as booklet, poster, or package design. Output papers come in various weights, and some color printers will accept the stock you intend to use in production. If you can, print on stock samples, which will give you and your client the best representation of the final product and will show you how duotones and tritones will be affected by the stock color.

Unfortunately, it's nearly impossible to register output on both sides of the paper, so you'll need to use a dry mastic sheet, like 3M mounting material, to glue—or dry mount—the sides together. Always leave some bleed and printers' registration marks, and trim your pages after you have assembled them. Cut and score the paper for folding after the assembly is completed in a clean, dry studio space.

Craft

Some techniques can't be imitated digitally and need to be done by hand. Die cutting will require careful handwork with a thin utility knife, and practicing your cutting and comping skills will lead to cleaner presentations. Metallic stamps will need to be hand cut and applied, also. In some cases, a poster, or board, of your intended materials and colors can help in the presentation, but there's no substitute for a clean comp.



Design formats When presenting to a client, it is important to create visuals that can help lead your conversation. Be sure to make the presentation available to your audience once finished, and an added bonus would be to bring professional mock-ups so they can see your design skills on- and off-screen.

Presentation mock-ups If you are presenting or pitching a physical design, such as packaging, pay particular attention to the quality of the finish. Simulate the print process you plan to use and consider the color and paper stock throughout all of your designed elements. Assemble the product, even if you are showing it on-screen.

COOKING DIRECTIONS
SHOYU RAMEN
SPICE IT UP

SEE ALSO: PRINTED COLOR, P132

THE RAMEN BOX

THE LIBRARY

Craft is art Die cutting, scoring, and folding by hand take practice and patience. Laser cutters have simplified the process, but if you don't have access to one you'll need great craft skills. Be true to the product line and be sure to carefully create each element in the design system.

PART 2 | PRACTICE

CHAPTER 6 | PRINT PRODUCTION AND PRESENTATIONS

MODULE 3 | PAPER STOCKS AND FINISHING

Paper is absolutely part of the picture, and it can enhance or diminish the vibrancy of your imagery. Paper stock is manufactured in a large assortment of weights, colors, textures, and finishes, and selecting the correct one can really add to the success of the finished product. Sampling is the ideal way to determine whether or not a particular stock will work for you. You should also be aware of the common terms used to describe paper, including the various attributes and how they apply to a particular job.

Chocolates
CAREGIVER
THE CREATOR
the Rebel
HERO
THE MAGICIAN
THE WISEMAN
THE Innocent
THE EVERYMAN
Seducer
ENTERTAINER
THE Adventurer
KING
LIMITED EDITION
Chocolates
WITH ATTITUDE
LIFE IS LIKE A BOX OF CHOCOLATES

Add flavor Deeply textured cover stock in cocoa brown is a tantalizing entrée to the individually packaged chocolates on the inside of this package design. Beautiful typography and delicate matte colors partner to establish the brand as a luxury item.

Paper is produced from pressed pulped wood, cotton, or recycled paper. Seven standard attributes describe different characteristics.

- Weight describes the density of the fibers that make up the sheet, and is measured in pounds (lb) or grams per square meter (gsm or g/m2). Letter weights vary from 24 lb or gsm to 140 lb cover weight. Specialty stocks can be even heavier.
- Thickness is measured in caliper (inches) or millimeters; however, greater thickness does not mean better quality.
- Texture depends on the size or quality of wood fibers and the method of construction. Tightly pressed, fine fibers result in a smoother paper normally used for writing or printing; less pressed, bigger fibers form board and fibrous card.
- Strength (tension and resilience) is affected by texture, density, weight, and thickness; for example, tissue paper and paperboard are both used for packaging, but in different contexts.
- Opacity depends on density and thickness, and refers to how much text or image on the overleaf page can be masked. Vellum paper is highly translucent and is made by immersing good-quality paper in acid, which alters the fibers.
- Brightness depends on how much the paper has been bleached before it is pressed. Brighter stock reflects more light and results in a fresher look to a page. Environmental concerns have resulted in a return to unbleached paper in recent years.
- Color is produced by dyeing the fiber pulp before it is pressed. Colored stocks can be more expensive than white stock.

Matte, satin, and gloss surfaces

Different paper qualities affect the intensity of printed ink—there is a stark difference between printed matte and gloss surfaces. When ink adheres to matte paper, it is absorbed and has no shine. Matte finish is used for printed-word texts such as newspapers and books. It is usually easy to read, but does have a tendency to make images and colors duller. However, ink printed onto gloss paper stays on the surface, so more light hits the paper below and bounces off, giving a deeper, more intense color. This quality is used for book covers, magazines, brochures, and packaging. Satin paper (or dull coat) comes somewhere between the two, giving a slightly less intense color than gloss but without the shiny surface.

Paper samples

Printers and paper suppliers have a range of paper samples to distribute to existing and potential clients. Each booklet has samples of the available colors, weights, and surface finishes on each sheet. The big suppliers, such as GF Smith and Fedrigoni, make beautifully designed publications that are worth getting your hands on. Alternatively, some design magazines, such as *Eye Magazine*, advertise paper stocks inside their issues.

Going green

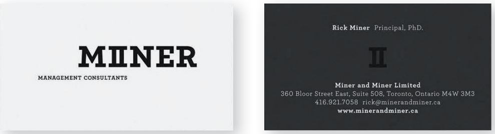
Concerns about sustainability mean that many designers now use recycled papers, or sheets made from cotton, not wood pulp. This is not the only concern for sustainable design; there are also environmental issues based around paper bleaching and certain inks, all of which are important considerations when designing.

Finishes and coatings

Finishes and coatings are added either to protect printed ink, or in patches to emphasize an area of ink.

- Varnishes are coatings applied "on press," either with other inks or as a separate run, and can be matte, satin, or gloss, and tinted with added pigment.
- UV coatings are spread on as a liquid, then hardened with ultraviolet light. They can be matte or gloss, and applied accurately in spot form or as complete coverage.
- Aqueous coatings—matte, satin, and gloss—are relatively expensive and are laid at the end of a run. As such they cannot be controlled to be put in specific areas, only as a complete coat.
- Laminates are layers of sheet plastic or clear liquids that bind into the paper to protect it.
- Paper can also be embossed and debossed to emphasize lettering or an image, and it can be stamped with metallic foil or glossy, flat, or shiny color, a beautiful effect on matte paper. It can also have a painted edge, which is a particularly beautiful addition to publication design. It can also be laser cut or die cut to expose pages underneath. These are beautiful but expensive techniques, so be sure your budget allows for the technique you choose.

MIINER
MANAGEMENT CONSULTANTS


MIINER
MANAGEMENT CONSULTANTS
Rick Miner Principal, PhD.
II
Miner and Miner Limited
360 Bloor Street East, Suite 508, Toronto, Ontario M4W 3M3
416.921.7058 rick@minerandminer.ca
www.minerandminer.ca

HANDMADE
SINGLE

Texture and light Die cuts add surprising pops of color and use light and shadow to add detail to an extended system. Consult your print vendor or paper merchant to choose the right stock for your project.

Surface texture Business cards are personal items. Adding a tactile element, such as a raised embossing, adds memorability and delicate light and shadow to the surface of the design.

Impression Add texture and tactility to your composition by embossing or debossing the surface of your stock. Uncoated, textured stocks work well, with or without ink coverage.

GLOSSARY

Coated: A hard, waxy surface, either gloss or matte, and not porous (ink sits on the surface).

Coated one side: A paper that is coated on one side and matte on the other.

Gloss: A shiny form of paper, used for magazines, books, and so on.

Gsm: Grams per square meter, or g/m2.

Laid: A paper that has lines on its surface from its means of production. Often used for stationery.

Linen: Similar to laid, but finer lined.

Matte: A dull, non-shiny quality of paper, used for newspapers, for example.

Ream: Standard quantity of paper; 500 sheets.

Satin: A form of paper between matte and gloss.

Stock: A generic form or type of paper, such as tracing paper or matte coated.

Varnish: A liquid sprayed or spread onto paper to give it a hard-wearing surface so that printed ink stays intact.

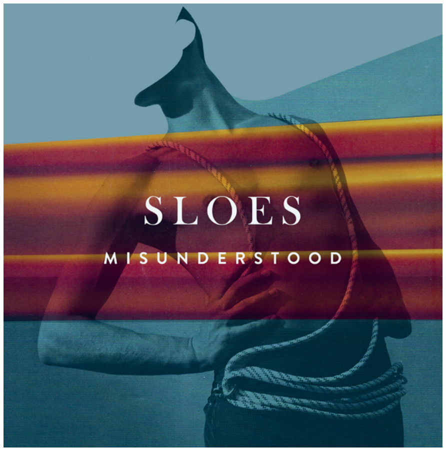
Wove/Smooth: A smooth, uncoated paper that is very porous (ink sits under the surface).

Anh
be
Date
Time
Right
eft
Yo
Us
N
W
E
S
3

MODULE 4 | PRINTED COLOR

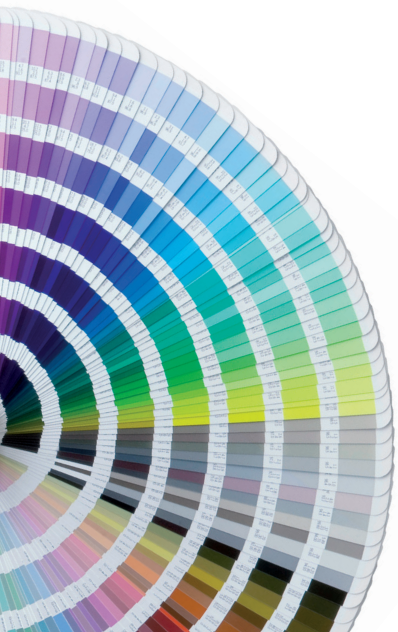
Various factors determine how many colors you use to produce a job. Aspects such as esthetics, budget, and branding come into play when you make your selections, and you want to be sure the colors you choose are the ones that appear accurately on the finished product.

PANTONE
IDGE®



Pantone Color Bridge This not only shows you what a particular solid PMS color will look like, but also its full-color printed counterpart, while giving the CMYK, RGB, and hexidecimal formulas for typing it in.

PMS book Keep one of these books on hand when designing, attending client meetings, and going on press check as a guide to help choose and validate color.



Any printed image we see is an illusion of light, paper, and patterns of ink that rely on the visual cortex "blending" the information our retinas perceive into a logical image. Many different kinds of printing types have been created in order to mass-produce this "illusion" over the decades.

Single-color (monotone or monochome) printing can be used when there are budget constraints or when there is a particular color that must be used. For instance, many companies specify a particular Pantone ink for consistency across all their printed work to ensure brand recognition.

Two- and three-color printing allows for interesting mixtures of Pantones: overprinting two translucent inks can generate a third color, and printing black-and-white images in two colors (duotone) and three colors (tritone) can enhance their effect.

Four-color process printing uses cyan (C), magenta (M), yellow (Y), and black (K) inks specified in percentage tints to create a huge variety of other colors. This more popular method is used for reproducing full-color imagery, photographs, or flat colors.

PMS

The Pantone Matching System consists of color reference manuals, or books, used for selection and input, either by PMS number or by precise CMYK formulas. Printers have these books and the corresponding matching inks.

Pantone colors, or spot colors, have different ink options, since color reacts differently with different printing processes and surfaces. To help approximate this, PMS swatch books come in many versions, made for different papers such as coated and matte, and in solid or process colors.

Workspace, monitor, and calibration

The key to consistent color is to work in a well-lit room with a properly calibrated monitor. Using color conventions such as PMS and composing colors using CMYK breaks helps you achieve correct color from screen to press. When in doubt, do it by the numbers.

With color you can mix cyan, magenta, yellow, and black in any image-making program or by selecting colors from an image. This approach mimics the pioneer press person's experimentation with inks that forged the path for printing today. However, PMS is a more reliable way to ensure you are going to get the color you choose.

Calibrating your monitor The best place to begin a successful color workflow is with the monitor. Correct calibration and profile usage ensure that what you see on screen is what turns out in print. Reliable translation of material from scanner or camera to monitor and printer means proper communication from one device to the next. Many modern monitors come with presets and programs to help you get basic values, but in recent years colorimeters have become readily available to ensure every color point and setting is consistently and dependably adjusted to standard. Colorimeters cycle through a series of modes to read the current state of display and adjust the video card correctly, creating a new profile, called an ICC profile, for the monitor to create color from.

Tints and opacities Screen color doesn't always translate exactly in print. Proofing your design on the actual stock will give the best indication of the final outcome. This example contains a number of transparency layers and halftones, and the only way to gauge the success of such a composition is to proof it. Liaise with your printer for more information about costing a printed proof into your budget.

Global standard
GRACOL is currently the standard color profile, but ask your service bureau which profile they prefer you to work with—they may even have created their own.

Every device has its own set of ICC profiles. Set up by the International Color Consortium, these standards facilitate the translation of color information of an image from one device to the next. When a screen, scanner, or camera is recalibrated, each is given a new profile and the image produced picks up that profile. Images opened in Photoshop can be reviewed; if a profile setting is different or missing, then the working profile of the monitor is used.

PMS and Pantone book paper choices

PMS

- **Solid** Over 1,000 PMS spot colors are contained in either the fan guide or the chip book, with specialty versions for metallic colors, pastels, neons, and tints.
- **Process** Over 3,000 Pantone Process Colors with their CMYK percentages are contained in these books.
- **Color Bridge** Formerly known as the Solid to Process Guide, this book provides a larger color swatch and tint comparison showing how solid colors will look in CMYK, and gives print and web formulas.

Pantone

- **Coated** This book contains PMS numbers followed by a "C," indicating that a color can only be matched by printing on a coated (glossy) surface.
- **Uncoated** This book contains PMS numbers followed by a "U," indicating an uncoated (matte) surface.

GLOSSARY

DPI: Dots per inch is a measurement of printer resolution revealing how many colored dots are available to create a square inch of an image. The higher the DPI, the more refined the text or image will appear.

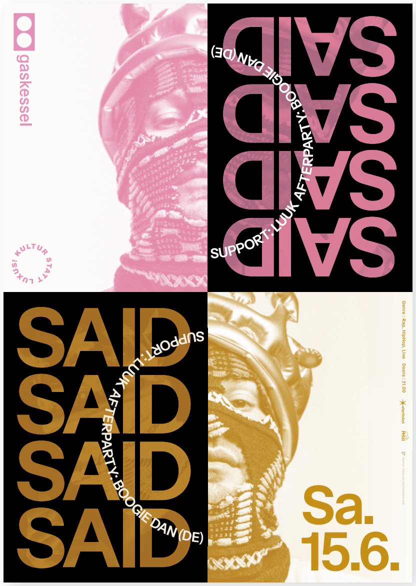
LPI: When printing halftones, such as in one-color newspapers and reproductions, the lines per inch is the number of lines that compose the resolution of a halftone screen.

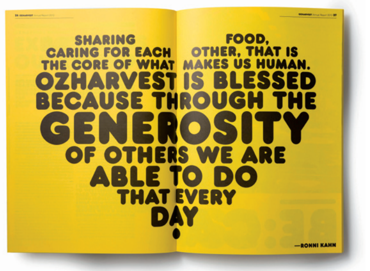
PPI: Pixels per inch or pixel density is interchangeable with DPI, but usually refers to the resolution of an unprinted image displayed on screen or captured by a scanner or digital camera.

SEE ALSO: FUNDAMENTALS OF COLOR, P88

RGB to CMYK
Printers often insist that you give final image files converted to a CMYK format. Generally, it's best to keep images in RGB format until you are ready to send the file to the printer, since image-manipulation programs such as Adobe Photoshop work best with RGB files for correction and effects. Printers recommend the Image > Mode > CMYK function to change an image from RGB to CMYK. They may also prefer to do their own pre-press production check to ensure that all electronic files are prepared to their satisfaction.

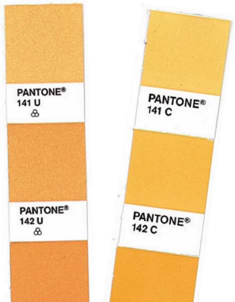
Limited color These examples of publication spreads use limited palettes of two or three colors. Stripping the information back in this manner allows the content to provide most of the hierarchy, as well as creating a simple yet beautiful, no-fuss composition.


gaskessel
SAID
SAID
SAID
SAID
SUPPORT: LUUK AFTERPARTY: BOOGIE DAN (DE)
KULTUR STATT LUXUS!
SAID
SAID
SAID
SAID
SUPPORT: LUUK AFTERPARTY: BOOGIE DAN (DE)
Sa.
15.6.


SHARING
FOOD,
CARING FOR EACH
OTHER, THAT IS
THE CORE OF WHAT
MAKES US HUMAN.
OZHARVEST IS BLESSED
BECAUSE THROUGH THE
GENEROSITY
OF OTHERS WE ARE
ABLE TO DO
THAT EVERY
DAY
—BONNI KAHN

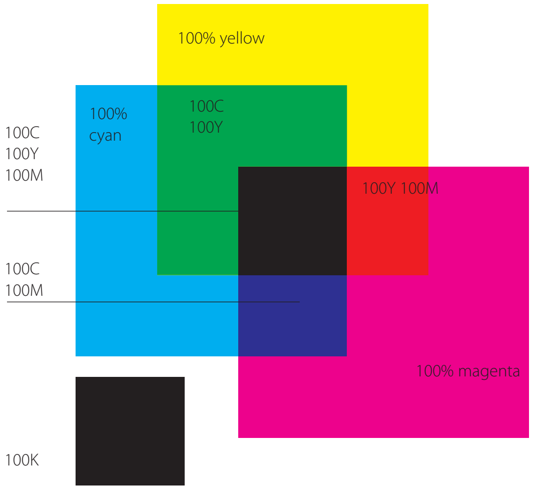
CEO COOKOFF
COOK

Surface and ink Coated paper allows the ink to sit on the paper surface so the shine of the stock is evident. On uncoated stock, the ink sinks into the paper fibers and dries to a matte finish. PMS coated and uncoated swatch books show you the differences on each PMS numbered ink.


PANTONE® 141 U
PANTONE® 142 U
PANTONE® 141 C
PANTONE® 142 C

PART 2 | PRACTICE
CHAPTER 6 | PRINT PRODUCTION AND PRESENTATIONS
MODULE 5 | PRINT MEDIA

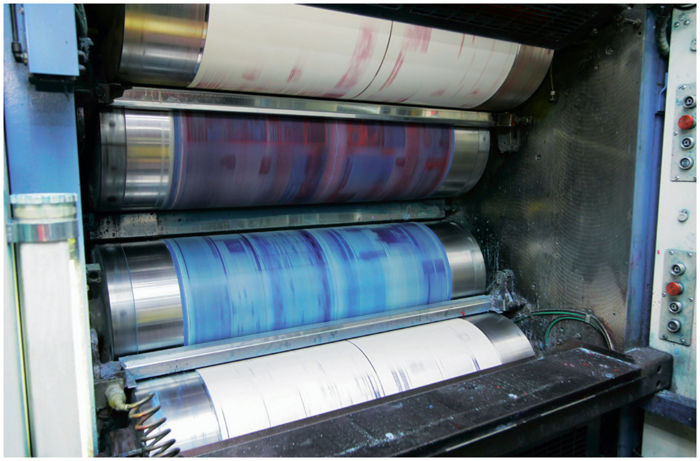
Despite the fact that digital printing is considered much easier, traditional printing methods continue to thrive, partly because of the textures, visuals, and detail created by the process, which cannot be replicated in digital, no matter how hard we try. There is also the joy of the craftsmanship itself to consider: nothing is more rewarding than printing through traditional means.



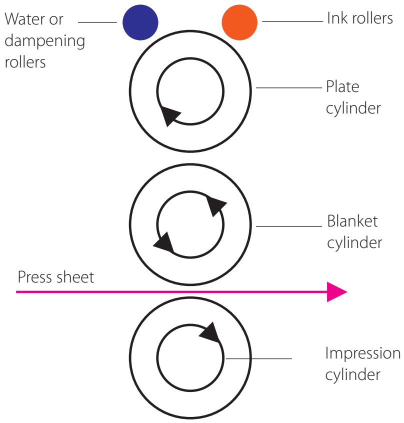
Full-color printing CMYK is the most popular form of print used daily in book and magazine production. Be aware that 100C 100Y 100M combined does not equate to 100K.

Color

In traditional printing techniques (that is, everything except digital printing), your digital artwork needs to be separated into the constituent colors in which it will be printed. The printing process needs to be done in layers, one color at a time, and alignment therefore plays a very important role in production. You will have two options: the first is to keep all of your colored layers separate, with no overlaps, giving you complete control of the color onto the background. The second option—which can be difficult to set up, but is perhaps more rewarding and less time-consuming if done properly—is to have overlaps of color. This process means you have fewer layers to create as you are relying on color mixes to create your image. For example, if you print two yellow



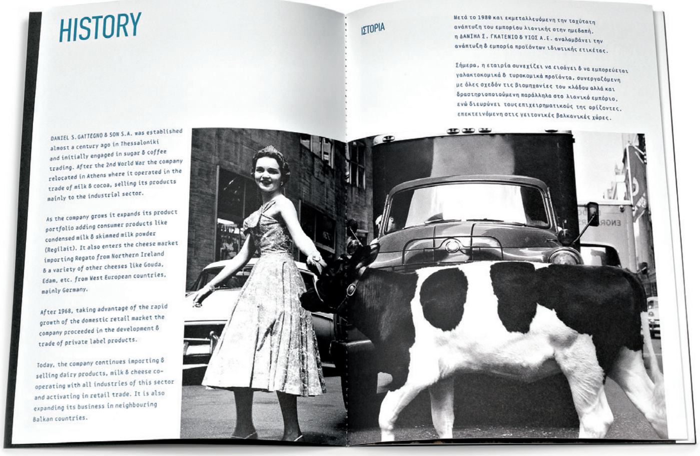
On a roll Most presses feed one sheet of paper through at a time, but larger web presses, which are used for long runs, draw paper from a roll.



The principle in action This press diagram shows an exposed plate wrapped around the rotating plate cylinder, where the image is dampened and inked before being transferred onto the blanket cylinder.

Offset advantages

- High-quality images can be achieved by providing a higher-resolution print.
- Works on a wide range of print media such as paper, fabric, plastic, wood, metal, leather, and glass.
- Cost per printed piece decreases as the quantity increases.
- Quality, cost-effectiveness, and bindery finishing are fully controllable in large-run jobs.
- Modern offset presses use computer-to-plate technology, increasing economy and quality.



HISTORY

DANIEL S. GATTEGNO & SON S.A. was established almost a century ago in Thessaloniki and initially engaged in sugar & coffee trading. After the 2nd World War the company relocated in Athens where it operated in the trade of milk & cocoa, selling its products mainly to the industrial sector.

As the company grows it expands its product portfolio adding consumer products like condensed milk & skimmed milk powder (Regilait). It also enters the cheese market importing Regato from Northern Ireland & a variety of other cheeses like Gouda, Edam, etc. from West European countries, mainly Germany.

After 1968, taking advantage of the rapid growth of the domestic retail market the company proceeded in the development & trade of private label products.

Today, the company continues importing & selling dairy products, milk & cheese co-operating with all industries of this sector and activating in retail trade. It is also expanding its business in neighbouring Balkan countries.

ΙΣΤΟΡΙΑ

Μετά το 1980 και εκμεταλλευόμενη την ταχύτατη ανάπτυξη του εμπορίου λιανικής στην ημεδαπή, η ΔΑΝΙΗΛ Σ. ΓΚΑΤΕΝΙΟ & ΥΙΟΣ Α.Ε. αναλαμβάνει την ανάπτυξη & εμπορία προϊόντων ιδιωτικής ετικέτας.

Σήμερα, η εταιρία συνεχίζει να εισάγει & να εμπορεύεται γαλακτοκομικά & τυροκομικά προϊόντα, συνεργαζόμενη με όλες σχεδόν τις βιομηχανίες του κλάδου αλλά και δραστηριοποιούμενη παράλληλα στο λιανικό εμπόριο, ενώ διευρύνει τους επιχειρηματικούς της ορίζοντες, επεκτεινόμενη στις γειτονικές βαλκανικές χώρες.

Full black Choose this process when your halftone photographic subjects have significant expanses of black and a full grayscale range to add richness to the subject. Printed body text and fine lines should be printed in as few color separations as possible to avoid registration issues. Use 100K or choose a Pantone black.

Black
Many designers and printers prefer the "mega-black" or "super-black" formula for large areas of black. This formula, at 60C, 40M, 40Y, 100K, should be used in imagery, not text, and provides a much richer interpretation over 100K alone to create black.

GLOSSARY

Flexography: Method of printing that uses rubber relief plates.

Gravure: Method of printing that uses plates with recessed cells of varying depths.

Offset lithography: The digitally produced printing plate is treated chemically, so that the image will accept ink and reject water.

Plates: Separate plates enable the printing of separate colors.

Relief: A printing process that uses a raised surface, such as letterpress.

Screen printing: Method of printing that uses stencils.

circles, followed by a layer of two blue circles, overlapping one yellow circle with one blue circle only, you should be left with a yellow, green, and blue circle. Three colors, with two layers. Interestingly, the Adobe program Photoshop is designed to use layers, mimicking these traditional print processes.

Offset lithography

Lithography is the process of printing from a flat surface, which has been treated so as to repel the ink except where it is required for printing. To separate your colored layers in traditional lithography, the printer will make plates, a separate one for each of the four-process ink colors, or an individual plate for each Pantone, or spot color. Most large presses have room for at least six inks and can accommodate varnish as part of the process. Requesting too many spot colors may cause the job to run through the press more than once, and can strongly affect printing costs.

This printing process is based on the principle that water and oil do not mix. The digitally produced printing plate is treated chemically so that the image will accept ink and reject water. The simplified diagram (left) shows an exposed plate wrapped around the rotating plate cylinder, where the image is dampened and inked. The inked image on the plate is then transferred onto the blanket cylinder. The rubber blanket transfers the image onto the stock, which has been carried around the impression cylinder (adjusted depending on the stock used). This planographic process is rapid, and the plate is inked on each rotation.

Although considered a traditional method, this process is still widely used by commercial printers due to the higher quality of printing produced, and is most cost-effective for quantities over a few hundred—and even more so with quantities of higher volume.

Surface printing There are many ways to transfer your designs onto different materials and products, so consult your vendor and printer to discuss your options. Consider how many colors you will be printing and how many impressions you need. Most surfaces can be offset-printed, screen printed, or have vinyl applied, but new digital technologies are rapidly adding even more options.

DRY
HUDSON
GOODS
CO.
FINE WASH
WITH LEMON OIL

#DROMOLOGY
#SIMULATION
#DOPPLEREFFECT
#COLLIDERS
#RACINGTRACKS
#DEATHDRIVE
#HYPERTHERMIA
#TIMEWAR
#FLUIDMACHINERY
#FRICTIONRIG
#METALBODIES

↖ **Screen print** The use of a mesh, as opposed to a printer, makes screen printing an ideal option for printing onto fabric or unusual surfaces such as this transparent, limited-edition vinyl sleeve.

TROUBLE
IS MY
MIDDLE
NAME

↑ **Multiple runs** Screen printing is most cost-effective when prints are created in large numbers. This typographic T-shirt design, for example, would cost less per unit the more T-shirts that were printed.

Screen printing

Screen printing is a printing technique using a mesh screen and ink. It is often referred to as silkscreen because originally the mesh screen would have been made of silk fibers. However, over time, synthetics such as polyester have replaced the silkscreen, and the term has been changed to screen printing to reflect this.

The mesh screen is made from tiny woven fibers, resulting in several miniscule holes. When ink is applied to the screen, it passes through these holes to reach the printing surface. The role of the graphic designer is to design a stencil to block these holes, so creating an image through the unblocked areas.

The blocking process can be achieved with a paper or plastic stencil, or more commonly with a blocking agent such as filler or photosensitive ink. When the photosensitive ink has dried and been exposed to halide light, the screens are washed out with a pressure washer, ensuring that unwanted blocking ink is removed.

Each color in a screen-printed design needs its own screen; therefore it is considered more efficient to use screen printing when running large numbers of prints.

As a reproduction technique, screen printing has many wonderful qualities: little equipment is needed; prints can be made quickly, by hand, with no electricity; it is cheap to mass-produce; smaller set-ups can be portable; and, perhaps most importantly of all, it is easy to learn. Screen printing is an obvious choice when you are looking for ways to create a lot of prints to reach a lot of people.

Risograph

Risograph was formally the name of a company in Japan, who in the 1980s created a digital duplicator, which is a printer designed mainly for high-volume photocopying and printing. Now known widely as Risograph or Riso printing, this was not always a mainstream printing technique. As digital printing developed, there was a pull back to more environmentally friendly and cost-effective methods of printing, and in many ways a desire for more nostalgic and DIY-esthetic printing techniques and detailing.

Risograph is very similar to screen printing, in that the original image file is sent to the machine and burnt onto a master. The master is then wrapped around a print drum. This drum rotates at high speed, which pushes the ink through the screen and onto the paper as it is sent through the machine.

Unlike offset lithography, it only takes a single print for the screen to be fully inked and ready to print in large numbers. It is therefore extremely energy-efficient and generates a minimal amount of waste.

In terms of color, unlike offset lithography, screen printing, and relief printing/letterpress, Risograph doesn't have a Pantone system, so you will need to contact your printer for samples before you create your designs. The colors available to Risograph are unique and offer something that digital printing simply cannot recreate. Be aware, though, that colors can vary according to the paper stock.

Risograph printing does not offer perfect results and, in most cases, this is actually why it is a desired printing technique. Prints will be different to your designs on screen, and individual prints will also alter slightly from one another. The machine automatically creates a halftone effect, so avoid heavy blocks of ink or anything that requires perfect registration. Risograph is most often used to create artist publications, invites, flyers, posters, illustration prints, and zines.

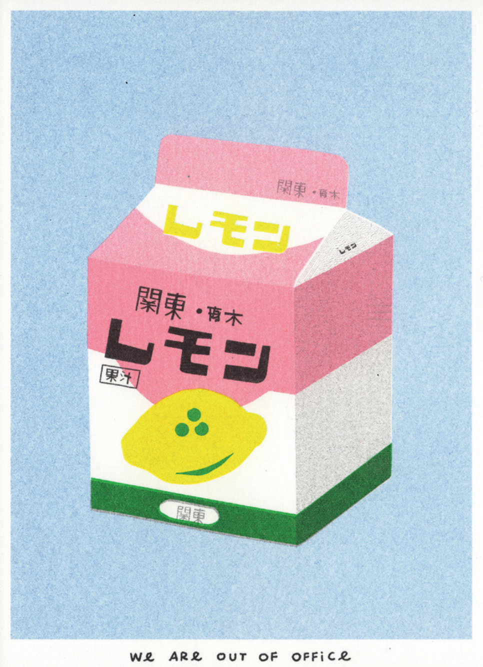
Relief printing/letterpress

Relief printing involves applying ink to the surface of a printing block, plate, or matrix. You can carve/etch your designs onto the surface, leaving raised and sunken areas. The raised areas will take ink, and the sunken areas will not. When pressed onto a surface, the raised areas will transfer the ink and the sunken areas will remain ink-free. Pressing can be done with a printing press, with a brayer/roller, or by hand.

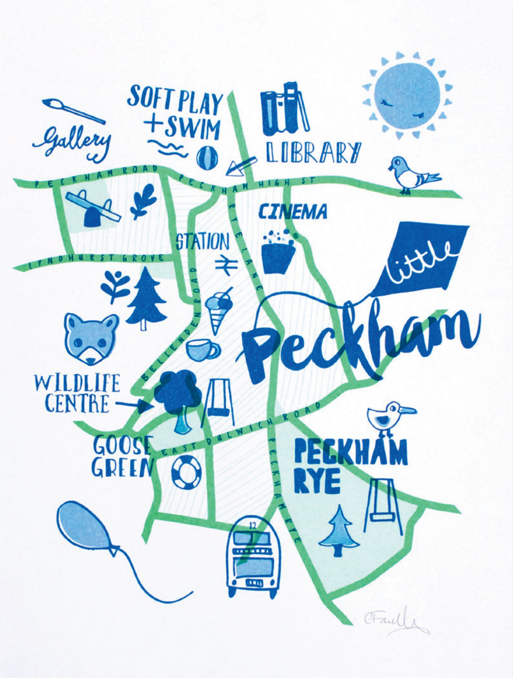
Relief-printing techniques include variations of woodcut, metalcut, wood engraving, relief etching, and linocut, which are authentic ways to create illustrations and imagery. However, as a graphic designer, you are more likely to concentrate on traditional text printing—movable type/letterpress (a variation of woodcut and metalcut). Used with a printing press, movable type is arranged, set, and locked into the bed of the press—in much the same way you would do it digitally—and many copies are produced by repeated direct impression of the inked, raised surface of the letters.

Invented in Germany by Johannes Gutenberg in the mid-15th century, letterpress remained the main means of printing and distributing books and newspapers until offset lithography was developed in the United Kingdom and America around the 20th century. More recently, letterpress printing has seen a revival in an artisanal form.

Risograph Like screen printing, Risograph printing was originally created for high-volume photocopying. Due to recent trends, risography is now back in fashion and offers a cheap solution for printing large runs of a design.



Rise of the Riso Risograph printing is widely considered to have a granular quality that is difficult to achieve with other printing techniques. It is more environmentally friendly and cost-effective than other methods of printing, and is also growing in popularity.

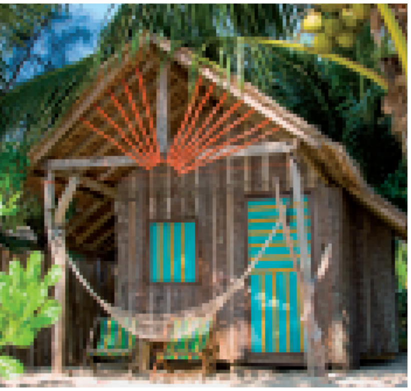


Riso colors Due to the set-up of a Risograph printer, the use of minimal colors in designs is not only more cost-effective, but often makes it easier to set up your files. It is also quicker to print. large runs of your design.

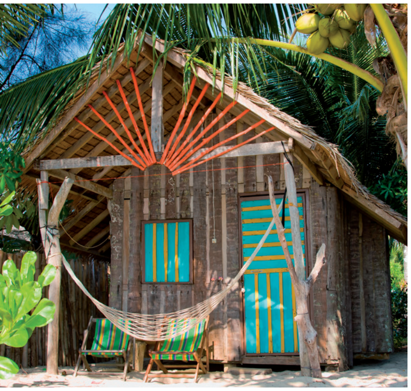
PART 2 | PRACTICE
CHAPTER 6 | PRINT PRODUCTION AND PRESENTATIONS

MODULE 6 | DIGITAL PRINTING

With conventional offset lithography almost a century old, digital presses—emerging in the early 1990s with the ability to create print directly from a digital file—have opened up new frontiers. Forward-thinking printers have embraced any technology that enables them to provide more options for their customers. Different than traditional offset, from speed to price to flexibility, digital printing has worked its way into the workflow of many designers and print houses as clients' needs, wants, and timeframes accelerate with the changing times.



75dpi at actual printed size



300dpi at actual printed size

Digital presses reproduce documents through a process of toner-based electro-photography—a technology inherent in the common desktop laser printer. This not only speeds up the process but also removes a variety of margins for error.

Generally used for print runs of fewer than 1,000 pieces, for economy, digital printing also opens up per-piece customization for direct mailing, variable data jobs, and frequently updated publications such as newsletters and timetables. Personalized printing and printing on demand are therefore growth industries, allowing for print-on-demand books and other items of varying printed details, page quantities, and binding techniques.

Vendors include online-and-on-demand service bureaus, traditional sheet-fed and web-offset printers, screen printers, sign manufacturers, and point-of-purchase display producers. Allow yourself and these agencies a margin for error in production stages as you prepare and oversee your digitally printed project. Always check a digital proof and discuss the options with your printer.

CMYK and resolution When a full-color image is needed for print, it must be generated as a CMYK file. For full-color, duotone, and grayscale images, image size is reproduced and digital file resolution should be twice the lines per inch (lpi). The standard for high-resolution print is 300dpi.

Ink versus toner

With digital printing the toner does not permeate the paper like conventional ink, but instead forms a thin layer on the surface. Some designers and printers believe that digitally printed color can appear more saturated. This happens due to lack of light absorption by the paper when ink "sinks in," as in traditionally printed items. It is not necessarily a bad thing, because "more saturated" to a printer can also mean "more vibrant" to a client. Make sure to discuss project adjustments to match your intended output more closely, since some newer presses use a combination of toner and ink to achieve more exact color values.

Some digital presses that use toner may produce large areas of solid color with banding and blending problems. Ask your printer to run samples, so you can review for yourself what may or may not work.

Timeframe

Digital printing cannot be beaten for production timing, since there is no set-up and clean-up of the press for each job. Some offset print houses are now offering shorter print-timing by utilizing such techniques as gang-run printing or shift-scheduling. Newspaper Club, for example, have litho and digital print runs on certain days, with certain turnaround times and costs to reflect both jobs.

Personalization

Database-driven variable data printing allows digital printing to offer the most economical way to customize marketing materials, direct mail pieces, newsletters, and other items with different information or designs on each individual printed piece. Finally, all that information that companies have been collecting for years can be easily used in print!

Multiple formats Digital printing can be used for all types of projects as long as you are working with digital files in CMYK mode. Printing can be done in many formats, including large-format printers that accommodate much bigger surface areas for packaging, posters, and banners.

Complete systems Color matching a complete identity system can be tricky. Digital color works really well on photographic subjects and is less expensive for shorter press runs.

Desktop printers
Desktop digital printers are essential for printing comprehensives for client approval. A good-quality inkjet or laser printer will also help you to check your work-in-progress and simulate your intended printing effects.

Digital or offset options

- **Quantity** Short-run jobs can prove more cost-effective with digital printing; larger quantities are likely to have a lower per-unit cost with offset printing. The rule of thumb is: over 1,000 pieces—go to offset.
- **Color** Digital presses are like large four-color process (CMYK) desktop printers. With monotone or duotone printing, offset printing may offer a more cost-effective solution. If Pantone colors are needed, traditional offset is the only way to go. However, digital printing may offer economical and scheduling advantages when it comes to full-color pieces.
- **Paper and finishing** Special paper, finishes, surfaces, and unique size options are increasing every year for digital, but offset printing still offers more flexibility because of the variety of print surfaces available. Also, most digital presses can only handle 14 x 20-in (35.5 x 50-cm) press sheets, whereas offset goes up to 40 x 28in (100 x 70cm), increasing the number of impressions you can group on a sheet.
- **Proofs** Digital offers more accurate proofs, since you receive a sample of the final printed piece using the exact process and paper that will be used for the intended final run. In offset printing, the proofs are generally being produced by digital printers.

GLOSSARY

Banding: Series of lighter or darker bands running across an area of solid color.

Digital presses: Automate direct image transfer from digital file to paper without the creation of plates.

Digital printing: Method of printing that uses a plateless, computer-controlled press.

Gang-run printing: Printing many different jobs on one large sheet.

Shift-scheduling: Allowing presses to run all day and night.

PART 2 | PRACTICE

CHAPTER 6 | PRINT PRODUCTION AND PRESENTATIONS

MODULE 7 | CORRECTING COLOR PROOFS AND PRESS CHECKS

The arrival of color proofs from the printer is second only to the arrival of a finished printed piece of work you have created. However, at color proof stage, it is still possible to correct some flaws in photographic reproduction, both digital and conventional.

Your proof should be carefully examined for density, color, registration, and dots or spots that may appear on the surface, in addition to any potential text errors you or your client may have missed. It's better to catch them at the proofing stage, when they can still be corrected fairly inexpensively, than during the press check. Keep your comp with you and check the proof to be sure the trim, fold, and assembly have been detailed properly. Whenever possible, ask for a proof on the actual stock you will be imprinting, so you can check the color accurately. Circle anything that worries you, and ask your printer about it.

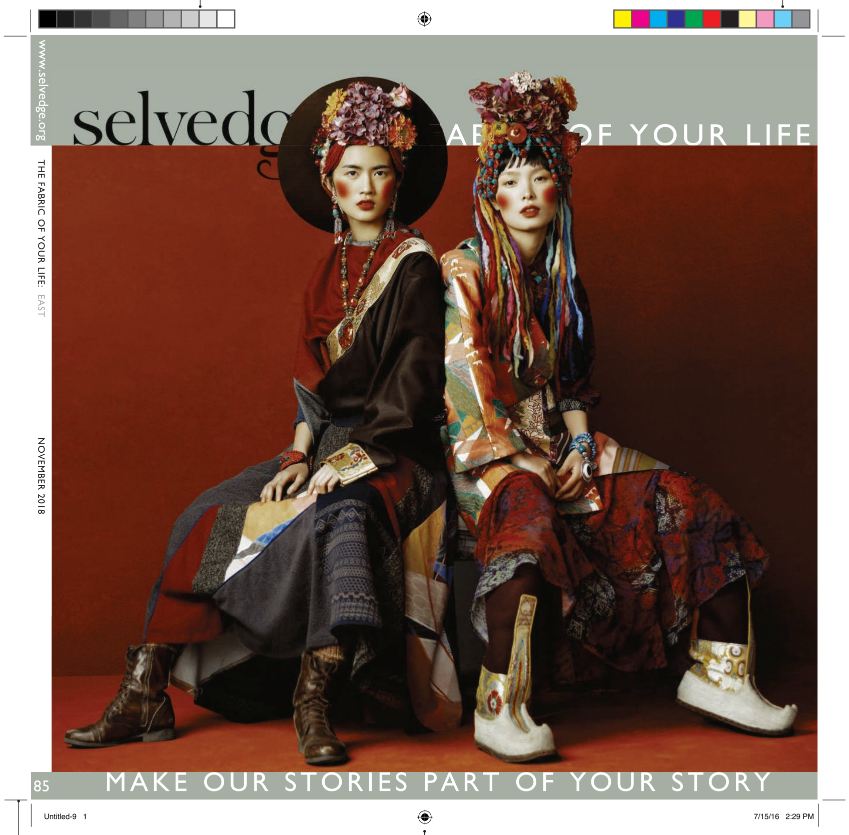
Press check

Printers are usually very receptive to clients overseeing their jobs at the beginning of the press run, and this almost always turns into a learning experience. It is especially helpful when esthetic judgment is needed. The press person will pull a sheet off the press for you to review, approve, and sign off on. At this point you should take your time, pay attention, ask questions, and have a checklist to keep you focused.

Remember that at a press check time is expensive—egregious errors such as misspelled words and unaligned edges should have been handled at the proof stages. This will help to avoid any extra correction costs, set-up charges, and rescheduling for you and your client. When you are "on the floor" in the press room, you should focus on overall esthetic considerations, although a keen eye is always on the hunt for an errant inch-mark instead of an apostrophe, or a random double space.

Grayscale density patches are printed in steps from no tint through to black. They are used to check black-and-white photography and black text in a similar way to that of a color control strip

The color control strip tells the designer whether the proof is faithful to the film being proofed. For example, if the printer has used too much yellow ink, so that the proof looks too yellow when the film is correct, the color bar will help to show this



Check trim marks for position and that the bleed allowance is correct

Check registration marks to see if the job has been proofed in register. If it is correct, all you will see is black. If it is out of register, one or more colors will show next to the black

Striking color The front cover of *Selvedge* magazine is rich with color and detail. It is vital that color proofs are analyzed in great depth to ensure the production matches the high-quality visions of the photographer and creative director. The solid red background and smaller details of color and texture in the fabric, accessories, and makeup are the key focal points in this composition, and therefore must be produced and printed to a high standard to carry the concept of the magazine.

Linen tester (loupe) A magnifier called a linen tester, or a loupe, is used to check color separations, transparencies, and proofs. It will clearly show the dot screen of your half-tone images and will allow you to check the sharpness and dot registration easily. The built-in folding stand keeps the lens at the exact right distance from the sheet surface and leaves your hands free, so no fingerprints are confused with potential flaws.

Printer's marks

When setting up a file for printing, a number of marks are needed for the printer to determine where to trim the paper, check calibration and dot density, etc. To add crop, registration, color bars, page information, bleed, and slug, in the Export dialog window select Marks and Bleed and select either All Printer's Marks or individual marks, depending on your requirements.

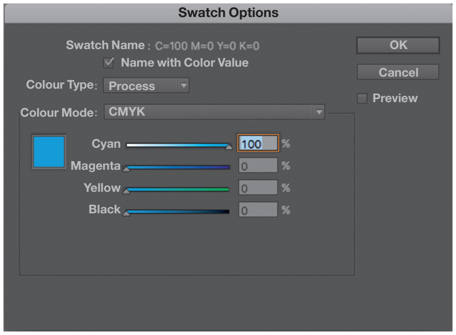
Checking proofs

Tints, transparencies, and overlays can be deceiving if you only check them on screen. Be sure you are satisfied with the effects you see on the proof. On press, you can ask the printer to hold back slightly on individual CMYK color values but it will affect the whole sheet, not just the image in question. The best practice is to make the adjustment to the proof before the plates are made.

Press check checklist

Be prepared; bring these with you.

- An extra copy of electronic files or, even better, a laptop you can work directly from (with requisite fonts and imagery installed).
- The Pantone book (coated/uncoated, or spot or process). See page 133.
- The color proof that you signed. Although many vendors may want this back, be sure to ask for it again at press time.
- A linen tester or loupe to check for such things as registration, dot bleed, dot gain, and font clarity. It usually has a folding stand to hold the lens at the correct distance from the page.
- Patience. A press check on a multi-page document can be lengthy, especially on large print runs. Be prepared for down time, and settle in for the long run.



Swatch Options

Swatch Name: C=100 M=0 Y=0 K=0

☑ Name with Color Value

Colour Type: Process

Colour Mode: CMYK

Cyan 100 %

Magenta 0 %

Yellow 0 %

Black 0 %

InDesign Check the swatch colors in your native files if they need adjusting. In the InDesign main menu under Window > Color > Swatches, you can see the four-color breakdown of your tint.

GLOSSARY

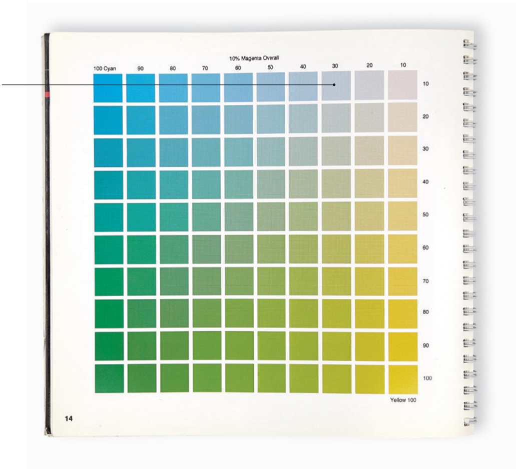
Dot gain: A printed dot that becomes bigger than intended due to spreading, causing a darkening of screened images, mid-tones, and textures. This varies with different paper stocks.

Quality control strip: Usually incorporated in printed sheets outside the grid to monitor the quality of plate-making, inking, and registration. Checking black sections helps point out color casting.

Registration marks: Hairline marks at the corners of a printed page to help ensure plates are lined up correctly, and that designate what will be cropped off at finishing time.

SEE ALSO: PREPARING FILES FOR PRINT, P124

PRINTED COLOR, P132



On first specifying a tint, always give percentages of the process colors, obtainable from a tint chart, rather than a Pantone color swatch or reference number to match, because many special colors cannot be achieved from the four-color process. The tint on the proof can then be checked against the tint chart. Watch out for mottled tints, which can be caused by the film or plate being exposed out of contact

Backgrounds

If a common special color or tint background is required for several pages in a publication, the designer should be aware of problems the printer might have in maintaining consistency between pages. For example, if a taupe background is used, consisting of a percentage tint of process yellow, and there are some pages that require a heavy weight of yellow to be run for the pictures, the tints on those pages may be heavier than on the other pages. The use of a special fifth Pantone color for the backgrounds only should prevent this problem—but remember that it is more expensive to run five colors than four.

CHAPTER 6: ASSIGNMENTS

The printer

1 This assignment involves you reaching out to a professional printer. Research the printers in your area, select one that is of particular interest, and collect as much information as you can. Visit the printer if possible, ask questions, and take photographs of the space. Ask them to show you the equipment and discuss the stages you will need to go through to send a document to be printed digitally and with offset lithography.

2 Using InDesign, create a 23½ x 16-½in (A2) poster using the new information you have learned during this process. Begin by making sketches and developing your concept. The poster should contain at least three colors and images you've either drawn in Illustrator or edited in Photoshop.

3 Refer back to Module 1 (see pages 124–127) to make sure you know how to package a file up to print, and how to send it to an external printer. Pay particular attention to the following:

- Resolution and Color Mode. The most common problem at the printing stage is bitmapped pictures due to low-resolution imagery. The standard dots-per-inch resolution for printed imagery is 300dpi, which is much higher than you see on a computer screen (a mere 72dpi, which translates to 72 rows of 72 dots). The 300dpi rule goes for photography as well as images and illustrations. Low resolution is also associated with the RGB Color Mode, the web-based resolution. In Photoshop, check your color subjects and convert all to CMYK mode before continuing.

- Bleeds. With imagery and color reaching the end of the paper, an actual section of that color "bleeds" into the outer margin of the larger print sheet. Printers ask for at least ⅛in (0.3175cm/ 3mm) around the page. Make sure photographic subjects are sized accordingly, and that you have enough material for the bleed areas. When positioning photo imagery, remember to compensate for the bleed by placing the image to be trimmed in the full space. It may appear slightly off-center in the electronic file, but when printed and trimmed, it will equalize.

- Fonts. In Illustrator-rendered pieces you can change your type to artwork by selecting the Type > Create Outlines function to retain consistency. You will not need to send a font if the type has been converted. Do not assume that printers have the same fonts as you do. Fonts of the same name come in different versions and from different foundries, and so can have minor characteristic variants. You may also be in breach of your font license if you send original font files, so outlining is a safe option; just make sure to save an unoutlined version for possible text amends.

4 When you have completely checked your file, go to File > Package and follow the steps to create a new folder for the work. When you have electronically packaged the file, you'll see that InDesign has collected all of your assets and automatically placed them in titled folders. This process efficiently saves your InDesign file with an IDML (which can be opened in previous versions of the software), a print-ready PDF, a folder with links (images), a folder with typefaces, and a set of instructions you can provide the printer. As mentioned above, it is important to check your licensing for typefaces and images before you send them to a printer.

Open each folder and check the contents. If you make a change to the design work after this point, package again or save changes in images to the individual folders that house your assets.

5 If you are able to, send your poster to be professionally printed on a digital printer, following guidelines set by the printer you originally made contact with.

The printmaker

Repeat The Printer assignment, this time reaching out to a professional printmaker or print-making studio. Research the print studios in your area, select one that is of particular interest and collect as much information as you can. Visit the printmaker if possible, ask questions, and take photographs of the space. Ask them to show you the equipment and discuss the stages you will need to go through to set up and print a document with screen printing, Risograph, and/or letterpress. Remember that print-making is cheap for quantity, so only print if you have plans for 100-plus copies of your poster.

Print checks

This assignment asks you to research some of the final procedures before sending artwork to print. You have been asked to showcase this research as a formal presentation to gain some experience in public speaking, but also to make sure you can confidently explain terminology to others. You can carry out this assignment in small groups, pairs, or individually.

1 Using information gathered from previous assignments in this chapter, spend some time researching printed color, correcting color proofs, and print checks. Make a note of all the stages you should go through before sending a file to print digitally, with offset lithography, with screen printing, with Risograph, and with letterpress. Select one form of printing from your research. Create an outcome and a supporting presentation in InDesign, outlining the following information:

- Detail how—and why it is important—to set up a color comp for proofing. Explore the pros and cons of setting this up, depending on the print media you have chosen to work with.
- Explain how to set up encoded printer's marks or guides and what each mark refers to, along with a demonstration of you trimming, scoring, and

folding a document. (This could be a physical demo, short film, or series of photographs.)
- Talk through how you would use a color comp at a presentation or meeting with clients. With the traditional printing techniques, consider how digital prints and physical swatches of printer inks and textures can play a supportive role in explaining what you want to achieve with your print. What should you draw attention to? How are you going to "sell" your idea using the mock-up? Select two details of your project and create large detail images that explain your talking points.

2 When you are happy with your presentation, Preflight tools in InDesign, Photoshop, and Illustrator will allow you to save in PDF format. Each one offers preset options that allow you to optimize the PDF and customize it according to use.

- Open a file in each program and explore the Adobe Preset options available, then create PDF files in low resolution for electronic approvals. Check them for errors, correct any you find, and try again.
- Email them to yourself as attachments, and make sure they are traveling well electronically.
- Using the same native files in InDesign and Illustrator, create high-resolution files intended for reproduction. Remember to add your bleeds and printer's marks. Save the files and check them on screen before printing them to see how accurate they look.

Taking stock

When creating a project for print you should be making design decisions right up until the end—including the paper stocks and finishing. The variety of paper types out there is immense: light/heavy; thick/thin; smooth/textured; transparent/opaque; matte/glossy, etc. When colors are added you learn that no two shades of white are alike. The more you observe the differences in paper stocks and samples, the more you will become attuned to selecting what is right for your projects. This assignment not only asks you to observe and make notes about the paper types you find, but also to collate them into a reference book you can refer back to in the future.

1 Collect samples of as many different types of paper as you can. For example: acetate, Bible, blotting, blueprint, carbon, cloth, copperplate, craft, crepe, drawing, fine art, gloss-coated, handmade, imitation parchment, napkin, newsprint, offset, paperboard, parcel, photographic, poster, recycled, rice, synthetic, tissue, tracing, transfer, watercolor, wax, wove, wrapping, or writing paper. Organize them into categories of your choice.

2 Make a concertina booklet for your paper samples. Each page should measure 4in (10cm) wide by 8¼in (21cm) high. Measure and mark a 4-in (10-cm) space for each fold. Use a bone folder to crease and tightly fold each page. Use a small strip of double-sided tape or glue to make your concertina booklet longer where needed.

3 Crop your paper samples down to 1¼-in (3-cm) squares. Fix one swatch to each page, using a small strip of double-sided tape or glue to attach it from the top, leaving the bottom unstuck so you can lift it and remind yourself of the weight and texture of the swatch.

4 Make a note of the paper type and any other comments on the page around your swatch.

5 Once you have made your concertina booklet, measure, design, and cut an envelope for it to slide into. Remember to leave a little extra space in case you want to add more pages and swatches to your booklet in the future.

6 Additional task
Repeat the exercise, concentrating now on swatches of print finishes and coatings. These may be harder to locate, but it is worth making a collection for future reference, since some of these finishes can add a hearty price to your printing costs, making it important you know exactly what you are asking for and what you are getting—options include die or laser cuts, embossing and debossing, foil stamping/blocking, holographic foils, lamination (gloss/matte/satin), letterpress, pearlescent and iridescent inks, and varnishes and coatings (machine/gloss/matte/silk/UV/aqueous).

Further reading

Gavin Ambrose and Paul Harris, *Basics Design: Print and Finish*, AVA, 2014
Paul Jackson, *Cut and Fold Techniques for Promotional Materials*, Laurence King Publishing, 2013
John Z. Komurki, Luca Bendandi and Luca Bogoni, *Risomania: The New Spirit of Printing*, Verlag Niggli, 2017
Taka Nakanishi, *Special Effects: A Book About Special Print Effects*, All Rights Reserved Publishing, 2007
Print Club London, *Screen Printing: The Ultimate Studio Guide from Sketchbook to Squeegee*, Thames & Hudson, 2017
Cathie Ruggie Saunders and Martha Chiplis, *For the Love of Letterpress*, Bloomsbury Visual Arts, 2019
Frances Stanfield and Lucy McGeown, *The Printmaking Ideas Book*, Ilex Press, 2019

7

Web Design

If you assemble a group of website designers and ask them to provide concrete perspectives that relate to designing for the web, you will often get the same response: “Well, it depends.”

For newcomers to the field, this vacuous response elicits more frustration than comprehension. But, at the core, this is the essence of what makes designing for the web so exciting. Each client brings with them new material, with varying project goals and functionality requirements. While some projects require the active participation of a full development team, most are the collaborative product of a few key members, or perhaps a well-rounded individual. Therefore it is increasingly common for a modern website designer to not only have a working familiarity with the varied steps of a website’s development process, but also to be ready to take the lead and make sure that each step is accomplished successfully.

How many different development roles will a website designer be expected to command on a given project? Well, it depends.

MODULE 1 | PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS OVERVIEW

Website development processes can vary greatly from individual to individual and from firm to firm. However, to ensure that a project runs smoothly for all parties involved, including the client, it is essential that you develop—and follow—a structured game plan, broken down into phases and related steps.

The planning phase

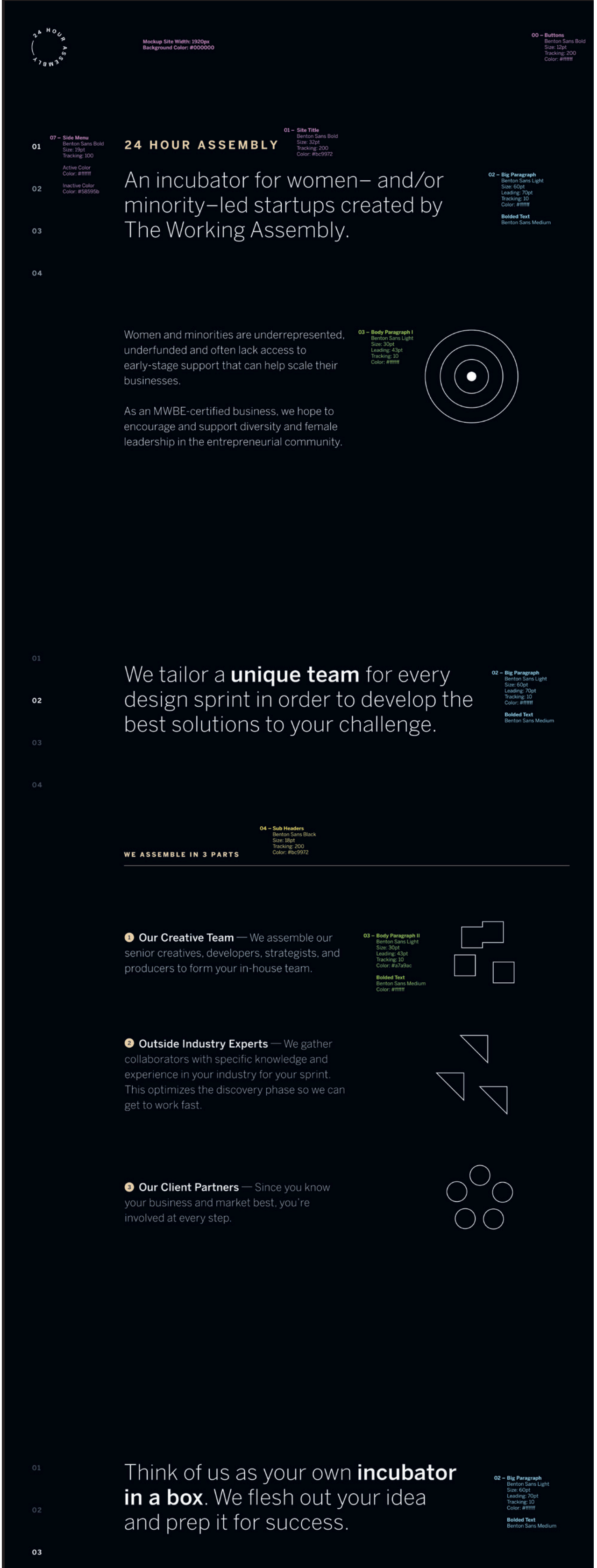
The planning phase in a website development project is the most crucial, because these initial steps serve to define the process for the entire project.

Review Initially, the designer and client should get together to define the client’s goals, establish who the target audience is, and discuss required specific features and/or functionality of the site. You should work together to establish the metrics for which the site’s success will be determined—such as increase in site traffic, sales, contact, or social media reach—with the goal of maximizing the return on the client’s design investment (RODI).

Content gathering The next step is to summarize the information that will be presented on the website. Include the site content (text) as well as defining the visual elements (logos and branding elements, imagery).

Flowchart A flowchart is a graphical representation used to display the overall scope of the website. It defines the elements that make up the site’s navigational structure (shown as boxes, one per page), as well as the structured flow of traffic through the website (the lines connecting the boxes). It is the crucial foundation for a successful website.

Software, technology, and resources You will need to determine and identify the programming format in which the site will be developed. Anticipate the range of devices on which the site will be viewed, then



Mockup Site Width: 1920px
Background Color: #000000

00 – Buttons
Benton Sans Bold
Size: 12pt
Tracking: 200
Color: #ffffff

07 – Side Menu
Benton Sans Bold
Size: 19pt
Tracking: 100

Active Color
Color: #ffffff

Inactive Color
Color: #58595b

24 HOUR ASSEMBLY

01 – Site Title
Benton Sans Bold
Size: 32pt
Tracking: 200
Color: #bc9972

An incubator for women– and/or minority–led startups created by The Working Assembly.

02 – Big Paragraph
Benton Sans Light
Size: 60pt
Leading: 70pt
Tracking: 10
Color: #ffffff

Bolded Text
Benton Sans Medium

Women and minorities are underrepresented, underfunded and often lack access to early-stage support that can help scale their businesses.

As an MWBE-certified business, we hope to encourage and support diversity and female leadership in the entrepreneurial community.

03 – Body Paragraph I
Benton Sans Light
Size: 30pt
Leading: 43pt
Tracking: 10
Color: #ffffff

We tailor a **unique team** for every design sprint in order to develop the best solutions to your challenge.

02 – Big Paragraph
Benton Sans Light
Size: 60pt
Leading: 70pt
Tracking: 10
Color: #ffffff

Bolded Text
Benton Sans Medium

WE ASSEMBLE IN 3 PARTS

04 – Sub Headers
Benton Sans Black
Size: 18pt
Tracking: 200
Color: #bc9972

❶ **Our Creative Team** — We assemble our senior creatives, developers, strategists, and producers to form your in-house team.

03 – Body Paragraph II
Benton Sans Light
Size: 30pt
Leading: 43pt
Tracking: 10
Color: #a7a9ac

Bolded Text
Benton Sans Medium
Color: #ffffff

❷ **Outside Industry Experts** — We gather collaborators with specific knowledge and experience in your industry for your sprint. This optimizes the discovery phase so we can get to work fast.

❸ **Our Client Partners** — Since you know your business and market best, you're involved at every step.

Think of us as your own **incubator in a box**. We flesh out your idea and prep it for success.

02 – Big Paragraph
Benton Sans Light
Size: 60pt
Leading: 70pt
Tracking: 10
Color: #ffffff

Bolded Text
Benton Sans Medium

The client questionnaire

In most cases, project information is obtained by leading a client through a web-development project questionnaire, of which many can be found online. They are usually grouped by category, such as general questions, functionality questions, and design questions. Avoid using technical lingo, which may confuse your client; for example, instead of asking "Do you require an e-commerce solution?" try "Do you plan on selling anything on your website?".

summarize additional resources that may be required (web font usage, stock photography, etc.), which may add expenses to the overall project rate.

Training requirements If instructional documentation, phone support, or onsite training will be required in order for your client to maintain their own website, this should be defined in the initial planning phase, as it will add additional time to the project's development.

Contract The contract is the end product of the planning phase. Extra care should be taken to make sure that all items discovered and defined in this phase have been factored in to the project's development framework. Successful contracts clearly define the goals, deliverables, roles, timetable, flowchart, copyright, and financial information for the project.

The design phase

The design phase uses the information that was gathered in the planning phase and brings it forward to define the appearance for the final project. Generally speaking, traditional websites are developed around two to four different layout variations, or templates: one for the initial (home) page, with one to three additional, standardized layouts for the project's interior pages, as dictated by the varying types of information that will need to be displayed throughout the website.

Planning: Consider how typography, hierarchy, and the navigation of your site can help build the structure you have in mind. Be sure to keep a record of your design decisions to aid working in teams and directly with clients who may need this information for other designed outcomes.

GLOSSARY

Content management systems (CMS): A structured framework created by a web designer or developer that allows the client to edit the website without code.

CSS (Cascading Style Sheets): The code that controls the appearance of features of the website.

E-commerce: Websites created with the goal of selling products online.

HTML (Hypertext Markup Language): Elements that form the building blocks of all websites.

Metrics: The strategy for measuring the success, or failure, of a project's goals.

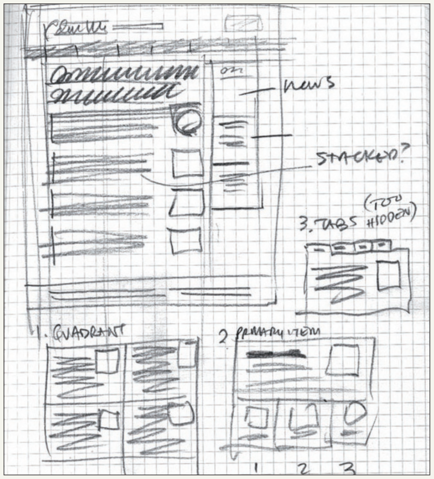
RODI: Return On Design Investment indicates the success of a project in relation to the project's unique goals.

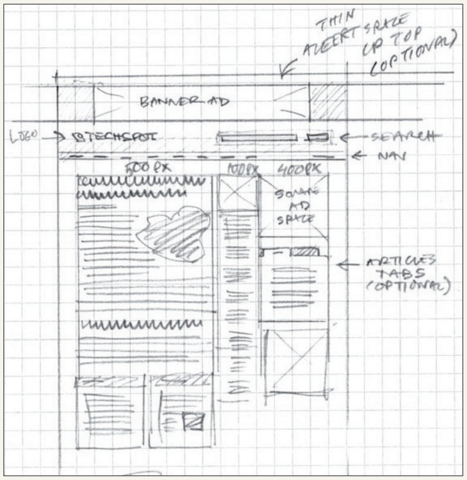
Site map: A recap of the website's navigation structure, intended to direct viewers to a specific page within the website structure.

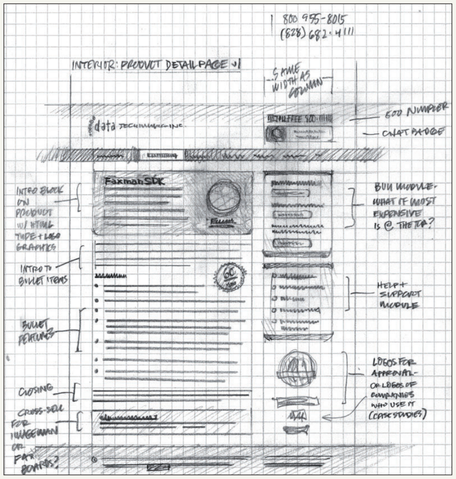
Wireframe: An under-designed representation of the layout structure of a website's main pages.

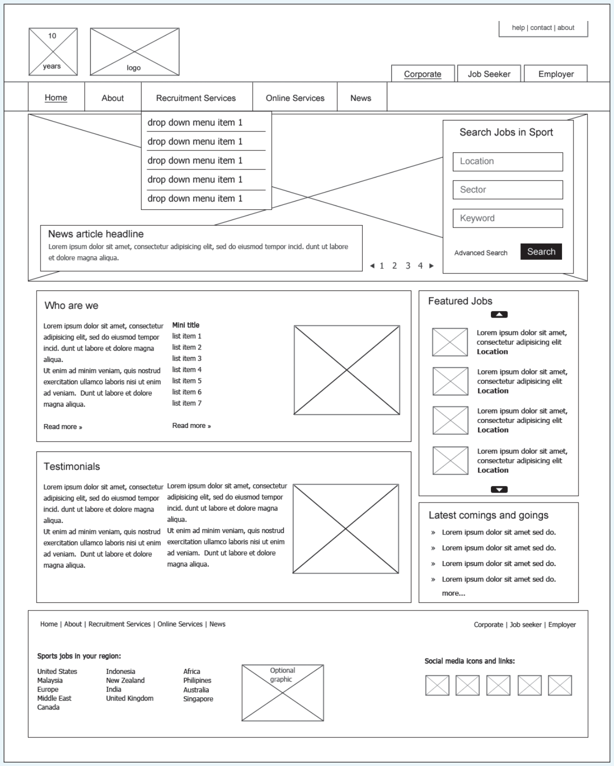
404 Error page: The web page that is displayed as the result of a broken link. If not specified, the web host's default 404 Error page will be displayed.

SEE ALSO: SCHEDULING, ORGANIZING, AND FINALIZING, P26


news
STACKED?
3. TABS (TOO HIDDEN)
1. QUADRANT
2 PRIMARY ITEM
1
2
3


THIN ALERT SPACE UP TOP (OPTIONAL)
BANNER AD
LOGO
TECHSPOT
SEARCH
NAV
500 PX
100PX
400PX
SQUARE AD SPACE
ARTICLES TABS (OPTIONAL)


800 955-8015
(828) 682-4111
INTERIOR: PRODUCT DETAIL PAGE v1
SAME WIDTH AS COLUMN
800 NUMBER
CHAT BADGE
INTRO BLOCK ON PRODUCT W/ HTML TYPE + LESS GRAPHICS
INTRO TO BULLET ITEMS
BULLET FEATURES
CLOSING
CROSS-SELL FOR IMAGEMAN OR FAX BOARDS?
BUY MODULE. WHAT IF MOST EXPENSIVE IS @ THE TOP?
HELP + SUPPORT MODULE
LOGOS FOR APPROVAL - OR LOGOS OF COMPANIES WHO USE IT (CASE STUDIES)


10 years
logo
help | contact | about
Corporate
Job Seeker
Employer
Home
About
Recruitment Services
Online Services
News
drop down menu item 1
drop down menu item 1
drop down menu item 1
drop down menu item 1
drop down menu item 1
Search Jobs in Sport
Location
Sector
Keyword
Advanced Search
Search
News article headline
◂ 1 2 3 4 ▸
Who are we
Mini title
list item 1
list item 2
list item 3
list item 4
list item 5
list item 6
list item 7
Read more »
Read more »
Featured Jobs
Location
Testimonials
Latest comings and goings
more...
Home | About | Recruitment Services | Online Services | News
Corporate | Job seeker | Employer
Sports jobs in your region:
United States
Malaysia
Europe
Middle East
Canada
Indonesia
New Zealand
India
United Kingdom
Africa
Philipines
Australia
Singapore
Optional graphic
Social media icons and links:

Wireframe process As this illustration shows, a wireframe serves as a visual blueprint that represents the framework of a website layout. It is an effective process for efficiently exploring alternative relationships for content arrangement, without focusing on the details related to specific stylization choices.

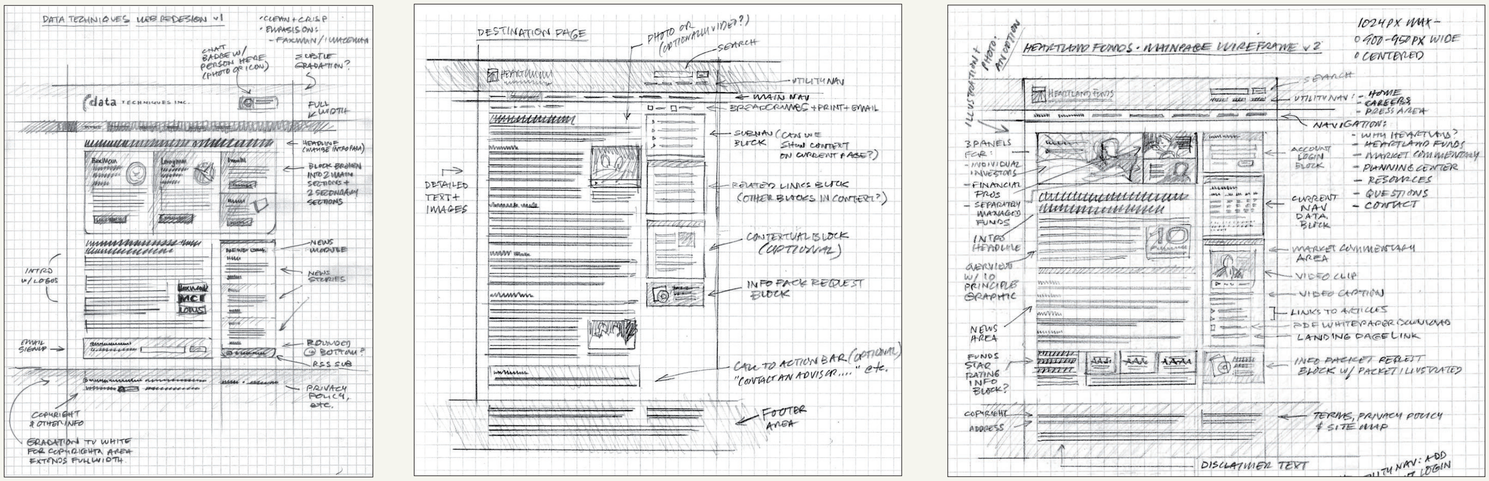
Presentation idea Present your designs within a mocked-up browser window to convey a sense of realness to your client. Browser templates can be found online, or you can take a screen capture of your preferred browser window, replacing elements with your own designs.

Client reviews

Holding client reviews at specific points within the design phase will generate important feedback on approaches that might have been overlooked in the initial discussions. Having your client sign off on specific steps within the design phase before moving forward to the next step will keep the project on track—and justify any additional development expenses should they change their mind and want to proceed in a revised direction.

Wireframing This initial step in the design phase defines the visual structure of a web page's layout. Start by creating a series of purposefully underdesigned compositions, drawn with lines—similar to an architectural floor plan. Focus on the inclusion of all required elements, as well as their proportional relationships within the overall composition. Resist defining specific visual choices, as they will be defined in the next step of the design phase.

The dimensions of a website The ideal size for a website composition can vary, based on web standards (960 pixels wide), current trends, the target audience/device preferences, and even your client's preferred


DATA TECHNIQUES WEB REDESIGN v1
• CLEAN + CRISP
• EMPHASIS ON:
- FAXMAN / WATCHMAN
CHAT BADGE W/ PERSON HERE (PHOTO OR ICON)
SUBTLE GRADATION?
data TECHNIQUES INC.
FULL WIDTH
HEADLINE (MAYBE INTRO PARA)
BLOCK BROKEN INTO 2 MAIN SECTIONS + 2 SECONDARY SECTIONS
NEWS MODULE
NEWS STORIES
INTRO W/ LOGOS
EMAIL SIGNUP
ROUNDED @ BOTTOM?
RSS SUB
PRIVACY POLICY, etc.
COPYRIGHT & OTHER INFO
GRADATION TO WHITE FOR COPYRIGHT AREA EXTENDS FULL WIDTH
DESTINATION PAGE
PHOTO OR (OPTIONALLY VIDEO?)
SEARCH
UTILITY NAV
MAIN NAV
BREADCRUMBS + PRINT + EMAIL
SUBNAV BLOCK (CAN WE SHOW CONTENT ON CURRENT PAGE?)
DETAILED TEXT + IMAGES
RELATED LINKS BLOCK (OTHER BLOCKS IN CONTEXT?)
CONTEXTUAL BLOCK (OPTIONAL)
INFO PACK REQUEST BLOCK
CALL TO ACTION BAR (OPTIONAL) "CONTACT AN ADVISOR...." etc.
FOOTER AREA
HEARTLAND FUNDS · MAINPAGE WIREFRAME v2
ILLUSTRATION + PHOTO: AN OPTION
1024 PX MAX –
900–950 PX WIDE
CENTERED
SEARCH
UTILITY NAV: - HOME - CAREERS - PRESS AREA
NAVIGATION: - WHY HEARTLAND? - HEARTLAND FUNDS - MARKET COMMENTARY - PLANNING CENTER - RESOURCES - QUESTIONS - CONTACT
3 PANELS FOR: - INDIVIDUAL INVESTORS - FINANCIAL PROS - SEPARATELY MANAGED FUNDS
ACCOUNT LOGIN BLOCK
CURRENT NAV DATA BLOCK
INTRO HEADLINE
OVERVIEW W/ 10 PRINCIPLE GRAPHIC
MARKET COMMENTARY AREA
VIDEO CLIP
VIDEO CAPTION
LINKS TO ARTICLES
PDF WHITEPAPER DOWNLOAD
LANDING PAGE LINK
NEWS AREA
FUNDS STAR RATING INFO BLOCK?
INFO PACKET REQUEST BLOCK W/ PACKET ILLUSTRATED
COPYRIGHT
ADDRESS
TERMS, PRIVACY POLICY & SITE MAP
DISCLAIMER TEXT
UTILITY NAV: ADD LOGIN

Compositional sketches
Rough sketches not only serve to quickly detail the elements that need to be included in composition, but also the visual relationships among these elements.

method for viewing online content. Discuss with your client the range of options that are available and what will best suit the purpose of the site. [Client review. Revise as necessary. Client sign-off]

Design mock-ups With the desired wireframes selected, the process moves forward to focus on stylizing the elements of your visual composition. Layout compositions are traditionally developed in layered Photoshop documents. Completed files are then exported in (flattened) JPEG format for presentation to the client.

Final compositional layouts Once the initial mock-ups have been approved, they can be refined, with a stronger focus on establishing and maintaining consistency, down to the pixel level. In this step—especially if it was not present or readily available in the mock-up step—the actual content should be incorporated into the layouts. It is quite common to discover that adjustments need to be made before moving forward; for example, allocating more space for longer headlines.
[Client review. Revise as necessary. Client sign-off]

Documentation Between final approval and the beginning of the production phase, the website designer may be called upon to generate documents that clearly outline the specifications of the project to the programmer, in addition to the layered Photoshop files. This additional documentation can include the following items: wireframes annotated with pixel dimensions; type styling outline, which defines the type appearance (typefaces, sizes, line spacing, color use, attributes); and functionality diagrams, which define link behaviors.

The development phase

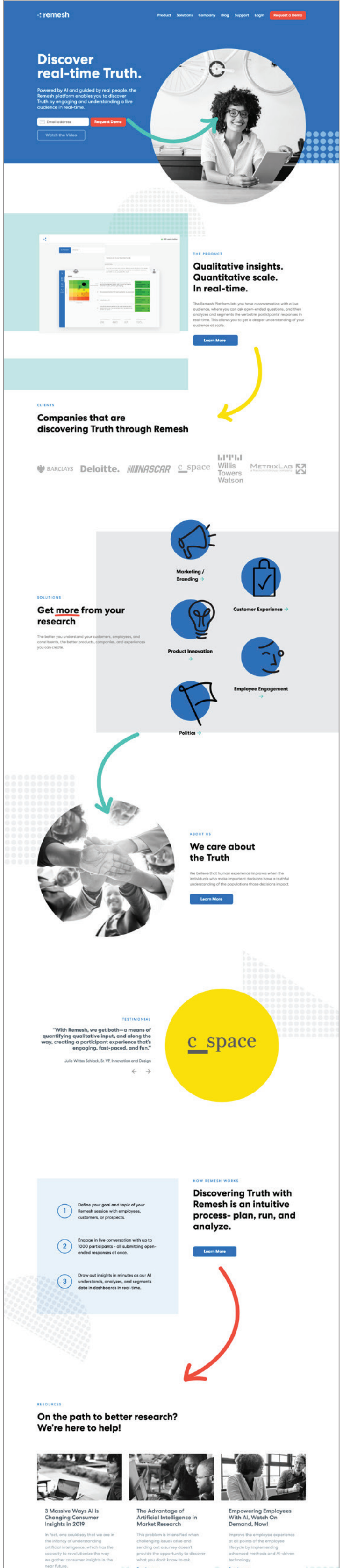
The development phase consists of the bulk of the programming work. The specifications defined during

404 error pages

Misdirects happen. Sometimes they may arise as a result of a linking error or from a removed page. Other times, they can come from a viewer who mistyped the address of a specific web page. While often overlooked as a required element of a website project, a "404 Error" page should be created in order to get your viewers back on track. This page can feature a recap of your site's navigation structure (site map) and also the contact details of your developer.

Web standards

Web standards are generally regarded standards and technical specifications used in web design, that aim to endorse best practice for designing and developing websites. An early addition was the idea of column grids. After a few iterations, the 960 (pixels)-width system became commonplace, and the 12-column division became something designers were using every day. The next step was to standardize the commonly used elements—forms, navigation, buttons—and to pack them in an easy, reusable way, making a library of visual elements that contain all the code.



Discover real-time Truth.

Powered by AI and guided by real people, the Remesh platform enables you to discover Truth by engaging and understanding a live audience in real-time.

THE PRODUCT

Qualitative insights. Quantitative scale. In real-time.

The Remesh Platform lets you have a conversation with a live audience, where you can ask open-ended questions, and then analyzes and segments the verbatim participants' responses in real-time. This allows you to get a deeper understanding of your audience at scale.

CLIENTS

Companies that are discovering Truth through Remesh

SOLUTIONS

Get more from your research

The better you understand your customers, employees, and constituents, the better products, companies, and experiences you can create.

ABOUT US

We care about the Truth

We believe that human experience improves when the individuals who make important decisions have a truthful understanding of the populations those decisions impact.

TESTIMONIAL

"With Remesh, we get both—a means of quantifying qualitative input, and along the way, creating a participant experience that's engaging, fast-paced, and fun."

Julie Wittes Schlack, Sr. VP, Innovation and Design

HOW REMESH WORKS

Discovering Truth with Remesh is an intuitive process- plan, run, and analyze.

1 Define your goal and topic of your Remesh session with employees, customers, or prospects.

2 Engage in live conversation with up to 1000 participants - all submitting open-ended responses at once.

3 Draw out insights in minutes as our AI understands, analyzes, and segments data in dashboards in real-time.

RESOURCES

On the path to better research? We're here to help!

3 Massive Ways AI is Changing Consumer Insights in 2019

In fact, one could say that we are in the infancy of understanding artificial intelligence, which has the capacity to revolutionize the way we gather consumer insights in the near future.

The Advantage of Artificial Intelligence in Market Research

This problem is intensified when challenging issues arise and sending out a survey doesn't provide the opportunity to discover what you don't know to ask.

Empowering Employees With AI, Watch On Demand, Now!

Improve the employee experience at all points of the employee lifecycle by implementing advanced methods and AI-driven technology.

the design phase are used as a roadmap for the development of the website.

Image prep Image prep involves cropping/resizing supplied or purchased images for insertion within the layout, then optimizing the resulting files in order to generate smaller file sizes that help ensure faster page download times. There is a Save for Web option in Photoshop.

Coding Most websites are created using a foundation of HTML and CSS code. HTML (Hypertext Markup Language) is similar to the architectural structure of a building, defining the foundation, wall placement, and so on. The CSS (Cascading Style Sheets) is the code that controls the appearance of features within the building, equivalent to wall color, furniture placement, and inclusion of decorative elements.

Additional functionality As defined in the planning phase, the project may require additional programming. For example, if the website content is controlled by a content management system (CMS), additional code—typically PHP (Hypertext Prepocessor) or ASP (Active Server Pages) code—will need to be inserted within the HTML template structure so that the web page can "call" content from the website's database (text and images) for display on the page when it is viewed in a web browser. For those uncomfortable with coding in general, you have two options. First is to collaborate with a developer. The second is to modify existing web templates. WordPress, Wix, and SquareSpace are all good starting points, but they usually come with limited features and additional costs.

Content integration For smaller websites this step will not be time-consuming, because the information will be copied and pasted from a supplied text file and inserted into a web page template. For larger or e-commerce-based websites this step can involve significantly more work; for example, sizing numerous product images or creating inventory listings for inclusion within the e-commerce platform.

Embrace the scroll When designing for print, artists make use of the entire canvas. On the Web, the layout expands and contracts, defined by the content being presented on each page. Sometimes the content fits neatly within the browser window. Other times, as in this example, the visitor would instinctively scroll in order to discover the full scope of the presentation. Be wary of the first impression your site gives and try not to hide the important information with a scroll.

Test and verify Using the flowchart as a roadmap, walk through each page of your website to make sure that it functions correctly. It helps to have a fresh pair of eyes to assist you in this step. Test using current browsers (Chrome, Firefox, Safari, IE), platforms (Mac/PC), and devices (desktop, laptop, tablet, smartphone).

The launch phase

The purpose of this phase is to prepare the site for public viewing.

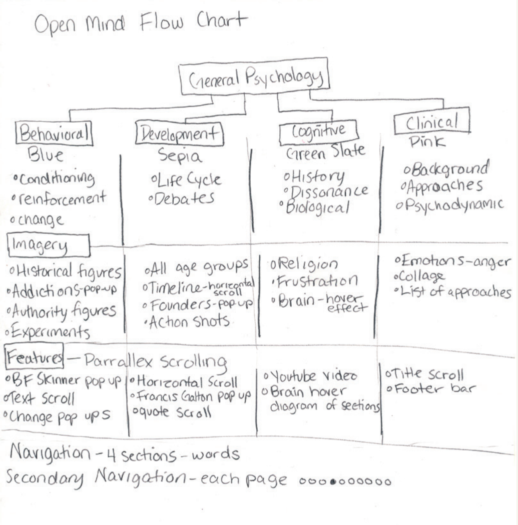
Upload to client's web server Developers usually create a website in a testing, or production, environment, at a different web address from the client's actual web address. Once the website is ready to be launched, the files must be adjusted for the move to the final storage location, the client's web server (or "host").

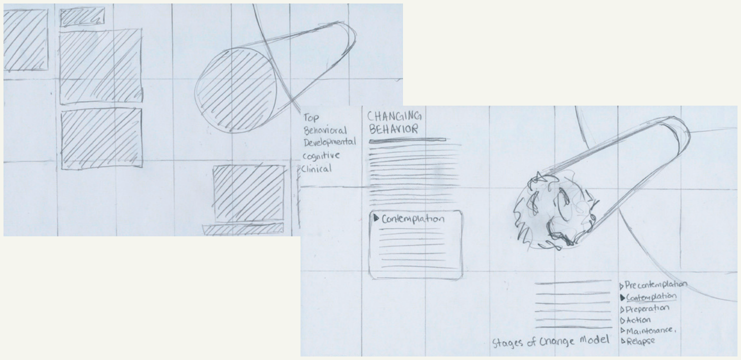
Hosting and domain names Depending on budget, it is always advisable to buy up as many domain names as you can, joebloggs.co.uk, joebloggs.com, joebloggs.org, etc. 123-Reg offers lengthy packages for reasonable prices and provides a step-by-step guide to linking the domain to your hosting. There are numerous hosting sites available, so shop around to find the best for your money. Be aware that, usually, the cheaper sites do not have the most attentive customer service.

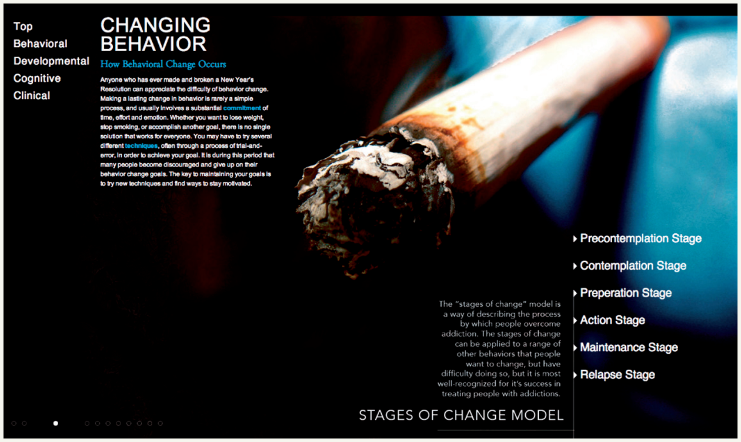
Code adjustments If the project requires the inclusion of third-party code, such as Google Analytics (for tracking site statistics), it will be inserted after the site has been uploaded to the client's web server.

Testing A final round of usability testing should be conducted. Again, a fresh pair of eyes from individuals not familiar with the project will help point out issues that might have been missed in the project's development. [Client review. Revise as necessary. Client sign-off]

Concept to execution
This student's senior thesis project began following the developmental structure of a traditional web design project. Rough sketches were used to define the main navigational structure, as well as desired features and visual imagery. A series of compositional grid systems were explored and the most successful approach was brought forward to create the final website.


Open Mind Flow Chart
General Psychology
Behavioral
Blue
Conditioning
reinforcement
change
Development
Sepia
Life Cycle
Debates
Cognitive
Green Slate
History
Dissonance
Biological
Clinical
Pink
Background
Approaches
Psychodynamic
Imagery
Historical figures
Addictions-pop-up
Authority figures
Experiments
All age groups
Timeline-horizontal scroll
Founders-pop up
Action Shots
Religion
Frustration
Brain-hover effect
Emotions-anger
Collage
List of approaches
Features — Parrallex Scrolling
BF Skinner pop up
Text Scroll
Change pop ups
Horizontal Scroll
Francis Galton pop up
quote scroll
Youtube video
Brain hover diagram of sections
Title scroll
Footer bar
Navigation - 4 sections - words
Secondary Navigation - each page


Top
Behavioral
Developmental
Cognitive
Clinical
CHANGING BEHAVIOR
Contemplation
Precontemplation
Contemplation
Preperation
Action
Maintenance
Relapse
Stages of Change Model


Top
Behavioral
Developmental
Cognitive
Clinical

CHANGING BEHAVIOR

How Behavioral Change Occurs

Anyone who has ever made and broken a New Year's Resolution can appreciate the difficulty of behavior change. Making a lasting change in behavior is rarely a simple process, and usually involves a substantial commitment of time, effort and emotion. Whether you want to lose weight, stop smoking, or accomplish another goal, there is no single solution that works for everyone. You may have to try several different techniques, often through a process of trial-and-error, in order to achieve your goal. It is during this period that many people become discouraged and give up on their behavior change goals. The key to maintaining your goals is to try new techniques and find ways to stay motivated.

The "stages of change" model is a way of describing the process by which people overcome addiction. The stages of change can be applied to a range of other behaviors that people want to change, but have difficulty doing so, but it is most well-recognized for it's success in treating people with addictions.

STAGES OF CHANGE MODEL

Precontemplation Stage
Contemplation Stage
Preperation Stage
Action Stage
Maintenance Stage
Relapse Stage

The post-launch phase
This is the final step in the web project's development, when the designer provides a "clean" hand-off of the project to the client. It represents the closing of the project development contract, so be prepared to process all last-minute client requests and make sure that all contractual obligations have been met before you define the project as being complete.

Depending on the type of project, the post-launch phase could include the following:

- **Packaging source files** This task involves organizing and assembling all files to be returned to the client, such as stock photography images, font purchases, and working Photoshop and Word documents. Include a site map of the final site structure, a summary of the project's technical requirements—including languages used, web fonts, and style documentation—and a separate listing of site access passwords, since one site may require different multiple passwords, including passwords to third-party services such as hosting and social media.

- **Documentation and training** If the site is going to be maintained by the client, the developer must compile and document the process for the client, including access to passwords and technical instructions for processing site updates. If personalized training or phone support has been specified as deliverable within the project's development contract, it takes place at this step.

- **Satisfaction check** Immediately following the initial website launch, most clients will begin receiving feedback from associates, clients, and friends. Follow up a few weeks after the launch to make sure that your client continues to be satisfied with your work. A little extra effort here will serve to solidify a positive experience and increase the likelihood of client referrals. Additionally, because you have adopted this step into your project development process, you can incorporate a rough estimate of support into the original project pricing.

PART 2 | PRACTICE
CHAPTER 7 | WEB DESIGN
MODULE 2 | **PROJECT STRUCTURES**

It often falls on the designer to define the appropriate project structure in the beginning, since decisions will cascade into both the design and development processes. Your clients may often cite buzzwords relating to what they want, but it is your role as the designer to listen and decipher what your client actually needs. This module looks at a range of project structures that may define, or be combined to define, your client's project.

Brochure

This is the most straightforward type of web project. Brochure websites are usually the result of a rapid deployment, meeting the goal of quickly establishing an online presence. First impressions via branding and visual imagery are in the forefront, since the text-based content is typically less developed. Technically, we're referring to static content, HTML and CSS.

Portfolio

An online portfolio shares many similarities with online brochures, with an enhanced focus on presenting the visual examples. Clicking on an image in an online brochure may take you to a page with product details, whereas clicking on a portfolio image may simply display a more detailed view in the same screen.

Event/campaign site

You may be asked to develop an event, or campaign, website, which corresponds to a strategic marketing push or to promote an upcoming event such as a concert, lecture, or exhibition. These websites typically have a short shelf life, because they are usually attached to a specific date or campaign life cycle. These sites focus on the visual branding, with the addition of actionable items such as submitting RSVPs or purchasing tickets.

Blog

A weblog is an online journal of posts, or news items, presented in a linear, dated format. Blogs often utilize a content management system (CMS) in order to display the site content dynamically, and, by employing the option to allow your site visitors to comment on specific blog posts, you can engage your viewing audience in an evolving conversation.

Community

Community sites are focused around a need to share information and/or support for a specified interest or topic with their member audience. These sites have the goal of engaging their members to interact with each other by submitting comments, user reviews, and aggregated content through social networking and message boards.

News/reference

A news site is highly driven and based upon information. It is usually controlled by a CMS and can feature an editorial structure for managing content inclusion (contributor, editor, moderator levels). News sites are typically monetized by advertising placement. Banner ads, badges, and buttons are designed elements to be included within the layout structure.

E-commerce

Websites created with the goal of selling products online offer the benefit of being open 24/7, reaching a wider audience than an actual storefront location. These sites can be created from a range of solutions, from Google/PayPal shopping cart buttons to customized CMS, connected to a merchant gateway (merchant account) featuring a layer of SSL security. E-commerce sites can incorporate many UI display components such as cross-promotional banners, used for "You May Also Like" and "Recently Viewed" listings. Popular systems include PayPal, Google Checkout, Magento, and Zen Cart.

GLOSSARY

SSL (Secure Sockets Layer): Provides communication security over the Internet.

UI (User Interface): Where interaction between humans and computers occurs.

⊕ **SEE ALSO:** PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS OVERVIEW, P144

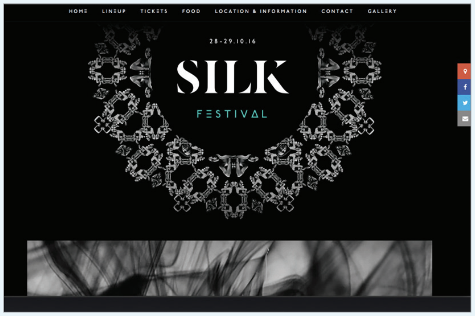
WORKING WITH CONTENT MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS, P175

Popular content management systems (CMS):

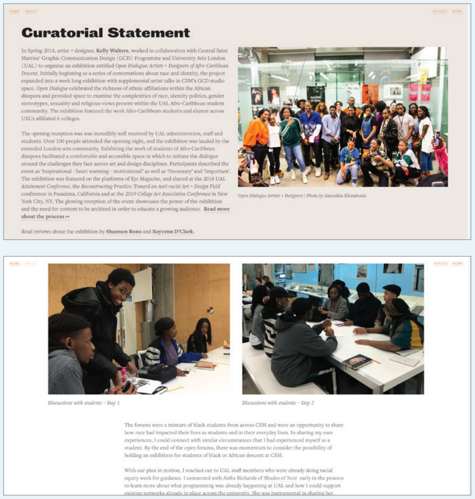
WordPress An open-source CMS with a reputation for being easy to use. Websites can appear as linear, post-based blogs, or as the administrative back-end for more traditional websites.

Joomla Best for medium-sized sites that don't require a lot of complexity. Extensions—free and commercially available—add enhanced functionality to the default system.

Drupal Used in larger websites that require more complex features. Enhanced functionality is added by installing modules. Has a steeper learning curve, so most designers on Drupal-based projects team up with a developer.


HOME
LINEUP
TICKETS
FOOD
LOCATION & INFORMATION
CONTACT
GALLERY
28-29.10.16
SILK
FESTIVAL

1

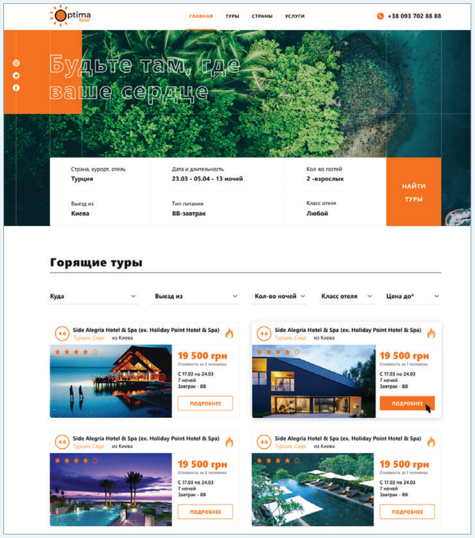


Curatorial Statement

Discussions with students - Day 1

Discussions with students - Day 2

2


optima tour
ГЛАВНАЯ
ТУРЫ
СТРАНЫ
УСЛУГИ
+38 093 702 88 88
Будьте там, где ваше сердце
НАЙТИ ТУРЫ
Куда
Выезд из
Кол-во ночей
Класс отеля
Цена до*
Side Alegria Hotel & Spa (ex. Holiday Point Hotel & Spa)
19 500 грн
ПОДРОБНЕЕ

Страна, курорт, отель: Турция

Дата и длительность: 23.03 - 05.04 - 13 ночей

Кол-во гостей: 2 -взрослых

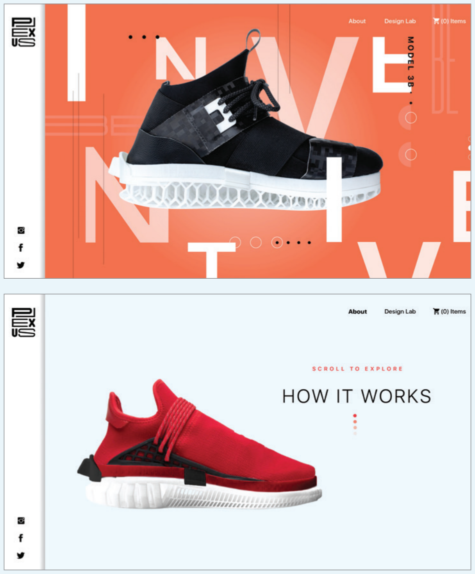
Выезд из: Киева

Тип питания: BB-завтрак

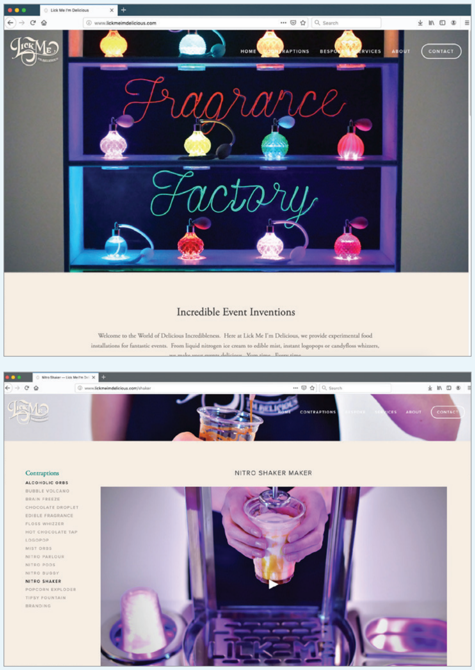
Класс отеля: Любой

Горящие туры

3


About
Design Lab
(0) Items
MODEL 38
SCROLL TO EXPLORE
HOW IT WORKS

4


Lick Me
HOME
CONTRAPTIONS
BESPOKE SERVICES
ABOUT
CONTACT
Fragrance Factory
Contraptions
ALCOHOLIC ORBS
BUBBLE VOLCANO
BRAIN FREEZE
CHOCOLATE DROPLET
EDIBLE FRAGRANCE
FLOSS WHIZZER
HOT CHOCOLATE TAP
LOOPOP
MIST ORBS
NITRO PARLOUR
NITRO PODS
NITRO SHAKER
POPCORN EXPLODER
TIPSY FOUNTAIN
BRANDING
NITRO SHAKER MAKER

Incredible Event Inventions

5

1 Dark, not black Site visitors prefer reading dark main text on a light background because it is easier on the eyes. However, this layout does not feature an abundance of text, so a decision was made to break from the norm. The sophisticated use of a dark gray field (instead of black) provides enough visual contrast for the white text to be easily legible.

2 Editorial structure Blog content is intended to be read. This event blog echoes layout styles common to printed publication design, with a visual hierarchy, a simple grid structure, thoughtful typography, and a straightforward image layout. These design elements contribute to the overall efficiency of highlighting the important work and discussions being had by the African diaspora.

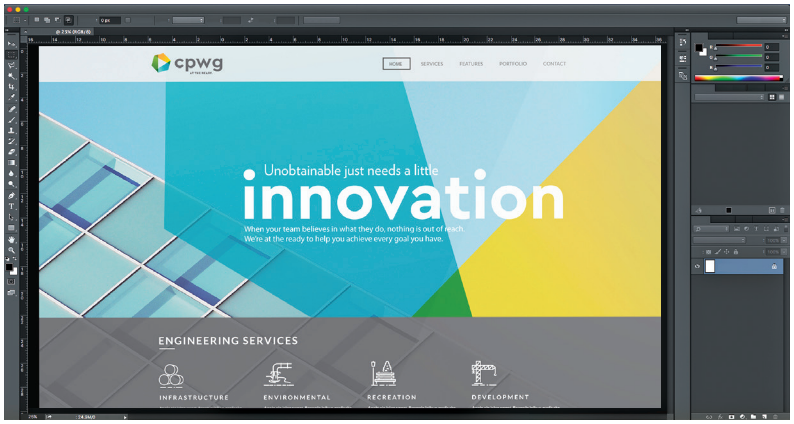
3 Communicating visually When presenting an online portfolio, your selected examples should do the talking. This example of a holiday booking site does just that, the vivid colors and beautiful compositions say more about what is on offer than a description could.

4 Featured images The use of a featured image in an e-commerce context serves to visually prioritize an item for sale. It is presented at a large scale on the landing page to convey visually that the website, and therefore the organization, is fresh, with new merchandise.

5 Keeping it simple For e-commerce projects, a successful user experience should provide clear access to review the available products or services, and complete the call to action. The call to action varies depending on what is being offered to the customer; often it will be to purchase something in the shopping cart. In this instance, it is to contact the company to book the experiential service. The call to action is usually located in the top-right corner of a web page layout and remains present on each page of the website, so it can be easily located by the customer as they move through the site.

PART 2 | PRACTICE
CHAPTER 7 | WEB DESIGN
MODULE 3 | **WEB TOOLS**

As a web designer you will be relied upon for your production and technical skill sets, in addition to the strategic creativity that you bring to every project. Whether working on your own or in a collaborative environment, you will need to keep abreast of software and technological advances; maintain clean and well-organized source files; and possess a working knowledge of current code standards.



When your team believes in what they do, nothing is out of reach. We're at the ready to help you achieve every goal you have.

As the Internet and the function and use of online media develops, the tools that are used to create them develop too. As the subject area advances it is becoming more complex, usually requiring the need for teams as opposed to a sole worker.

Teams often include a web designer, who will focus on visual elements such as color theory, typography, composition, etc., and how the page will work. They often know little or no code. A developer will write the code; front-end developers will use CSS, HTML, JavaScript, etc., and back-end developers will use database management, etc. And finally, UX, which stands for user experience. This role is heavily research-led, focusing on user behavior and motivation, investigating business and users, and verifying the design decisions to make the site functional rather than attractive.

There is no "correct" way of making a website; in fact you will find web designers and developers that approach it in all manner of ways. However, it is important that you understand the tools that are used in all stages of the process, and how to provide files to each member of the team involved.

Adobe Illustrator is a vector-based drawing application for creating graphics that are used in print and/or on the Web. Web designers use this application for the rapid creation of wireframe layouts and flowcharts (exported and shared with the client as PDF files).

Illustrator can also be used for rendering graphics that are incorporated into websites, such as logos or icons, because it's more efficient and intuitive to create complex graphics in Illustrator than it is in Photoshop.

File set-up: RGB color mode, with "pixel" as the unit of measurement, and 72ppi (screen/web resolution).

Create your artworks in Illustrator at the size they will be used, paying special attention to generating shapes that remain within the pixel-based grid structure. Then copy your artworks from Illustrator and paste into Photoshop as "Smart Objects," which preserves their ability to be edited or updated at a future time.

Adobe Photoshop is used by the web designer to visualize the site, but it is the developer who will be responsible for "slicing up" and coding the web page layout, and for this reason they also need a working familiarity of Photoshop. Industry-wide, this is why most request that the final files, from designer to developer, be supplied in a layered Photoshop (PSD) file.

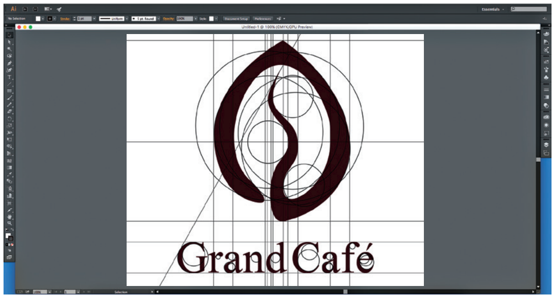
File set-up: RGB color mode, with "pixel" as the unit of measurement, 72ppi (screen/web resolution), and the desired length-width dimensions.

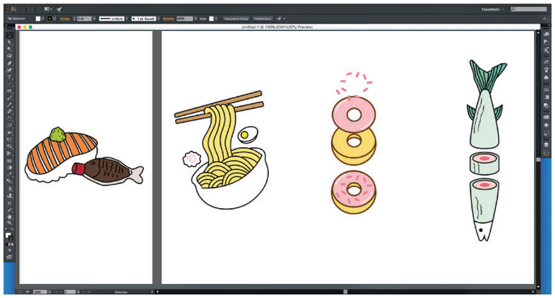
Layered PSD files can often grow to more than 100 layers, with elements present across different views. Even when relabeling and organizing your layers into a coherent structure, it can be quite complicated to work with the file. Photoshop's Layer Comp feature lets you take snapshot views depicting which elements are visible/hidden when viewing a specific web page.

Adobe Photoshop
As with the other Adobe applications, the appearance and positioning of the palettes, toolbars, and document windows on a website mock-up can be adjusted to suit your individual preferences. The default layout is optimized for working on a laptop, but can be expanded to take advantage of larger monitor sizes.

Photoshop file etiquette
This website offers a valuable lesson in organizing and labeling your Photoshop files for working in a collaborative environment.
www.photoshopetiquette.com

Adobe TV
Online video tutorials relating to all Adobe products are an excellent resource for discovering features that have been added to recent software releases.
www.tv.adobe.com





Illustrator is an ideal application for drawing and modifying letterforms and vectors. Live, editable text can be converted into vector shapes from original sketches and further modified to create unique visuals. In this example the Grand Café logo has been drawn systematically with shapes from the letterforms.

Big or small
These images of food have been drawn in Illustrator as vector-based illustrations that can be used for a variety of applications—scaled larger or smaller with no loss of image quality.

Generating pixel-perfect artwork

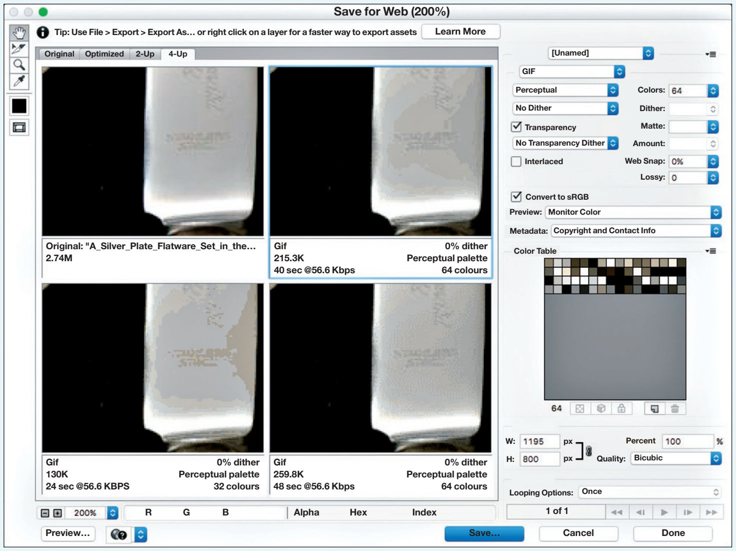
Illustrator will let you render graphics that can break from a pixel-based grid. For example, if you created an icon that was 20 by 20 pixels and, later, manually resized it using the bounding box, the resulting dimensions may become fractions of a pixel (30.565 by 30.565 pixels). While it may look fine in Illustrator, when you placed the artwork into Photoshop (or export it for the Web), the artwork will become aliased (or feathered), as opposed to maintaining a crisp edge. Web designers maintain a pixel-based grid in Illustrator by working with the grid turned on (View > "Show Grid"), based on one-pixel integers (Illustrator > Preferences > Guides & Grid > "Gridline every: 10px/subdivisions: 10"); using the dialog box to define the desired width/length dimensions of rendered shapes; and reviewing the dimensions in the Properties panel to make sure that any resized shapes remain comprised of solid integer values.

Exporting graphic elements

Until you get a feel for which specific file format you should use, you can take advantage of the "Save for Web" export feature in the applications described to preview the visual results, while making sure that the file size stays as low as possible. The file sizes of images included in a web page layout will have a direct impact on a web page's loading time.

GIF and PNG Traditionally used for buttons, logos, and simple artwork, GIFs tend to yield smaller file sizes, while PNGs tend to provide better visual results. Both of these file formats support transparency (if needed). GIF also supports animated content (banner ads).

JPEG Primarily used for optimizing photographic images. Usually, the default 80% quality setting generates the best result without loss of image detail. Avoid using a 90% or higher quality setting, since this may actually increase file size.



Tip: Use File > Export > Export As... or right click on a layer for a faster way to export assets

Original: "A_Silver_Plate_Flatware_Set_in_the...
2.74M

Gif
215.3K
40 sec @56.6 Kbps
0% dither
Perceptual palette
64 colours

Gif
130K
24 sec @56.6 KBPS
0% dither
Perceptual palette
32 colours

Gif
259.8K
48 sec @56.6 Kbps
0% dither
Perceptual palette
64 colours

[Unamed]
GIF
Perceptual
Colors: 64
No Dither
Dither:
☑ Transparency
Matte:
No Transparency Dither
Amount:
☐ Interlaced
Web Snap: 0%
Lossy: 0
☑ Convert to sRGB
Preview: Monitor Color
Metadata: Copyright and Contact Info
64
W: 1195 px
H: 800 px
Percent 100 %
Quality: Bicubic
Looping Options: Once
1 of 1
200%

Visual compression
Photoshop's "Save for Web" feature gives you the ability to review different image compression options to see how they will affect your original image. Using their "4 up" display tab (as shown), you can visually compare the compression results and the corresponding file sizes. Your goal is to reduce the file size as much as possible without reducing the visual integrity of your image. Additional features available in this interface include image resizing, as well as image compression to match a specified file size—typically used for creating banner ads.

Coding

Web pages are usually made up of textual documents, which are annotated in a specific manner indicating to the web browser how they should be displayed—this is known as coding. The most common language used is HTML. Extra stylistic methods such as CSS and JavaScript can be applied along with the backbone of HTML to improve the look and feel of web pages.

HTML and CSS To use an architectural reference, the combination of HTML and CSS creates a complete house. The HTML represents the structure of the building, while the CSS is used to define the visual appearance.

A benefit of obtaining a basic comprehension of the programming language HTML is that it provides a means to create the skeleton and structure of text-based information, images, and interactions contained in your site. As with any technology, HTML is always on the verge of an upgrade. The newer HTML5 builds on the HTML4.1 code structure, while organizing the code differently, based on revised semantics, as opposed to the traditional structure of "head," "body," and so on. HTML5 also adds animation that is controlled programmatically—replacing the reliance on additional programs for animation and effects such as sliding elements, color cycling, and 3D extrude effects.

The positive of achieving a level of familiarity with CSS is that the style sheet language (written in HTML) provides flexibility in the presentational look and formatting of the design. CSS code is more versatile (and more complex) than HTML, but CSS cannot live alone without the HTML. It would be like trying to paint a wall that does not exist.

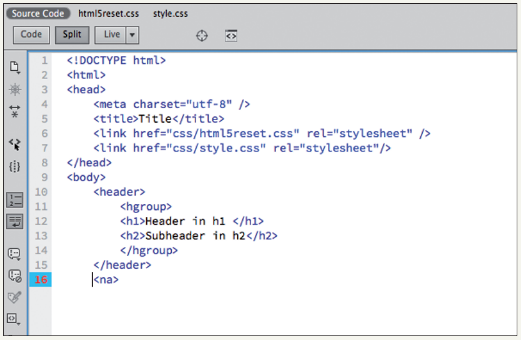
CSS has evolved over the years to not only define the style elements of a specific web page, but to be used as an external library of stylistic definitions for an entire website. This strategy allows developers to make modifications quickly, and have them applied globally.

While "living" in a separate file, the use of CSS also helps speed up the loading time of a web page, reducing the amount of code that the viewer's browser must download for each page.

Designers should endeavor to learn even the very basics of HTML and CSS, since these coding structures have been with us for quite some time and it is likely that you will come across them in your workload. However, as Content management systems (CMS) and templates are becoming prominent due to their ease of use, there are ways around not even looking at code. Adobe Dreamweaver CC, for example, now has CMS built in, which makes site construction more straightforward.

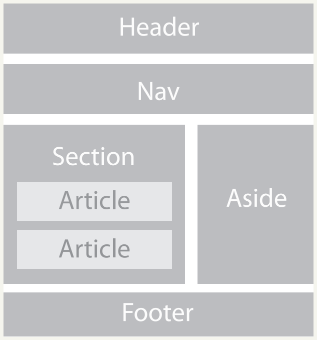
JavaScript framework Scripts are another kind of web language, which sits externally to your site, and is referenced in the code, defining how the website behaves and functions in response to certain click requests sent by the user. MooTools, Scriptalicious, and jQuery are lead examples of libraries within the JavaScript framework. Animated slideshows, Apple-style touch interactions, and display/hide content options are examples of functionality that can be added to a website through scripts.

Animate CC /ActionScript Animate CC, previously known as Flash, is a timeline-based application that can be used for animating vector content. It is supported by a robust back-end programming language called ActionScript. For a long time, animation and design in Flash were considered essential skills for web designers and developers, and it is still widely popular. Today, emerging languages/formats such as HTML5, CSS, and JavaScript are gaining traction in creating presentations that used to be only feasible in Flash. However, learning to use the updated Animate CC is still an important skill to understand the concepts and practice of timeline-based animation.



```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
    <meta charset="utf-8" />
    <title>Title</title>
    <link href="css/html5reset.css" rel="stylesheet" />
    <link href="css/style.css" rel="stylesheet"/>
</head>
<body>
    <header>
        <hgroup>
        <h1>Header in h1 </h1>
        <h2>Subheader in h2</h2>
        </hgroup>
    </header>
    <na>
```

Website code
HTML code is an organized structure of opening and closing tags that tells your browser how to present your site content.



Website structure
This diagram shows the typical organizational structure of an HTML document.

Code academy
A highly regarded resource providing free, step-by-step, online courses in Web Fundamentals to introduce novices to coding using HTML and CSS.
www.codecademy.com

SEE ALSO: FLOWCHARTS AND WIREFRAMES, P160

Dreamweaver Adobe Dreamweaver is the HTML/CSS editor of choice for creating web pages. It remains the industry standard because it generates the cleanest code.

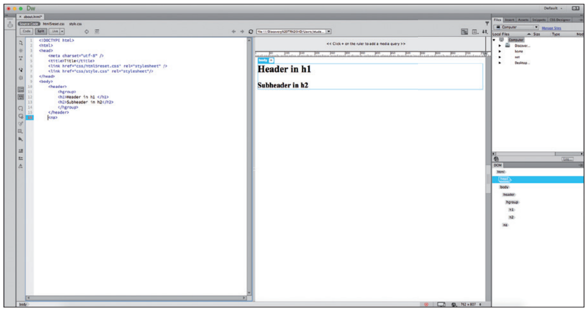
Adobe Muse Adobe Muse is a part of Adobe Creative Cloud, and enables designers to build websites without writing a single line of code. The application functionality is extended due to its capacity to use HTML5 scripts via use of Widgets. The Widgets library can be extended with new scripts downloaded from the developer's website (http://resources.muse.adobe.com/collections/widgets). Adobe Muse works seamlessly on all platforms and across all new versions of web browsers. One of its main features is the implementation of Master Pages, responsive design, and the use of Scroll Effects.

InDesign Adobe InDesign, a vector-based application for creating multi-page documents, can now be used to produce iPad apps. Apps can include audio, video, touch-based interaction, alternate layouts (based on device orientation), and other interactive features.

Bootstrap and Foundation Before major developments, browsing the web on mobile phones or any smart device other than a computer was a challenge. Besides all the different formats of different devices manipulating the look and use of a site, it also introduced content-parity problems as the change in device often meant that information was hidden or skewed. Speed was also an issue, as loading a lot of content drinks your mobile Internet data fast. Ethan Marcotte decided to challenge these issues by proposing to use the same content, but the coding would offer different layouts for the design on each device. He coined the term Responsive Web Design.

HTML and CSS are still used in responsive design, so it is more of a conceptual advancement than a technical one. For a web designer, responsive means mocking up multiple layouts for multiple devices. For the client, it means it works on the phone. For a developer, it is the way in which images are served, download speeds, semantics, mobile/desktop first, and more. The main benefit here is the content parity, meaning that the same website works everywhere.

Bootstrap (available in Dreamweaver CC) and Foundation are both front-end frameworks that handle responsive design tools that allow you to build a site in one format (it is advisable to always start with the computer screen) which automatically reformats your designs for multiple devices. The downside is that designs often look the same and designers still can't access them without knowing how the code works, so it is usually left to a developer.



```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
    <meta charset="utf-8" />
    <title>Title</title>
    <link href="css/html5reset.css" rel="stylesheet" />
    <link href="css/style.css" rel="stylesheet"/>
</head>
<body>
    <header>
        <hgroup>
        <h1>Header in h1 </h1>
        <h2>Subheader in h2</h2>
        </hgroup>
    </header>
    <na>
```

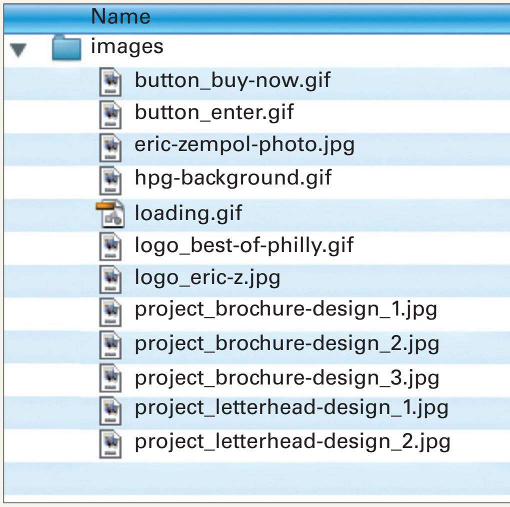
Adobe Dreamweaver
The Dreamweaver interface can be adjusted to preview the appearance of the web page, a code-only view, or a combination of both.

SEE ALSO: RESPONSIVE DESIGN AND DISPLAY SIZES, P169

File-naming conventions

When creating graphics for the Web, all files should be named using criteria that both facilitate proper image indexing by the search engines and correspond with accessibility requirements for special needs visitors. Naming your source files properly will save you from having to rename them each time you export your images.

- Always use lowercase letters.
- Never use spaces.
- Use a hyphen (-) to separate word combinations.
- Use an underscore (_) to separate concepts.
- Do not use periods, commas, or any other characters.
- Use keywords and/or descriptive phrasing that corresponds with the project's established taxonomy.
- Source files can also be dated (012313) when maintaining version control is a concern.

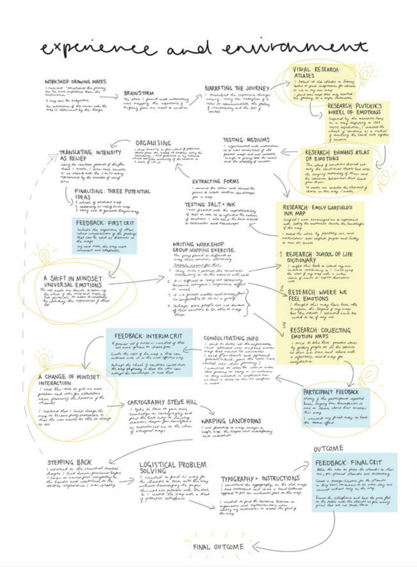


Name
images
button_buy-now.gif
button_enter.gif
eric-zempol-photo.jpg
hpg-background.gif
loading.gif
logo_best-of-philly.gif
logo_eric-z.jpg
project_brochure-design_1.jpg
project_brochure-design_2.jpg
project_brochure-design_3.jpg
project_letterhead-design_1.jpg
project_letterhead-design_2.jpg

PART 2 | PRACTICE
CHAPTER 7 | WEB DESIGN
MODULE 4 | **INITIAL CONSULTATIONS**

INITIAL CONSULTATIONS

Web designers are usually invited to preliminary client consultations, where they can provide insight into the project's development based on their previous experiences. They assist in defining the technical requirements and content organization, in addition to visual approaches.


experience and environment
WORKSHOP: DRAWING MAZES
BRAINSTORM
NARRATING THE JOURNEY
VISUAL RESEARCH: ATLASES
RESEARCH: PLUTCHIK'S WHEEL OF EMOTIONS
ORGANISING
TESTING: MEDIUMS
TRANSLATING: INTENSITY AS RELIEF
RESEARCH: EHMANS ATLAS OF EMOTIONS
EXTRACTING FORMS
FINALISING: THREE POTENTIAL IDEAS
TESTING: SALT + INK
RESEARCH: EMILY GARFIELD'S INK MAP
FEEDBACK: FIRST CRIT
WRITING WORKSHOP: GROUP MAPPING EXERCISE
1. RESEARCH: SCHOOL OF LIFE DICTIONARY
A SHIFT IN MINDSET: UNIVERSAL EMOTIONS
2. RESEARCH: WHERE WE FEEL EMOTIONS
3. RESEARCH: COLLECTING EMOTION MAPS
FEEDBACK: INTERIM CRIT
CONSOLIDATING INFO
A CHANGE OF MINDSET: INTERACTION
PARTICIPANT FEEDBACK
CARTOGRAPHY STEVE HILL
WARPING LANDFORMS
OUTCOME
STEPPING BACK
LOGISTICAL PROBLEM SOLVING
TYPOGRAPHY + INSTRUCTIONS
FEEDBACK: FINAL CRIT
FINAL OUTCOME

Meeting tips

- Limit the number of detailed questions you ask. Most clients won't be prepared to focus on specifics at this time.
- Avoid relying on technical jargon.
- Take thorough notes. Nothing communicates the fact that you value your client's time more than pausing to document the points they are discussing.
- Actively listen. Ask your prepared questions and listen to your client's replies. Brainstorm in your own time as part of the proposal process.

These meetings—which are usually limited to an hour-long discussion—can take place in the agency, at the client's location, or via conference call. The purpose of this initial discussion is to meet the client and understand their goals for the project. Follow-up meetings may be required to address specific items, but the focus of this step is to clearly define the project requirements for the development proposal.

Preparation

Before you attend the first meeting, make sure you have a basic understanding of the project. Different project structures (see pages 150–151) will require that you ask different questions.

Prior to the initial consultation, it is common to ask clients to submit six websites for review.

- **Three competitor websites**
  In reviewing these sites, as well as the comments on what the client liked/disliked, a designer can see how high (or low) the bar has been set for defining the anticipated complexity of the project. The designer can also reference technical features, such as banner advertising, e-commerce functionality, social media integration, and mailing list opt-ins, which will be discussed in the initial consultation.

- **Three esthetic reference websites**
  These websites are supplied to efficiently communicate the client's thoughts on the visual styling of their own project. As with the competitor websites, a short dialog should be supplied that defines what they liked/disliked about the designs. While the goal is not to replicate an existing website, a designer can use this information to derive appropriate design cues, such as color palette, layout structure, typographic styling, and use of imagery.

Consultation topics

Project goals Ask questions that guide your client through explaining who they are and defining their current business challenges.

- What is the website supposed to do for your business?
- What sets your company apart from your competition?
- Is clearly defining the benefits and features of your organization a challenging task?
- Who are the decision-makers on this project?

Metrics/RODI Understanding how a client will determine the success of their project and the return on their design investment (RODI) will help you determine the items that will require your focus.

- Increase in sales? Social media following? Site traffic?
- Increase in email newsletter registration?
- How will clients find your website?

Technical requirements Use "plain-speak" to ask questions that define the technical features for the project. From reviewing the competitors' websites, you should

have compiled a basic list of items that will be discussed. In addition, you can draw from your own expertise to recommend new features and approaches that may benefit your client.

- How do you currently communicate with clients?
- How often will your website need to be updated? By whom?
- Will you be selling items directly from your website?

Scope The size of a website has a direct impact on the project pricing. Guide your client through defining the different sections and subsections of the site. For reference, it can help to review the navigational taxonomy of their competitors' websites. This will serve as the first step for creating the initial flowchart (see pages 144–145).

- Define the sections and subsections of your website.

Additionally, determining your client's level of preparedness will assist you in scheduling the project's development, by clearly defining the client-supplied deliverables.

- For a new site: how much time will you require to generate the dialog (text) that will be presented throughout your site?
- For a site redesign: how much of your current site dialog/imagery will remain the same (or be changed) in the revised site?
- Will your website require photography/illustrations? Will you be supplying these items or will you require my assistance?

Turnaround You should have an idea of a comfortable development timeframe for developing a project at your own pace. If you do not, make an estimate, then triple it, to include time for unforeseen delays, as well as client delays. A shorter turnaround time requires that you be more aggressive in managing the development of the project.

- Do you require the site to launch by a specific date?
- Is this date flexible or does this date correspond with an event?

Budget Don't be afraid to ask this question before you go through the process of crafting a thoughtful proposal. Some clients will be upfront about their budget range. Some will have no idea. Others will prefer that you define your pricing range—so you should give this some thought prior to your initial conversation.

Closing the meeting

The meeting closes with a recap of the current actionable points.

The designer follows up by emailing a list of questions that the client was not able to answer. The designer also explains the next step, which could be a more detailed conversation or submission of the project proposal, which incorporates the points raised in the client consultation.

Previous project examples A useful way to support a project consultation is by talking through the stages of a previous project. This gives your client a clear overview of the way you work and why you make the design decisions you do. It's also helpful to know what will work for your client, and equally what won't. Remember, each client should be treated individually, as every client has different wants and needs.

Research consultations Research consultations with clients and other members of the design team work hand in hand with visual research. Whether it be hand-rendering typography or pinning examples to the wall for an overview, these conversations are vital to get the most out of your design.

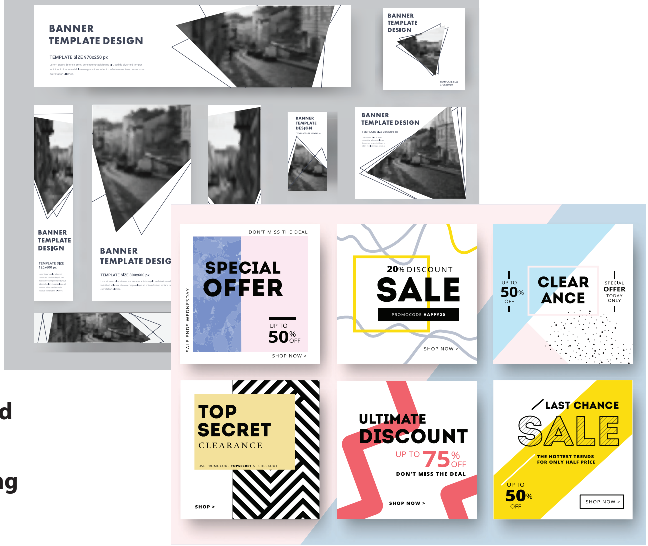
Smashing idea SmashingMagazine.com offers many resources that relate to questionnaires and project checklists, specific to varying project structures.

Plan B If the client's budget is unrealistically low, be prepared to offer an alternative solution, such as a DIY service from a web host (or WordPress.com). It's not only polite, but it's good business. Once they grow frustrated by the limitations, they will often return to you.

PART 2 PRACTICE
CHAPTER 7 WEB DESIGN

MODULE 5 INFORMATION ARCHITECTURE (IA)

The information architecture (IA) of a website is a major component of designing the overall user experience (UX). It is a balance of the intrinsic nature of a website and established user expectations, combined with your client's overall goals. This is the practical and functional expertise that a web designer brings to a website development project and has a strong impact on the perceived success of the endeavor.



Define the critical pathways

Defining the critical pathways of a website involves understanding the goals for the project and making them clear to the audience. This is achieved by presenting clear calls to action within the page layout, or guiding your viewers through the navigational structure in order to quickly and easily locate the content.

Navigation

There are no set rules on how to construct the navigation of a site due to the variety in site requirements. Some may need a few main pages and some hundreds. Some may require different navigations for different types of users. However, it is important to avoid presenting too many different navigational options, which may leave your audience confused about which link they should click on next. Instead, use visual cues (such as prominence, positioning, and/or scale differences) to visually guide your audience through your site's navigational options. Group similarly themed secondary pages together into subsections and present them using a drop-down (or fly-out) navigational structure.

It is worth considering the use of primary and secondary navigation, especially if the website is large. Primary navigation will point the user in the direction of the content that they came to the site for. Secondary navigation is for any additional information needed through navigation that does not serve the primary goal of the site. This could include "About us" or "FAQs," and be in a footer or below the main emphasis of a site.

Create polite user experiences

A "polite website" reacts the way your audience expects. When users click on a hyperlink, they expect a new web page to load in the same browser window. If your navigation element launches a new browser window (popup) or abruptly launches an application like Adobe Acrobat (or your email client), it is considered polite to warn your audience what to expect when they interact with that specific link. Vary the color of visited hyperlinks to let visitors see where they have already been within your website. Avoid using the underline decoration style for non-hyperlinked items. Let users control their own audio/video experience. Don't force audio/video elements to auto-play as the page initially loads.

Present digestible content

While it is rarely the role of a web designer, you will often be asked to support clients in crafting dialog for their websites. Remember, online audiences are on the hunt for information. They approach a web page via the navigation structure, headlines, and subheadings, before eventually landing on the desired content.

- Use descriptive keywords in your navigational taxonomy. Avoid generic names like "products" or "services." Select words that more accurately relate to your client's business. For supporting information (Contact, About us), it is considered appropriate to employ the traditional naming conventions.
- Use visual devices like headlines, subheadings, lists, and call-out text to guide your viewers through the information.

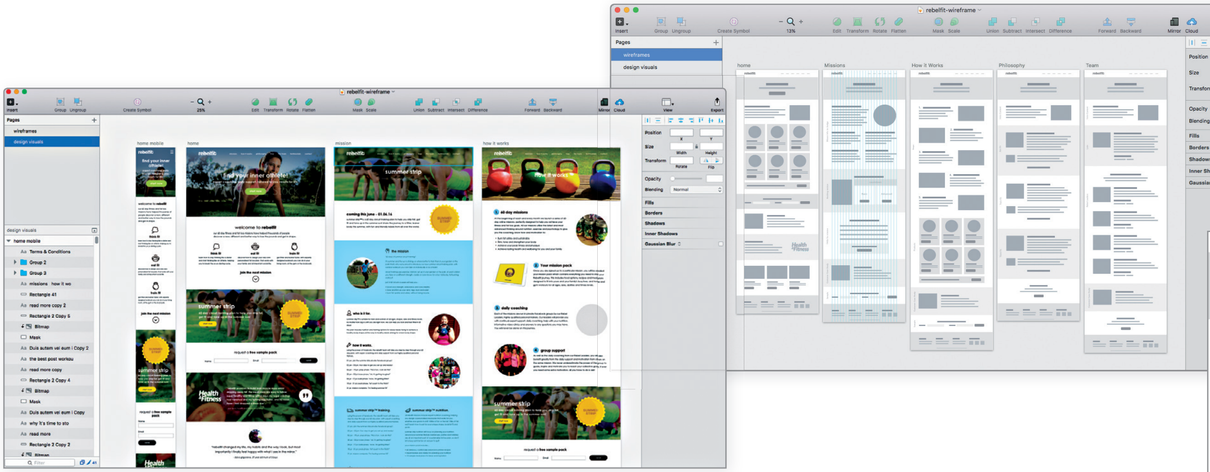
Banner ads Banner ads are used around web-page content to promote and sell products and services. Whether you choose a subtle or vibrant palette, it is important to consider how advertisements sit around other content on the web page. Consider the hierarchy of information and the visibility of the call to action.

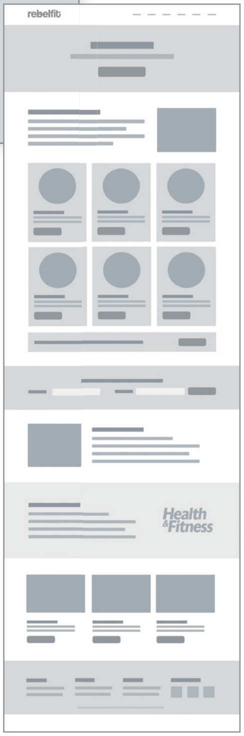
Reduce the number of clicks

Try to limit the number of links that your typical viewer would have to click through in order to get to the information you want them to have.

Usability

Jakob Nielsen is widely recognized as an authority in web usability. His website presents findings from many usability studies. www.useit.com





Hierarchy When creating mock-ups for any website or mobile app it is important to think about the hierarchy of information. What is most important, what do you want the viewer to get from the site, what are your main goals/calls to action? Once you have questions like this confirmed through research and conversations with the client, your hierarchy should be a factor in all of your design decisions.

- Be up front in your dialog. Your first page should contain the most important information that your viewers are hunting for. Stay on point by defining what the product/service is, what it is used for, and how it will benefit your client's site visitors.
- Review your site dialog and infuse it with relevant keywords. Within reason, limit the number of pronouns—he, she, it, they—in favor of including the actual names. This will help your site generate higher organic rankings from the search engines.
- Keep your paragraph text short and concise. Avoid compound sentence structures. Divide long paragraphs into smaller groupings of sentences.
- Use bulleted (unordered) or alphanumeric (ordered) lists to allow your audience faster access to the information they are seeking. Additionally, these lists facilitate comprehension between groupings of similarly themed items (bulleted list) or an implied sequential order (lettered/numbered list).

Establish structure and visual hierarchy

Divide your layout into clearly defined content areas. Create visual relationships by grouping themed items together (for example, a list of recent news items). Vary the scale of your type. The traditional size for paragraph type should be 11–13 points. Headline and subheading type should be presented proportionately larger, in order to make it stand out. Limit the use of bold or italic formatting, only using this to provide occasional emphasis within paragraph text. Controlled and generous vertical white space within a web page layout is fundamental for segmenting content areas and helping to control visual noise within your compositional structure.

Banner ads

Most websites that feature banner advertising comply with the established standard ad options (defined by the Interactive Advertising Bureau), and there are specifications relating to dimensions and file size limitations. While the range of sizes continues to evolve, these are the most common formats. They are measured in pixels, at screen resolution (72ppi), in RGB color mode, with the maximum file size indicated. Visit the Interactive Advertising Bureau, a professional association for online advertising that works to define the standards for the industry as it changes over time (www.iab.net/guidelines). The website is a great resource for locating current ad standards and creative guidelines.

Be inspired

Innovation in web design is driven by the desire to create a better user experience (UX), not just change with the goal of appearing to be different. Review the websites that you visit most often and question everything. Look for patterns and similarities. Adopt (or reject) any trends as you deem appropriate.

PART 2 | PRACTICE
CHAPTER 7 | WEB DESIGN
MODULE 6 | FLOWCHARTS AND WIREFRAMES

Flowcharts and wireframes enable both designer and client to visualize the structure of a website and throw light on possible problems. It is recommended that both are tackled before the project begins and are included in the project development contract.

Flowcharts

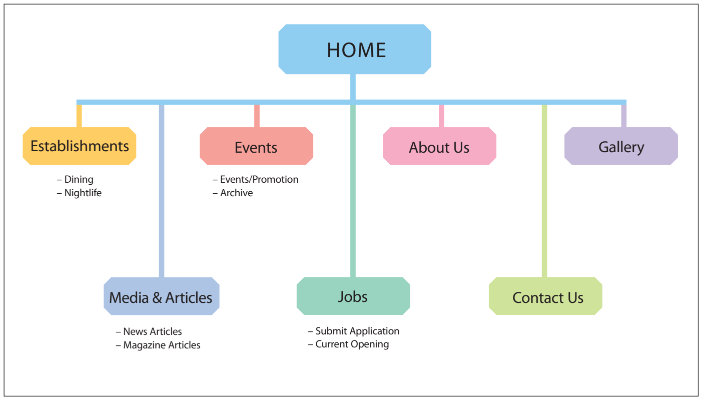
In the initial planning phase, flowcharts are created to illustrate the navigational structure of the website, the critical pathways for the site audience, and to define the overall scope of the project. These foundation elements are used in establishing a meeting of the minds between the designer and the client.

Experienced web designers will caution you not to skip this step. Having a visual representation of the website's structure will facilitate discussions relating to detailed considerations that clients may not be able to immediately grasp. Work with your client to establish what pages are needed, write them on cards, and physically decide upon a framework together before you take it onto the computer.

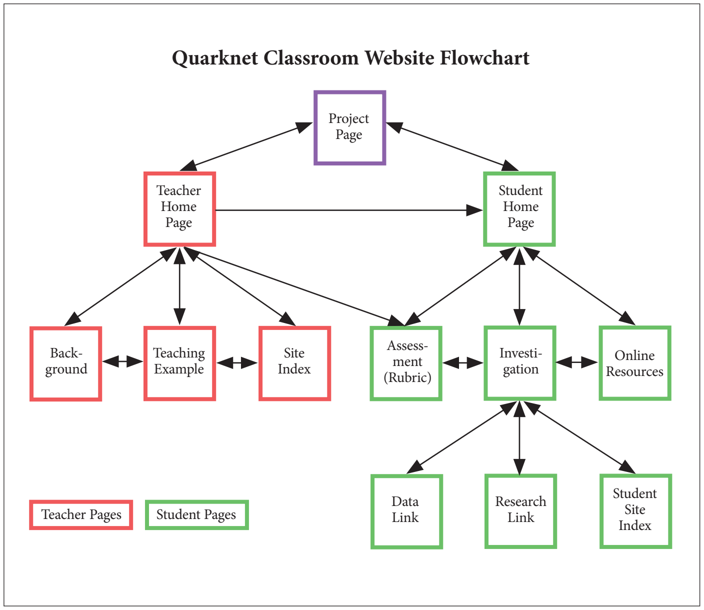
Navigation structure By presenting a flowchart with the defined navigational structure, the client can review the specific taxonomy and the presentation order of the links, as well as the distribution of content among primary, secondary, and tertiary page structures.

For example, does a primary page ("Our Services") present an overview of the content found on the secondary pages (each of the services)? Or will it serve as the first page for the section (service #1) and provide links to the other, secondary pages?

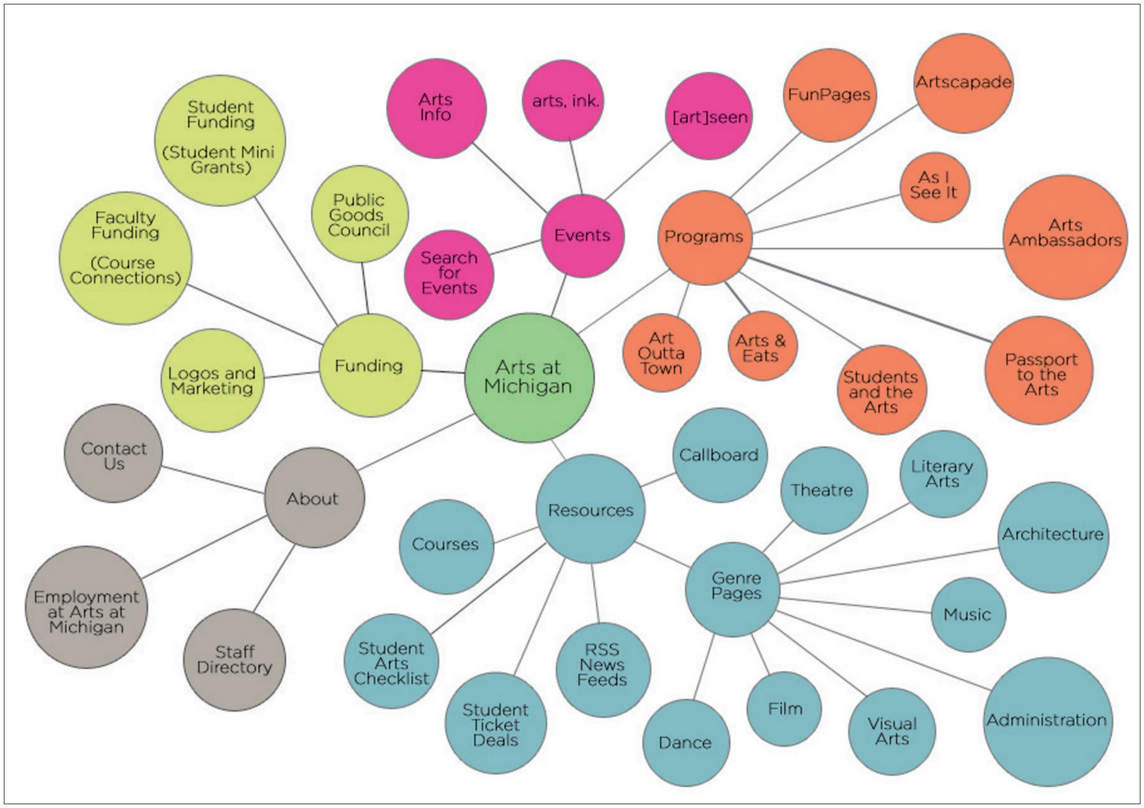
Critical pathways Every website has a purpose and the client's goals for their site should have been defined clearly in the Q+A phase, via the Client Questionnaire (see page 145). In creating a flowchart, the designer's


HOME
Establishments
– Dining
– Nightlife
Events
– Events/Promotion
– Archive
About Us
Gallery
Media & Articles
– News Articles
– Magazine Articles
Jobs
– Submit Application
– Current Opening
Contact Us

⬆⬇ **Critical pathways** Working with flowcharts and diagrams to help visualize the hierarchy and connections between different pages or areas might seem unnecessarily excessive. However, this is a simple and valuable way of making sure that all aspects of the common-sense organization of your site have been fulfilled and nothing is accidentally overlooked. Working in this manner helps to explain planned connections to your client and also helps to confirm the minimum number of steps necessary to get from one page or area to another. This is an important factor, since you don't want your client to lose their audience within an overly complex navigation system.


Quarknet Classroom Website Flowchart

Project Page
Teacher Home Page
Student Home Page
Back-ground
Teaching Example
Site Index
Assess-ment (Rubric)
Investi-gation
Online Resources
Data Link
Research Link
Student Site Index
Teacher Pages
Student Pages


Student Funding (Student Mini Grants)
Arts Info
arts, ink.
[art]seen
FunPages
Artscapade
Faculty Funding (Course Connections)
Public Goods Council
Events
Search for Events
Programs
As I See It
Arts Ambassadors
Funding
Logos and Marketing
Arts at Michigan
Art Outta Town
Arts & Eats
Students and the Arts
Passport to the Arts
Contact Us
About
Callboard
Theatre
Literary Arts
Resources
Courses
Architecture
Genre Pages
Employment at Arts at Michigan
Music
Staff Directory
Student Arts Checklist
RSS News Feeds
Student Ticket Deals
Film
Visual Arts
Dance
Administration

Communicating visually Flowcharts are an efficient way to communicate the scope and organization of a web project. This example uses color to define related sections, and change in scale to identify the critical pathways within the website structure.

goal is to limit the number of pages that a visitor must view before arriving at the desired content or call to action. A generally accepted rule of thumb is three clicks or fewer. However, some calls to action can be incorporated, globally, into the site layout. For example, it would be more efficient to list out the desired contact information on every page, as opposed to isolating it on the "Contact us" page. Footers, located at the bottom of a website, are particularly good areas to repeat information. Once users have established what is in the footer it will become a point of quick navigation.

Project scope In providing a visual representation that defines the size of the project, all parties involved will be able to review the anticipated scope. If the project is amended—as they often are—both parties can refer to the previously approved flowchart to discuss how this may affect project pricing and turnaround.

GLOSSARY

Flowchart: A visual organizational tool used to plan the structure of a website.

Wireframe: A basic grid framework for a web page on which design elements are positioned.

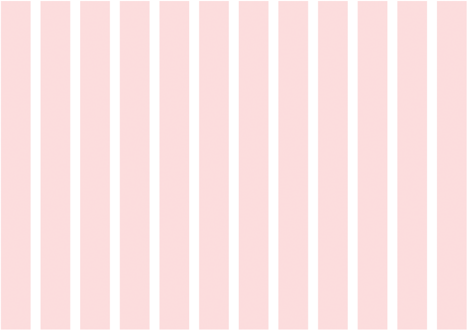
Useful links

960 Grid System
Download free templates that feature a structural layout grid based on 960 pixels.
www.960.gs

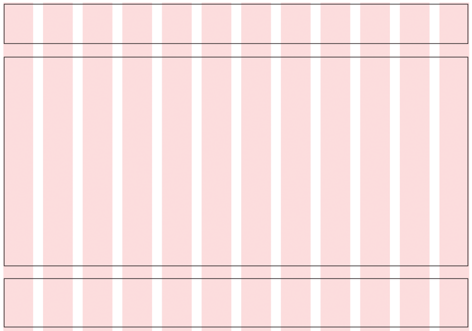
Wirify This free, browser-based app lets you convert any web page into a wireframe view. This can be quite helpful for seeing how existing sites are structurally organized.
www.wirify.com

I (Heart) Wireframes
A Tumblog for wireframe strategy with many examples of how designers are using wireframes to define their projects.
wireframes.tumblr.com/

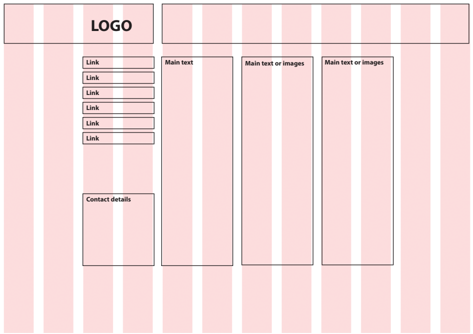
SEE ALSO: PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS OVERVIEW, P144



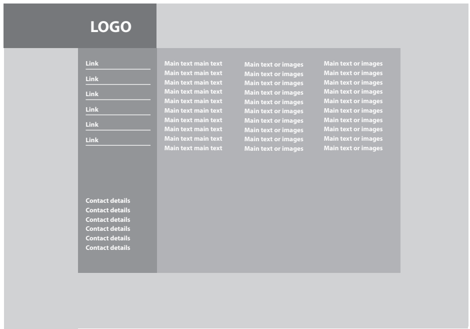
The grid A 12-column grid is a common starting point in a website design due to the principles of web standards (see page 147). By aligning elements to a structured grid, the coders will have an easier time bringing your project to fruition.



Establishing visual hierarchy Define content regions for the elements of your layout. Balance spatial relationships with the goals of presenting content in a hierarchical form.



Incorporate text and navigational elements Consider the critical pathways through the website. Guide your audience through these pathways by making options clear, using changes of scale and visual prominence.



Grayscale values Assigning corresponding grayscale values will help you check that you are presenting your content with the appropriate level of contrast. As color palettes can be modified as project development continues, you can refer back to your grayscale wireframe to determine the appropriate values that will work with your layout.

Wireframes

The wireframe is a purposefully under-designed representation of the layout structure of a website's main pages. Similar to an architectural blueprint, it incorporates all structural elements, as well as defining the visual hierarchy and their proportional relationships within the layout. With a reduced focus on visual style choices, both the designer and the client can have productive discussions that relate to the layout structure without getting stuck on visual distractions such as typefaces or color choices.

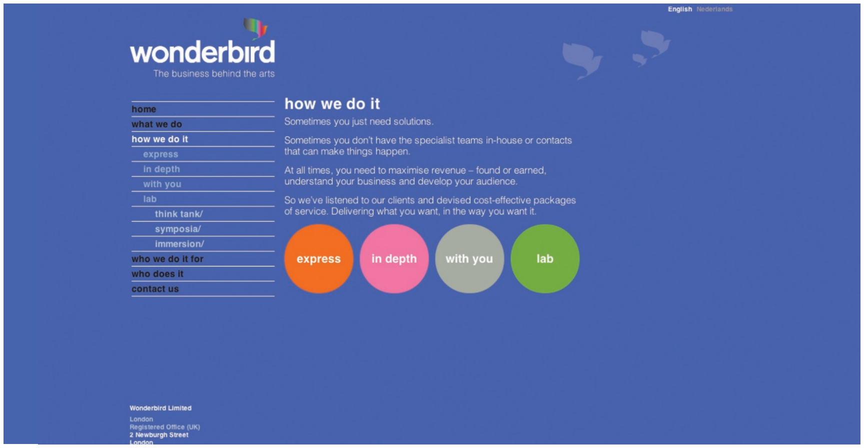
Traditionally, wireframes are created in Adobe Illustrator, because designers are already familiar with it, approaches can be revised quickly, and the artwork that it generates can be imported directly into Photoshop when they are ready to begin the visual design process.

Start with a grid Most web designers use the 960 Grid System, a streamlined approach to web development using common dimensions based on a width of 960 pixels, which can be divided into a series of equal columns (8 columns, 12 columns, 16 columns). See Web Standards on page147 for more information.

Add regions Insert a series of boxes into your grid that will define the different content areas of your layout, from logo and navigation placement, through the body content, down to the footer area. These boxes should serve to define the proportional relationships between content within your layout.

Add typography Define the visual hierarchy between type elements within your layout. Create proportional relationships among your headline and subhead type to guide your viewer through the content. Mix it up and establish a flow. Traditionally, lines (instead of actual words) are used to represent lines of smaller, body copy.

Add links Define the interactive elements. Will the main navigation menu feature drop-down menus? Will the layout feature buttons, text-based links, or a combination of both? At this stage you are not defining the visual appearance of these links, just their form through annotation.


English Nederlands
wonderbird
The business behind the arts
home
what we do
how we do it
express
in depth
with you
lab
think tank/
symposia/
immersion/
who we do it for
who does it
contact us
express
in depth
with you
lab

how we do it

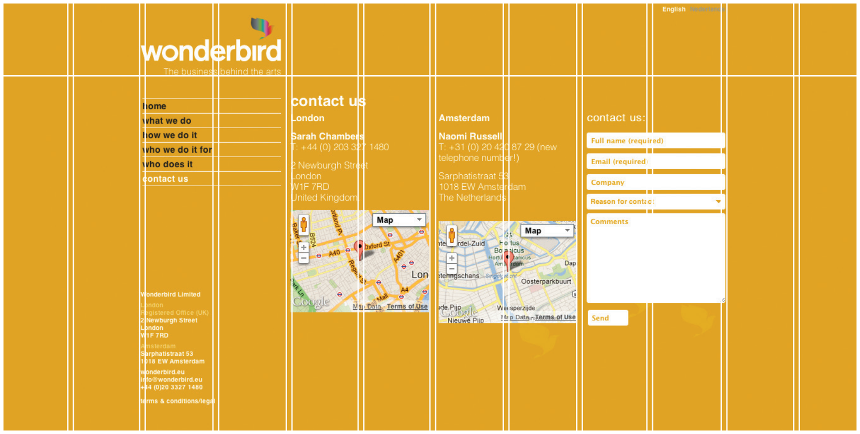
Sometimes you just need solutions.

Sometimes you don't have the specialist teams in-house or contacts that can make things happen.

At all times, you need to maximise revenue – found or earned, understand your business and develop your audience.

So we've listened to our clients and devised cost-effective packages of service. Delivering what you want, in the way you want it.

Wonderbird Limited
London
Registered Office (UK)
2 Newburgh Street
London


English Nederlands
wonderbird
The business behind the arts
home
what we do
how we do it
who we do it for
who does it
contact us
Map
Google
Map Data - Terms of Use
Map
Google
Map Data - Terms of Use
Send

contact us

London

Sarah Chambers
T: +44 (0) 203 327 1480

2 Newburgh Street
London
W1F 7RD
United Kingdom

Amsterdam

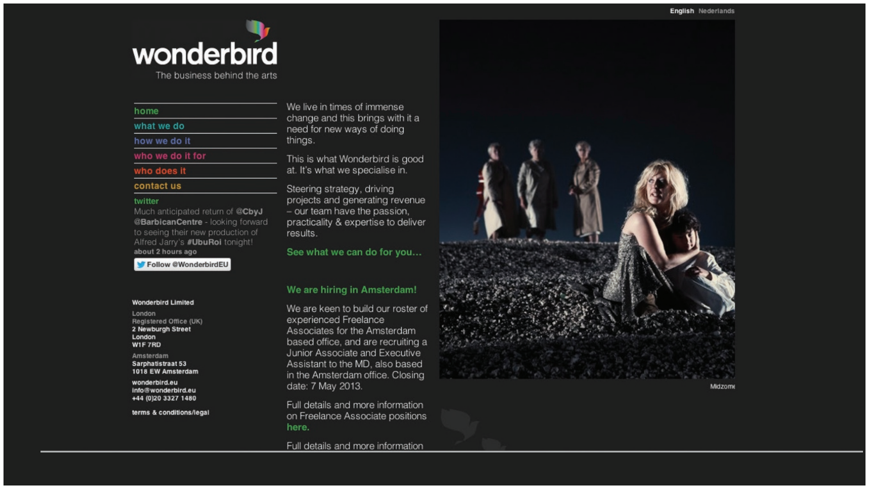
Naomi Russell
T: +31 (0) 20 420 87 29 (new telephone number!)

Sarphatistraat 53
1018 EW Amsterdam
The Netherlands

contact us:

Full name (required)
Email (required)
Company
Reason for contact
Comments

Wonderbird Limited
London
Registered Office (UK)
2 Newburgh Street
London
W1F 7RD
Amsterdam
Sarphatistraat 53
1018 EW Amsterdam
wonderbird.eu
info@wonderbird.eu
+44 (0)20 3327 1480
terms & conditions/legal


English Nederlands
wonderbird
The business behind the arts
home
what we do
how we do it
who we do it for
who does it
contact us
twitter
Follow @WonderbirdEU
Midzome

Much anticipated return of @CbyJ @BarbicanCentre - looking forward to seeing their new production of Alfred Jarry's #UbuRoi tonight!
about 2 hours ago

We live in times of immense change and this brings with it a need for new ways of doing things.

This is what Wonderbird is good at. It's what we specialise in.

Steering strategy, driving projects and generating revenue – our team have the passion, practicality & expertise to deliver results.

See what we can do for you...

We are hiring in Amsterdam!

We are keen to build our roster of experienced Freelance Associates for the Amsterdam based office, and are recruiting a Junior Associate and Executive Assistant to the MD, also based in the Amsterdam office. Closing date: 7 May 2013.

Full details and more information on Freelance Associate positions here.

Full details and more information

Wonderbird Limited
London
Registered Office (UK)
2 Newburgh Street
London
W1F 7RD
Amsterdam
Sarphatistraat 53
1018 EW Amsterdam
wonderbird.eu
info@wonderbird.eu
+44 (0)20 3327 1480
terms & conditions/legal

Incorporate grayscale values Your last step in the wireframe process is to assign grayscale values to your content. This step will help you determine the visual strength of your elements without having to focus on the color palette. This will also help you assign colors, later, based on their relative values.

Don't be afraid to experiment. The purpose of the wireframing process is to quickly discover what isn't working and make adjustments.

High-definition wireframe (optional) A hi-def wireframe means adding additional details without getting too specific on the visual elements. It usually refers to inserting actual text to determine ideal type sizes, line lengths, and leading.

← **12-column grid** The design of Wonderbird by Rebecca Foster illustrates well the scope and flexibility of her selected 12-column grid. She consistently uses two columns for left- and right-hand margin spacing throughout. From page to page, as she accommodates different kinds of information and imagery, Rebecca allows detail to extend across varied column widths as appropriate to the information in hand.

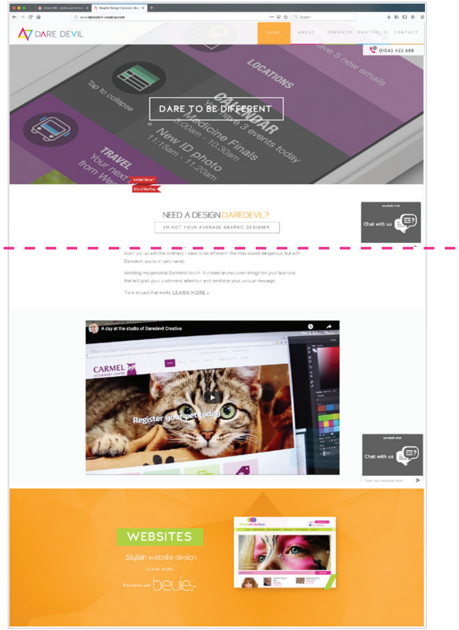
Testing resources

There are several online resources that will help you troubleshoot your work by validating the HTML and CSS code structure, or by checking your website's navigational structure for broken links. The World Wide Web Consortium (W3C) is regarded as the leading markup validation service.
validator.w3.org/

PART 2 PRACTICE
CHAPTER 7 WEB DESIGN
MODULE 7

COMMON ELEMENTS OF A WEB LAYOUT

All web pages have certain elements in common. These features make up the basic building blocks of a web page.



Above the fold

Below the fold

Before getting down to building and assembling the elements of a web page, let's take a moment to identify the structural zones common to most website layouts. The top area of a website is often referred to as the header. It usually contains a few key elements, such as branding visuals and the main navigation links. Immediately below the header, you have the body area. It is within this area that content will be changing as you navigate through the pages of the website. And at the bottom of the web page, you have the footer area. It typically contains items relating to site ownership and a recap of the main navigational structure, eliminating the need to return to the top of the page to access the links.

Page title The descriptive title for the website also identifies the specific page that is being viewed. It is presented at the top of the browser window, or in the browser tab; in the user's bookmark list (if they bookmark the page); and serves as the identifying page title within the search-engine results.

Favicon This is a small, branding graphic that appears to the left of the web address. Hosting sites usually require your favicon as an .ico file and 32 x 32 or 16 x 16 pixels. Using a non-standard size will not work in all browsers, and will appear distorted.

Header The top area of a web layout. It typically features the company logo in the top-left or center position due to web standards (see page 147). The upper header area can feature call-out navigation elements such as login/logout for websites that require user registration, or provide access to shopping cart details for e-commerce sites.

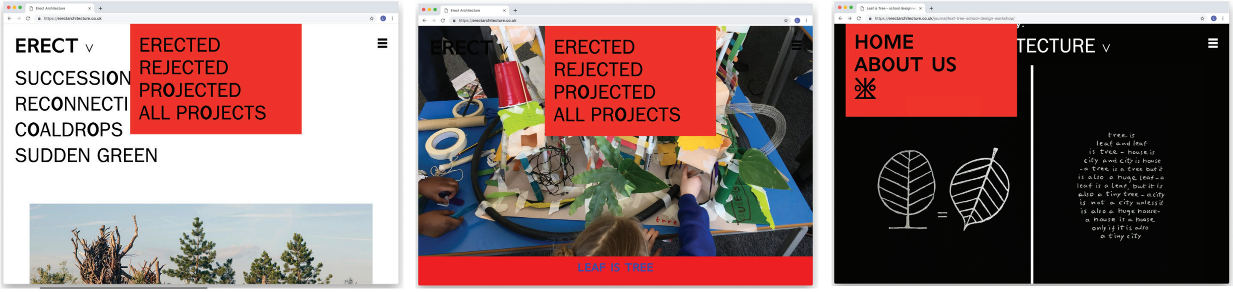
Main navigation/top nav/left nav Navigation should be kept to a minimum, be easy to identify, and easy to use. The main navigation is usually located horizontally across the top area of the screen, under the header. This design pattern (trend) is popular because the abundance of space across the width of the layout usually affords the ability to add additional links to the navigation, as needed, over time. An alternative is to present the main nav, stacked vertically, along the left side of the web layout. However, this design pattern is becoming less popular as designers prefer to position the subnavigation links in this column space. Depending on the type of site, aim for around five to ten navigation buttons.

Drop-down navigation/fly-out nav As their names imply, these methods of subnavigation represent ways to visually organize related links, based on the site's organizational structure. Initially, the drop-down menu is revealed (on hover/rollover/tap) to show a series of secondary pages associated with the main navigation link. From those options, related tertiary links are displayed, flying out to the right of the drop-down list. An alternative to the drop-down, which features a full panel of stylized content ranging from subnavigation links to social media feeds, is called a mega menu.

Breadcrumb navigation This is a navigational wayfinding element, usually located below the header, presented globally, throughout a website. It helps communicate where the viewer is currently located within the site structure, while providing clickable access to return to a main page. It is most useful in sites that feature a navigational structure that goes at least three levels deep. On websites that feature only a primary or secondary navigation structure, this element would be superfluous.

Extending "below the fold" As this website example demonstrates, site content often continues past the bottom of the immediate browser window, revealed as the visitor scrolls down. Web designers have a sensitivity to place important elements within the top of the website layout, so that they are visible when the page initially loads. Site visitors take visual cues from content being cut off at the browser window, as an indicator that they should scroll.

Learn the lingo
Designers rely upon an ever-increasing list of terminology to communicate among collaborators and also with clients. While there are many glossaries available for review, we recommend this list as a great starting point, compiled by the design firm Motive. www.motive.co.nz



tree is
leaf and leaf
is tree – house is
city and city is house
– a tree is a tree but it
is also a huge leaf – a
leaf is a leaf, but it is
also a tiny tree – a city
is not a city unless it
is also a huge house –
a house is a house
only if it is also
a tiny city

Multiple navigation sources This website features a combination of both primary and secondary navigation links for navigating within the website as a whole and the current section of the site. Although the navigation is not positioned in a traditional way, it is consistent throughout.

Feature panel slider This image slideshow is a visual marketing device that can serve a variety of purposes. Most often it is used to spotlight new products or updated site content, to keep the site looking fresh. Or, it can be used to visually communicate a marketing message, such as product benefits, ease of use statements, and so on.

Body area The body area presents a series of content and subcontent that is specific to the type of website being developed and/or the specific page being viewed. Most websites organize content presented within the body using a vertical column structure, ranging from two to four columns.

Call-out/call-to-action elements Pull quotes, special notices, and/or buttons with calls to action are usually positioned within the body area, above the fold.

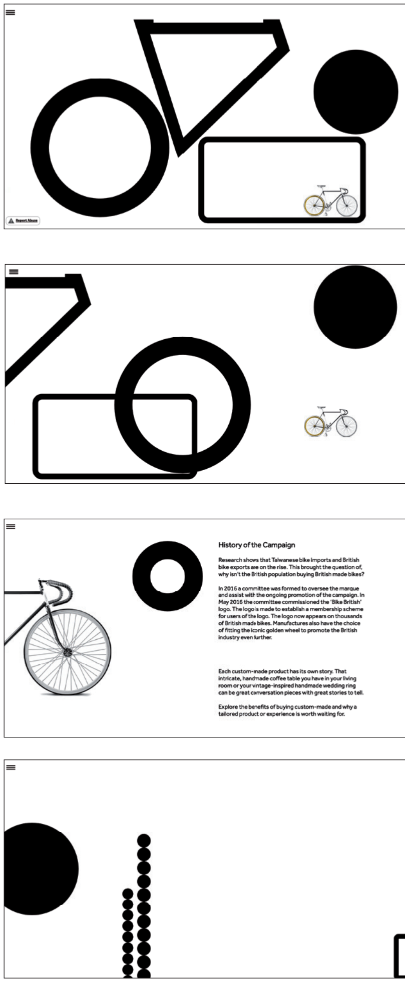
Below the fold Pulled from newspaper terminology, “below the fold” refers to content that appears lower on the screen, which viewers do not immediately view when the page loads unless they choose to scroll down. While once it was a firm belief that viewers rarely thought to scroll down a web page, we now know that most do. Usually a visual cue, such as content being cut off, serves as a subtle indicator that the viewer should scroll down.

Inline text links Text-based links interspersed through the body copy to facilitate cross-linking among the website’s pages, based on topic relevance.

Anchor link/jump link/top of page link A navigation element that, when clicked, directs the viewer to a specific area of a web page. Typically used on pages that present an abundance of dialog, such as FAQs, or to give the viewer quick access to return to the top of the page without having to scroll.

Footer This area identifies the lower section of a web page. Content in this area is presented globally throughout the website and allows the user to navigate certain fundamentals without getting in the way of the design. It can repeat the main navigational elements that are presented at the top of the page, removing the need to scroll to the top in order to continue. Some websites utilize this area to present dynamic content, such as social media feeds, recent news, recent comments, and/or special announcements. Corporate websites usually include a series of required, subordinate links to such topics as legal notices, disclosure details, site map, and so on. Additional elements often found in the footer area include address and contact information, dated copyright statement, and developer credit-free advertising. Whether you opt for a little or a lot of information, the footer should be designed in keeping with the site, but may have a more minimalistic feel. Make it easy to use.

Space Space is essential. It dictates everything, from flow of navigation to readability and willingness to engage. Key spatial relationships, between information and lines of text and general use of open space, all need to be approached with consistency. Space is also important when deciding upon your focal points. An image or piece of text in the center of white space will appear optically larger and more dominant than one that has been condensed into a smaller space. It is also worth noting that space doesn’t always have to be white. Space is the lack of elements rather than the lack of color or texture.



History of the Campaign

Research shows that Taiwanese bike imports and British bike exports are on the rise. This brought the question of, why isn’t the British population buying British made bikes?

In 2016 a committee was formed to oversee the marque and assist with the ongoing promotion of the campaign. In May 2016 the committee commissioned the ‘Bike British’ logo. The logo is made to establish a membership scheme for users of the logo. The logo now appears on thousands of British made bikes. Manufactures also have the choice of fitting the iconic golden wheel to promote the British industry even further.

Each custom-made product has its own story. That intricate, handmade coffee table you have in your living room or your vintage-inspired handmade wedding ring can be great conversation pieces with great stories to tell.

Explore the benefits of buying custom-made and why a tailored product or experience is worth waiting for.

Structure with animation The Bike British website employs a fixed layout. The menu is in the top left, with animated shapes and graphics as you scroll. This structure is consistent throughout the website. Large vector shapes and a photographic cycle are employed as background images to add bold visual interest as viewers navigate through the site.

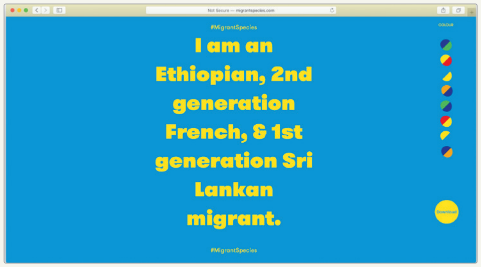
PART 2 PRACTICE
CHAPTER 7 WEB DESIGN
MODULE 8 **DESIGNING FOR THE WEB**

Designing for the web is often a clever mixture of reflecting client goals, understanding user expectations, keeping up with current trends, and infusing the project with your own insights and creativity.

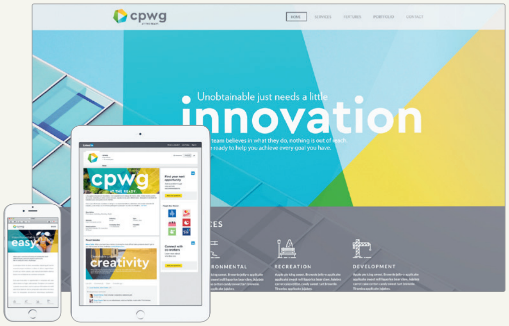
Supporting social media It is common for websites to have a supporting social media channel that links to and from the site. This allows you to update content and event information quickly without altering a website. Consistency is key. Be sure to follow a design cohesion when creating social media banners and icons, so your user trusts the platform and is more likely to engage with the content in a meaningful way.

Style boards
Presenting varying stylistic design options—independent of a website's structural layout—is a popular strategy for keeping the focus of the discussion on the stylization options such as color palette, typefaces, navigation, and image appearance.

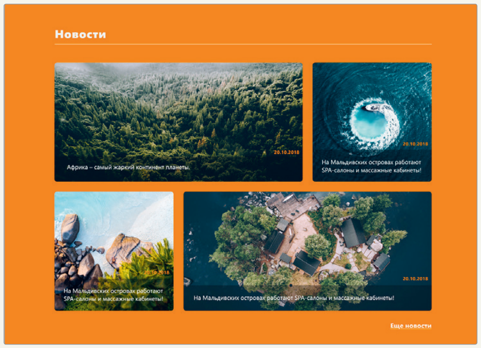
Common layout structures


#MigrantSpecies
I am an Ethiopian, 2nd generation French, & 1st generation Sri Lankan migrant.
#MigrantSpecies

Fixed-width layout
Due to the rise of smartphones and tablets, fixed-width layouts are no longer that common. However, it is important to consider how your site would look on a desktop browser—as if it were fixed width—before moving on to design a responsive alternative.


cpwg
Unobtainable just needs a little
innovation
cpwg
creativity
easy

Liquid layout This layout is designed to be fluid, and repositions the elements in response to the width of the browser window. This is particularly important with the rise of smartphones and tablets being used to view websites.


Новости
Африка – самый жаркий континент планеты.
20.10.2018
На Мальдивских островах работают SPA-салоны и массажные кабинеты!
20.10.2018
На Мальдивских островах работают SPA-салоны и массажные кабинеты!
20.10.2018
На Мальдивских островах работают SPA-салоны и массажные кабинеты!
Еще новости

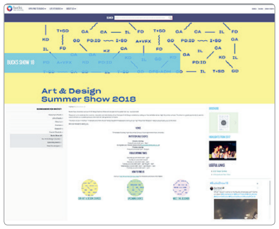
Floating layout
This layout is based on a fixed width and height within the browser window. Typically, the background remains visible on at least three sides (left, right, lower), and the need to scroll to view content has been eliminated. This layout style can be problematic over time, as space can be limited.

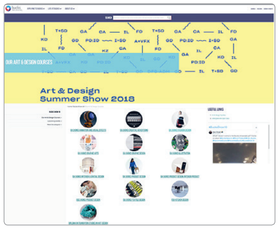
Client goals

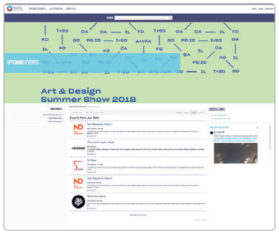
In your initial consultations for the project (see pages 156–157), you will have defined the client's goals and reviewed the expected scope of the website. With the flow chart on hand (see pages 160–161), these points of information are brought forward to define the critical pathways of how the visitor moves through the site.

User expectations

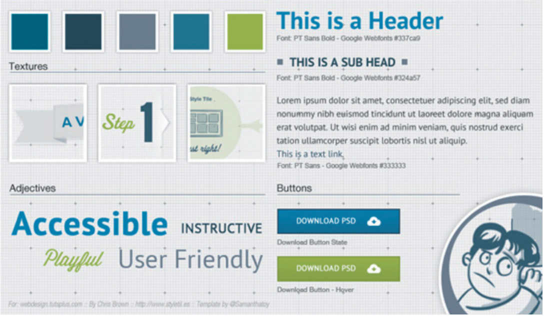
The foundation of web design is rooted in adopting globally accepted sets of behaviors, also known as web standards. Novice web designers may feel restrained by following these behaviors, but their acceptance and continuation serve to deliver a consistent user experience as visitors interact with different websites; for example, when the branding element in the header is clicked, the viewer is taken to the home page.


Art & Design Summer Show 2018


Art & Design Summer Show 2018


Art & Design Summer Show 2018

Art & Design Summer Show 2018



Style board option 1

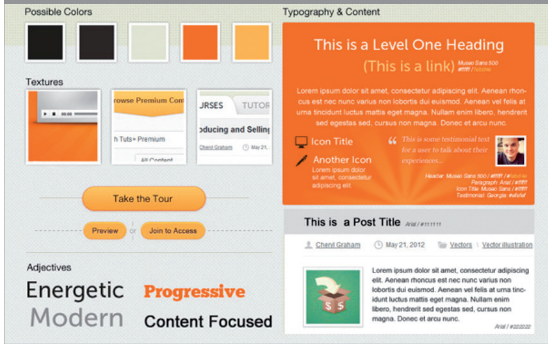
Possible Colors
Typography
This is a Header
Font: PT Sans Bold - Google Webfonts #337ca9
THIS IS A SUB HEAD
Font: PT Sans Bold - Google Webfonts #324a57
Textures
A V
Step 1
Style Tile
Adjectives
Accessible
INSTRUCTIVE
Playful
User Friendly
Buttons
DOWNLOAD PSD
Download Button State
DOWNLOAD PSD
Download Button - Hover

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip.

This is a text link.

Font: PT Sans - Google Webfonts #333333

For: webdesign.tutsplus.com :: By Chris Brown :: http://www.styleti.es :: Template by @Samanthatoy



Style board option 2

Possible Colors
Typography & Content
Textures
Take the Tour
Preview
or
Join to Access
Adjectives
Energetic
Progressive
Modern
Content Focused
This is a Level One Heading
(This is a link)
Museo Sans 500
Icon Title
Another Icon
This is a Post Title
Arial / #111111
Cheryl Graham
May 21, 2012
Vectors
Vector illustration
Arial / #222222

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Aenean rhoncus est nec nunc varius non lobortis dui euismod. Aenean vel felis at urna tincidunt luctus mattis eget magna. Nullam enim libero, hendrerit sed egestas sed, cursus non magna. Donec et arcu nunc.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit

This is some testimonial text for a user to talk about their experiences...

Header: Museo Sans 500 / #ffffff
Paragraph: Arial / #ffffff
Icon Title: Museo Sans / #ffffff
Testimonial: Georgia: #efefef

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Aenean rhoncus est nec nunc varius non lobortis dui euismod. Aenean vel felis at urna tincidunt luctus mattis eget magna. Nullam enim libero, hendrerit sed egestas sed, cursus non magna. Donec et arcu nunc.

Web trends

The web is fueled by innovation. Trends are often rooted in logic: a clever solution that repeatedly springs up across the web because, frankly, it just makes sense. Of course, not all trends should be followed blindly: this is where your own esthetic judgment as a designer comes into play.

Flat design

As a result of responsive design, flat design is currently a web trend. Responsive design requires layouts for a variety of formats to be designed, and therefore takes more time than if we were just designing for a computer screen. Due to time constraints with the extra workload, designers naturally began to streamline certain elements, including ditching drop shadows and other dated design trends to prioritize content. Simplifying visual elements, or so-called "flat design," means that glossy buttons are replaced by vector images and icon fonts that not only load faster, but also look cleaner. The funny thing is, this is the way the Web worked at the very beginning. We have come full circle!

Layout structures

The most common layout structure is a fixed-horizontal layout, whereas vertical positioning is more fluid, dynamically expanding and contracting to accommodate varying amounts of page content. Alternative options include: proportionate width, such as 80% of the browser window; full-width, 100% of the browser window; flush left, a fixed-width layout aligned to the left side of the browser window; and fixed horizontal and vertical, a "floating" layout that is popular among online retailers but extremely challenging to maintain in the long term, since content presentation needs may evolve over time, requiring more vertical space.

Where to start?

The generally accepted starting place for designing a website is to focus on the traditional "laptop view" at 1024 pixels wide (at screen resolution/72ppi).

Designers usually create a Photoshop document that is 1200 pixels wide by 2500 pixels tall, with an understanding that they're not designing to fill the entire canvas vertically. Some pages will require the insertion of a lot of content, and this height means you don't have to reposition items later on. The more space you dedicate to the elements at the top of a website layout, the more information you will be pushing below the bottom of the browser window, requiring your site visitors to scroll to reveal. A header (with navigation bar) over 200

Supplying clean files

In an agency environment, most likely you will be supplying your layered Photoshop files to a team of coders. Keep your files organized. Name your layers using a consistent system. Delete unused layers. Organize related content into named folders.

If you find yourself lost and hunting through layers, most likely your developer may also. Use the Notes and Layer Comps features to define complicated items or settings.

GLOSSARY

Critical pathways: Defining the desired route of a website's audience, as it relates to taking an action (purchasing, contacting, registering, etc.).

Drop-down (menu): A navigational element that is revealed when a visitor clicks a main navigational link to reveal related links (subsections) that are displayed below.

Fly-out (menu): A navigational element that is revealed by extending out to the side of a main navigational element.

Layer comps (Photoshop): A feature that allows the user to record which items are viewable in a complex, multi-layer document.

Style board: A presentation of proposed website stylizations for review by a client, independent of the overall website structure.

Tool tips: A message that displays when a user hovers with a mouse over a linked element.

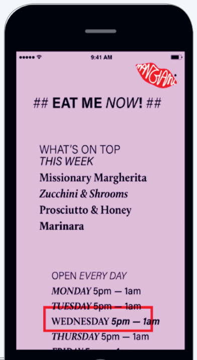
! Start with paper

Work out your concepts on paper before you move ahead to use a computer. Identify all regions where content will be displayed and the amount of visual real estate that specific elements will require.

+ SEE ALSO:

FLOWCHARTS AND WIREFRAMES, P160

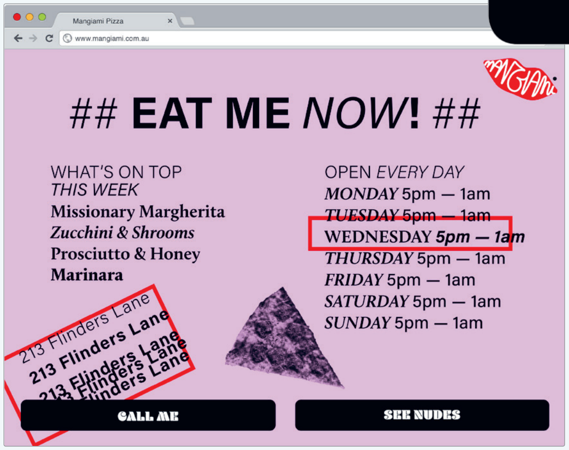
Structuring your information As digital devices expand and formats change, websites need to be able to expand and change with them. The Mangianmi Pizza site has a number of different platforms; each has a slightly varied grid structure and navigational elements, but the general design consideration stays the same throughout to provide familiarity for users accessing the site multiple times for different information.


9:41 AM
MANGIAMI

EAT ME *NOW!*

WHAT'S ON TOP
THIS WEEK
Missionary Margherita
Zucchini & Shrooms
Prosciutto & Honey
Marinara

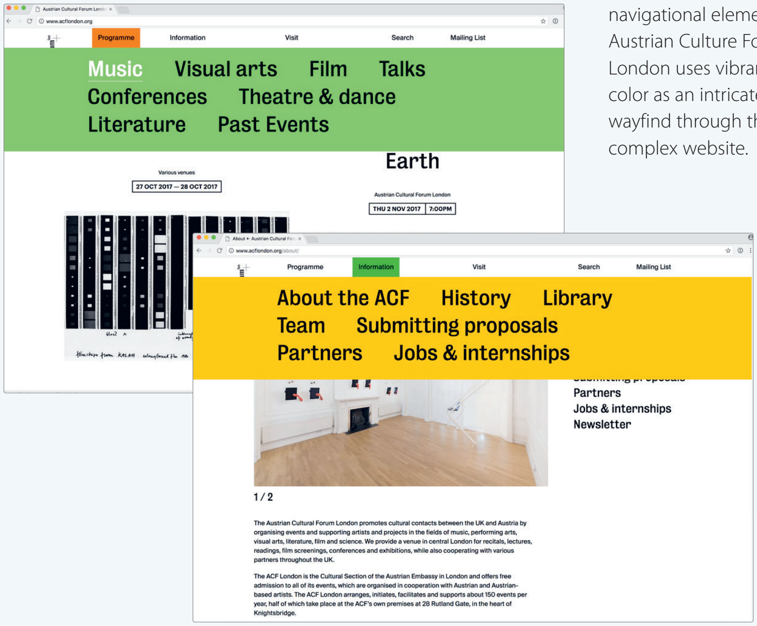
OPEN *EVERY DAY*
MONDAY 5pm — 1am
TUESDAY 5pm — 1am
WEDNESDAY *5pm — 1am*
THURSDAY 5pm — 1am


Mangiami Pizza
www.mangiami.com.au
MANGIAMI
213 Flinders Lane
213 Flinders Lane
213 Flinders Lane
213 Flinders Lane
CALL ME
SEE NUDES

EAT ME *NOW!*

WHAT'S ON TOP
THIS WEEK
Missionary Margherita
Zucchini & Shrooms
Prosciutto & Honey
Marinara

OPEN *EVERY DAY*
MONDAY 5pm — 1am
TUESDAY 5pm — 1am
WEDNESDAY *5pm — 1am*
THURSDAY 5pm — 1am
FRIDAY 5pm — 1am
SATURDAY 5pm — 1am
SUNDAY 5pm — 1am


Austrian Cultural Forum Londo
www.acflondon.org
Programme
Information
Visit
Search
Mailing List
Music
Visual arts
Film
Talks
Conferences
Theatre & dance
Literature
Past Events
Earth
Various venues
27 OCT 2017 — 28 OCT 2017
Austrian Cultural Forum London
THU 2 NOV 2017
7:00PM
About ← Austrian Cultural For
www.acflondon.org/about/
Programme
Information
Visit
Search
Mailing List
About the ACF
History
Library
Team
Submitting proposals
Partners
Jobs & internships
Partners
Jobs & internships
Newsletter
1 / 2

The Austrian Cultural Forum London promotes cultural contacts between the UK and Austria by organising events and supporting artists and projects in the fields of music, performing arts, visual arts, literature, film and science. We provide a venue in central London for recitals, lectures, readings, film screenings, conferences and exhibitions, while also cooperating with various partners throughout the UK.

The ACF London is the Cultural Section of the Austrian Embassy in London and offers free admission to all of its events, which are organised in cooperation with Austrian and Austrian-based artists. The ACF London arranges, initiates, facilitates and supports about 150 events per year, half of which take place at the ACF's own premises at 28 Rutland Gate, in the heart of Knightsbridge.

Structuring navigation Over time, websites grow and present more content. The navigational structure of a website can be designed to grow with the size of the website by implementing a series of drop-down and fly-out navigational elements. The Austrian Culture Forum London uses vibrancy and color as an intricate way to wayfind through their complex website.

pixels tall would be considered excessive. Most website designs are compact, using less than half that height.

Grid structures

The compositional grid (see page 162) is a design concept that is pulled forward from traditional, print-based graphic design. In web design, a vertical grid structure is used to provide visual consistency and make the transition from design to programming phase less complicated.

The 960 Grid System is the leading system, because it can be divided evenly into 12 and 16 columns. The width of website layouts using this system is 960 pixels. The additional space would be used to display the background.

Web typography

Type presentation online is more fluid than its print-based counterparts. Current technological advances in web design now afford designers the ability to present more thoughtful type solutions, but always check your font is web-friendly before you begin your mock-ups!

The width of paragraph text is controlled by defining a fixed width for the type container, typically reflected in your grid system. If your visitor decides to increase the viewing size in their browser settings—and they will—the content will reflow accordingly.

With the advent of web fonts, designers have access to an ever-increasing library of typeface options that have been optimized for onscreen viewing. Gone are the days of laboring to create pixel-based graphics with typeset words. This is the era of quickly swapping in new typefaces (globally, via the CSS) to text that can be understood and indexed by the search engines.

Design to evolve

Unlike designing for print—where the project is considered complete when the files are sent to the printer—web design projects will continue to evolve over time. A designer must plan ahead for revisions, including the insertion of additional content, new pages, and revised project goals. Failure to do so may require that the site be completely reengineered at a later date in order to accommodate the requested adjustments.

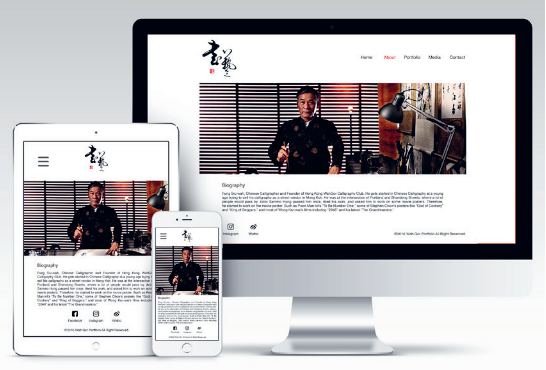
It is because of this anticipated growth that a web designer should focus on a template-driven approach, distributing content consistently across a series of structured layouts.

It would be unheard of—and quite expensive—to design a 24-page website where each page features a completely different layout structure. The traditional route would be to design a home-page layout and one (or two) interior pages. The presentation of content and imagery can be adjusted per page, but the overall structure remains consistent with the established template structure—not only for cost implications but also for coherence and design consistency.

Responsive web design

Responsive web design is the innovation whereby the elements within a layout are modified in response to the device on which the site is being viewed. Primarily, this feature is controlled by the back-end coding of the website, which calls a media query to apply the appropriate CSS code to reposition the elements accordingly.

Developing a responsive website often stems directly from the client's request. It requires more labor than a traditional project and this can affect the overall project pricing. Responsive website designs will require the artist to create multiple versions of their designs (separate PSDs), which can be reviewed by the client, and eventually submitted to the coding team.



Reposition and edit This is an example of how a browser-based layout has been modified to be viewed on a smartphone and tablet. Many of the core elements are present within the composition, but they have been rearranged to accommodate the smaller viewing screen. Some elements, such as the menu icon, are condensed to reduce visual clutter.

Type tips

- Audiences prefer dark body text on a light-colored background, as opposed to light text on a dark background, which tends to "burn" into your retinas.
- Use solid numeric integers for the type that you specify in your Photoshop document. The typical size for paragraph text is 12 to 13 points, with an open leading of 16 to 18 points.
- The width of a paragraph should be limited to "an alphabet and a half" (between 20 and 40 characters is ideal).
- While not an absolute, usability experts recommend using a sans-serif typeface, such as Helvetica, for paragraph text and a complementary typeface of your choosing for heads and subhead systems.
- Avoid applying the attributes bold and/or italics to entire paragraphs. Instead, limit these to occasional use in order to highlight specific elements within the paragraph text.
- Avoid using underscore formatting for non-linked text.

Responsive design and display sizes

At the publication of this book, the current display sizes are:

- Desktop (1600 pixels wide)
- Laptop (1024 pixels wide)
- Tablet (768 pixels wide)
- Smartphone (320 pixels wide)

A traditional (non-responsive) website, when viewed on a smartphone, might be revised to maximize the viewing experience on the smaller screen.

- Reposition/resize the brand mark (logo) and, perhaps, align it to the center.
- Condense a main navigation bar into a scrollable drop-down menu.
- Remove rollover effects, because there is no cursor to roll over content.
- Space out links to avoid accidental activation.
- Adjust the alignment of subhead titles to be centered within the screen.
- Adjust images to fit in the screen by cropping or proportionately scaling them down (or a combination of both).
- Reposition multi-column content into a single-column view by stacking elements.
- Display content focused on the smartphone user's anticipated needs; for example, a restaurant spotlighting their hours of operation and reservations number on the home screen.

To review how a responsive website could behave, visit the larger websites you view most often from your computer. Resize your browser window, making it narrow. Responsive websites will reposition the elements in order to maximize the screen view. Traditional websites can still be viewed on these devices, but require the viewer to "pinch-to-zoom" the site in order to get a better view.

Documenting the details

In a web design project, the list of elements that need to be designed (and specified for the coding team) can grow to be quite large. Some elements may not be an anticipated factor in the site launch, but will need to be added at a later date. The following list can be used to make sure you have defined the traditional elements of a website.

Main navigation

Traditionally, the main navigation of a website will appear horizontally across the top. Design for growth and leave space to add an additional navigation link or two.

- Positioning
- Alignment (aligned left, centered, indented)
- Text appearance (typeface, size, color, spacing, etc.)
- Background appearance
- Active link appearance
- Graphic elements (vertical dividers or a triangle—typically used to identify the availability of submenu links)
- Drop-down submenu appearance (text appearance, horizontal rules, background color, background opacity, graphic element, etc.)
- Fly-out submenu appearance

Background

A subtle tint is preferred over stark white.

- Solid. Pattern. Gradient
- Alignment
- Locked into position or scrollable?
- Blend image to solid background color
- Does the background vary by page?

Vertical positioning

- How will the layout reposition when the browser is resized?
- How much vertical space should be placed between elements?
- What is the shortest vertical layout size?
- How much space will be consistently above the footer content?

Footer content

- Appearance of hyperlinks
- Appearance of text (copyright statement)
- Additional elements

In-line hyperlink states

- Link appearance (typeface, size, color, underline, etc.)
- Hover link appearance
- Active link/tab appearance
- Visited link appearance

Navigation button states

A website could feature a wide range of visual buttons, from “Read More” links to Form Submit, to adding items to a shopping cart.

- Default button appearance (height, width, color, padding, corner radius, typeface, size, type color, drop shadow)
- Hover button appearance
- On-click button appearance
- Disabled button appearance (typically displayed with incomplete forms)

Submenus

Submenus are usually stacked on the left of interior pages, for navigating within a subsection.

- Interior page position (right column, left column, horizontally under top navigation)
- Styling (typeface, size, color, background, graphic elements, etc.)
- Active link appearance
- Fly-out menu appearance (for sub-submenu)

Text styling
- Body (typeface, color, size, line spacing, bold/italic, etc.)
- Headings (H1, the largest, to H6, the smallest)
- Paragraph spacing
- Lists (ordered—with numbers/unordered—bulleted)
- Quote appearance
- “Read More” link appearance
- Excerpt text appearance (and length)
- “Top of Page” navigation link

Horizontal rule
- Appearance (weight, color, etc.)
- Spacing (above/below)

Image styles
You will notice a trend to display images in a wide format. This is more common than displaying tall-formatted images, as it reduces the amount of vertical space within the layout.
- Display sizes
- Corner radius
- Drop shadow
- Margin
- Caption text appearance (typeface, size, color, line spacing, etc.)

Tables
Tables offer a way to pre-format structured content such as charts.
- Border
- First column, first row appearance
- Padding
- Typeface
- Type size

Banner advertising
- Display sizes
- Number of ads presented within the layout
- Location of ads (header, side column, footer, with content, etc.)

Forms
A form can be used by visitors for sending a message or submitting a request, such as joining an email list.
- Overall appearance (background, border, padding, spacing, alignment, etc.)
- Types of input fields (text field, multi-line text field, check box, radio button, drop-down menu, etc.)
- Text label appearance
- Required fields
- Submit/reset button text
- Validation/error message (location, text appearance, message)
- Destination of form content (email, database, etc.)

Animated content
- Buttons/button transition appearance
- Tool tips
- Image slideshow
- Lightboxes (title and caption display, previous/next icon, etc.)

Social media
- Twitter feed appearance (text styling, link appearance, Twitter logo/emblem, etc.)
- Facebook badge appearance (include “Like” button, display fans, number of fans, include “Like” total, show recent post feed)
- Flickr badge appearance (number of images, thumbnail size, etc.)

PART 2	PRACTICE
CHAPTER 7	WEB DESIGN
MODULE 9	**MOBILE APPLICATION DESIGN**

Due to the surge in responsive design, web designers are invited into mobile applications (apps) development to work on projects that are extensions of a client's existing brand. Be it smartphones or tablets, our clients are moving into an exciting new arena and taking us along for the ride.

App categories

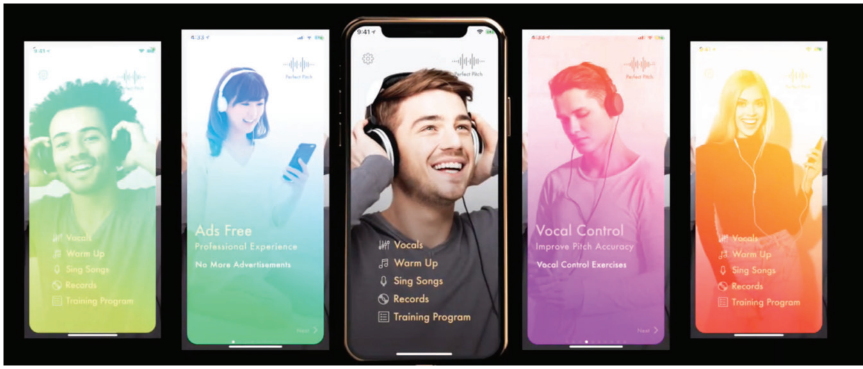
Currently there are three categories of apps that a designer could be assigned to work on. It is crucial to understand the difference among the categories as the development process can be quite varied.

Native apps These apps are software developed to run on a specific operating system (Apple OS, Android, Windows Mobile). A designer working on a native app project would be collaborating with, at least, a programmer (of C++) for the project. In order to be approved for inclusion into the marketplace, native apps must first comply with a firm set of development guidelines, as defined by the individual device manufacturer. While that may seem limiting to a designer, the focus is on maintaining a consistent user experience from one app to the next.

Web apps A web app lives on the Web. Think of it as a mini web page that has been optimized for viewing on a mobile device. When the app is launched, it subtly loads in the mobile device's browser window—you will know by seeing your browser's bookmark/navigation bar at the bottom of your device screen. Using a JavaScript framework, such as jQuery Mobile, you can incorporate a similar touch-optimized framework that is present in native apps.

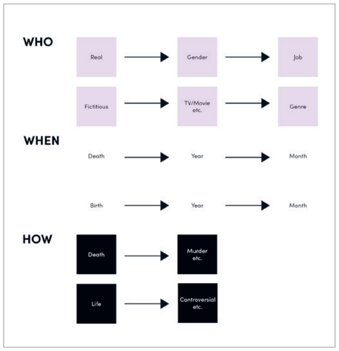
Designing apps

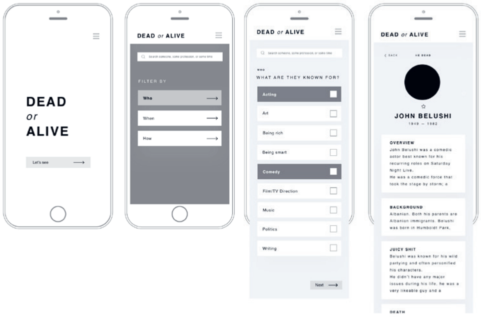
The app development process usually begins before the designer gets involved. The project's producer compiles a project script, or content document, that defines the content that will be displayed on each screen; the

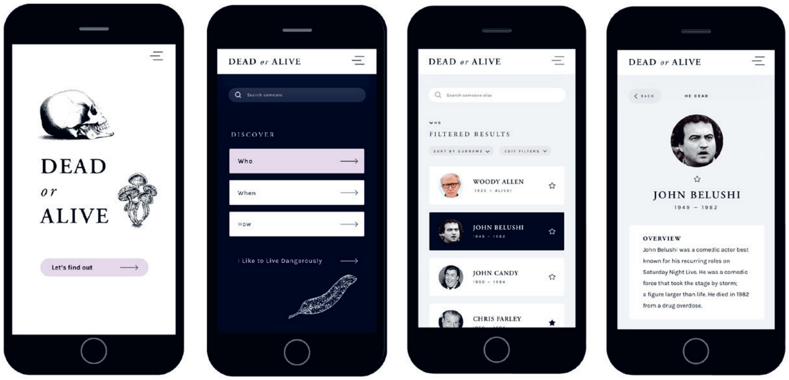

Perfect Pitch
Vocals
Warm Up
Sing Songs
Records
Training Program
Ads Free
Professional Experience
No More Advertisements
Vocal Control
Improve Pitch Accuracy
Vocal Control Exercises
Next

Web consistency There is scope to use a variety of colors and images across all digital platforms while still holding onto an element of cohesion. The Perfect Pitch interface design, for example, still feels unified even with such an array of different designed elements.

Hierarchy This mobile application contains a large number of forms, drop-downs, and selection tools, so the layout and flow of information has to be considered and tested in depth. The simple, pared-back design allows the pink buttons of navigation to form a hierarchy, prompting the user to engage with the app in a way that will ease the experience.

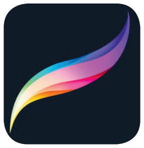

WHO
Real
Gender
Job
Fictitious
TV/Movie etc.
Genre
WHEN
Death
Year
Month
Birth
Year
Month
HOW
Death
Murder etc.
Life
Controversial etc.


DEAD or ALIVE
Let's see
FILTER BY
Who
When
How
WHAT ARE THEY KNOWN FOR
Acting
Art
Being rich
Being smart
Comedy
Film/TV Direction
Music
Politics
Writing
Next
JOHN BELUSHI
1949 – 1982
OVERVIEW
BACKGROUND
JUICY SHIT
DEATH

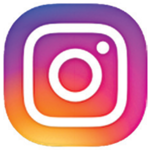

DEAD or ALIVE
Let's find out
Search someone
DISCOVER
Who
When
How
I Like to Live Dangerously
FILTERED RESULTS
SORT BY SURNAME
EDIT FILTERS
WOODY ALLEN
JOHN BELUSHI
JOHN CANDY
CHRIS FARLEY
BACK
JOHN BELUSHI
1949 – 1982
OVERVIEW

John Belushi was a comedic actor best known for his recurring roles on Saturday Night Live. He was a comedic force that took the stage by storm; a figure larger than life. He died in 1982 from a drug overdose.

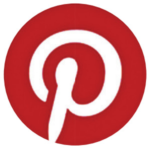
➔ **App icons** Icons are the main branding element for an app project. The rounded corner is applied automatically by the device manufacturer. The glossy highlight is also a default appearance, but this setting can be deactivated programmactically.



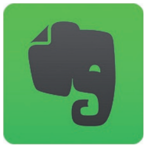
Procreate
An iPad app for digital painting and drawing, this is considered one of the closest digital technologies to painting and drawing in real life. It is a useful resource for mocking up rough visuals and creating professional images to high standards.



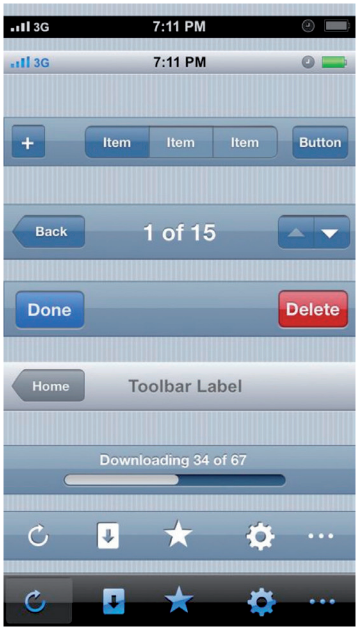
Instagram
A user-generated photo library, great for inspiration and self-promotion if used appropriately. Use hashtags (#) to promote images.



Pinterest
An extensive catalog of inspiration and of-the-moment design styles. Be wary you do not use Pinterest to steal ideas.



Evernote
A handy organizational app that helps you keep track of and prioritize to-do lists. A must-have to help any student to keep on top of things.


3G
7:11 PM
3G
7:11 PM
+
Item
Item
Item
Button
Back
1 of 15
Done
Delete
Home
Toolbar Label
Downloading 34 of 67

Device GUI This is an example of Apple's GUI for their iPhone. These elements reflect the structural relationships and common interactions involved with app usage.

navigation and interaction behaviors; specific programming requirements; and lists out required graphics. The more experienced the project's producer is in the field of app development, the more insightful this foundation document will be.

The most efficient method of learning to design apps is to seek out user interaction kits that are available online, and review the range of elements that are typically included. This is also a great way to familiarize yourself with the specific terminology relating to device-specific elements, behaviors, and features.

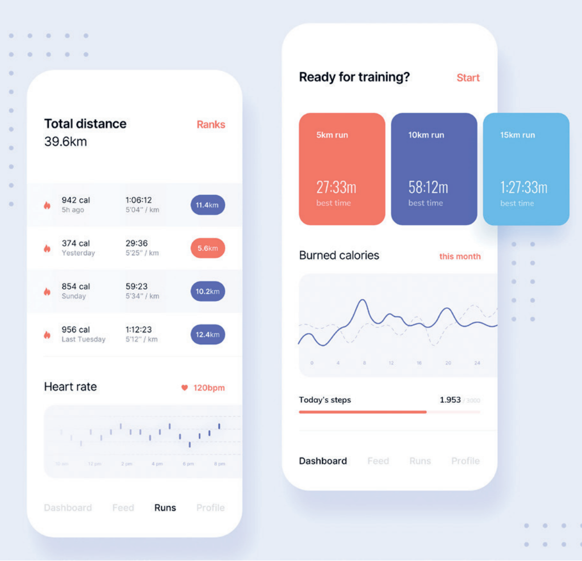
If you are designing a native app, it is strongly recommended that you go to the source and review a user interaction kit that has been produced by the device's manufacturer (Apple, Android, etc.). If you follow their well-documented guidelines, your design decisions should not negatively affect the app approval process.

Modifying the user interface (UI)

Review the apps that you use most frequently and take note of design patterns for how you interact with the app. For example, where are the "Cancel" and "Done" buttons placed? If echoing the positioning of these items would lead to a more intuitive user experience, why break from standard conventions?

When first viewing a sample UI kit, take note of the design specs for major elements (screen size, required screen elements, and so on), then focus on the detailed elements. Use supplied button examples as a reference

App cohesion This fitness app was developed for users to record and chart their fitness data. There are several elements to the interface, all tied together with cohesive design decisions such as a limited color palette and flat icon design.


Total distance
39.6km
Ranks
942 cal
5h ago
1:06:12
11.4km
374 cal
Yesterday
29:36
5.6km
854 cal
Sunday
59:23
10.2km
956 cal
Last Tuesday
1:12:23
12.4km
Heart rate
120bpm
Dashboard
Feed
Runs
Profile
Ready for training?
Start
5km run
27:33m
best time
10km run
58:12m
best time
15km run
1:27:33m
best time
Burned calories
this month
Today's steps
1.953
Dashboard
Feed
Runs
Profile

for appropriate sizing. Feel free to retain or modify the button color/appearance as you deem appropriate.

Many UI elements are available to a project's programmer as "components," preprogrammed for easy, plug-and-play insertion into an app. Modifications to these elements, while possible, may require additional development time. It's best to review what is possible with your programmer before you begin presenting your concepts to the client.

Supplying art files

As with a website design, you will most likely be working from a layered Photoshop file throughout the design process. This file should be thoughtfully organized and take advantage of Photoshop's Layer Comp viewing feature, offering a preview of each screen, as defined in the project script/content document.

If your app is designed to respond to changes in the device's orientation, you will be specifying the positioning in two separate Photoshop layout files: landscape and portrait.

App icon design

The icon created for an app is its principal branding element within the consumer marketplace. The concept should be unique and visually represent the utility of the app. As with logo design, you should investigate similar apps to make sure that you are not supplying a graphic that is too similar to an existing app.

You will be supplying the icon artwork, in .PNG file format, to your programmer for inclusion in the app. These files are then converted into an .ico file and included within the app submission. Typically, you will be providing your icon artwork at multiple sizes, from quite small (device view) to large (store view). You may want to review each icon to make sure that each graphic retains its visual impact at each size.

Citing Apple as a reference, they request five different sizes for use on the device screen, in their Spotlight app, and also in their App Store display. This increases to ten icons if you include a set for their devices with Retina Displays.

Your icon's rounded corner styling is rendered automatically by the device. The glossy "gel" overlay is also automatically added to your icon, but your programmer can remove that feature, programmatically.

Templates

As the overlap between apps and websites increases, a number of templates and softwares are being created to make app design more straightforward. As well as Dreamweaver's responsive template Bootstrap and Foundation, many websites let you mock up an app and download a trial to your phone for user testing and to enhance pitches to clients. Search for mobile application mock-ups to see the variety of platforms out there.

Designing for regular and high-density displays

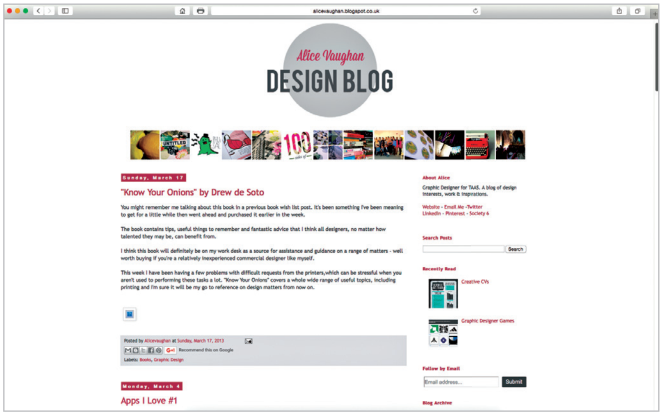
Apple's high-density Retina Display squeezes double the pixel resolution into their device displays. Creating artwork for both regular and high-density displays will require the designer to deliver two separate Photoshop files, one at the standard size (dimensions vary per mobile device) and another for the high-density display that has the document canvas shown at double the size (note: both files remain 72ppi). If you set up your working Photoshop file correctly, the process of creating the second file is as easy as revising your document's image size and performing "Save As" to create the second document.

If you are unsure about which size you should design first—big version or small—start by asking yourself if there will be photographic imagery in the presentation. If the answer is yes, then design around the larger size—increasing the scale of placed images within Photoshop will make them blurry/pixelated. Next, you'll want to set up your file using vector shapes, created in Photoshop (or imported as "Shapes" into Photoshop), and use the layer styling effects to apply color, bevels, and shadows, because vector art will scale without distortion.

And finally, because you will be either reducing by half or doubling your document's dimensions, you want to use even integers in your measurements. Rules, shapes, spacing, point sizes for your text, everything should be divisible by two. This will eliminate the need to revise your second document to achieve a pixel-perfect layout.

PART 2	PRACTICE
CHAPTER 7	WEB DESIGN
MODULE 10	**WORKING WITH CONTENT MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS**

An increasingly popular option for creating an online presence is to use the structured framework of a content management system (CMS), which is a software application that resides on your web hosting account. The CMS serves as an intermediary between the database—where text and images are stored—and the predesigned, dynamic layout structure of the website.



Sunday, March 17

"Know Your Onions" by Drew de Soto

You might remember me talking about this book in a previous book wish list post. It's been something I've been meaning to get for a little while then went ahead and purchased it earlier in the week.

The book contains tips, useful things to remember and fantastic advice that I think all designers, no matter how talented they may be, can benefit from.

I think this book will definitely be on my work desk as a source for assistance and guidance on a range of matters - well worth buying if you're a relatively inexperienced commercial designer like myself.

This week I have been having a few problems with difficult requests from the printers,which can be stressful when you aren't used to performing these tasks a lot. "Know Your Onions" covers a whole wide range of useful topics, including printing and I'm sure it will be my go to reference on design matters from now on.

Posted by Alicevaughan at Sunday, March 17, 2013

Recommend this on Google

Labels: Books, Graphic Design

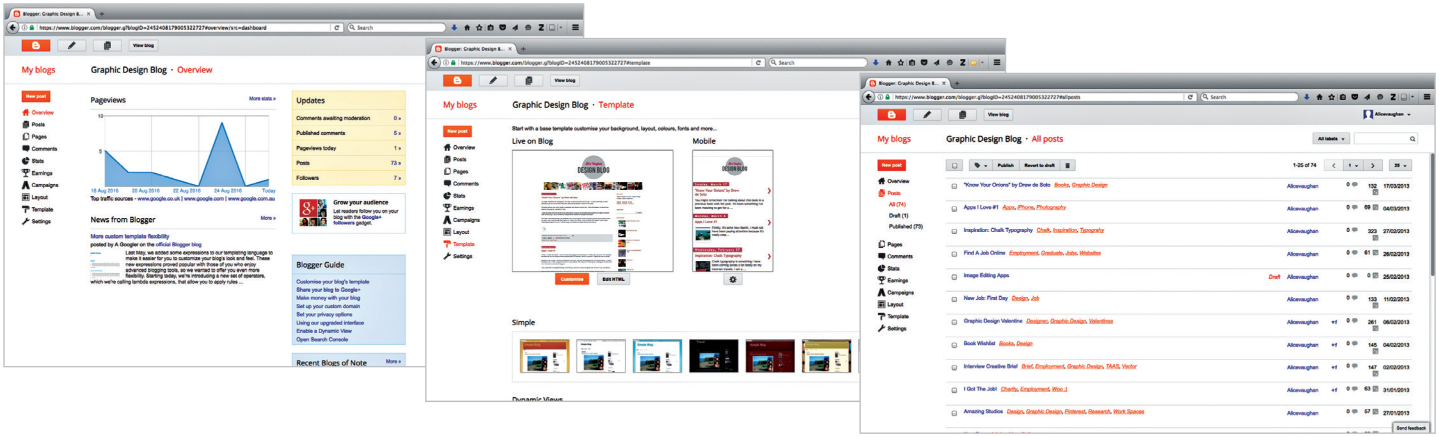
Monday, March 4

Apps I Love #1

About Alice

Graphic Designer for TAAS. A blog of design interests, work & inspirations.

Website - Email Me -Twitter
LinkedIn - Pinterest - Society 6



https://www.blogger.com/blogger.g?blogID=2452408179005322727#overview/src=dashboard

Graphic Design Blog · Overview

Top traffic sources - www.google.co.uk | www.google.com | www.google.com.au

Updates	
Comments awaiting moderation	0 »
Published comments	5 »
Pageviews today	1 »
Posts	73 »
Followers	7 »

More custom template flexibility

posted by A Googler on the official Blogger blog

Last May, we added some expressions to our templating language to make it easier for you to customize your blog's look and feel. These new expressions proved popular with those of you who enjoy advanced blogging tools, so we wanted to offer you even more flexibility. Starting today, we're introducing a new set of operators, which we're calling lambda expressions, that allow you to apply rules ...

Let readers follow you on your blog with the Google+ followers gadget.

- Customise your blog's template
- Share your blog to Google+
- Make money with your blog
- Set up your custom domain
- Set your privacy options
- Using our upgraded interface
- Enable a Dynamic View
- Open Search Console

https://www.blogger.com/blogger.g?blogID=2452408179005322727#template

Graphic Design Blog · Template

Start with a base template customise your background, layout, colours, fonts and more...

https://www.blogger.com/blogger.g?blogID=2452408179005322727#allposts

Graphic Design Blog · All posts

All (74)
Draft (1)
Published (73)

"Know Your Onions" by Drew de Soto	Books, Graphic Design		Alicevaughan	0	132	17/03/2013
Apps I Love #1	Apps, iPhone, Photography		Alicevaughan	0	69	04/03/2013
Inspiration: Chalk Typography	Chalk, Inspiration, Typograhy		Alicevaughan	0	323	27/02/2013
Find A Job Online	Employment, Graduate, Jobs, Websites		Alicevaughan	0	61	26/02/2013
Image Editing Apps		Draft	Alicevaughan	0	0	25/02/2013
New Job: First Day	Design, Job		Alicevaughan	0	133	11/02/2013
Graphic Design Valentine	Designer, Graphic Design, Valentines		Alicevaughan +1	0	261	06/02/2013
Book Wishlist	Books, Design		Alicevaughan +1	0	145	04/02/2013
Interview Creative Brief	Brief, Employment, Graphic Design, TAAS, Vector		Alicevaughan +1	0	147	02/02/2013
I Got The Job!	Charity, Employment, Woo :)		Alicevaughan +1	0	63	31/01/2013
Amazing Studios	Design, Graphic Design, Pinterest, Research, Work Spaces		Alicevaughan	0	57	27/01/2013

Designers like working with CMS because they spend less time wrestling with programming code, which affords them more time to work on the appearance and overall content organization of a website.

Clients like working with CMS because it allows them to independently process their own site updates without needing to adjust the programming code or keep paying a designer to do it for them. The website can be edited by logging into the browser-based admin, often referred to as the dashboard. This is a password-protected administration area that allows you—or a designated site administrator—to create new or modify existing content.

Designers often refer to CMS projects as theme integration projects. The project typically encompasses installation of the CMS; selection of a theme; the application of functionality and visual customizations; the integration of the site content; and training and occasional maintenance.

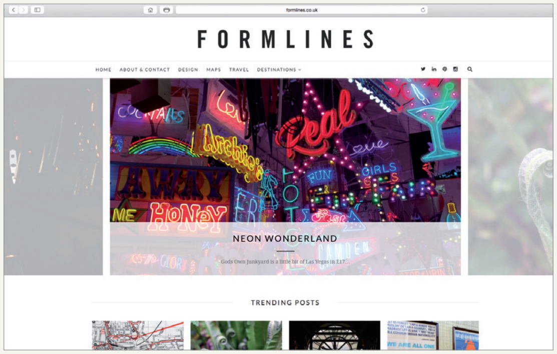
Platforms

There are many CMS platforms available, ranging from proprietary systems to open-source, free options. WordPress.org, Squarespace.com, and Wix.com are all popular open-source options for small to mid-sized websites. Others to consider include Joomla.org, Drupal.org, and LightCMS.com.

CMS installation

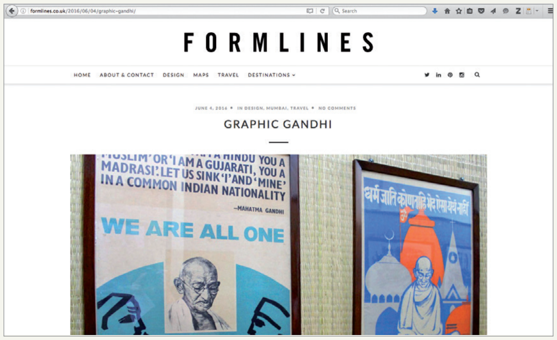
CMS applications are typically installed into the clients' web hosting account. Most web hosts usually provide automated installation of the major CMS systems (WordPress, Drupal, Joomla). This set-up process creates the database, where text and images will be stored, and defines the admin/password credentials to access the system's dashboard.

Blogger is a blog-publishing service that provides a number of templates and systems for users to make multiple blogs with time-stamped entries. This student design blog also tracks visits and comments in the User panel, which can be accessed by logging in.

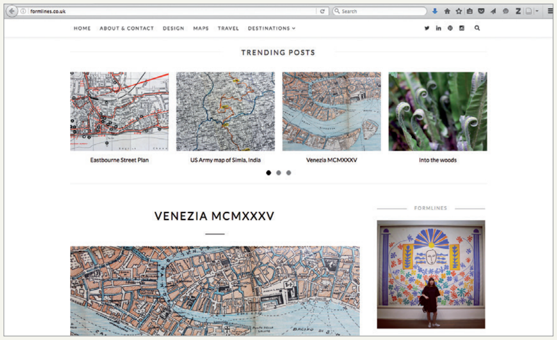

formlines.co.uk
FORMLINES
HOME ABOUT & CONTACT DESIGN MAPS TRAVEL DESTINATIONS
NEON WONDERLAND
TRENDING POSTS

Gods Own Junkyard is a little bit of Las Vegas in E17...

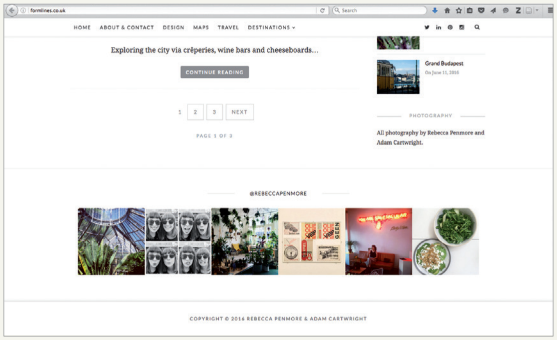
Showcasing Blogs are fantastic platforms for showcasing a wide variety of images, experiences, and viewpoints. The Formlines blog cleverly hints at more posts by fading out posts on each side of the one selected.


formlines.co.uk/2016/06/04/graphic-gandhi/
Search
FORMLINES
HOME ABOUT & CONTACT DESIGN MAPS TRAVEL DESTINATIONS
JUNE 4, 2016 • IN DESIGN, MUMBAI, TRAVEL • NO COMMENTS
GRAPHIC GANDHI

Blurring the line As websites and templates become more accessible, the boundary between a website and a blog is blurring. The travel blog Formlines is so professional and polished that it could be easily mistaken for a fully functional website.


formlines.co.uk
Search
HOME ABOUT & CONTACT DESIGN MAPS TRAVEL DESTINATIONS
TRENDING POSTS
Eastbourne Street Plan
US Army map of Simla, India
Venezia MCMXXXV
Into the woods
VENEZIA MCMXXXV
FORMLINES

Trending Many platforms have a number of features built in, such as a trending posts feature. This allows viewers to jump straight to the most popular content and, in some cases, you the designer can choose/manipulate what these trending posters are.


formlines.co.uk
Search
HOME ABOUT & CONTACT DESIGN MAPS TRAVEL DESTINATIONS
CONTINUE READING
1 2 3 NEXT
PAGE 1 OF 3
Grand Budapest
On June 11, 2016
PHOTOGRAPHY
@REBECCAPENMORE

Exploring the city via crêperies, wine bars and cheeseboards...

All photography by Rebecca Penmore and Adam Cartwright.

COPYRIGHT © 2016 REBECCA PENMORE & ADAM CARTWRIGHT

Social media Blogs are, in theory, a form of social media, so it is a great idea to link them to your other platforms. Instagram is a perfect visual example of how travel on a personal level ties into a blog hobby. However, be wary of your representation, since not everyone wants to see you on a beach on vacation!

Protect the site

When working with CMS projects, always assign complex passwords to the database and also for the admin access. This will help prevent potential attacks from hackers.

Selecting themes

A theme is a collection of predesigned web page layouts around a centralized concept, where the arrangement of the pages' structure has been specified by the theme's author. A theme may feature a series of page layouts for different content areas of the website, such as home page; about us page; blog page; contact page; gallery page; portfolio page; full-width layout; and two-column layout. Many commercially available themes are highly customizable, giving the designer the opportunity to make adjustments to ensure the resulting website is unique to the client. For larger projects, a designer might partner with a programmer to create their own theme, from the ground up, based on the project's exact requirements.

Installing plugins

The functionality of the basic CMS structure can be enhanced by adding plugins, also referred to as widgets or modules. A plugin could be comprised of a contact form, a social media feed, banner ads, weather forecast, live chat, recent post summaries, dated post archive list, keyword-based tag cloud, and testimonials, and may automatically add social media "like" buttons to a web page's layout. Most CMS systems offer a wide range of plugins for free. Additional plugins may be available from commercial entities for a nominal fee.

Visual customizations

While themes are highly customizable—allowing you to adjust logos, colors, background visuals, etc.—they are limited in some respects and a certain degree of flexibility is required. Most visual customizations can be specified via the theme option settings, and additional stylizations can be controlled by amending the CSS (Cascading Style Sheets) code. Although some CMS do not allow you to adjust the code.

Integrating site content

Define the navigational structure of the site using the flow chart as a guide to the established taxonomy, then create the required pages for the website, inserting the specified text and imagery. Crop/resize images as necessary. Define the categories for the news feed or blog posts—these dated entries are usually referred to as posts—and generate a range of initial posts, so as to populate the website with visual examples.

Training

If your client will be editing their own site, it is reasonable to provide a certain level of training or orientation in working with the dashboard. Often, designers will create a customized user manual that identifies specific elements within the layout and the corresponding instructions on how to update the content, since the process can vary per theme. Many open-source CMS's like WordPress have an online library of user manuals which can be useful to refer clients to for easy things like adding pages.

Maintenance

CMS and plugins are routinely updated with security patches. You should be regularly processing these updates as you are notified by the system. Comments to blog or news items should always be moderated, to prevent comment-spam from appearing on your live site. Security plugins and/or site monitoring services should be utilized to prevent potential security attacks.

SEE ALSO: PROJECT DEVELOPMENT PROCESS OVERVIEW, P144

WORKING WITH CONTENT MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS, P175

Tips on selecting themes

- **The newer the better** Updates to CMS systems usually feature new innovations, in addition to security patches. Themes released (or updated) within the last six months usually take advantage of current innovations.

- **Focus on functionality** Avoid selecting themes that have been created for different intended uses, because they may feature different navigational behaviors. For example, a "portfolio" theme may be structured so that when you click on a thumbnail, a larger view is presented. Conversely, in a "corporate" theme, clicking on a thumbnail would launch a new web page.

- **Note the widgetized areas** These spaces are designated locations within the structured layout of a theme. Typically located in the bottom portion of a website, widgets offer the ability to add one to four columns of useful information, ranging from contact details to spotlighted links and social media feeds. The narrow column of a two-column page layout is also typically a widgetized area, expanding in height to correspond with the number of elements you assign to the column widget area. Typically, side column widgets include subnavigation links, search box, archives list, banner ads, etc.

- **Review the customer** reviews, documentation, and message board comments, if available.

GLOSSARY

Categories: A taxonomy structure for designating dynamic content (posts) to appear in similar, or different, news feeds within a site. Can be used as search criteria for displaying similarly themed posts.

CMS: Content management system. The structured framework of a dynamically driven website.

Dashboard: The administrative back-end for a CMS.

Plugin: A WordPress term for an element that adds a functional enhancement to the basic CMS structure. Also referred to as widgets and modules.

Tag cloud: A keyword-based navigation element where keywords can be selected in order to refine search criteria to display similarly themed posts.

Widget areas: Locations within a CMS theme where plugins and widgets can be inserted into the physical layout. Typically, these are located within the side column and lower (footer) area of a web page.

Theme and plugin resellers

ThemeForest.net
WooCommerce.com
Themezilla.com
ElegantThemes.com
GraphPaperPress.com
Premium.wpmudev.org
CodeCanyon.net

WordPress.org vs WordPress.com

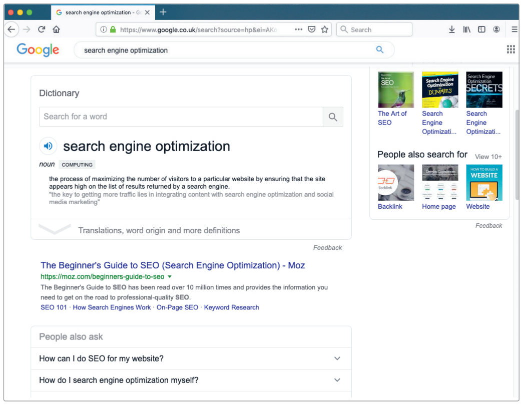
WordPress.org is the open-source application that you install on your web server. It's yours to edit as you like. You have access to customized themes and plugins. However, you are responsible for processing occasional software and plugin upgrades.
WordPress.com is a commercial entity. It's free to start, but many enhancements are available via paid, "premium upgrade," options. You are required to pay to have sponsored adverts removed, pay to be able to edit the visual styles, and pay to access "premium themes." Software updates are processed on your behalf.

Pages and posts

At the most basic level, a page is considered to be an individual web page within the website's navigational structure. A post is an individual item (for example, a news announcement or blog entry) that is presented in linear, dated format within a page.

PART 2	PRACTICE
CHAPTER 7	WEB DESIGN
MODULE 12	**SEARCH ENGINE OPTIMIZATION (SEO)**

As part of any website development project, it is the designer's role to organize and structure the website in a way that helps it to be indexed properly by search engines, such as Google, Bing, and Yahoo! The goal is to achieve unpaid, or "organic," search results.


search engine optimization - G
https://www.google.co.uk/search?source=hp&ei=AK
Search
Google
search engine optimization
Dictionary
Search for a word
The Art of SEO
Search Engine Optimizati...
Search Engine Optimizati...
People also search for
View 10+
Backlink
Home page
Website
Feedback
Translations, word origin and more definitions
Feedback

search engine optimization

noun COMPUTING

the process of maximizing the number of visitors to a particular website by ensuring that the site appears high on the list of results returned by a search engine.

"the key to getting more traffic lies in integrating content with search engine optimization and social media marketing"

The Beginner's Guide to SEO (Search Engine Optimization) - Moz

https://moz.com/beginners-guide-to-seo

The Beginner's Guide to **SEO** has been read over 10 million times and provides the information you need to get on the road to professional-quality **SEO**.

SEO 101 · How Search Engines Work · On-Page SEO · Keyword Research

People also ask

How can I do SEO for my website?

How do I search engine optimization myself?

Search page results

In the search results, the designated page/site title is displayed first, followed by the complete URL, and then the site description.

Landing page

The search engine will search the landing page for key terms first, so make sure your landing page is full of tags and links to the web's content. This should not only make it more accessible to find, but should bump its position on Google.

Page title (meta tag)

Meta tags are elements within the HTML code, used by the search engines to properly index your website. Depending on the specific tag, it may or may not be visible when viewing the actual web page. A designer could develop a site without using any meta tags, but it would not perform well in the search engines.

Keywords (meta tag)

Keywords are the word combinations that web surfers use when they're performing their search queries. An initial step is to define all words and word combinations that a visitor might use to search and locate your site. You can do this on your own (from the dialog your client supplied) or you can get them involved and ask them to compile their own list.

Page title

The page title is what appears at the top of your listing in the search results. This is also what appears in a bookmark list and at the top of the browser window/tab. It can be truncated, so arrange the important information first.

Bad: Your Site | Recipes
Great: Chili: Award-Winning Recipe | Your Site

Site description (meta tag)

A site description is a sentence of about 20 words that appears within the search results. It should clearly define what information viewers will encounter on your site, using as many keywords as naturally possible.

Images

Often, viewers discover websites by performing image searches and clicking the link to view the full website. For your images to be properly indexed in the search engines, you should make some adjustments.

- **Retitle your images** Adjust the file name to incorporate keywords or relevant descriptive information. Remember never to use spaces. Use hyphens (-) or underscores (_) to separate words.

  Bad: img00123-23.jpg
  Great: recipe-wins-the-chili-cookoff.jpg

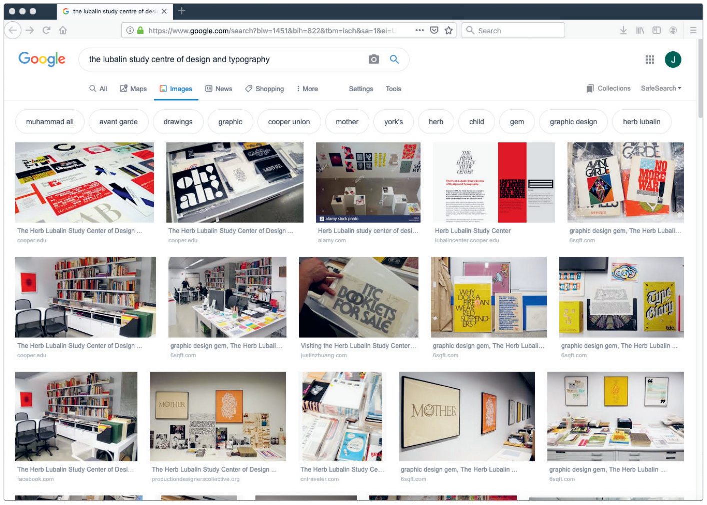
- **Include ALT tags for the images that you use on the website** Think of this as a caption that you add to each image, which appears in the HTML code. Spaces are fine between words.
- **Do not put important text inside images** The search engines can't read pictures of words.

Page rank

The more links to a website from other relevant websites, the higher the page appears in search results (SEO). Reciprocal linking—you link to a company's website and they link to yours—such as between a web designer and web developer, can be a good way to do this. Make sure to only include links to reliable sites/businesses/individuals.

Image search results

A growing number of web viewers rely on image searches to discover websites. Make sure your corresponding artwork is presented so that it can be indexed properly in the search engines. Title the image file's name using relevant keywords, ALT tags, and descriptions (or captions).


the lubalin study centre of desi
https://www.google.com/search?biw=1451&bih=822&tbm=isch&sa=1&ei=
Search
Google
the lubalin study centre of design and typography
All
Maps
Images
News
Shopping
More
Settings
Tools
Collections
SafeSearch
muhammad ali
avant garde
drawings
graphic
cooper union
mother
york's
herb
child
gem
graphic design
herb lubalin
The Herb Lubalin Study Center of Design ...
cooper.edu
The Herb Lubalin Study Center of Design ...
cooper.edu
Herb Lubalin study center of desi...
alamy.com
Herb Lubalin Study Center
lubalincenter.cooper.edu
graphic design gem, The Herb Lubali...
6sqft.com
The Herb Lubalin Study Center of Design ...
cooper.edu
graphic design gem, The Herb Lubali...
6sqft.com
Visiting the Herb Lubalin Study Center...
justinzhuang.com
graphic design gem, The Herb Lubali...
6sqft.com
graphic design gem, The Herb Lubalin ...
6sqft.com
The Herb Lubalin Study Center of Desi...
facebook.com
The Herb Lubalin Study Center of Design ...
productiondesignerscollective.org
The Herb Lubalin Study Ce...
cntraveler.com
graphic design gem, The Herb Lubalin ...
6sqft.com
graphic design gem, The Herb Lubalin ...
6sqft.com

Putting keywords to work

Create a list of keywords (and keyword combinations) that you think site visitors would be searching for in order to discover your website. Then incorporate these keywords into your site using the following strategies:

- **Use keywords to create descriptive, human-friendly URLs**
  Name your web page documents using the keywords that relate to the information found on that page. Avoid using general terms or insider lingo.
  Bad: www.yoursite.com/recipe.html
  Great: www.yoursite.com/award-winning-chili-recipe.html
- **Use keywords in your headline and subhead text** Within an HTML structure, these elements are usually defined by <h> tags (heading tags). The search engines read the words stylized by these tags and assign them higher priority.
- **Infuse your dialog to contain the appropriate keywords** Often clients will overlook using keywords within their site dialog, in favor of using pronouns (he, us, it, they). Where naturally possible, keywords should be used instead. But don't go overboard. The search engines know all the tricks. Strings of random keywords within your dialog will negatively affect your rankings.
- **Use the keyword meta tag** You can insert a string of chosen keywords into your document's keyword meta tag. However, more weight is assigned to keywords that appear naturally within your site dialog.

Practical SEO advice

For designers Never promise your client that their new site will receive top ranking in the search engines. A web designer's role is to make sure that a site looks great and is organized so that it can be indexed properly. You have no control over how popular the site will be, nor how high it will rank compared with other sites that may be paying for placement.

To put it in perspective, legitimate SEO/SEM analytics agencies can be hired to increase website rankings. They offer a multi-pronged approach, following the guidelines established by the search engines, and charge up to $20,000 on retainer.

For your clients If the designer has followed the advice given above, they will have delivered a website that will be properly indexed. There are also things the client can do to ensure the site ranks highly in the search results.

- Be aware that it can take up to one month for a website to appear in the search engines.
- What keywords are they searching for? Perhaps they are too generic and yielding too many results. Have they tried searching for keyword combinations that feature the city/town where they are located?
- Keep the site updated regularly.
- Promote your website directly to your audience by including your web address on material that you distribute regularly, from business cards to brochures and your email auto-signature.
- Create a presence using social media that drives traffic back to your website. Use status updates to keep your audience informed about new content additions and special offers from your site.
- Have you tried becoming an active participant in online forums and discussion boards? Use your expertise to share tips and advice. Establish yourself as someone people will want to do business with and they will seek you out.
- Have you considered paid placement (sponsored listings) within the search engines? Or sponsored advertising in social media, such as Facebook ads?

PART 2	PRACTICE
CHAPTER 7	WEB DESIGN
MODULE 13	**ONLINE PORTFOLIOS**

Any professional web designer needs a strong and well-conceived online portfolio and the growing list of "low-tech" options for displaying work online means that even non-web designers have little excuse for not having their work available for review online.

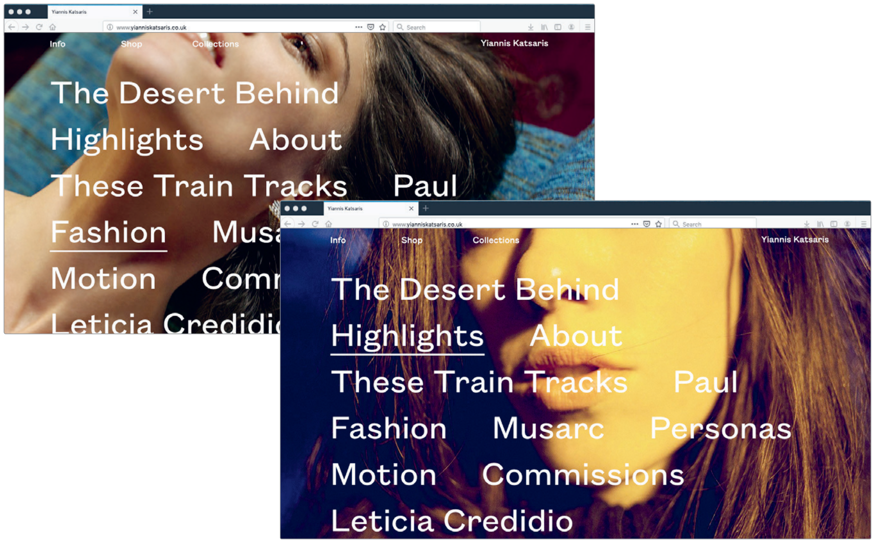


Image as feature An additional creative element within the Yiannis Katsaris site includes combining navigation options with images. When scrolling over the hyperlink, you are presented with a project image from that category, reducing the visitor's need to scroll for more information.

A successful online portfolio is a snapshot of work that reflects your abilities as a graphic designer. As with other design projects, you are designing for your target audience and addressing their needs. In reviewing numerous candidate websites in a single setting, potential employers are seeking a clear listing of skills and work experience, in addition to a complementary stylistic match for the work they produce.

Elements of an online portfolio

Your online portfolio should be clear, uncluttered, and easy to navigate. It should feature fundamental, descriptive information, including your name, field of practice, geographic area, and your current availability. You should also use it to present a summary of your professional biography, organized for easy visual scanning on screen. Include a link to download your resumé in PDF format. Finally, invite interested parties to make contact with you by including a clear call to action.

Prepare your images

Limit the number of visual examples you present in favor of providing a snapshot overview of your experiential range. You can present more examples during the in-person interview phase. Most new designers find it challenging to decide which images to include in their online portfolio. Focus on presenting work that represents a solid foundation of design—typography, composition, color—in addition to your own esthetic style. Ideally, your selected examples will complement the scope of work that is being produced by the companies that interest you. If that is not the case, you should work on bolstering your portfolio with new projects.

Portfolio images should be consistent in size and visual presentation. A typical size for a detailed view would be 800 x 600 pixels, at screen resolution (72ppi) and optimized for online viewing. Smaller, thumbnail views can be presented as proportionately reduced artwork or as strategically cropped designs, intended to intrigue your audience into clicking to view in more detail. Website design examples typically feature a browser "frame" and app designs usually feature the device screen view.

A subcategory navigation structure can be employed to help direct viewers through the project-type examples that relate to the work they are interested in viewing, such as publication design, identity, packaging, and advertising.

Getting started

To set yourself apart from novices or design hobbyists, you'll need your own domain name and a web hosting account. A domain name (for example, www.yoursite.com) is like leasing a car. Web hosting is like renting a parking spot for your leased car. You need both in order to establish your online presence. Both are renewed annually for a nominal fee. With a traditional web hosting

GLOSSARY

Domain name: The web address for a website. It is renewed annually by the site owner for a nominal fee.

Web hosting: A designated online storage space for hosting a website and related email accounts.

SEE ALSO:
WORKING WITH CONTENT MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS, P175

Optional portfolio elements

- Images can be captioned with brief project summaries to spotlight details or your specific involvement within the project (for group work).
- Concept sketches and creative explorations can effectively provide a unique insight into your creative process. Select one project, present it as a case study, and use visuals to guide your audience through your process.
- Additional interests that reinforce your design skills (photography, illustration) can be included to demonstrate a broader range of skills and interests, but should be presented with reduced presence, so as not to deter from your focus on seeking employment as a graphic designer.
- Invite site visitors to connect with your professional presence across social media accounts (LinkedIn, Twitter, Facebook Fan Page, Flickr, Pinterest, etc.). But, avoid linking to accounts where you represent yourself informally. Social media links are usually located in the footer, and are particularly good for retaining a relationship with the user after they have left the website.
- Maintain a creative design blog (or Tumblr micro-blog) with shared insights on where you derive inspiration and comments on related design trends.

Selecting the right domain name

Start by using your own name, as opposed to laboring to conceive a clever business alias. It's easier to associate you with a web address that features your actual name. Use a ".com" domain, because people instinctively type that suffix. Select a name that is easy to remember or difficult to misspell, or consider purchasing multiple names. You can always set your domain names to reroute site visitors to your main web address.

First impressions When a user visits a website, you have a split second to make a first impression, and around 15 seconds to persuade them to keep looking. When you design a portfolio, the work is the most important attribute of the site. Make it the first thing you see, and make it attention-grabbing. Jingyin Luo's portfolio contains an array of striking images with a simple supporting description to keep the viewer engaged.

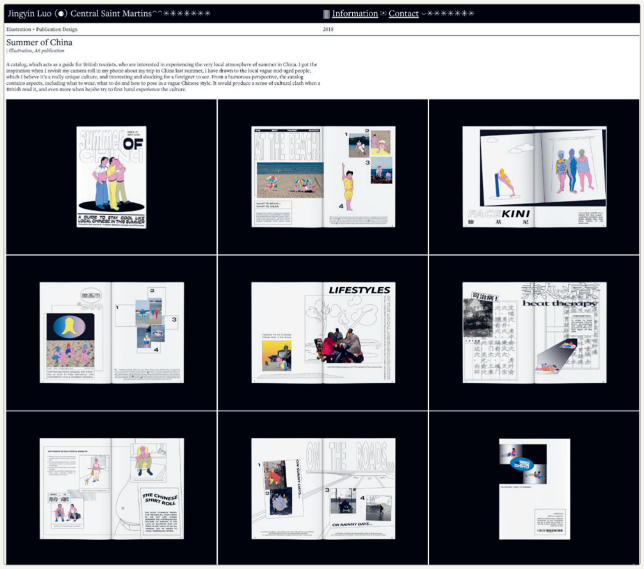

Jingyin Luo (●) Central Saint Martins^^✳✳✳✳✳✳✳
Information ✉ Contact ◡✳✳✳✳✳✳✳

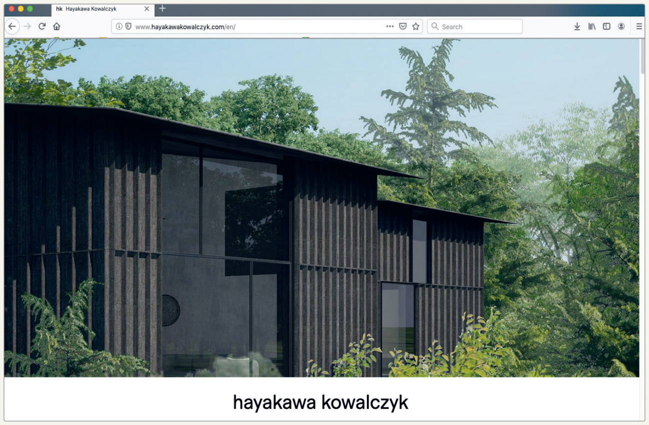
Illustration + Publication Design 2018

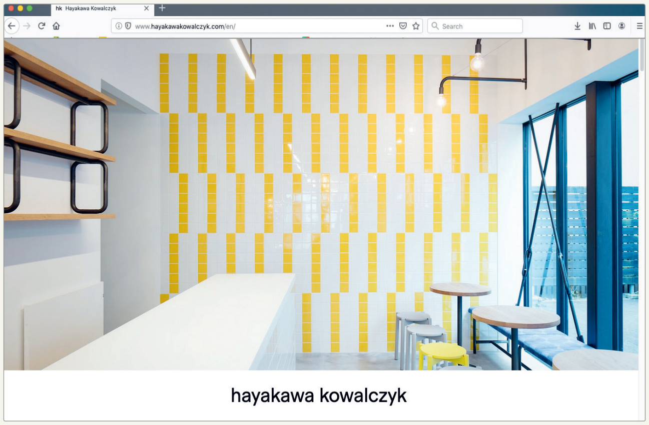
Summer of China

| *Illustration, A5 publication*

A catalog, which acts as a guide for British tourists, who are interested in experiencing the very local atmosphere of summer in China. I got the inspiration when I revisit my camera roll in my phone about my trip in China last summer, I have drawn to the local vague mid-aged people, which I believe it's a really unique culture, and interesting and shocking for a foreigner to see. From a humorous perspective, the catalog contains aspects, including what to wear, what to do and how to pose in a vague Chinese style. It would produce a sense of cultural clash when a British read it, and even more when he/she try to first hand experience the culture.

Landing page With Theodor Swanson's portfolio site, first impressions are key. A landing page is the first page you "land" on when clicking a link to a site. It is important that everything on this page is searchable, since search engines tend to scan the landing page quickly before anything else. Make sure all your portfolio images are named with searchable tags, e.g. theodor-swanson-graphic-design-portfolio-poster-typography-neon.jpg.





account you also get email accounts for your domain, which you should use for professional correspondence.

Buy your domain name, even if you are not planning on having a website, simply so that no one else can. There are numerous warnings about individuals buying domains and selling them on at increased rates. Buy as many as you can afford, e.g. .co.uk, .com, .org, .me, .design, etc. There are so many options available, so it makes sense to own the obvious examples. However, some suffixes are not available in other countries, so it's worth doing some research into what you are buying. And finally, set yourself up a professional email address on the back of your domain, e.g. hello@joebloggs.co.uk.

Low-tech online portfolios

Popular among non-web designers are the many online resources that provide designers with the ability to upload and share image examples from their portfolio. The utility-driven goal is to have the image examples available on demand, via hyperlink, as opposed to manually attaching images to email correspondence.

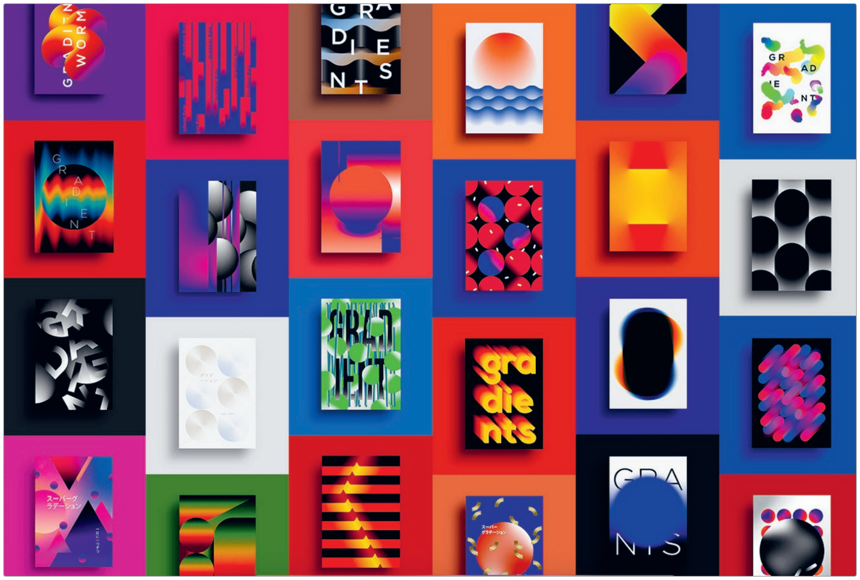
Your domain's settings can be adjusted to redirect your site viewers directly from your web address to a user profile. See Working with Content Management Systems (pages 175–177) for more information.

Traditional online portfolios

If you are seeking positions within the field of web design, the online portfolio serves as a perfect vehicle to demonstrate what you know, from HTML and CSS coding to crafting a memorable user experience. The level of design and coding should be representative of your level of technical expertise.

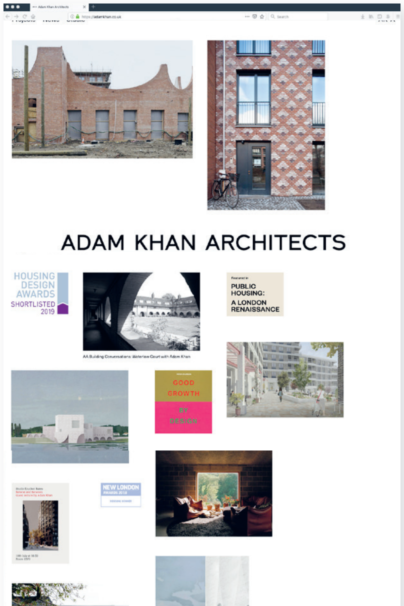
Test your work

When you reach the point at which you think you have finished your project, take a break and return with a fresh pair of eyes. Click through all of your links to check that they are functioning properly. Check that your presentation is well-organized and visually consistent, and review your grammar. Conduct a "beta test" among friends and relatives, and review their feedback. If your parents have a challenging time navigating through your site, a potential employer may experience the same issue. Process all necessary adjustments before sharing your web address with a larger audience.



Thumbnails This mock-up of the Super Gradient portfolio site contains a series of beautifully curated thumbnail images. Thumbnails are a great way to condense and organize information, making your site clean and easy to navigate. In this instance, when clicked, the thumbnails could reveal more information and further in-depth photographs to explain each project.

Self-promotion
Don't forget to include the address of your online portfolio on your resumé, business cards, social-media account profiles, and your email account's auto-signature settings.


ADAM KHAN ARCHITECTS
HOUSING DESIGN AWARDS SHORTLISTED 2019
PUBLIC HOUSING: A LONDON RENAISSANCE
GOOD GROWTH
NEW LONDON

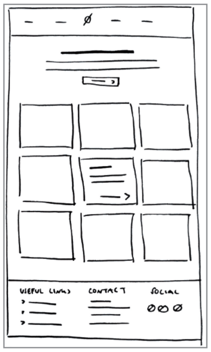
MIES 2017
BLACKROCK

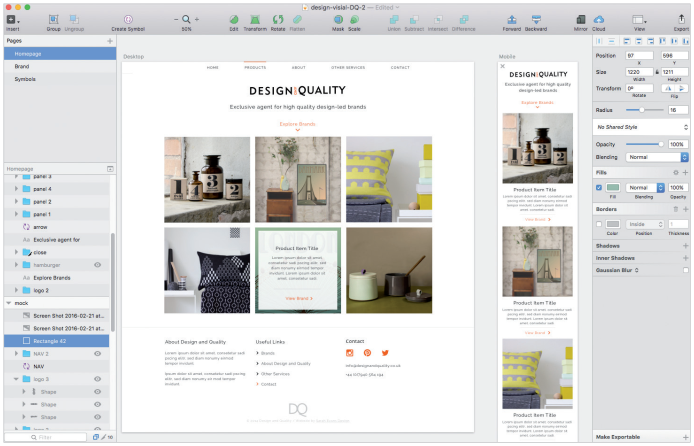
Social media

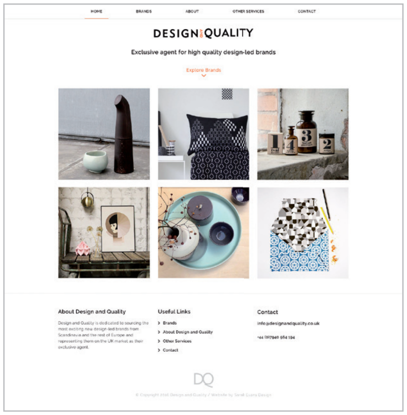
Many graphic designers use social media as a means of supporting/linking to their online portfolios, while others replace the online portfolio with the content management system that an existing social media platform provides. Either way, it is advised to err on the side of caution when linking anything personal to your professional context.

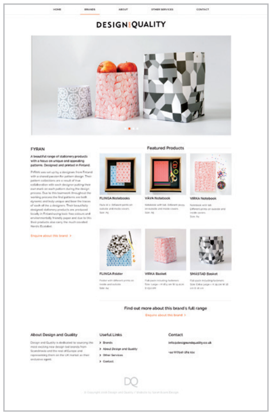
One of the many upsides of social media is that you can update visuals regularly and effortlessly. With followers subscribing to your channels, and the option to be featured and reposted by others, you have a ready-made audience waiting to receive content. The platforms also provide a ready-made creative community. You may find competition there, but you will also find like-minded creatives, collaborators, and critical friends to help you develop your graphic design portfolio.

With the connections you'll make and the exposure you will gain, there's no doubt social media can do things that an online portfolio can't, but once a client finds you, a website will always act as your professional anchor, giving you the credibility and authority to make a living doing what you love.


USEFUL LINKS
CONTACT
SOCIAL


design-visial-DQ-2 — Edited
Pages
Homepage
Brand
Symbols
DESIGN QUALITY
Exclusive agent for high quality design-led brands
Explore Brands
Product Item Title
About Design and Quality
Useful Links
Contact
DQ
Make Exportable

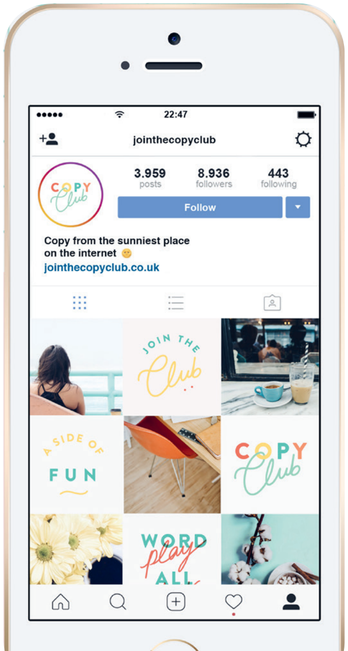

HOME
BRANDS
ABOUT
OTHER SERVICES
CONTACT
DESIGN QUALITY
Exclusive agent for high quality design-led brands
Explore Brands
About Design and Quality
Useful Links
Contact
DQ


DESIGN QUALITY
Featured Products
About Design and Quality
Useful Links
Contact
DQ

Show off If you are presenting yourself as a designer who can code HTML and CSS, your online portfolio is a fantastic opportunity to demonstrate your expertise. In this example the designer is showcasing the website on both a screen and mobile, displaying responsive design skills.

Using grids to break the mold Adam Khan's portfolio presents thumbnails set to a grid in an unconventional way. It is important to understand the fundamentals of web design and layout. But once you know the rules, don't be afraid to bend them. There's a lot of competition out there, and you need to stand out from the crowd.

Creative cropping This social media feed presents a series of typographic posts between some creatively cropped photography. Cropping images in this way results in a more dynamic image, pulling the viewer in to learn more.


22:47
jointhecopyclub
3.959 posts
8.936 followers
443 following
Follow
Copy from the sunniest place on the internet
jointhecopyclub.co.uk
JOIN THE Club
A SIDE OF FUN
COPY Club
WORD play ALL

Email and auto signatures

Regardless of which email system you use regularly (school, Gmail, Yahoo!, etc.), for professional correspondence you should set up and use an email account associated with your own domain name. Where a school email account communicates "student" and a nondescript Gmail account may say "hobbyist," your own domain serves as the foundation in creating a professional first impression.

Most email systems provide you with the ability to set up default auto signatures, where you can predefine a standardized closing signature for every email you distribute. Take advantage of this feature, envisioning it as if you are passing along a virtual business card to everyone you correspond with. Typical signature elements include name, desired contact details, and links to an online portfolio and social media.

CHAPTER 7: ASSIGNMENTS

First impressions

1 Set a timer and describe your top ten attributes as a graphic designer to a partner. How long did it take? Repeat the exercise, but this time only give yourself 15 seconds. How many attributes did you manage to communicate clearly?

2 55% of visitors spend less than 15 seconds on a website. Therefore, if you haven't generated interest in 15 seconds, then you probably aren't going to. How can you make a good first impression in 15 seconds? Discuss this with your partner and each sketch a landing page for your own websites.

3 Look at each other's sketches for 15 seconds without speaking. Highlight what grabs your attention first, and why. Mock up this information with color in Illustrator and repeat the task. Use the results to help make design decisions for your own online portfolio.

Good and bad navigation

Select two websites, one you think is successful and another which is not. Draw up the navigation of these sites as simple wireframes. Analyze how the content has been organized: what is conventional and what is unconventional in terms of web design in these examples? If anything, what would you add/change/remove to make these sites function better? Recreate the wireframes of both sites implementing your amends. Show this to a partner for feedback.

Card-sorting excercise

Card sorting is commonly used in information architecture and can help web designers answer a variety of questions before the design phase even begins. Card sorting helps designers organize navigation, especially complex navigation, in the most efficient way possible.

1 In a small group, collaboratively mock up the navigation of a website for a local independent business. This could be one that already exists or a fictional store. For each web page within the site, write a label on a card or a sticky note, e.g. Home, Services, About, Contact, Visit, Book, Shop, etc., and begin to lay them out flat in order of navigation. In a group discuss your choices and offer alternative solutions by physically moving the cards around. Pay specific attention to how links and sublinks are named and how they are ordered. Remember to document the final decision(s) with a camera for reference.

2 Once you are happy, digitally mock up the navigation in Illustrator individually, and bring the designs back to the group for discussion.

Web standards

Web standards are recommendations published by notable institutions associated with web design and development. Although very subjective, web standards aim to unite sites for ease and usability.

1 Without looking at a website, make a list of what you believe to be web standards and why. For example, a logo is always a clickable hyperlink back to the homepage.

2 For more information visit www.evolutionoftheweb.com—a website that features a graphical timeline of innovations that have influenced the Web over the past 20 years, from various web browsers to code and functionality improvements, to presenting global web traffic numbers. Through this resource you should be able to identify consistencies as websites developed over time. Is there anything unusual, or anything you are surprised about, in terms of these consistencies?

3 Can you find a contemporary website that follows none of these web standards? Do you think it is still successful, and if so, why? Present your findings to your class in a short, five-minute, presentation.

Style boards

A style board is a graphical representation of stylistic approaches that you would be proposing to your client. Designed elements are pulled out of the specific web layout so they can remain the focal point of the preliminary design consultations. Typically, designers present three style boards for a client to review: a conservative approach; a wild approach; and an approach that falls in between the two extremes.

1 Create three style boards for the contemporary website you identified in the previous task. Start with the styles used in the current website, then create two variations, one adhering more to conventional web standards and one that pushes the boundaries in terms of visual language.

2 In the style boards identify the following: color palette (dark, light, mid-tones, accent colors); typography (headline, subhead, body text, text links, quotes, captions, etc.); textures (background patterns, gradients, drop shadows, etc.); buttons (button size, shape, color, corner radius, drop shadow, etc.); icons (icons as a button element, icons to define content, etc.); and images (cropping, border, padding/spacing, drop shadow, corner radius, etc.)

Dreamweaver

There are endless tutorials available online that will help you navigate your way around the most up-to-date version of Adobe Dreamweaver. The Adobe site itself has the most comprehensive at https://helpx.adobe.com/uk/dreamweaver/tutorials.html. Use these tutorials to build confidence and learn the correct terminology. When you are ready, complete the tasks below. Remember, you can always return to the tutorials or search for anything you specifically want more practice with.

Bootstrap

Bootstrap is a framework within Dreamweaver that includes a set of prebuilt components that can save you a lot of time when creating a responsive website. This assignment will take you through how to use Bootstrap, step-by-step, to create a blank page with responsive settings.

1 A site in Dreamweaver provides a centralized location for you to save and access the files that make your website work. This is called a root folder. Before you even open Dreamweaver you must save a folder, name it root, and keep all your website content there.

- Open Dreamweaver—if you see a welcome screen, you can close it now.
- Click Site > New Site and name your site.
- Point to the root folder you will be working on from your computer and click Choose.
- Set workspace to Beginner (top-right drop-down menu).
- Open the Files panel and take a look at the files that make up your website so far (all project files within your root folder). If you cannot see updated files, click the refresh icon.
- To create a home page: File > New.
- You are building an HTML page, so select HTML as the document type.
- Select the Bootstrap tab and select Create New to create a bootstrap.css file. Dreamweaver will create this file based on some of the settings you select next.
- Since you are starting with a blank page, make sure to uncheck the prebuilt layout option.
- Next, expand the customize settings—these settings define the default layout that will be created once the HTML file is saved.
- It's really helpful to design with a grid when making a website. Columns will help you organize and align components on the page. The column default is 12. Gutter refers to the space between each column and should be left at the 30px default.
- The screen sizes here refer to the different widths for small, medium, and large screens. When you create your website, Dreamweaver makes it easy for you to switch between each of these screen sizes and customize the design for each one. (I would advise you to keep the default settings at this stage.)
- Click Create.

2 Save your new page: File > Save. Make sure you are saving to your root folder. Name the file index.html and then click Save.

Notice the Files panel shows more files and folders. It now includes the index.html file you created as well as folders that Dreamweaver automatically created. You won't be editing any of these default files and it's important to leave them intact to ensure your pages work correctly.

Titles and containers

1 Building on the previous assignment, this task will help you to add the title that will display in the tab of the web browser and set your page apart in future search results, as well as add the container that will wrap the contents and make the design fit the width of the page.

- Click the Split View button in the document toolbar to see your live design and have access to the code simultaneously. By default, the code sits below Live View, but you can move the code to sit vertically on the left. To do this, go to View > Split Vertically, then View > Uncheck Live View on Left, so the live view will appear on the right.
- To add a title to the page, click anywhere in Live View, then find the Properties panel below. Add your title to Document Title and it will appear between the title tags in the HTML.
- An asterisk (*) will appear on the file tab (index.html*). This indicates that there are unsaved changes. Save your file using File > Save or Command + S on your keyboard.
- Select Preview in Browser (the small globe icon in the lower right). Select the browser you prefer. At this point the only content on the page is the title you just added; can you see it in the tab of the browser?
- Next, you need to add an element called a container to hold all of your page's content. Select the Insert panel and go to the Bootstrap Components category. Bootstrap components are page elements that already have responsive behavior built in.
- There are two options for empty containers you can use to hold your page's content. The first is a container element and it allows you to define a fixed width for your web page. The container fluid component, however, allows the design to stretch the entire width of the page no matter what the screen size.
- Click anywhere in Live View and look for the word "body" in the heads-up display—you want to make sure you are about to add this element to the right area of the code, right after the body tag in the code window.
- Now click to add the Container Fluid element on the right-hand panel. Two things have happened. You will have a blue border in Live View, with a display that indicates the container you just added. It is an element called a div, and it's identified by a class name, which is container fluid. In Code View, you can see the same thing written out in HTML: you have a div with a class name of container fluid <div class"container-fluid"></div>.

2 Make a note of all the terminology and abbreviations that are being used in these exercises. Make sure you understand what everything means, and what its purpose is.
For example:

- A div is an empty container (HTML element). On its own it doesn't do much; however, you can tell this div to behave in certain ways using CSS, which is where this class name comes in.
- CSS is another web design language that tells HTML elements what to do and how to look. In order for the CSS to work correctly, however, it needs to know what element it will be styling, and that's why HTML elements are sometimes identified with class names. So, when you add these Bootstrap components, they come with class names, and some of their behavior is predefined in the bootstrap.css document that was generated when you created the page.
- The difference between a regular container and a container fluid: they are both empty containers but they resize differently according to the rules they were given in the Bootstrap CSS.

So far you have created a page, and set it up so that you can add content. At the moment, there is nothing to see, since all the containers are empty.

CHAPTER 7: ASSIGNMENTS CONTINUED

Add structure and content

In this assignment, you will build the overall structure of the page by adding the HTML components to provide the framework for the page. Add placeholders for the main menu navigation, a slideshow, the main body of content, a thumbnail image, and a footer.

1 Without navigation, websites appear unstructured and unorganized, and offer little support for the user to navigate around the information. This task will help you set up a Navbar (Navigation Bar), while explaining how good navigation can positively impact users' experience of the site.

The first section you will add to the page is the main menu. Again, you can use a Bootstrap component for this.

- Make sure the container fluid div is still selected—if not, click on the div node in the DOM panel; it will highlight in both Code View and Live View. The DOM is a really useful panel that allows you to see the entire structure of your web page in a visual and hierarchical way.
- In the Insert panel, under Bootstrap Components, find the Navbar component—it has a drop-down menu of various menu styles you can use. Click on Basic Navbar.
- Select the Nest option when prompted. This will place the Navbar inside the container selected. In this example, the Navbar is a child element that lives inside the container, which is its parent element.
- As you can see from the DOM panel, the Navbar is nested inside the container fluid.
- You can now see the Navbar in the Live View. Dreamweaver also adds the necessary code in the Code View.
- To expand Live View, click the Live button, above the editing area. This will expand Live View and allow you to see more of what is going on.
- You can see that the Navbar has some content that appears by default, Brand/Links/Search, etc.
- You can use the live menu scrubber to simulate how the Navbar will look across different screen sizes. (Pull the right-hand bar across Live View.) Notice as the display size gets smaller, the menu collapses to a hamburger icon, which is a common interface for mobile device browsing.
- Click the Split button to go back to Split View, so you can add your next bit of content.

2 A Carousel is a slideshow for images and text used on websites. Dreamweaver offers this template, so it's important to understand its use, however you should consider other ways of designing layouts for your images. After this task, take a look at contemporary examples and judge for yourself whether the Carousel is the right option for your site.

- Because you've been doing some clicking around you'll want to make sure you are about to add the next component in the right place. In the DOM, find the node that says div > class="container-fluid", then select its child element, which is the node that says nav > class="navbar navbar-default". If you don't see the child element you might have to click on the div node to open up the stack.
- Now you want to add a Carousel element after the Navbar. In the Insert panel, select the Carousel element and select After when prompted. This adds the Carousel element after the Navbar element you have selected.
- Click Save. Dreamweaver presents a dialog alerting you that the Carousel placeholder image is being added to the images folder in your site set-up/root folder. Click OK.
- In Live View you can interact with the slideshow (Carousel) and preview it at different sizes.

3 Next you are going to add some heading and paragraph text in the main body of this web page. To do this, you first need to set up a container to add the text into. It's good practice to organize your sections in containers, and it will make it easier to style and restyle this section later.

- First, make sure you are in the right place in the code. Click div > id = "carousel1" class="carousel slide".
- In the Insert panel select the HTML category from the drop-down.
- Scroll down until you see the Article element. Select Article and select to place it after the Carousel when prompted.
- Now click the Heading: H1 button from the Insert panel. Choose to nest it inside the article when prompted.
- Finally, select the paragraph from the Insert panel. Choose to place it after the Heading: H1 when prompted.

4 A thumbnail is a small image representation of a larger image. These are important attributes to a website because they make it easier and faster for a user to look at or manage a group of larger images, and they don't interfere with loading speeds as high-resolution, larger files would.

- Click the Article node in the DOM panel so you can add a thumbnail after the text you've just created.
- In the Insert panel, select Bootstrap Components from the drop-down.
- Find and click the Thumbnails component.
- Choose to place it after the article when prompted.
- Click Save. Dreamweaver presents a dialog alerting you that the thumbnail placeholder image is being added to the images folder in your site set-up/root folder. Click OK.
- In the DOM panel you can see that the thumbnail is built in an interesting way. First, Dreamweaver creates a row panel (div> class="row"), which spans the width of the page. Inside that row is a column (div> class=col-md-4"). This column contains the text and image that make up the thumbnail.

5 Conventionally, the footer is an area at the bottom of a web page that contains data which is common to other pages and therefore needs to be consistent throughout the site. It forms part of the package of web standards, typically containing contact details, copyrights, references, and other important tidbits of information.

- Select the node with the class of row from the DOM panel.
- In the Insert panel, go back to the HTML category and select Footer.
- Choose to place the footer after the thumbnail row when prompted.
- Save the page and choose to preview it in the browser. It doesn't look like much yet, but you have your structure in place. The page is not styled at this point, but it will be easier to change that now you have your foundation.

6 You have now made a basic template, which can be amended how you see fit. With a bit of research, you now need to change the placeholder content that Dreamweaver adds when you use the predefined components from the Insert panel. Add your own labels to the menu navigation, and change the structure to match your final design. Replace the caption text for the slideshow and thumbnail sections to match the images. Finally, add text to the main heading and paragraph in the body of the page and replace the footer content with some copyright information.

- Apply some style and layout to the text. Use the CSS Designer to add color and reposition the text in different sections of the page.
- Change the menu to give it a more modern look and blend it with the rest of the page design.
- Override the default styling of the menu to change the background color, border, and positioning of the menu within the page to get the look you want to achieve.
- Finish the page by giving it a more polished look and change the default style of the images so they look effective on any device.
- Apply CSS to the slideshow images to make them stretch the width of the page/modify the thumbnail images to fit the width of their container.

Mobile app icon design

The app icon is the main branding element for a mobile app project. Select an existing app and remake 30 versions of the same icon. Successful app icons visually explain the utility of the app.

1 Write out a list of potential visual elements and create a set of skamps. Analyze and select the best 30 to mock up for presentation.

2 Assemble your icon in Adobe Photoshop (72ppi, RGB). Resize your app icon design for use on an iPhone at the following dimensions (in pixels): 57 x 57, 72 x 72, 114 x 114, 512 x 512.

3 If you are feeling particularly confident, there are many online resources to mock up a live app to test on your phone with minimal coding required. Do some research and see if you can apply your strongest design solution for the app icon across the whole mobile platform.

Online portfolio

Following the instructions for First Impressions on page 184, develop the mock-up of your online portfolio based on some of the discoveries you've made through other tasks. Before you open Dreamweaver, answer the following questions and user-test your ideas with peers, to ensure your plans are sound.

- What is the purpose of your online portfolio? What is your call to action?
- What information is fundamental to the user, and which information could be removed?
- How will your user navigate your information? What web standards should you be implementing?
- What information should be consistent across all pages? E.g. your name?
- Should your site be responsive? If so, how does this affect your design?

1 Create your own style board and redesign your Illustrator mock-up.

2 Create a wireframe to help you understand your navigation.

3 Following the Dreamweaver tasks and tutorials available, create the basic system/empty containers for your site.

4 Create and populate each page with contents. If you do not have enough projects yet, use placeholder text and imagery until you do.

5 Create a landing page. The landing page is the web page that serves as the entry point for a website. It is important it contains key information and gives an overview or introduction to the site.

6 Purchase a domain/hosting license, and when you're ready, make your site live.

Social media

Social media sits hand in hand with online portfolios. Use social media to create new channels for your graphic design practice, avoiding personal images and information where possible: concentrate on the work. What styles, imagery, and tone of voice can you carry over to these sites to create a cohesive brand?

Make a list of social media channels you would like to link to your online portfolio. Mock up profile pictures in the appropriate format for each platform, and design the first three posts. Present your social media to the class for feedback.

Further reading

Jon Duckett, *HTML and CSS: Design and Build Websites*, John Wiley & Sons, 2011

Jon Duckett, *JavaScript and JQuery: Interactive Front-End Web Development*, John Wiley & Sons, 2014

Charlotte Fiell and Peter Fiell, *Graphic Design Sourcebook*, Goodman-Fiell, 2018

Jim Maivald, *Adobe Dreamweaver CC Classroom in a Book*, Adobe, 2018

Patrick McNeil, *The Web Designer's Idea Book, Volume 4: Inspiration from Today's Best Web Design Trends, Themes and Styles*, HOW Books, 2014

Louis Rosenfeld and Peter Morville, *Information Architecture: For the Web and Beyond,* O'Reilly Media, 2015

Megan Sapnar Ankerson, *Dot-Com Design: The Rise of a Usable, Social, Commercial Web*, NYU Press, 2018

Drew de Soto, *Know Your Onions Web Design*, Bis Publishers, 2014

Lea Verou, *CSS Secrets: Better Solutions to Everyday Web Design Problems*, O'Reilly Media, 2015

8

Expert Paths

By now you should have a good idea of which career path excites you, and will be interested in discovering what it might be like to work in a specific design field. Although expert knowledge in any one of the highlighted disciplines in this chapter will serve you well in the marketplace, remember that design is a collaborative field, and that it is becoming increasingly interdisciplinary. In fact, many of the skill sets in each path should be part of your repertoire. Build your expertise in the area that excites you the most, but find out enough about all of them to collaborate intelligently. Be aware that any job in the creativity industry will be quite fluid, and as a result you will be expected to work with tools that do not even exist yet. In this unit, each branch of a discipline is highlighted with the skills needed, the ups and downs you might encounter on the job, and some examples of the best in the business. It will provide you with resources and options to help you develop a career path that best suits your skills and aptitudes.

> “Design is thinking made visual”
>
> *Saul Bass*

TYPOGRAPHY

Type designers and typographers are considered specialists who design, style, and/or set type for print and digital platforms. The role varies, but it’s important to acknowledge that type designers and typographers not only create and arrange type to make written language legible, but also consider how design concepts and esthetics can alter the way we interpret messages. As a result, a career in typography has a huge impact on the fundamentals of visual communication.

Examples of work

As a typographer you will be working with the arrangement of type to “set” text, including selecting typefaces and adjusting point sizes, line lengths, leading, tracking, and kerning. The term typography is also applied to the style, arrangement, and appearance of the letters, numbers, and symbols created by the process.

As a type designer you will design and create new letterforms and adapt others for projects. Type design is considered a craft since it requires an insightful understanding of typographic history and an acute attention to detail to render all elements of a comprehensive typeface.

Many typographers do not design typefaces, and some type designers do not consider themselves typographers. But this line is constantly challenged and blurred by contemporary designers working with typography—great examples being the wave of experimental typography being produced and the use of type as image in a huge array of design projects.

Skills required

- A firm, creative understanding, as well as a love of typography and communication design, and its history.
- An element of patience and rigor since most typographic projects require focusing on the details.
- Due to ongoing and rapid changes in computer technology and desktop publishing software, you will need continual training to stay on top of advancements in graphic design applications.

Pros . . .

- Everybody needs typography in some capacity, so there is a wealth of career and freelance opportunities available to someone with a strong skill set.
- Due to digital advances, the craft is accessible to anyone with the interest to pursue it. Nevertheless, it may take a very long time for the serious artist to master.
- It is very rewarding to create a tool that aids another designer's creativity.

. . . and cons

- Type-based projects can be a real labor of love. The attention to detail and need for focus can be draining, isolating, and time-consuming if your heart's not in it.
- Typefaces are purchased via a license, and often people illegally share and use typefaces without proper payment or accreditation to do so.
- It is frustrating to see a typeface you have created used inappropriately or manipulated beyond your control.

✪ Best in the business

- **A2/SW/HK:** Scott Williams and Henrik Kubel, of studio A2/SW/HK, create work with conceptual rigor, an in-depth attention to detail and finishing, and an unrivaled capacity to design bespoke typefaces. http://www.a2swhk.co.uk/
- **Kate Moross:** With work spanning across artistic direction, moving imagery, typography, and illustration, Moross explores a more colorful and playful approach to typography. https://www.katemoross.com/
- **Kyuha Shim (Q):** Director of Type Lab, a multidisciplinary creative lab with particular focus on computation design and typography, Q explores the boundaries of digital technology within visual communication. http://www.type-lab.com/
- **Paula Scher:** A renowned Pentagram partner, Scher treats type as a visual image in her work, creating consistently vibrant compositions. https://www.pentagram.com/about/paula-scher

Career options

An understanding and application of typography is fundamental to most career paths within graphic design, but if you are particularly passionate you may find a career as the following:

- Art worker
- Digital/interactive designer
- Letterpress specialist and/or technician
- Publishing/editorial designer
- Sign painter
- Type designer

⊕ See also:

- https://www.istd.org.uk/
- http://typequality.com/

PRINT AND EDITORIAL DESIGN

Print and editorial design encompasses a huge breadth of disciplines, and are considered two of the more traditional routes for a graphic designer to pursue. Modern print and editorial design arguably originate from the 15th-century printing press of Gutenberg, when pages of type were manually set in movable metal type. Each page was set in relation to margins, gutters, and borders, and printed in multiple copies—a huge leap from handwritten manuscripts. With evolutions in print-production methods and the influence of early 20th-century art and design schools, such as the Bauhaus, the designer began to gain control over print and the page

Examples of work

Print and editorial designers now work in an unprecedented range of media and technologies. Many new forms of print and editorial design have been generated over time, and esthetic considerations are wide-ranging.

Print and editorial designers make up a large section of the graphic design workforce. Aside from the obvious—creating printed materials such as publications, posters, magazines, zines, etc.—the role can involve art direction, illustration, and print and production skills. Being responsible for the layout and visual esthetics of print and editorial, you will be expected to have a solid understanding of typography, layout, pacing, hierarchy, and legibility.

An editorial designer will decide how images and text sit together in print and on screen. As we move deeper into a technology-oriented world, more and more editorial design, for magazines, newspapers, and journals, is being created digitally. This means that editorial design increasingly demands the attention of many different graphic designers with varied specialties.

Skills required

- As a print or editorial designer you should be up to date with contemporary trends, have skills in publishing and page assembly programs such as InDesign, and be able to work to strict deadlines.
- A basic understanding of print for production and social skills will enable you to liaise with your printer.
- A good communicator, both in the sense of composition and visual language, but also working with clients and large teams with multiple voices and contributions.

Pros . . .

- After spending weeks behind a computer screen, it is a wonderful feeling to receive a beautiful, physical outcome back from the printer—and even better to see it in a store.
- Unless you specialize in creating print and books about design, you get to learn about a whole breadth of new things that you may not come across in day-to-day life.
- Print and editorial design allows a lot of scope to be really experimental and creative.

. . . and cons

- The designer tends to be the last step before production, meaning that if someone misses their deadline it cuts into your time.
- Designing a publication is a huge task. It takes a lot of time and energy, and it is very unlikely that you will spot all the tiny mistakes before going to print. And if someone does, be prepared for endless back-and-forths with amends and adjustments.

Best in the business

- **Irma Boom:** A specialist in book making, Boom's bold, experimental approach to her projects often challenges the convention of traditional books in both physical design and printed content. https://irmaboom.nl/
- **Eye Magazine:** *Eye*, the international review of graphic design, is a quarterly-printed magazine about graphic design and visual culture. Edited by John Walters and designed by a team headed up by Simon Esterson, this is magazine design in its purest form.
- **Visual Editions:** Co-founded by Anna Gerber and Britt Iversen, Visual Editions is a creative agency that uses narrative and storytelling principles through printed editorial as well as interactive and digital platforms.

Career options

Print and editorial design are some of the most common career paths within graphic design, so it is worth considering the following careers:

- Art director or creative director
- Art worker
- Digital/interactive designer
- Print designer
- Printmaker
- Publication designer

See also:

- https://www.sbf.org.uk/
- https://centerforbookarts.org/

INFORMATION DESIGN

The role of an information designer consists of converting information, data, and commentary into a visual format. The responsibility of the graphic designer in this context is heightened, partly because it is your responsibility to make complex information more accessible and easier to understand and to navigate. But also, as with many graphic design roles, you have the power to manipulate and persuade thought and opinion.

Examples of work

Information design traditionally involves producing graphs or charts, diagrams, infographics, and illustrations to deliver often complex information in a way that is easy to understand and visually appealing. As the discipline develops, and as our obsession and preoccupation with data grows, more and more experimental ways of translating data are being generated.

Graphical representation of data is useful for identifying and illustrating trends and patterns, and for converting spreadsheets and reports into easily digestible visuals. An information designer will have both the creativity to envisage how information might be presented in a visual format, and the mathematical and logic skills to understand and process that data themselves, along with the graphics, art, and technology capabilities to produce the final visualization.

Skills required

- An analytical, logistical, and mathematical approach to design problems is fundamental to being an information designer, both in terms of handling the data, but also transitioning it into something meaningful.
- Perspective. You will be handling information that you could easily misinterpret with bias.

An understanding that views of information may be different to your own is paramount in this discipline.
- An understanding of systems and messages. Your visual communication needs to be coherent and confident.

Pros . . .

- If done right, there is potential within this discipline to do some good and bring about meaningful change to opinions and behaviors.
- Information design is constantly expanding into new territories—no longer does your representation have to sit on a piece of paper. In installations, interactive websites, and exhibitions, your representation can live just about anywhere.
- Really suited to the curious because every project will unearth something you didn't know previously.

. . . and cons

- A lot of rigor and brain power sits behind this analytical approach to design, which is not for everyone.
- The details can make or break a project about information, so perfectionism could push you over the edge.

✪ Best in the business

- **Giorgia Lupi:** An advocate of Data Humanism, Lupi is a renowned information designer and partner at Pentagram. http://giorgialupi.com/
- **RNDR:** An interactive design studio creating design visualizations, interactive installations, generative identities, prints, and programs to visualize information. https://rndr.studio/
- **Stefanie Posavec:** A designer working in book design, information design, data visualization, and commissioned artworks using data. http://www.stefanieposavec.com/

Career options

- 3D visualization artist
- Data journalist
- Data visualization designer
- Interactive designer
- Wayfinding systems designer

⊕ See also:
- http://www.stefanieposavec.com/dear-data-about
- http://www.eyemagazine.com/blog/post/lady-with-the-diagram

IDENTITY, BRANDING, AND ADVERTISING

Identity, branding, and advertising are all about ideas. A graphic designer working in these areas should have strengths in developing innovative and convincing concepts, and stamina for this high-energy, fast-paced industry. Multidisciplinary in nature, when working in this area you are expected to have an array of other supporting skills, which may span copywriting, art direction, and production for illustration, animation, photography, or film.

Examples of work

Generally involved in most parts of the process, a graphic designer working in identity, branding, and advertising will be informed by research and analytics, collaborating with the production, planning, account, and client to carry a project through to completion.

Advertising designers can sway public consciousness, not only through commercial advertising campaigns, but also as part of promoting social change and raising awareness of local and global issues such as health, sustainability, and politics.

A great identity and brand developer should be detail-oriented and flexible, and have well-developed design and problem-solving skills that employ communication, clarity, and simplicity. Organizations spend a lot of money annually to keep identity and branding fresh, current, and innovative, and we know those clients are out there just waiting to find the right talent. Large companies employ in-house designers who develop and update their logos, but many turn to external graphic design firms and individuals who specialize in this field for an outside perspective to develop their brand.

Skills required

- A fundamental interest in brand research and marketing psychology.
- A creative understanding and love of visual semiotics, symbolism, illustration, color theory, and brand design.
- Knowledge of innovative marketing materials, campaign approaches, and copywriting skills.
- Great communication skills. Listening carefully to a client at the beginning and throughout the branding process is central to the design process.

Pros . . .

- Opportunities for visual creativity and clever communication, especially for those designers interested in identity, marketing, and sales.
- Opportunities to engage interest in marketing, strategy, psychology, and business.
- It is always gratifying to see a brand you helped develop launch, expand, and succeed.

. . . and cons

- Many have created their "perfect logo" only to have it modified beyond recognition, or trashed inadvertently by a visually uneducated client. Such is the life of a designer.
- Advertising can create notoriously high-stress environments.

✪ Best in the business

- **Pentagram:** The world's largest independent design consultancy, the firm is owned and run by 24 partners, each of whom is a leader in their individual fields. The work encompasses graphics and identity, architecture and interiors, products and packaging, exhibitions and installations, websites and digital experiences, advertising and communications—to name just a few. https://www.pentagram.com/
- **Sagmeister & Walsh:** Stefan Sagmeister and Jessica Walsh run a creative agency producing strategy, design, and production across all platforms including brand identities, campaigns, social strategy and content creation, commercials, websites, apps, books, environments, and more. https://sagmeisterwalsh.com/
- **Wolff Olins:** An international brand consultancy that employs 150 designers, strategists, technologists, program managers, and educators to create striking identities, campaigns, and more. https://www.wolffolins.com/

Career options

Work in identity, branding, and advertising is fast-paced and demanding, but the progression and flexibility within this industry could really pay off financially with any of the following career paths:

- Account manager
- Art director
- Creative director
- Designer
- Digital designer
- Strategist
- Brand development

⊕ See also:

- https://www.dandad.org/

PACKAGING AND 3D DESIGN

Packaging and 3D design can span fabric printing or design for packaging and materials. Working primarily on visuals that will translate onto—or become—physical surfaces and objects, the role requires good knowledge of production techniques and requirements, from screen printing to manufacturing processes. With great demand for these skill sets in many industries, a packaging designer might work in-house for a brand, or go freelance across a wide range of different projects.

Examples of work

From food and drink packaging to new trends in environmental sustainability, packaging and 3D design are vital to the future of graphic design. A 3D designer will work on a range of projects in the studio. Examples of this could be expressing a brand's personality in a physical form, which could be anything from translating designs onto a surface to designing an innovative piece of paperboard engineering.

Packaging and 3D designers will regularly find themselves immersed in research tasks, collective brainstorming, concept sketching, physical prototyping, and concept testing. To create impactful and eye-catching pieces, these projects require a good level of concentration from start to finish.

Skills required

- An understanding of how to apply ergonomics, human-centric design, and the 3D form to branding and graphic design more generally. You need to be a strong, creative thinker, have curiosity, be inventive, and also able to problem-solve in a way that is relevant to both brands and consumers.

- You will need a strong ability to communicate your ideas, whether that is through sketching, writing, verbal, or other means. A lot of this work relies on communicating to clients and teams. Expect to be involved in client presentations, briefings, a presentation of development, etc.
- Rigor and a comprehensive understanding of construction, crafting, and making (both by hand and CAD). Endless prototypes will be inevitable.

Pros . . .
- There is something satisfying about realizing your ideas and concepts through shape, form, and materials.
- You get to work closely with manufacturers, who translate designs into production samples. This can be an excellent and interesting learning experience.
- The joys of solving a problem. Packaging and 3D design are about challenging things and doing them in unexpected ways, so when you've got that idea, nothing feels better.

. . . and cons
- The industry is fast-paced and high-pressured to deliver creative ideas and outputs in a very tight timeframe.
- Clients and colleagues often forget that 3D design development and manufacture take a little longer than 2D. You often do not get enough time to complete tasks to the high standard you would want to.

✪ Best in the business

- **Helen Friel:** A paper engineer and author with experience in art directing and creating paper artwork for editorial and advertising clients. She also illustrates interactive and immersive books for both children and adults, including the first pop-up book to be sent into space. https://www.helenfriel.com/
- **Pearlfisher:** An international design company with a focus on sustainability, Pearlfisher builds and creates desirable brands and packaging from powerful identities to multisensory worlds. https://www.pearlfisher.com/
- **Burgopak:** This agency is a structural packaging design company that has some unusual patented packaging products that are created from a paperboard engineered sliding mechanism. https://burgopak.com/

Career options

- Art director
- Packaging designer
- Paper engineer
- Print designer
- Product designer

⊕ See also:
- https://www.worldpackagingdesign.com/

IMAGE MAKING

Illustrators, photographers, and other image makers are commissioned by clients to communicate ideas in advertisements, books, magazines and newspapers, through to apps, in TV and film, in both print and digital media. While these pathways are driven by a complete desire to create, experiment, and develop concepts and esthetics, the turnaround times for complex, detailed pieces of work can be quite pressured.

It is common for these disciplines to happen in isolation as much of the work depends on the skill set of an individual. Therefore, most illustrators and photographers work freelance and are based in home studios or in collaborative workspaces. As the scale and timeframe of commissions will vary, excellent communication and time-management skills are essential in order to meet deadlines and keep track of finances.

Examples of work

As an illustrator it is important to develop a confident, personal style while showing your flexibility in approach and method. Some illustrators may lean toward more traditional ways of working, such as pencils and paints, combined with image-making software like Procreate, Illustrator, or Photoshop. There is no right or wrong way to create an image—naturally, everyone will develop their own unique process which is one of the real beauties of illustration.

Likewise, a photographer will be working with the camera and making the majority of the design decisions on site. However, it is more than taking a picture. Technical planning and post-production are vital to any photographer. The majority of time can be spread across planning, budgeting, researching, test shooting, sourcing a team, liaising with a client, and, finally, editing. This discipline involves a great deal of preplanning and focus to get the job done.

With one approach varying greatly from the next, different forms of illustration and photography might be defined by equipment to the context—to a particular industry, event, or point of interest.

Skills required

- Full management and concentration are required when working in any area in isolation.
- A comprehensive understanding of traditional and digital means to create imagery and perform post-production. Illustrator and Photoshop are considered the industry standards, but there are a multitude of options out there.
- Responsive and communicative personality. Working offsite means there is pressure to include your client in the development of your work and to respond to questions promptly.

Pros . . .

- Opportunities to immerse yourself in creative thinking and storytelling.
- Option to decide on your own working environment, whether that be at home, in a co-working space, or a rented space—it's completely up to you.
- To see your images in use across a wide scope of contexts, being interacted with by a multitude of audiences.

. . . and cons

- Often results in isolated working which can be a struggle for many.
- Turnaround times, especially for editorial commissions, are fast, often with little notice. Expect to miss out on jobs for not picking up emails quickly or having your laptop with you at all time in case amends need to be made on the train!

Best in the business

- **Gem Fletcher:** A photo and film director collaborating with photographers on commercial, editorial, and personal projects, Gem Fletcher's work provokes emotion and challenges perceptions. https://www.gemfletcher.com/
- **Hattie Newman:** Through creating sets and images that live in advertisements, magazines, galleries, websites, books, and many other places around the world, Hattie Newman's sketches and ideas quickly outgrow their pages and leap to life. http://hattienewman.co.uk/
- **Victoria Ling:** Working with photography and animation, Victoria Ling's esthetic is clean and minimalist, with a keen attention to detail, texture, and color. http://www.victorialing.com/

Career options

A career in image making is really limitless. You will often find that image makers are in other roles, using image making as a supportive attribute to their professional creativity. For more specialist image-making careers consider:

- Artist-illustrator
- Character artist
- Director of photography
- Image researcher
- Photographer
- Re-toucher
- Storyboard artist

See also:
- https://www.societyillustrators.org/
- https://www.houseofillustration.org.uk/
- https://thephotographersgallery.org.uk/

MOVING IMAGE AND ANIMATION

The field of motion graphics has transcended its early beginnings in film and TV opening titles, and is now vital to the new media environment, interactive applications, post-production, advertising, animation, and digital environments for the Web and broadcast.

Examples of work

Motion graphics designers and animators overlap various disciplines, including illustration, visual effects, and typography. These projects tend to happen collaboratively within large teams, with each team member taking responsibility for a smaller, specialized part of the project.

The emphasis in the motion graphics industry is on speed of communication—how quickly you can appeal to either a specialized demographic or a wide audience and communicate the product, proposal, or information as clearly as possible. From corporations to production houses, web, digital and interactive media, the music industry, television, and film, this industry is fast and rewarding.

Business-to-business (B2B) motion graphics takes the form of idea proposals and pitches, training seminars, and other infographics. Moving image for advertising encompasses everything from web banners and TV commercials to websites. Film/video specialization covers music promotion, film/TV opening and closing credits, other animated visuals and effects, and more.

Skills required

- A good eye and fluency in design programs (such as Flash, Animate, After Effects, Maya, Illustrator, Photoshop, FinalCut) go hand in hand with a current working knowledge of software, hardware, and industry developments.
- Good appreciation of pace, rhythm, and storyboarding and an interest in storytelling and narratives are a must for sequential image making.
- An ability to work comfortably with complexity and layering, both literal and metaphorical, is essential for creating meaningful and coherent animation.

Pros . . .

- If your work really communicates client concepts in an innovative way, it will be sought after.
- Motion graphics designers are multidisciplinary and know how to collaborate. They are also masters of word and image and of many facets of design, versed in all the core skills.

. . . and cons

- Much of the initial concept work will be time-consuming. Clients may not know exactly what they want, and you will probably have to develop many versions to actually pull it out of their heads.
- Turnaround speed can be fast. Be realistic on what you can achieve in the time available to avoid missing your deadline.
- Motion graphics and animation can be labor-intensive, and you can find yourself stuck in front of a screen for hours on end. It really is a labor of love!

Best in the business

- **Kyle Cooper:** Having directed over 150 title sequences for film and television, Kyle Cooper founded Imaginary Forces and Prologue Films, and is best known for his work on the film Se7en.
- **Luiz Stockler:** A playful and human-centered director, animator, and filmmaker frequently screened at film festivals. https://www.luizstockler.com/
- **Michelle Salamon:** A freelance animator, character designer, and concept artist in the commercial animation industry, producing illustrations, animation sequences, and background artwork for commercials and feature-film title sequences. https://michellesalamon.com/

Career options

Moving image is a creative and rewarding pathway for your career. Although competitive, one of the benefits is the multitude of options and specialisms you can focus on within this industry:

- Animator
- Character artist
- Game designer
- Motion graphics designer
- Sound designer
- Storyboard artist
- VFX designer

UX/UI

In the early days of the Web, the original designers who took the first stabs at web and digital development were print-based graphic designers. Now, over a few short years, there is an entire industry focusing solely on web design and development, online communications, interactive design, user experience (UX), and user interface (UI) design.

Examples of work

Companies and organizations hire hundreds of UX/UI designers annually to help them create and perfect their online/digital presence and identity. For the more interactive designer with a liking for heavier coding, design studios and advertising agencies have teams of web developers, coders, programmers, and information architects to handle the online needs of their clients. Creations will include interactive interfaces, e-commerce installations, content management systems, and social networking platforms. No matter where your intrinsic skills lie, the field of UX/UI has quickly become a rich tapestry of varying disciplines and skills in which any designer can match their talents and interests.

The current population of UX/UI professionals is made up of those passionate about emerging media. Countless personal hours are spent learning and mastering the latest programming and web languages. Days are spent in a trial-and-error limbo as designers research and modify bits of coding to get the interface to react just as the client expects it to. During months of work, from initial thumbnails to final launch, developers and designers work together to create accessible sites, platforms, and projects that can be easily accessed and instantly understood by people all over the world. Millions of cups of coffee or tea are poured as these self-starters stay up into the small hours learning digital languages that are never uttered nor seen, but experienced instead. All of this happens because there are always those who have the abilities and interests to see the possibilities in the enlarging world of the Web and digital media, and because they can see themselves within those possibilities.

Skills required

- A profound understanding of typography, composition, layout, balance, color theory, and imagery creation and manipulation.
- Growing familiarity with the usage of web and programming languages—and an eagerness to learn more!
- Understanding of the concepts of user interaction and client goals, and their relationship to the interface.
- Eye for detail, to the pixel level for the visual, and the ability to write clean code.

Pros . . .

- The excitement of being at the forefront of a constantly evolving technology, cross-platform, and multidevice designs.
- Near-immediate edits and updates to a body of work with little fuss, as compared to print design.
- More opportunities for freelance and home-based work situations for UX/UI designers.

. . . and cons

- Projects can be long, complex, and require a lot of focus. Projects are always ongoing, requiring regular upkeep.
- Technology updates are time-consuming and sometimes expensive, but you must stay current with revised standards in the industry.

✪ Best in the business

- **HATO:** Projects focus on giving people the tools to collaborate autonomously and express their ideas with design, through digital development, interactive tools, branding and identities, cultural campaigns, and exhibition and experiential design.
  https://www.hato.co/
- **Nice and Serious:** A creative agency specializing in web design and digital media.
  https://niceandserious.com/
- **Studio Hyte:** A design studio working between graphic design, interaction, and emergent communication. Using the formats of branding, print, website, and exhibition design through progressive methods of engagement.
  http://studiohyte.com/D/index.html

Career options

The careers in UX/UI design are extensive and all require further training on top of graphic design principles. If you're cut out for the commitment to this exciting, ever-changing, and growing industry, the following careers could be right for you:

- App designer
- Developer
- Digital designer
- Digital product designer
- Games designer
- Social media specialist
- VFX producer
- Web designer/developer

ENVIRONMENTAL DESIGN

Environmental graphic designers work with architects and interior designers to create distinctive design works that visually define the built environment. These projects can include exhibition design for museums, galleries, and public art installations; wayfinding and architectural signage; pictogram design; mapping; complete branding and identity systems; and themed environments. Their work is in demand by the retail and entertainment industries, real-estate developers, and city planners, and is a critical factor in public facilities and transportation where clear signage and efficient crowd circulation are essential.

Examples of work

Environmental graphic designers are among the most collaborative in the design disciplines, partnering with experts in many areas to research, and then deliver, functional design in an informative and entertaining way. They combine their skills with those of digital media experts to create sophisticated interactive communications and also work with product designers and industrial designers on fabrications, with landscape architects, and with clients in hospitals, schools, and businesses.

Large architecture firms may have environmental graphic design departments in-house for signage, wayfinding, identity, and supporting print materials. Others consult graphic design firms that offer environmental design services for big projects that require complicated information visualization. Both types of firms may work with freelancers on a portion of, or a complete, project. As with any graphic design project, in the first stage of development—the programming phase—the environmental graphic designer determines the client's objectives and researches the potential needs of the building/space, users, or audience. This enables the client and designer to determine the amount and location of signs and other fabrications for estimating. Then, the designer begins the conceptual design process with a combination of sketches and 3D models or digital illustrations rendered in 2D or 3D. When the design is refined enough for estimates, the environmental graphic designer supervises the bidding process for fabrication of the architectural elements, works with the design team to select the fabricators, and is often on site for the actual installation of elements.

Skills required

- Strong drawing skills and design skills in composition, form, color, scale, and texture.
- Ability to visualize three-dimensional space.
- Familiarity with the codes and regulations for signage, and an understanding of symbolism and multilingual needs.
- Understanding of human factors, including visual and lighting requirements, color perception, and behavioral psychology.

Pros . . .

Your design work could become a permanent installation.

- Opportunities for a very hands-on research experience.
- You can see the effect your work has in public spaces on a large array of people.
- You work with architects, structural engineers, industrial designers, and fabricators.
- You get to work in 3D.

. . . and cons

- The process is long and complicated.
- Mistakes can be expensive and time-consuming.
- Your deadlines are affected by the entire team and can make scheduling complex.

✪ Best in the business

- **A Practice for Everyday Life:** Kirsty Carter and Emma Thomas, founders of APFEL, have multiple design roles, including art direction, identities, publications, exhibitions, type design, signage, packaging, and digital. Each project is approached with a conceptual rigor that ensures every design is meaningful and original. https://apracticeforeverydaylife.com/
- **Sara De Bondt Studio**: Sara De Bondt heads up a small, independent graphic design studio working on everything from large, complex, long-term projects to small commissions with fast turnovers; from environmental graphics to digital media; and from typesetting to art direction. http://www.saradebondt.com/
- **Studio Myerscough:** Morag Myerscough's installations, exhibitions, wayfinding, and exteriors (passionately collaborated on with a studio team) are characterized by an engaging boldness, creating specific, local responses to each distinct audience that will see and experience the design and using it to create community and build identity. http://www.studiomyerscough.com/

Career options

Working as an environmental designer means that no two projects will be the same. If you enjoy the responses of people and society, have a look at the following career options:

- Exhibition designer
- Curator
- Production designer
- Set designer
- Service design
- Interaction design
- Events management

Glossary

AAs (“author’s alterations”): Edits made to the content of a file by the client. Usually handled before sent to press, if edits are made while the job is at the printer, AAs can prove very costly.

Abstraction: An aesthetic concept describing something that is drawn from the real, but has been “distilled” to its barest minimum form, color, or tone, often removed from its original context.

Ad server: A web-based system for inserting advertising content dynamically into a web page.

Additive color: System used on monitors and televisions, based on RGB (red, green, blue). When combined, these form white light.

Adobe Acrobat: The family of Adobe programs that create and manage PDFs.

Advancing and receding color: Colors in the red spectrum appear to advance to the human eye, whereas those in the blue spectrum appear to recede.

Alignment: The setting of text relative to a column or page.

Analogous: Similar, comparable, alike; for example, two colors that are near to each other, such as grass green and leaf green, are analogous.

Anchor link: A navigational link that directs the user to a specific section of a web page.

Anchor point: In a design program, a point on or at the end of a curve or line that can be “grabbed” by the cursor and moved around the canvas, either to change the curve shape or to move the entire curve.

Artboard: In Illustrator, the virtual “ground” into which images are placed.

Associations: Connections between colors and emotions, culture, experience, and memory.

Asymmetry: A composition where elements are juxtaposed and do not mirror the other forms on the page.

Audience: In its broadest sense, the consumers, voyeurs, and occasionally participants of design work.

Banding: Series of lighter or darker bands running across an area of solid color.

Baseline: The line on which the lowercase letters sit, and below which the descenders fall.

Baseline grid: Locks text onto consistent horizontal points.

Bleed: The overhang of content beyond the page tramline, so when trimmed this content runs straight to the edge.

Book jacket: Packaging that advertises both product and publisher.

Brainstorming: A visual aid to thinking laterally and exploring a problem, usually by stating the problem in the center of a page and radiating outward spokes for components of the problem. Each component can then be considered separately with its own spokes, so that each point, thought, or comment is recorded.

Calibration: Color settings that should be set to show color on screen as it will be in print.

Canvas: The virtual “ground” that images are placed onto in Photoshop.

Categories: A taxonomy structure for designating dynamic content (posts) to appear in similar, or different, news feeds within a website. Can be used as a search criteria for displaying similarly themed posts.

Centered: Text that is aligned in the middle: symmetrical, with an even gap at the end of each line.

Clip: The name for a sequence of images or length of developed film or video.

CMS (content management system): The structured framework of a dynamically driven website.

CMYK: Cyan, magenta, yellow, key (black): the four colors that make up the full-color printing process.

CMYK break: The computed percentages of C, M, Y, and K ink that make up a color.

Coated: A hard, waxy surface, either gloss or matte, and not porous (ink sits on the surface).

Coated one side: A paper that is coated on one side and matte on the other.

Colorimeter: Hardware that attaches to or hangs in front of your screen, allowing you to calibrate and profile your monitor.

Color modes: The expression of color in numerical values that enable us to mix them efficiently: CYMK, LAB, RGB.

Column: Vertical block of text.

Complementary color: Colors, such as red and green, that lie opposite each other on the color wheel.

Composition: The arrangement of elements or parts of a design (text, images) on the page.

Comps: Comprehensive sketch, a close approximation of the printed product.

Concertina folds: Folds in alternate directions.

Connotations: A color’s broader associations, for example: green—jealousy, naivety, illness, environment, nature.

Consistency: The considered selection of design elements that have similar attributes.

Contextualization: The process of placing something within the interrelated systems of meaning that make up the world.

Contrast: Obvious differences in elements in a composition; size, form, color, and weight.

Critical pathways: Defining the desired route of a website’s audience, as it relates to taking an action (purchasing, contacting, registering, etc.).

Crop mark: Vertical and horizontal lines at the corners of an image or page to indicate to a vendor where to trim off the bleed area.

Customer profile/profiling: The process of creating a series of parameters or set of information that defines the desires, trends, or interests of a demographic so that designs can be pitched or marketed to them.

Dashboard: The administrative back-end for a content management system (CMS).

Data: Facts or pieces of information of any kind.

Denotations: What the color means, or is; for example, a red rose is a green stem with red petals.

Depth of field: The zone of sharpness in an image from the nearest point to the farthest point that appears to be sharp.

Diagram: Drawing or plan that explains the parts of something, or how something works.

Didactic: A pragmatic and unambiguous method of giving clear information.

Die cut: A die that cuts predetermined shapes in different materials.

Digital presses: Automate direct image transfer from digital file to paper without the creation of plates.

Digital printing: Method of printing that uses a plateless computer-controlled press.

Domain name: The web address for a website. It is renewed annually by the site owner for a nominal fee.

Dot gain: A printed dot that becomes bigger than intended due to spreading, causing a darkening of screened images, mid-tones, and textures. This varies with different paper stocks.

Downsampling: A form of compression that lowers the resolution of images by eliminating unnecessary pixel data.

DPI (dots per inch): Term to describe the resolution (sharpness) of an image.

Drop-down (menu): A navigational element that is revealed when a visitor clicks a main navigational link to reveal related links (subsections) that are displayed below.

Dummy: A prototype or mock-up of a final designed project, finished to a stage that it resembles the real thing for final proofing and client approval.

Duotone: A method of printing an image using only two colors, usually black and a spot color.

Earmark: Identifying or distinguishing marks or characteristics of a typeface.

Element: One small part of a composition, such as a point or line, an image, a letter, or a word.

Email client: An application used to review and compose emails.

Embedding: A PDF removes the need for multiple requisite files by including fonts and compressed imagery in one file.

EPS (Encapsulated PostScript): Graphics file format used to transfer PostScript documents that contain an image, within another PostScript document.

Export: To save a file in a format of your choice, such as a PDF, that is supported by other programs and can be viewed or printed without the use of your design software.

F stop/focal length and aperture: Size of aperture or "iris" inside a camera, which controls the amount of light that hits the film or pixel sensor; the range on a general camera is f4 (large aperture) to f22 (small aperture).

Favicon: A small branded element that appears in the web browser's URL field, bookmark list, or favorites list.

Filter: Plates of glass or plastic attached to the front of the lens in order to accentuate different qualities. For example, a polarizing filter cuts down light glare; a color filter enhances different colors.

Flexography: Method of printing that uses rubber relief plates.

Fly-out (menu): A navigational element that is revealed by extending out to the side of a main navigational element.

Focal point: The point where you want to draw the reader's or viewer's eye, which can be achieved with hierarchy and design solutions that make certain elements stand out.

Font: One size, weight, and width of a typeface: Garamond Roman 12pt is a font.

Footer: The lower section of a web page layout, usually featuring navigation and copyright information.

Four-color process: A standard, usually digital, printing technique, that creates all its colors by combining cyan, magenta, yellow, and black (CMYK).

FPO: For position only; the use of a temporary placeholder or low-resolution image in place of the high-quality counterpart during the design process.

Frames: A frame is a single graphic in a collection of graphic images that when built up make a moving image. The speed of an animation is measured by the amount of frames per second.

French folds: Sheets of paper are folded in half, so that they are double thickness. The two folds are at right angles to each other, and then bound on the edge.

Gamut: The complete range of colors available within one system of reproduction, e.g., CMYK gamut or RGB gamut.

Gang-run printing: Printing many different jobs on one large sheet.

Gatefold: A way of folding paper so that the outer quarters of a page are folded to meet in the center. The result works like symmetrical doors that open onto an inner page.

Gestalt psychology: A theory that suggests that the mind perceives and organizes holistically and finds patterns in that which appears to be unconnected.

GIF (Graphics Interchange Format): A GIF is a compressed file format consisting of a number of frames that make up a (usually) short animation.

Gravure: Method of printing that uses plates with recessed cells of varying depths.

Grid: Series of horizontal and vertical lines on a page, used as a visual guide for lining up words and images.

Ground: The page, surface, or area in which the design will be placed.

GSM: Grams per square meter, or g/m2.

Gutter: The gap between two text blocks or spreads on either side of the book fold or binding.

Handle: An anchor point in a design program connected to the main vector path by tangential lines that can be manipulated to change the shape of the curve.

Header: The top section of a web page layout, usually featuring branded elements and the main navigational structure.

Hierarchy: The different "weight" or importance given to type or image.

High-resolution image: An image with an extreme level of sharpness achieved by a higher amount of dots per inch.

HTML5: The fifth version of the HTML standard markup language used for structuring and presenting content on the Internet.

Hyperlink (navigational link): A clickable navigational element that allows site visitors to navigate through the website.

Hyphenation: The point at which a word is broken at the end of a line in continuous text, and a hyphen is inserted.

Identity: A unified, identifiable look for a product or organization.

Image map: An HTML document that contains clickable hyperlinks.

Information Architecture (IA): A balance of the intrinsic nature of a website and established user expectations, combined with your client's overall goals.

Inline text link (navigational link): Hyperlink within the body of a web page layout.

The Interactive Advertising Bureau (IAB): An organization that documents and works to define the standards for online advertising.

ISO (International Organization for Standardization): Sets a standard range for virtual film speeds in digital cameras.

JPEG (Joint Photographic Electronic Group): File format used to compress digital images.

Justified: Lines or paragraphs of type aligned to both margins simultaneously, creating different spacing in between words.

Juxtaposition: The process of putting two or more unrelated or opposite elements or objects together to create different effects.

Kerning: Adjustments to the spaces between two letters (used extensively for capitals).

Keyframe: Either the frame of an animation at a key stage, or a frame in a clip where a transition is due to start.

Laid: A paper that has lines on its surface from its means of production. Often used for stationery.

Lateral thinking: A form of research where the emphasis is on indirect, creative forms of inquiry and thinking.

Law of closure: The mind creates a solid object on the page from suggestions of shapes and placement and proximity of elements.

Layer Comps (Photoshop): A feature that allows the user to record which items are viewable in a complex, multi-layer document.

Layout: Placement of words and images on a grid or document to organize information.

Layout roughs: Loose concept sketches for page design that organize space without showing detail.

Leading: Measured from baseline to baseline, the horizontal space between lines of type. Related to the historical use of strips of lead in letterpress

Letterpress: A type of block printing using inked wooden or metal movable type and pressing it onto paper to create an impression.

Letterspacing (tracking): The space between letters, which can be adjusted.

Ligatures: Two or more letterforms joined to create a single character.

Linear reasoning: A form of thinking that implies strategic thought process, one in which step-by-step logic is employed.

Linen: Similar to laid, but finer lined.

Linguistic: Of, or relating to, language.

Lists (unordered/ordered): An unordered list is a bulleted list of similar concepts. An ordered list is grouped in order, by using an alphanumeric sequence.

Lossy: A compression format that removes or "loses" certain areas to achieve a smaller file size, yet reopening the file causes the program to "guess" at the missing data, possibly creating a lower-quality version.

Low-resolution image: A low-quality image with a low level of sharpness achieved by a lower amount of dots per inch. Used mainly for digital outcomes.

LPI: When printing halftones, such as in one-color newspapers and reproductions, the lines per inch is the number of lines that compose the resolution of a halftone screen.

Margin: The usually blank space to the top, bottom, and sides of a page between the trim and the live printing area. Headers, footers, and page numbers are traditionally placed within this area.

Market research: The process of collecting and collating data from questionnaires, interviews, and comments from the public regarding a concern, a problem, or a possible solution.

Matte: A dull, non-shiny quality of paper, used for newspapers, for example.

Measure: The length of a line of text on a page, based in inches, centimeters, points, or picas.

Metaphor: Word or image that sets up associations; for example, a "piece of cake" is a metaphor for easy.

META tags: Elements within the HTML code, used by the search engines to properly index websites.

Metrics: The strategy for measuring the success—or failure—of a project's goals.

Monetized: Earned revenue from online marketing activities, such as banner ad placement.

Navigation (breadcrumb): A path-based navigation that identifies the user's location within the structure of a website.

Navigation (drop-down): A navigational element that is revealed when a visitor clicks a main navigational link to reveal related links (subsections) that are displayed below.

Navigation (fly-out): A navigational element that is revealed by extending out to the side of a main navigational element.

Negative space: The white or colored area around an element, e.g. a margin of a page.

Offset lithography: The digitally produced printing plate is treated chemically so that the image will accept ink and reject water.

Onomatopoeia: In typography, the use of type to suggest the sounds of a spoken language, such as adding a large "o" to the word "open."

Opacity: The transparency of a color or tonal value measured in percent. The ability to edit the opacity of design elements means the designer can make images that can overlap and can be seen through.

Optical adjustment: Making adjustments to letterspacing by eye, not mechanically.

Organic results: Search engine results based on the natural appearance of keywords within a site dialogue.

Ornaments: Typed characters that embellish the page. Also known as flowers.

Orphan: The last line of a text paragraph appearing at the top of the next page.

Overprint: To print additional content or another color over a previously printed image.

Page plan/flatplan: A document with a series of numbered thumbnails set out in an ordered grid that represents each page in a book.

Panel: Device used to highlight information. Also known as a sidebar.

Pantone Matching System (PMS): An international system to ensure reliable color selection, specification, and control.

Paper grain: The direction of wood fibers that make up a piece of paper.

Patch: The space on a bookstore's shelf occupied by spines of books from the same series.

Path: A drawn line in a design program, mathematically determined; also called a vector.

PDF: The Portable Document Format is a universal file format that can be viewed in a large amount of programs and browsers. Its reduced file size makes it useful for sending in emails and online.

PEs: "Printer's errors" are mistakes and omissions found at the proofing stage by the designer or client that did not, for whatever reason, make it from the supplied file to the press. The cost of these errors is usually absorbed by the vendor as a matter of customer service.

Perfect binding: Method similar to paperback binding, where loose sheets are encased in a heavier paper cover, then glued to the book spine. Edges are trimmed to be flush with each other.

Photomontage: The assemblage of various fragments of photographs.

Pixel: Pixel images are made of small dots that are individually assigned a color and that build up to make the bigger picture.

Placeholder: A temporary or low-resolution image in place of the high-quality counterpart during the design process.

Plates: Separate printing plates for separate colors that overprint to create color images in four-color offset printing.

Plugin: A WordPress term for an element that adds a functional enhancement to the basic CMS structure. Also referred to as widgets and modules.

PNG: A Portable Network Graphics format is used for lossless compression. The PNG format displays images without jagged edges while keeping file sizes rather small, making them popular on the web. PNG files are generally larger than GIF files.

Poetic: A style that is less clear, but more artistic, more open to interpretation.

Point: A dot on a page, such as a period (.).

Point size/pica: The relative size of a font. There are 72 points in an inch.

Positive space: A form, image, or word printed or formed on the page.

PPI: Pixels per inch or pixel density is interchangeable with DPI, but usually refers to the resolution of an unprinted image displayed on screen or captured by a scanner or digital camera.

Primary color: Red, yellow, or blue.

Primary research: Gathering material that does not preexist, such as photographing, drawing, making prototypes, interviewing people.

Proof or prepress proof: A complete mock-up using inks, overlays, and other cheaper finishes to provide an idea of what the finished product should look like post-production.

Proximity: The relationship of one object to another.

Quality control strip: Usually incorporated in printed sheets outside the grid to monitor the quality of plate-making, inking, and registration. Checking black sections helps point out color casting.

Quantitative: Related to quantities of things, or measurements (numerical).

Ragging: When text is aligned left some words at the end of the lines might jut out farther than the rest and cause uneven-looking paragraphs.

Ranged (or ragged) left/ranged (or ragged) right: Text that is aligned to a column or margin, either left or right.

Raster: Assemblages of pixels on a 2D grid system that can be viewed on computer screens or print media.

Ream: Standard quantity of paper; 500 sheets.

Recto: The right-hand page in a book.

Registration marks: Hairline marks at the corners of a printed page to help ensure plates are lined up correctly and designate what will be cropped off.

Relief: A printing process that uses a raised surface, such as letterpress.

Repetition: The repeated use of select design elements within the same composition.

Repetition with variation: The alteration of select aspects of a repeated element.

Representation: Something that looks like, resembles, or stands in for something else. In drawing, this is also known as figurative, since it deliberately attempts to mimic the thing drawn.

Resolution: The clarity of a digital image. A low-resolution image (30dpi, for example) will have clearly visible pixels; a high-resolution image (300dpi, for example) will not.

Responsive web design: The content of a website layout is coded to reposition itself in response to the specific devices on which the website is being viewed.

RGB (red, green, blue): The color system used to project color on a computer screen. By combining these three colors a large percentage of the visible color spectrum can be represented digitally.

Rhetoric: A style of arguing, persuading, or engaging in dialogue. For a designer, it is a way of engaging the targeted audience.

RODI: Return on design investment indicates the success of a project in relation to the project's unique goals.

Rollover folds: A way of folding a page so that successive folds turn in on themselves and the page is folded into a roll.

Rotations: The number of times that an animated GIF file will play, from the first frame to the last.

Roughs: Loose sketches for concept and compositional development that do not include fine detail.

Saddle stitching: Binding method where sheets of paper are folded in the center, stitched together along the fold, then glued into the cover spine.

Sans serif: Without serif. Typefaces such as Univers, Helvetica, Aksidenz Grotesque, and Futura, characterized by their lack of serifs. Predominantly associated with the 19th/20th centuries.

Satin: A form of paper between matte and gloss.

Schematic: Simplified diagram or plan related to a larger scheme or structure.

Screen printing: Method of printing that uses stencils.

Screen resolution: The resolution of a file that will be viewed on a screen is 72 pixels per inch (PPI). When designing for high-density displays, the document's dimensions should be doubled, not the resolution.

Secondary color: A mix of any two primaries: orange, green, or violet.

Secondary research: Gathering material that already exists, such as design work, color samples, written texts, newspaper/magazine articles.

Semantics: The study of meaning in language and elsewhere.

Semiotics: A system that links objects, words, and images to meanings through signs and signifiers.

Serif: Structural details at the ends of some strokes in old-style capital and lowercase letters.

Shift-scheduling: Allowing presses to run all day and night.

Simultaneous contrast: The human eye tends to differentiate between two neighboring colors by emphasizing their differences rather than their similarities—background colors affect foreground colors (the image).

SLR: Single lens reflex cameras use a viewfinder and mirrors so that the photographer's sightline goes through the main lens and results in a what-you-see-is-what-you-get image.

Spot color: Any flat color, like Pantone or Toyo colors, printed as a solid, and not made up of CMYK.

Statistical: Related to the collection, classification, and organization of (often numerical) information.

Stock: A generic form or type of paper, such as tracing paper or matte coated.

Storyboard: A document similar to a flatplan, but with a sequence of thumbnails that specifically lays out the narrative for a comic strip or film.

Stress/axis: The angle of the curved stroke weight change in a typeface. Seen clearly in letters such as "o."

Style board: A presentation of proposed website stylizations for review by a client, independent of the overall website structure.

Subtractive color: System used in printing, based on CMYK colors.

SVG: Scalable Vector Graphics are vector image formats that provide support for interactivity and animation.

SWF: ShockWave Flash, the file extension format for displaying animated vector files on the web.

Symbolism: A way of representing an object or word through an image, sound, or another word; for example, a crossed knife and fork on a road sign means a café is ahead.

Symmetry: A composition where elements are balanced or mirrored on a page.

Syntax: The study of the rules for the formation of grammatically correct sentences.

Tag cloud: A keyword-based navigation element on a website, where keywords can be selected in order to refine search criteria to display similarly themed posts.

Taxonomy: A way to group related content in a structural format.

Theme: A collection of predesigned web page layouts, designed around a centralized concept, where the arrangement of the page's structure has been specified by the theme's author.

Thumbnail: Small, rough visual representation of a bigger picture or final outcome.

TIFF: A Tagged Image File Format is a graphic file format used for storing images.

Timeline: The linear timeline in Animate and After Effects in which keyframes can be fixed in order to designate animated milestones in a production.

Tool tips: A message that displays when a user hovers with a mouse over a linked element.

Type anatomy: The language used to describe the various parts of letterforms.

Typeface: The set of visual attributes (design or style) of a particular group of letters: Garamond is a typeface.

Typographic rules: Printed lines that direct the reader's eye.

Uniform Resource Locator (URL): The address of a website.

User interface (UI): The space where humans interact with machines. It is a part of the larger user experience (UX) of a website or application.

User experience (UX): The experience a user has with a website.

Varnish: A liquid sprayed or spread onto paper to give it a hard-wearing surface so that printed ink stays intact.

Vector graphics: Shapes and lines built by algorithms, which will not reduce in quality when expanded or reduced in size.

Verso: The left-hand page in a book.

Vibration: Complementary colors of equal lightness and high saturation tend to make each other appear more brilliant, and cause the illusion of motion along the edges where they meet.

WebGL: Web Graphics Library uses JavaScript to render interactive graphics within any compatible web browser without the use of plugins.

Web hosting: A designated online storage space for hosting a website and related email accounts.

Weight: Colors differ in perceived "weight." It is generally assumed that blue-greens look lighter, whereas reds appear stronger, and therefore heavier.

White space: The open space surrounding a positive image that defines shape and directs hierarchy.

Widgetized areas: Locations within a CMS theme where plugins and widgets can be inserted into the physical layout. Typically, these are located within the side column and lower (footer) area of a web page.

Wove/smooth: A smooth, uncoated paper that is very porous (ink sits under the surface).

x-height: The height of a lowercase "x" in any typeface.

Zone Information Protocol (ZIP): A means of compressing files into a smaller size, so they can be transferred digitally with ease.

Bibliography

Josef Albers, Nicholas Fox Weber, *Interaction of Color: New Complete Edition*, Yale University Press, 2013

Nick Asbury, Greg Quinton, Beryl McAlhone, David Stuart, *A Smile in the Mind—Revised and Expanded Edition: Witty Thinking in Graphic Design,* Phaidon Press, 2016

Edward Barrett, Frank Bentley, *Building Mobile Experiences*, The MIT Press, 2012

Sofie Beier, *Type Tricks: Your Personal Guide to Type Design*, BIS Publishers, 2017

John Berger, *Ways of Seeing*, Penguin Modern Classics, 2008

Russell Bestley, Ian Noble, *Visual Research: An Introduction to Research Methods in Graphic Design*, Bloomsbury Visual Arts, 2018

Katy Börner, *Atlas of Knowledge: Anyone Can Map*, The MIT Press, 2015

Amaranth Borsuk, *The Book*, The MIT Press, 2018

Cath Caldwell, Yolanda Zappaterra, *Editorial Design: Digital and Print,* Laurence King Publishing, 2014

Rob Carter, Ben Day, Sandra Maxa, Philip B. Meggs, Mark Sanders, *Typographic Design: Form and Communication*, John Wiley & Sons, 7th edition, 2018

Daniel Chandler, *Semiotics: The Basics,* Routledge, 3rd edition, 2017

Karen Cheng, *Designing Type*, Laurence King Publishing, 2019

Jennifer Cole Phillips, Ellen Lupton, *Graphic Design: The New Basics*, Princeton Architectural Press, 2nd edition, 2015

Stephen Coles, Erik Spiekermann, *The Geometry of Type: The Anatomy of 100 Essential Typefaces*, Thames & Hudson, 2016

David Crow, *Visible Signs: An Introduction to Semiotics in the Visual Arts,* AVA Publishing, 3rd edition, 2015

Johanna Drucker, Emily McVarish, *Graphic Design History: A Critical Guide*, Pearson, 2nd edition, 2012

Stephen J. Eskilson, *Graphic Design: A New History*, Laurence King Publishing, 2019

Eye: The International Review of Graphic Design (magazine)

Alan Fletcher, *The Art of Looking Sideways*, Phaidon Press, 2001

E. M. Ginger, Erik Spiekermann, *Stop Stealing Sheep and Find Out How Type Works*, Verlag Niggli, 2019

Steven Heller, Veronique Vienne, *100 Ideas That Changed Graphic Design*, Laurence King Publishing, 2012

Steven Heller, *Merz to Emigré and Beyond: Avant-Garde Magazine Design of the Twentieth Century*, Phaidon Press, 2014

Steven Heller, *Teaching Graphic Design History*, Allworth, 2019

Jost Hochuli, Robin Kinross, *Designing Books: Practice and Theory*, Hyphen Press, 2008

Keith Houston, *The Book: A Cover-to-Cover Exploration of the Most Powerful Object of Our Time*, W. W. Norton & Company, 2016

Theo Inglis, *Mid-Century Modern Graphic Design*, Batsford Ltd, 2019

Ellen Lupton, *Design is Storytelling*, Cooper Hewitt, 2017

Ellen Lupton, J. Abbott Miller, *The ABC's of Triangle, Square, Circle: The Bauhaus and Design Theory*, Princeton Architectural Press, 2019

Ellen Lupton, *Thinking with Type: A Critical Guide for Designers, Writers, Editors, and Students*, Princeton Architectural Press, 2nd edition, 2010

Ellen Lupton, *Type on Screen: A Critical Guide for Designers, Writers, Developers, & Students: New Typographic Systems*, Princeton Architectural Press, 2014

Colleen Macklin, John Sharp, *Iterate: Ten Lessons in Design and Failure*, The MIT Press, 2019

Per Mollerup, *Marks of Excellence: The History and Taxonomy of Trademarks*, Phaidon Press, 2013

Jens Muller, *The History of Graphic Design: Volume 1 (1890-1959)*, Taschen, 2017

Jens Muller, *The History of Graphic Design: Volume 2 (1960-Today)*, Taschen, 2018

Joseph Müller-Brockmann, *Grid Systems in Graphic Design: A Handbook for Graphic Artists, Typographers, and Exhibition Designers*, Niggli Verlag, 2008

Janet H. Murray, *Inventing the Medium: Principles of Interaction Design as a Cultural Practice*, The MIT Press, 2012

Ken Visocky O'Grady, Jenn Visocky O'Grady, *A Designer's Research Manual*, Rockport Publishers, 2nd edition, 2017

Alan Pipes, *Drawing for Designers: Drawing Skills, Concept Sketches, Computer Systems, Illustration, Tools and Materials, Presentations, Production Techniques*, Laurence King Publishing, 2007

Alan Pipes, *Production for Graphic Designers*, Laurence King, 5th edition, 2009

Norman Potter, *What is a Designer: Things, Places, Messages*, Hyphen Press, 4th edition, 2008

Paul Rand, *Design, Form and Chaos*, Yale University Press, 2017

Alice Rawsthorn, *Design as an Attitude*, JRP Ringier, 2018

Sandra Rendgen, *History of Information Graphics*, Taschen, 2019

Sandra Rendgen, *Information Graphics*, Taschen, 2012

Timothy Samara, *Making and Breaking the Grid, Revised Edition: A Graphic Design Layout Workshop*, Rockport Publishers, 2017

Adrian Shaughnessy, *How to be a Graphic Designer, Without Losing Your Soul*, Laurence King Publishing, 2nd edition, 2010

Wang Shaoqiang, *Portfolio Design and Self-Promotion: My Graphic DNA*, Promopress, 2nd edition, 2018

Catharine Slade-Brooking, *Creating a Brand Identity: A Guide for Designers*, Laurence King Publishing, 2016

Kassia St Clair, *The Secret Lives of Color*, John Murray, 2018

Beth Tondreau, *Layout Essentials: 100 Design Principles for Using Grids*, Rockport Publishers, 2011

Bradbury Thompson, *The Art of Graphic Design*, Yale University Press, 2018

Victionary, *DESIGN(H)ERS: A Celebration of Women in Design Today*, Victionary, 2019

Online resources

http://www.aiga.org/
Website, membership, blog, and programs of events for graphic designers.

http://www.coroflot.com/
Online platform for graphic design jobs.

http://www.designobserver.com/
Online magazine dedicated to design and designers.

http://www.eyemagazine.com/
Online blog exploring concepts and critique in visual communication.

http://www.eyeondesign.aiga.org/
Online editorial platform showcasing and discussing new work from the world's most exciting designers.

http://www.istd.org.uk/
Promoting the typography and graphic design of specialists and students through annual competitions.

http://www.kerningthegap.com/
Collective of like-minded people promoting women in design.

http://www.spd.org/
Online platform of jobs, competitions, events, and resources for publication designers.

http://www.thedieline.com/
Online platform dedicated to package design.

http://www.theotherbox.org/
Celebrating people from under-represented backgrounds in the creative industries.

http://www.thersa.org/
Dedicated to enriching society through ideas and action.

https://lectureinprogress.com/
Career advice and opportunities.

https://peopleofcraft.com/
Showcase of creatives of color within the creative industry.

https://the-dots.com/
Online networking platform for creatives, hosting news, projects, and job opportunities.

https://weareshesays.com/
Focused on the engagement, education, and advancement of women in the creative industries.

https://www.itsnicethat.com/
Creative stories, practitioners, publications and events.

https://www.myfonts.com/WhatTheFont/
Online application to identify fonts.

https://www.tdc.org/
Promoting typography via competitions, events, and membership.

Index

A
AAs (author's alterations) 125
abstraction 16, 22, 63
additive color 89, 90, 92
Adobe Acrobat 125, 127
Adobe After Effects see After Effects
Adobe Animate *see* Animate
Adobe Illustrator *see* Illustrator
Adobe InDesign *see* InDesign
Adobe Photoshop *see* Photoshop
After Effects 118 122–23
  Animation Presets Menu 119
  Cartoon Effect 118
  Mocha 119
  seamless transitions 119
  timeline 118
AI 127
Albers, Josef 95
alignment 73
Aloof 79
analogous color 89
anchor points 116
Animate 118, 122–123
  Bone Tool 118
  Deconstructed Circle 119
  HTML5 118
  SWF 118
  timeline 118
  WebGL 118
Apeloig, Philippe 85
assignments
  Chapter 1 30–31
  Chapter 2 60–61
  Chapter 3 86–87
  Chapter 4, 98–99
  Chapter 5 120–123
  Chapter 6 142–143
  Chapter 7 184–187
asymmetry 38–39, 44–45, 103
audiences, markets, and concepts 24–25

B
balance 35, 38, 44
banding 139
baselines 65
Bauhaus 68
Bearden, Romare 113
binding 51
bleeds 108, 140
book art 50–1, 55
Bootstrap 184–185
brainstorming 15, 19
brand identity 52–53
  creating identifying
    characteristics 53
  interpretation and detail 54–55
  knowing the content 53–54
  rebranding 52

C
calibrating your monitor 91, 132–133
call-outs 81
career paths 186–197
  environmental graphic design 197
  identity, branding, and advertising 191
  image making 193–194
  information design 190–191
  moving image and animation 194–195
  packaging and 3D design 192–193
  print and editorial design 189–190
  typography 188–189
  UX/UI 195–196
categories
centered text 73
client meetings 27
clips 118
closure 35, 36, 37
CMYK 89, 115, 133, 134, 135
  process charts and modes 90
coated papers 131
collage 112, 113
color 47, 88, 128
  assignments 98–99
  color as information 96–97
  color associations 94–95, 99
  color contrast 92
  color experiments, 98
  color in emotion and language 94
  color investigation 98–99
  color legibility, contrast, and
    harmony 92–93
  color modes 90
  color palettes 93, 94, 95
  color schemes 94, 140
  color systems 96
  color terminology 88–91, 98
  color theorists 95
  color wheel 88
  connotations 95
  denotations 95
  layers and texture 93
  movement and contrast 91
  on-screen color 90
  pastel tones 92
  photography 104
  printed color 132–135
  universal language 97
communicating content 11
complementary color 89
composition 32, 35
  assignments 60–61
  balance 38
  basic principles of design layout 40–43
  basics of composition 32–35, 60
  building a composition 33
  cohesion and variety 54
  form and color 54
  form and space 33–35, 36–37
  identity and extended systems 52–55
  layers of 34, 102
  law of closure 37
  movement to the left 38
  movement to the right 38
  pace and contrast 46–49
  photography and illustration 56–59, 104
  rule of thirds 37, 103
  size and format 50–51
  space and layers 33
  styles of layout 44–45
  symmetry 39
  symmetry/asymmetry 38–39
  theories of composition 33
  upward movement 38
comps (comprehensive sketches) 28, 29
computers 19
concepts 22
  concept development 28, 31
  elimination process 25
  refinement 28
  think globally 24
concertina folds 51
consistency 35
Constructivists 83
content management systems (CMS) 145, 148, 150–151, 175
  CMS installation 175
  dashboard 175
  Drupal 150
  integrating site content 176–177
  Joomla 150
  maintenance 177
  pages and posts 177
  platforms 175
  protect the site 176
  selecting themes 176
  theme and plugin resellers 177
  tips on selecting themes 177
  training 175
  visual customizations 176
  WordPress 150, 175
  WordPress.org versus WordPress.com 177
contextualization 13
contrast 35, 46–49, 78
  color 47, 91, 92–93
  typography 78
correcting color proofs 138
  backgrounds 141
  fit or registration 140
  InDesign 141
  linen testers (loupes) 141
  press checks 141
critical pathways 158, 160, 166
crop marks 106
CSS (cascading style sheets) 145, 148, 154–155, 183
customer profiles 24

D
dashboards 175, 177
data 96
Davidson, Carolyn 22
design layout 40
  checklist for beginning a layout 41
  cohesion 52
  details 55
  flexibility 41, 42
  grids 40–43
  margins, grids, and structure 42–43
  natural order 42
  practical factors 40
  using a grid 43
  variation 42
design projects 26
  checking 26–27
  comps (comprehensive sketches) 28, 29
  macro and micro 26, 27
  page plans/flat plans 29
  personal deadlines 27
  planning ahead 28
  points to remember 28
  scheduling and organization 27–28
  storyboards 29
diagrams 96, 97
didactics 20, 21, 23
digital presses 138–139
digital printing 138–139
  complete systems 139
  digital or offset options 139
  ink versus toner 138
  multiple formats 138
  personalization 139
  timeframe 139
digital publications 49
documentation 16, 145–146, 147
domain names 148, 180, 181
dot gain 141
dots 35
downsampling 125
DPI (dots per inch) 112, 133
drawing by hand 18
Dreamweaver 184–185
drop-down menus 164
Drupal 150

E
e-commerce 145, 148, 150, 151
earmarks 65, 67
element 35
embedding 125, 126
Emigré 69
ephemera 112
EPS 127
Evernote 173
expanded space 34
exploratory drawing 16–17, 30–31
extended systems 52–55, 61

F
Fibonacci series 81
Fibonacci spiral 36
figures 36
file formats 127
file naming 126, 155
Flash *see Animate*
flat plans 28
flexography 135
Flickr.com 181
flowcharts 144, 145, 160–161
  communicating visually 161
  critical pathways 160
  navigation structure 160
  project scope 161
fly-out menus 165
folds 51
fonts 63, 66, 67, 141
  font embedding 126
  selecting fonts 70
  Stone 68
  Univers 71
  web font services 167
form 16–17
  form and function 43
  form and space 36–37
format 50–51
  presentations 128
forms 171

- Foster, Rebecca 163
- FPOs (For Position Only) 105
- French folds 51
- Frutiger, Adrian 68, 71

G

- gamut 89
- gang-run printing 138
- Gartside, Mary 95
- gatefolds 51
- Gestalt psychology 36, 37
- GIF 112, 153,
- glossy papers 131
- Goldberg, Carin 49, 53
- graphic design 6–7
  - principles 8–9
- gravure 135
- grayscale 91, 140, 162, 163
- grids 40, 60, 147, 161
  - form and function 43
  - margins, grids and structure 42–43, 168
  - master grids 41
  - using a grid 43
  - website design 147, 160, 165
- Griffo, Francesco 75
- ground 36
- Grundy, Peter 85
- gutters 106

H

- halftone 135, 137
- handles 106, 116
- harmony 93
- Heartfield, John 113
- hierarchies of text 78–81, 87
- highlighting text–rules and panels 82–83
- Höch, Hannah 113
- HTML (Hypertext Markup Language) 118, 145, 148, 152, 154–155, 183
- Huerta, Gerard 69
- hues 88
- hyphenation 73, 74

I

- icons 21, 22
- ideas 13
  - audiences, markets and concepts 24–25
  - visualizing ideas 18–19
- illustration 56
  - budget and schedule 57
  - collecting and storing images 58
  - creative constraints 56–57
  - photographers, illustrators, and libraries 57–58
  - tips and checklist for selecting images 59
  - typography and illustration 57
- Illustrator 106, 114–117
  - Align 115
  - applications 17, 117
  - artboard 116
  - assignment 121
  - Bézier curve 116
  - CMYK 115
  - control 116
  - file types 115
  - main toolbar 115
  - Mesh Tool (U) 114
  - morphed alphabet 121
  - Pathfinder 115, 116
  - Pen Tool (P) 114
  - Rectangle Tool (M) 114
  - Type Tool (T) 114
  - vectors 114, 116
  - Warp Tools (Shift + R) 114
- images 20–23
  - collecting and storing images 58, 105
  - multiple images 13
  - search engine optimization (SEO) 178–179
  - sourcing images 105
  - text as image 84–85, 87
  - tips and checklist for selecting images 59
- InDesign 106–109, 121
  - assignment 121–122
  - bleeds 108
  - Control Panel 107
  - Direct Selection Tool (A) 106
  - guides 108
  - info panel 107
  - interactive poster 121–122
  - main toolbar 106
  - Master Pages 107, 109
  - page layout 108–109
  - page numbering 109
  - Pen Tool (P) 106
  - popup windows 107
  - print 122
  - Rectangle Frame Tool (F) 107
  - Rectangle Tool (M) 107
  - Selection Tool (V) 106
  - Style Sheets 109
  - Swatches Panel 107
  - Type Tool (T) 107
- information architecture (IA) 158–159
  - banner ads 159
  - be inspired 159
  - create polite user experience 158
  - define the critical pathways 158
  - establish structure and visual hierarchy 159
  - navigation 158
  - present digestible content 158–159
  - reduce the number of clicks 158
- ink density 78
- Instagram 173
- ISO (International Organization for Standardization) 105
- Itten, Johannes 95

J

- JavaScript 152, 154
- Joomla 150
- JPEG 127, 147, 153
- justified text 73, 74, 76
- juxtaposition 112

K

- Kandinsky, Wassily 95
- kerning 72, 73, 86
- key graphic file formats 127
  - EPS 127
  - JPEG 127
  - PSD and AI 127
  - TIFF 127
- keyframes 118

L

- laid papers 131
- Langdon, John 37, 69
- lateral thinking 14–15
- leading 73, 75, 77
- legibility 76–77
  - color 92–93, 98
- letterforms 62, 63, 68
  - language of letterforms 64
- letterpress printing 73, 75, 137
- letters 34
- letterspacing 72
  - optical adjustment 73
- Lewis, John, *Printed Ephemera* 68
- Licko, Zuzana 83
- ligatures 73
- linear reasoning 14–15
- linen papers 131
- lines 34, 35
  - line art 58, 135
  - LPI (lines per inch) 133
  - rules in display type 83
  - typographic rules 82
- linguistics 63
- Lissitzky, *El Beat the Whites with the Red Wedge* 35
- lossy 125
- LPI (lines per inch) 133

M

- manga style 58
- Manutius, Aldus *Hypnerotomachia Poliphili* 45
- maps 97
- margins 42, 106
- Marinetti, F. T. *Zang Tumb Tumb* 39
- market research 24–25, 31
- matte papers 131
- McKean, Dave 113
- measure 76, 77
- media 17
  - as message 84
- menus 96
- metaphors 22, 23
- metrics 145, 156
- mobile application design 170–174
  - app categories 172
  - app cohesion 173
  - app icons 173
  - designing apps 171, 172–173, 184
  - designing for regular and high density displays 174
  - hierarchy 159, 172
  - icon design 187
  - modifying the user interface (UI) 171–172
  - native apps 174
  - supplying art files 174
  - templates 174
  - web apps 174
  - web apps offline 170
  - web consistency 172
- montage 112
- Morison, Stanley 75
- Müller-Brockman, Josef 85

N

- negative as positive 37
- negative space 33, 34, 35
- Nielsen, Jakob 158
- non-representational 16
- numerals 65

O

- observation 10, 12, 30
- offset lithography 135
- offset printing 134–135
- online portfolios 180, 187
  - assignments 184, 187
  - card-sorting exercise 184
  - cropping 183
  - elements of an online portfolio 180
  - email and auto signatures 183
  - establishing consistency 182
  - first impressions 181, 184
  - getting started 180–182
  - grids 193
  - image as feature 180
  - landing page 181
  - low-tech online portfolios 182
  - optional portfolio elements 181
  - prepare your images 180
  - selecting the right domain name 181
  - show what you know 183
  - social media 183, 187
  - test your work 182
  - thumbnails 182
  - traditional online portfolios 182
- onomatopoeia 84
- optical adjustment 73
- organization 18, 27–28
- organized chaos 33
- ornaments 82, 83
- orphan 73
- Ostwald, Wilhelm 95

P

- pace and contrast 46–49
  - color and contrast 47
  - controlling the pace 46
  - digital publications 49
  - keep it varied 46
  - momentum 46, 47
  - pace and impact 47
  - planning for pace 47
  - printed publications 48–49
  - rhythm 47
- packaging 109, 118
  - packaging a file for the printer 142
  - packaging source files 149
- page assembly programs 106
  - Adobe InDesign 106–109, 121
  - packaging 109, 142
  - page layout concepts 108
- page design 40, 60
  - anatomy of a page 79
  - asymmetrical page design 44
- page plans 29
- panels 82
- Pantone Matching System (PMS) 90, 128, 132
- paper grain 51
- paper stocks 129, 130, 137
  - finishes and coatings 131
  - impressions 131
  - matte finish 130
  - matte, satin, and gloss surfaces 130
  - recycled paper 130
  - samples 131, 141
  - surface texture 131
  - texture and light 131
- path *see* vectors
- PDFs 125–126, 143
  - PDF advantages 125
  - PDF presets 125

  PDF Tools (Adobe Acrobat Pro) 127
  PDF/X 125
perfect binding 51
PEs (printer's errors) 125
photography 56–59, 61
  archiving your images 105
  asymmetry 103
  backgrounds 59, 120
  contrast 103
  depth 103
  depth of field 105
  F stop/focal length and aperture 105
  filters 105
  format and composition 104
  golden ratio 102
  and illustration 57
  light and color, composition and cropping 104
  perspective 103
  photographers, illustrators and libraries 57–58
  photographic subjects 58
  SLR 105
  sourcing images 105, 120
  subjects 58
  symmetry 103
  tips and terms 105
  types of photography 102–105
  which camera? 104
  which lens? 104
photomontage 113, 122
Photoshop 106, 110–112, 115
  animation GIF 112
  assignments 120–121
  Brush Tool (B) 111
  canvas 112
  Color editor 111
  editing images 120
  joiners 120
  keyboard shortcuts 111
  Lasso Tool (L) 111
  Layer Comps 167
  layering 113
  Magic Wand Tool (M) 110
  main toolbar 110
  Marquee Tool (M) 110
  outsourcing 120
  Pen Tool (P) 111
  photomontage and collage 113
  Photoshop file etiquette 152
  pixels 112, 113
  preset color swatches 111
  Quick Mask and Layer Mask 113
  resolution 112
  scanning 112
  selection tools 120
  tablet 111
Pinterest 173
pixels 112, 133, 153
placeholders 105
plates 135
plugins 176, 177
PNG 153
poetics 22–23
points 35
positive space 33–34, 35
poster-brochures 60
PPI (pixels per inch) 112, 133
practice 100–101
preparing files for print 124–127
  file naming 126
  file types and compression 126–127
  font embedding 126
  key graphic file formats 127
PDFs 125–126
  print checklist 126
  what to send 126
presentations 29, 128
  color 128
  craft 128, 129
  form and function 128
  format 128
  match color and paper stock 129
  present appropriately 129
press checks 140–141
primary color 89, 90
primary research 12, 13, 30
print media 134–137
  black 135
  CMYK 134
  CMYK and resolution 135
  color 134–135
  full black 135
  halftone 135
  line art 135
  offset printing 135, 137
  surface printing 135
print production and presentations 124
  assignments 142–143
  correcting color proofs and press checks 140–141
  creating a convincing presentation 128–129
  digital printing 138–139
  paper stocks and finishing 130–131
  preparing files for print 124–127
  print checks 142–143
  print media 134–135
  printed color 132–135
  proofing 124
printed color 132–135
  calibrating your monitor 132–133
  global standard 133
  limited color 133
  Pantone Matching System (PMS) 90, 128, 132
  PMS and Pantone book paper choices 133
  RGB to CMYK 90, 133
  surface and ink 133
  tints and opacities 133
  workspace, monitor and calibration 132
printer, professional 142
printmaker, professional 142
printers, desktop 139
printing 90
Procreate 173
production 29
profiling 24
proximity 35
PSD 127
pull quotes 80, 81

Q
quality control strips 141

R
ranged (or ragged) left/right 73, 75, 76
raster 112
readability 76–77
reams of paper 131
receding color 90, 98
recording observations 12, 30
registration marks 107, 140, 141
relief printing 135, 137
Renner, Paul 68, 75
repetition 35
repetition with variation 35
representation 16
research 10, 27
  assignments 30–31
  audiences, markets and concepts 24–25
  basics of research 10–13
  broaden your outlook 10–11
  competitors 25
  exploratory drawing 16–17
  inspiration and 24
  lateral thinking 14–15
  linear reasoning 14–15
  multiple images 13
  observation 10, 12, 30
  record it all 12
  research techniques 12, 13
  scheduling, organizing, and finalizing 26–29
  theories of image and text 20–23
  timescale 28
  visualizing ideas 18–19
  website design 184
resolution 105, 112, 135, 138, 142, 174
RGB 90, 133
rhetoric 20, 23
Risograph 136–137
RODI (Return On Design Investment) 144, 156
rollover folds 51
roughs 17, 18–19

S
saddle stitching 51
sans serif 44–45, 66, 68, 70
satin papers 131
saturation 88, 89
Saussure, Ferdinand de 21
scanning 110
scheduling 27–28
schematics 96
Scher, Paula 69, 70, 73, 82
Schwitters, Kurt 113
screen printing 136
screen resolution 180
search engine optimization (SEO) 178–179
  image search results 178
  images 178
  keywords 178, 179
  meta tags 178, 179
  page title 178
  search page results 178
  SEO advice for designers 179
  SEO advice for your clients 179
  site description 178
secondary color 89
secondary research 12, 13
Selvedge (magazine) 49, 140
semantics 63
semiotics 21, 23
serif 64, 66, 67, 70
shapes 33, 35, 50
shift-scheduling 138
signifier 21, 22, 23
signified 23
signs 21
simultaneous contrast 90, 98
site maps 145
size and format 50
  content determines format 50–51
  folds and binding 51
  primary considerations 50
SmashingMagazine.com 157
social media 166, 169, 173, 183, 187
space 33–35, 78
spot color 89, 90
SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) 150
stock papers 131, 136
Storor, Mark 51
storyboards 29
style boards 166, 167, 184
styles of layout 23, 44–45
  asymmetrical page design 44
  asymmetrical revolution 44–45
  combining styles 45
  integrating styles 45
  symmetrical style 44
subtractive color 89, 90
symbolism 23
  dots, lines and shapes 35
  typography 84
symbols 21
  dependable artwork 21
  and icons 31
  symbol families 21
  symbol style 21
  universal messages 21
symmetry 38, 39, 44, 103
  choosing symmetry or asymmetry 38
  designing without symmetry 38
  different but equal 39
  in harmony 38
  symmetry in asymmetry 39
  typographic symmetry 38
syntax 63

T
tag clouds 176
tertiary color 89
texture 93
theories of image and text 20–23
thirds 37
thumbnails 18
TIFF 127
tints 99, 133
tones 89
tools and technologies 102
  Adobe Animate and Adobe After Effects 118–119
  Adobe Illustrator 114–117
  Adobe Photoshop 110–113, 152
  assignments 120–123
  page assembly programs 106–109
  photography basics and sourcing images 102–105
  understanding 17
tracking 73
tricks on the eye 36
Tumblr 181
typefaces 63, 64
  changing some lower case to capitals 78
  changing the typestyle 78
  clarity 71
  designing 86

  display type 68, 83, 84
  fluidity 71
  glyphs 83, 85
  identifying characteristics 64
  impact of x-heights 65
  large x-heights 65
  measuring 65
  numerals 65
  point size/pica 65
  sans serif 66, 70, 78
  sans-serif and script typefaces 68
  selecting fonts 70
  serif 66, 67, 70
  small x-heights 65
  stress/axis 65
  text type: old style, transitional and modern 67
  type classification 67
  x-heights and readability 75
typography 62
  anatomy of type 64–65, 86
  assignments 86–87
  design history 85
  design objectives 73
  form matching content 84
  headings 80
  hierarchy 87
  intelligent design 84
  justification options 74
  key terms 64–65
  layering and contrast 56
  leading 73, 75, 77
  less is more 79
  letterspacing 72
  meaning 63
  narrative 84
  opposites attract 70
  power of contrast 78–79
  ragging text 75
  readability and legibility 76–77, 86–87
  simplicity rules 70
  spacing 72–75
  text as image 84–85
  titling components 80
  type as image 56, 59
  type in motion 73
  type size 79–81
  typographic emphasis and hierarchy 72, 78–81
  typographic rules/boxes and ornaments 82–83
  typography and meaning 62–63, 86
  understanding and selecting typefaces 66–71
  web typography 168
  word as object 63

U

UI (user interface) 149, 150 171–172, 173–174
unjustified text 74

V

varnished papers 131
vectors 114, 116, 153
vibration 90, 91
visualizing ideas 18–19
  computers and visualization 19

W

wayfinding 99
waylosing 99
web and interactivity
  banner ad design 171
  common elements of a web layout 164–165
  designing for the web 166–171
  flowcharts and wireframes 160–163
  information architecture (IA) 158–159
  initial consultations 156–157
  mobile application design 170–172, 187
  online portfolios 180–183
  project development process overview 144–149
  project structures 150–151
  search engine optimization (SEO) 178–179
  web tools 152–155
  working with content management systems (CMS) 175–177
web hosting 180
web layouts 164–165
  anchor link/jump link/top of page link 165
  below the fold 165
  body area 165
  breadcrumb navigation 164
  call-out/call-to-action elements 165
  drop-down navigation/fly-out nav 162, 168
  extending "below the fold" 164
  Favicon 164
  feature panel slider 165
  fixed-width layout 166
  floating layout 166
  footers 165, 170
  header 164
  inline text links 163, 165
  layout structures 164, 165, 168
  learn the lingo 162, 164
  liquid layout 166
  main navigation/top nav/left nav 164
  multiple navigation sources 163
  page title 162
  structure with variety 163
web tools 152
  Adobe Animate 118, 122–123
  Adobe Dreamweaver 155
  Adobe Illustrator 152, 153
  Adobe Photoshop 152, 153
  Adobe TV 152
    Animate/ActionScript 154
  Code academy 154
  coding 154
  creating visual assets 153
  exporting graphic elements 153
  file naming conventions 155
  generating pixel-perfect artwork 153
  HTML and CSS 154
  InDesign 155
  JavaScript framework 154
  visual compression 153
website design 166
  animated content 171
  background 170
  banner advertising 171
  client goals 166
  cohesion 52
  design to evolve 168
  documenting the details 170–171
  forms 171
  grid structures 168
  horizontal rule 171
  image styles 171
  in-line hyperlink states 170
  layout structures 166
  navigation 166, 170, 184
  planning 145
  reposition and edit 168
  responsive design and display sizes 169
  responsive web design 169
  scrolling 148
  social media 166, 171, 187
  start with paper 167
  structure and content 186–187
  style boards 166, 184
  submenus 170
  supplying clean files 167
  tables 171
  text styling 171
  tool tips 167
  user expectations 166
  vertical positioning 170
  web font services 168
  web standards 184
  web trends 166
  web typography 168, 169
  where to start? 167
website design initial consultations 156
  budget 157
  closing the meeting 157
  meeting tips 156
  metrics/RODI 156
  Plan B 157
  preparations 156
  project goals 156
  scope 157
  technical requirements 156–157
  three aesthetic reference websites 156
  three competitor websites 156
  turnaround 157
website project development 145
  404 Error pages 145, 147
  additional functionality 148
  client questionnaire 143
  code adjustments 148
  coding 148
  compositional sketches 146–147
  content gathering 144
  content integration 148
  contract 145
  design mock-ups 147
  design phase 145
  development phase 147
  dimensions of a website 146
  documentation 147, 149
  final compositional layouts 147
  flowcharts 144, 148
  hosting and domain names 148
  image prep 148
  launch phase 148
  packaging source files 149
  planning phase 144
  post-launch phase 148–149
  presentation idea 146
  review 144
  satisfaction check 149
  software, technology, and resources 144–145
  testing 148
  testing resources 163
  test and verify 148
  training requirements 145, 149
  upload to client's web server 148
  wireframing 146
website project structures 150
  blogs 150
  brochures 150
  communicating visually 151
  community sites 150
  dark, not black 151
  e-commerce sites 150
  editorial structure 151
  event/campaign sites 150
  featured images 151
  news/reference sites 150
  portfolios 150
weight 90
Werkman, H.N. 85
white space 35, 78
widgetized areas 177
widow 73
wireframes 145, 146, 160–163, 184
  add links 162
  add regions 162
  add typography 162
  establishing visual hierarchy 162
  grayscale values 162, 163
  grids 162
  high-definition wireframe 163
  incorporate text and navigational elements 162
WordPress 148, 150, 175, 177
woven papers 131

X

x-heights 65, 75

Acknowledgments

Aloof, http://aloof.co, pp48t, 79t

Ashmore, Lucy, www.moreorless.work, pp14–15, 24t, 50tr/tc, 156

Beck, Krissy, Drexel University, pp81b

Bell, Sarah, pp101br, 102, 103tr/br

Bessermachen DesignStudio, design and packaging; Stiig Helgens Binggeli, Brandhouse, for archetypes and the idea, www.brandhouse.com, p130t

Bird, Bryden, https://www.behance.net/brygraphicdesign, pp7bl,11tr/cr/br, 17tr/cr, 18tl/tr, 58br, 68c, 114, 153

Blazheniuk, Elena,https://www.behance.net/lenko0, pp151bl, 166bl

bluehand/Shutterstock.com, p8br

Brandient, www.brandient.com p117

Bridgeman Images, p39b

Chipp, Kidd, Knopf Publishing, pp6bcl, 85tc

© Christie's Images/Corbis, p35t

Coffey, Marcy Zuczek, www.wfgd.net, p34c

Cohen, Shira, Drexel University, pp44t

Daredevil Creative, www.daredevil-creative.com, p.164

© Design Bridge, www.designbridge.com, pp6cbr, 21tl, 70b

Dillon, Hannah, Drexel University, www.hannahdillon.com, p33

Duranti, Alice, communicationobsession.com, p25t

Edwards, Victoria, p63b, 83t

Eland, Suzie, www.typeassembly.com, pp63tr, 84, 85bl

Elliott, Steven, Drexel University, p76b

Émigré, http://emigre.com, pp7bc, 39t, 69tl/c

étiquette, Client: Geld Baltic, Photography: Vytautas Narkevicius, www.etiquette.lt, pp3br, 92tl

Evans, Laura, www.lauraevans.co, p183b

Evans, Sarah, www.sarahevansdesign.co.uk, p183t

Faulkner, Clare, http://www.smalldots.co.uk, p137b

Feickert, Mitchell, www.mitchfeickert.com, pp152, 166cl

Flynn, Megan, Drexel University, pp83cl

Foster, Rebecca, www.rebeccafosterdesign.co.uk, pp163t/c/b

© Four Seasons Hotels Limited 1997-2019, pp58tr/cr/bcr

© Frost* Collective , www.frostcollective.com.au, pp20tl/cl/bl, 44b, 58bl, 128t

Gallagher, Erika, Drexel University, www.impartcreative.com, www.erikagallagher.com, p71b

Germano, Frank, Man on Fire Design, p37tr

GINGERMONKEY, www.gingermonkeydesign.com, pp16t, 62t

Goldberg, Carin, www.caringoldberg.com, pp53bl/br, 68b

Gordon, Laura, www.laura-g.co.uk, pp55, 166tl

Graf Vishenka/Shutterstock.com p158tr

Grand Union Design, pp28, 50tl, 51t

Greene, Rachael, Drexel University, p71cr

Grundy, Peter, http://grundini.com/, pp85tl, 97bl

Gundelsberger, Caitlin, www.caitlin-g.com, Drexel University, pp32t

h2a s.a, www.h2a.lu, pp43tl/tr, 59tr, 81t, 129tl/cl/cr

H2ASA, pp102bc, 129t

Haring Jr., Don, p19

Hart, Jennifer, Drexel University, www.jenniferhartdesign.com, p97cl

Hojong, Song, Instagram : songhj_, p182t

Huerta, Gerard, www.gerardhuerta.com, p69br

Huff, Priscilla, www.priscillahuff.com, pp149t/cl/bl

Image courtesy of *Works That Work* magazine, pp56tr, 46b, 47b, 135br

Jia, Fan, Drexel University, p91br

Karnes, Eric, erickarnes.com, pp25bl/br

Kusumahadi, Chiquita, chikakusumahadi.com, p95br

Langdon, John, www.johnlangdon.net, pp36br, 69bl

Laschenski, Caroline, www.carolinelaschenski.com, pp42, 77t/b

Legierski, Filip, www.dribbble.com/kedaura, p173br

Lewandowski, Catherine, Drexel University, www.c-lewandowski.com, p34tc

LICK ME IM DELICIOUS, pp100bl, 151br

Luo, Jingyin, www.jingyinluo.me, CSM, p181tr

Luo, Shuna, www.shunaluo.com, pp17bl/bc/br, 29

Mangiaracina, Francesca, www.francescamangiaracina.com, p72t

Mark Willie, Designer Professor, Graphic Design Program, Drexel University, Westphal College of Media Arts & Design

https://drexel.edu/westphal/academics/undergraduate/VSCM/, p59tl

Matter Strategic Design, www.matter.to, pp131t/tcl/tcr/131b

Matthiersen, Kia, www.kai-matthiesen.com, pp2br, 8bl, 23bl/br, 83tr, 92tr, 93b, 95bl, 100bc, 115, 133bl, 151tl

McCune, Sascha, Drexel University,www.sasha-em.com, p82tl

© Minying Li, Jess, pp3bl, 57bl/cl, 111

Morton, Katie, Drexel University, pp45tr/cr/br

Mortula, Luciano, Shutterstock.com, p97br

Mousegraphics, www.mousegraphics.eu, pp34tl, 39tl, 50b, 133br, 135t

Neumeister, http://neumeister.se pp9tr, 56tl

Nuccio, Alexander, www.relativelyready.com, pp94tr, 168tl/cl, 172cr/br

Octavo Corp/Source Library, www.octavo.com, p45b

Oleg Romanko/Shutterstock.com, p158tl

Palmer Brewster, Toby, tobypalmerbrewster@gmail.com, pp13bl/bc/br, 101bl, 103tl/cr/bl, 105, 113, 132

Park, Ran, www.ran-park.com, pp10t, 11tl/tc/tr

Patel, Chandni, www.chandnipatel.co.uk, pp9bc, 13tl/tc/tr

Penmore, Rebecca, www.formlines.co.uk, p176

Pestana, Joana, joanapestana.com, p137tl

Polimekanos, www.polimekanos.com, pp2c, 46tr/cr/bcr, 165, 168bl, 180t, 181cr/br, 182b

Pople, James, www.behance.net/jpopledesign, pp47tr/cr/br, 96tl/tr

Prescott, Amira, p95tr

Quevedo, Luis, http://www.behance.net/luiseq, pp9br, 80c

Ray, Fever, p63c

Rhode, Mike, www.rohdesign.com, pp146-147t

Rice Creative, images shot by Arnaud De Harven, http://rice-creative.com, pp21tr

Roberta Lor, https://robertalor.webflow.io, pp169b, 172t

Scher, Paula, Pentagram Design, www.pentagram.com, pp8bc, 9bl, 69tr, 70t, 73t, 82b

SeanPavonePhoto, Shutterstock.com, p97t

Selvedge Magazine, 14 Milton Park, Highgate, London, N6 5QA; www.selvedge.org, pp103bc, 49tr/cr/br, 140c

Shine, Nyki, http://nykiforever.wix.com/portfolio, pp48bl/bc

SMACK | Creative Digital Studio, www.SMACKagency.com, pp2l, 49tl/cl

Soppelsa, Moreno, Shutterstock.com, pp138tr, 139tl

Summer Studio, www.summerstudio.co.uk, pp100br, 137tr

Sverre Jarild taken for Design and Architecture Norway (DOGA) at the "Innovation for all—European Business Workshops in Inclusive Design," p157

The Working Assembly, theworkingassembly.com, pp6bl/br, 52, 54, 57cr/br, 78t, 145, 148

Vasily, Smirnov, iStockphoto.com, p134bl

Vaughan, Alice p175

Vaughann, Natalie, www.natalie-vaughan.com, pp129tr/br, 151tr

Viviana Mendes, Multidisciplinary Designer, www.vivianamendes.design, p112t

Walters, Kelly, www.brightpolkadot.com, pp93tr, 151cl

Wan, Cheng, Drexel University, p91bc

Warnham, Hayley, www.hayleywarnham.com, pp22b

WE ARE OUT OF OFFICE, p137tl/tr

Weinstein, Brielle, Drexel University, p80b

Yee, Karen, Drexel University, http://karenlyee.tumblr.com, p91bl

Yinlou, Jing, pp85tr/cr

Zun, Krystian, krystianzun.com, p166br

All step-by-step and other images are the copyright of Quarto Publishing plc. While every effort has been made to credit contributors, Quarto would like to apologize should there have been any omissions or errors—and would be pleased to make the appropriate correction for future editions of the book.

With thanks to Zak Peric for his contribution to the article on Animate and After Effects, on pages 118–119, and for the assignment on page 122–123.

With special thanks to Eric Zempol (1970–2014) for his work on the Fifth edition of this book.

WILEY END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

Go to www.wiley.com/go/eula to access Wiley’s ebook EULA.